

NORMAL CELLULAR CONSTITUENTS OF ADULT HUMAN BLOOD

1 Segmented (polymorphonuclear) neutrophil 2 Band (stab) neutrophil 3 Segmented mononuclear 4 Basophil 5 Small lymphocytes 6 Large lymphocyte 7 Monocyte 8 Thrombocytes and 9 Erythrocytes (from Custer An Atlas of the Blood and Bone Marrow)

Fundamentals of CLINICAL HEMATOLOGY

By

BYRD S LEAVELL M D

Professor of Internal Medicine

Physician in charge Hematology Section

School of Medicine University of Virginia

Attending Physician University of Virginia Hospital

And

OSCAR A THORUP JR M D

Associate Professor of Internal Medicine

School of Medicine University of Virginia

Attending Physician University of Virginia Hospital

W B SAUNDERS COMPANY

PHILADELPHIA AND LONDON 1960

© 1960 BY W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY

Copyright under the International Copyright Union

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. This book is protected by copyright. No part of it may be duplicated or reproduced in any manner without written permission from the publisher. Made in the United States of America. PUBLISHED BY W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY. Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 60-7469

DEDICATED TO

HARVEY E JORDAN

and

JAMES E KINDRED

PREFACE

KEEPING ABREAST of the literature devoted to hematology is a formidable task although monographs textbooks special journals devoted to original contributions review articles and abstracts are available to those who are interested. However the pleasant task of teaching medical students over a period of years has led us to conclude that there is a need for a new textbook that is designed for the student who is being introduced to hematology for the first time while he is in the midst of a crowded curriculum. Physicians in active practice similarly pressed for time have expressed a desire for a similar book one that is comprehensive but not encyclopedic that could serve for a review and reorientation in the field.

This book has been written in an effort to fulfill these needs. Emphasis is placed on a consideration of the abnormal mechanisms that are responsible for the manifestations of the different diseases. A unifying approach of this type can provide a foundation for further development by those who are interested in the subject. It can also provide a sound basis for the management of hematologic problems that are seen in clinical practice.

A presentation of the morphologic and functional characteristics of the various cell lines is followed by discussions of the normal physiology of erythropoiesis leukopoiesis and hemostasis. In each instance the current theoretical considerations are discussed with particular reference to their

application in diagnosis and treatment. The discussions of most of the clinical syndromes are accompanied by short accounts of actual cases which illustrate appropriate points. Special consideration has been given to the diagnosis of patients who present the problems of anemia, hemorrhagic diathesis or lymphadenopathy. A separate chapter is devoted to hematologic techniques.

The authors express their appreciation to the following members of the Faculty of the School of Medicine of the University of Virginia who generously helped us in many ways, particularly by their suggestions and criticisms: Drs. William Parson, Thomas Hunter, Charles Crockett, Donald Shotton, J. T. Carpenter and William Herring of the Department of Internal Medicine; Drs. O. B. Bobbitt and Cecil Hougie of the Department of Clinical Pathology; Drs. Morris Lambdin and Audrey Brown of the Department of Pediatrics; Dr. George Cooper, Jr. of the Department of Radiology; Dr. David Smith of the Department of Pathology; Dr. D. R. H. Gourley of the Department of Pharmacology; Dr. R. W. McGilvery of the Department of Biochemistry; Dr. Edward Crowley of the Department of Dermatology; also to Dr. Allan Sharp of the Radcliffe Infirmary, United Oxford Hospitals. Our thanks also go to Miss Barbara Marshall, Miss Peggy Parker, Miss Anne Lipscomb, Mrs. Ralph Fitzwater, Mrs. Charles Mahon and Mrs. Anna Dabney for their help in preparing the material, and to Miss Anne Russell and Mrs. Hope Ansbacher of the Department of Medical Illustration who prepared many of the illustrations for us. The authors are also grateful for the help and encouragement they have received from the editorial staff of the W. B. Saunders Company.

BYRD S. LEAVELL
OSCAR A. THORUP, JR.

Charlottesville, Virginia

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

THE MORPHOLOGY ORIGIN CHEMISTRY AND FUNCTION OF BLOOD CELLS	1
--	---

CHAPTER II

ERYTHROPOIESIS AND THE METABOLISM OF HEMOGLOBIN AND IRON	38
Erythropoiesis	38
Iron Metabolism	51
<i>Additional Factors Needed for Erythropoiesis</i>	61

CHAPTER III

MECHANISMS AND DIAGNOSIS OF ANEMIA	69
The Classification of Anemia	69
Mechanisms Responsible for Anemia	72
Diagnosis of the Patient with Anemia	86

CHAPTER IV

CLINICAL SYNDROMES ASSOCIATED WITH ANEMIA	101
Pernicious Anemia	104
Anemias Associated with Deficient Absorption from the Gastrointestinal Tract (Sprue and Other Syndromes)	115
Anemia Associated with Pregnancy	120
Anemia Associated with Chronic Renal Disease	122
Anemia Associated with Myxedema	124
Aplastic Anemia	125
Myeloid Metaplasia	128
Anemia Associated with Acute Blood Loss	140
Anemia of Iron Deficiency	148
Hereditary Spherocytosis	156
Sickle Cell Anemia	163
Clinical Syndromes (Other than Sickle Cell Anemia and Thalassemia) Associated with Abnormal Hemoglobins	165
Thalassemia	168
Erythroblastosis Fetalis	184
Acquired Hemolytic Anemia	191
Hemoglobinuria	199
Anemia Associated with Chronic Liver Disease	202
Hypersplenism	203

CHAPTER V

POLYCYTHEMIA	220
Polycythemia Vera	221
Secondary Polycythemia	229
The di Guglielmo Syndrome	231

CHAPTER VI

BLOOD COAGULATION THEORY AND CLINICAL APPLICATIONS	235
--	-----

CHAPTER VII

DISORDERS OF THROMOSTASIS	259
---------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VIII

LEUKOCYTES

CHAPTER IX

AGENTS USED IN THE TREATMENT OF LEUKEMIA AND MALIGNANT LYMPHOMA	341
--	-----

CHAPTER X

LEUKEMIA	353
----------	-----

CHAPTER XI

OTHER DISORDERS OF THE LYMPHOID TISSUES AND BONE MARROW	388
Malignant Lymphomas	392
Multiple Myeloma	412

CHAPTER XII

HEMATOLOGIC TECHNIQUES	430
Laboratory Procedures in Hematology	440

INDEX	483
-------	-----

CHAPTER IV

CLINICAL SYNDROMES ASSOCIATED WITH ANEMIA	104
Pernicious Anemia	104
Anemias Associated with Deficient Absorption from the Gastrointestinal Tract (Sprue and Other Syndromes)	118
Anemia Associated with Pregnancy	120
<i>Anemia Associated with Chronic Renal Disease</i>	122
Anemia Associated with Myxedema	124
Aplastic Anemia	128
Myeloid Metaplasia	138
Anemia Associated with Acute Blood Loss	145
Anemia of Iron Deficiency	148
Hereditary Spherocytosis	156
Sickle Cell Anemia	163
Clinical Syndromes (Other than Sickle Cell Anemia and Thalassemia) Associated with Abnormal Hemoglobins	175
Thalassemia	178
Erythroblastosis Fetalis	184
Acquired Hemolytic Anemia	191
Hemoglobinuria	199
Anemia Associated with Chronic Liver Disease	202
Hypersplenism	203

CHAPTER V

POLYCYTHEMIA	220
Polycythemia Vera	221
Secondary Polycythemia	229
The di Guglielmo Syndrome	231

CHAPTER VI

BLOOD COAGULATION: THEORY AND CLINICAL APPLICATIONS	238
---	-----

CHAPTER VII

DISORDERS OF HOMEOSTASIS

CHAPTER VIII

LEUKOCYTES	269
------------	-----

The Morphology, Origin, Chemistry and Function of Blood Cells

THE IMPORTANT contributions made by Ehrlich can be considered the beginning of modern hematology.⁴³ The staining methods which he introduced became the cornerstone of morphologic hematology and cytochemistry. With the use of the new technique Ehrlich described many cellular details and developed a classification of the blood cells. He recognized that the granulocytic series of cells arose from a non granular precursor in the bone marrow and thought that lymphocytes arose from the lymph "glands." This distinction formed the basis of his theory of the dual origin of the white cells.

Although Ehrlich considered this dualistic doctrine to be one of the most important results of his long continued studies in hematology,⁴³ this theory was not accepted by many hematologists and numerous controversies followed. The dualistic theory was supported by Banti, Turk, Naegeli and others,⁴³⁻⁹ and was opposed by the monophyleticists Maximow, Jordan, Bloom and others who believed that myeloid tissue could arise postem-

lus has been correlated with active cellular proliferation^{6, 125} According to Thorell cellular proliferation ceases when the nucleolus disappears and is replaced by the more deeply basophilic heterochromatin¹²¹

Myeloblasts vary in size and other details The nucleus is sometimes slightly indented and in acute leukemia it is occasionally deeply indented or lobulated The cytoplasm of myeloblasts and monoblasts sometimes contains Auer bodies These structures which appear red with Wright's stain and resemble a stained tubercle bacillus give positive peroxidase and oxidase reactions Histochemical study has revealed that these rods contain ribonucleic acid and a lipid material possibly a mucopolysaccharide¹ When myeloblasts are stained supravitaly with neutral red and Janus green numerous small mitochondria can be seen in the cytoplasm Recent studies have shown that the mitochondria which may contain a complete Krebs cycle are a source of succinoydase and cytochrome oxidase activity^{6, 33}

2 Progranulocyte (Promyelocyte)

The progranulocyte is the next stage in development after the myeloblast and some may resemble myeloblasts with the addition of azurophilic cytoplasmic granules Other cells at this stage have a coarser nuclear structure than the myeloblast are quite large and contain numerous azurophilic granules in the cytoplasm and in the region overlying the nucleus Nucleoli may or

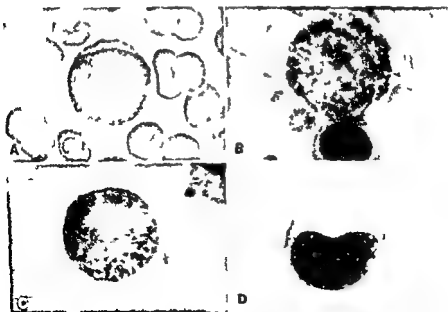


Fig. 1 Cells of the granulocytic series. A Myeloblast B Promyelocyte C Myelocyte (early) D Metamyelocyte

lymphocytes^{10, 11} Still another theory the polyphyletic has been advanced by Cunningham Sibin and Doan who concluded that each type of adult cell has its own particular blast cell precursor¹² Detailed discussions of the different theories of the origin of the various cells are presented in Downey's Handbook of Hematology¹³ and in review articles^{1, 2, 21, 22}

Despite an enormous amount of study the question of the origin and interrelationship of the cells remains unsettled after more than half a century Much of the confusion regarding the identity of cells has been caused by the lack of a uniform terminology Different techniques and different types of material have been used by investigators who have given different names to the same cells and have employed the same term for different cells Fortunately unanimity of hematologic opinion as to the origin and relationship of the cells is not essential for the successful management of most clinical hematologic problems There are enough points of agreement to allow the development of the workable concept of cellular relationships that is needed for an organized approach to clinical problems A knowledge of morphology is necessary for the diagnosis of many hematologic diseases and a terminology is essential for communication

In selecting the terms to be used in this text the authors have chosen those that are used most commonly in the classification of cells the terms recommended by the Committee for Classification of the Nomenclature of Cells and Diseases of the Blood Forming Organs have been included in every instance³

I THE GRANULOCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1 Myeloblast

The myeloblast occurs in normal bone marrow but is not found in the circulating blood except in certain disease states In fixed smears the diameter of myeloblasts ranges from 11 to 18 microns With Wright's stain the nuclear material assumes a deep purplish blue color the chromatin is finely divided, punctate or strandlike and appears condensed only around the rim of the nucleoli Several light blue staining nucleoli are usually visible The non granular cytoplasm which stains the same light blue color as the nucleolus is variable in amount and often forms little more than a rim about the nucleus Myeloblasts generally give a negative reaction when a peroxidase stain is used but some cells that are classed as myeloblasts with Wright's stain give a positive reaction with peroxidase stain The staining properties of the cells are related to the nucleoproteins^{1, 2} Ribonucleic acid (RNA) occurs both in the nucleoli and in the cytoplasm while deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is found only in the nucleus Protein synthesis in the cell is thought to be under the control of the nucleoproteins and the presence of the nucleo-

lus has been correlated with active cellular proliferation^{80, 1, 3} According to Thorell cellular proliferation ceases when the nucleolus disappears and is replaced by the more deeply basophilic heterochromatin¹³¹

Myeloblasts vary in size and other details. The nucleus is sometimes slightly indented and in acute leukemia it is occasionally deeply indented or lobulated. The cytoplasm of myeloblasts and monoblasts sometimes contains Auer bodies. These structures which appear red with Wright's stain and resemble a stained tubercle bacillus give positive peroxidase and oxidase reactions. Histochemical study has revealed that these rods contain ribonucleic acid and a lipid material possibly a mucopolysaccharide.¹ When myeloblasts are stained supravitaly with neutral red and Janus green numerous small mitochondria can be seen in the cytoplasm. Recent studies have shown that the mitochondria which may contain a complete Krebs cycle are a source of succinoydase and cytochrome oxidase activity.^{6, 33}

2 Progranulocyte (Promyelocyte)

The progranulocyte is the next stage in development after the myeloblast and some may resemble myeloblasts with the addition of azurophilic cytoplasmic granules. Other cells at this stage have a coarser nuclear structure than the myeloblast are quite large and contain numerous azurophilic granules in the cytoplasm and in the region overlying the nucleus. Nucleoli may or

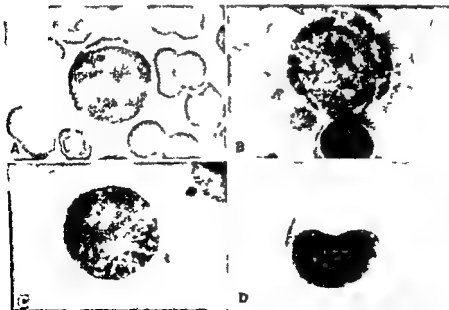


Figure 1 Early cells of the granulocytic series A Myeloblast B Promyelocyte C Myelocyte (early) D Metamyelocyte

may not be visible at this stage. The appearance and development of the granules appear to be closely related to the differentiation of the cytoplasmic proteins. Thorell has shown that the myeloblast has a high concentration of cytoplasmic polynucleotides and a prominent nucleolus.¹³¹ When the cell matures to the progranulocytic stage the cytoplasmic polynucleotides decrease as the granules appear. Further development of the granules is associated with continued decrease in the polynucleotide content and none is demonstrable by the time the myelocyte stage is reached. The nucleolus which has been thought to have considerable influence over the differentiation of the cytoplasmic proteins contains ribonucleic acid; this material decreases gradually and is no longer detectable in the myelocytic stage. When the nucleolus disappears further differentiation of the cytoplasmic protein cannot take place.⁸⁰

3 Myelocyte

Myelocytes are the first cells of the granulocytic series that contain specific granules which are either neutrophilic, eosinophilic or basophilic. Both neutrophilic and eosinophilic granules give a positive peroxidase reaction. As the myelocyte develops from the progranulocyte it becomes smaller and the nuclear chromatin becomes coarser. When supravital stains are used numerous small mitochondria and a variable number of neutral red bodies can be demonstrated in the cytoplasm. The number, location and arrangement of the neutral red bodies have been employed as a basis for classifying myelocytes according to different stages of development as myelocytes A, B and C.⁹

4 Metamyelocyte (Juvenile)

As the myelocyte matures the chromatin structure of the nucleus becomes coarser, specific granulation persists and the nucleus becomes indented. At this stage the cell is termed a metamyelocyte.

5 Band Cell (Stab Cell)

According to the Committee on Nomenclature of Blood Cells, any cell of the granulocytic series is classed as a band cell which has a nucleus which could be described as a curved or coiled band, no matter how marked the indentation, if it does not completely segment the nucleus into lobes connected by a filament.¹³³

6 Segmented Cell (Polymorphonuclear)

These are the fully developed cells of the granulocytic series whose nuclei contain two or more lobes that are joined by filamentous connections. The nuclear chromatin is coarse and has the appearance of blocks or knots.

connected by strands. The cytoplasm contains numerous granules that stain specifically with Wright's stain.

The neutrophil segmented cell (neutrophil) gives a positive peroxidase reaction. In supravital preparations numerous small refractile bodies fill the cytoplasm and active amoeboid movement is prominent. At times neutrophils are unusually large and have nuclei consisting of five to ten lobes. Such cells termed macropolycytes or segmented cells pernicious anemia type occur most often as a result of a deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid.

The eosinophil segmented cell (eosinophil) is a fully developed cell. The nucleus does not stain as heavily as that of the neutrophil. The eosinophil is characterized by the presence of large granules that fill the cytoplasm and stain a bright yellowish red color with Wright's stain. When stained supravitaly with neutral red and Janus green the granules appear large, very refractile and yellow. These cells give a positive peroxidase reaction. Histochemical studies indicate that the eosinophil granules are composed of protein and surrounded by phospholipid.¹⁴ Verdoperoxidase is also present.¹⁵ Eosinophils contain about one-third of the histamine found in normal blood.¹⁶

The basophil segmented cell (basophil) is somewhat smaller than the neutrophil and eosinophil. The characteristic feature of this cell is the presence of large purplish black granules that appear to almost completely fill the cell. The granules appear red when stained supravitaly with neutral red. The cells are peroxidase negative. Basophils contain relatively large

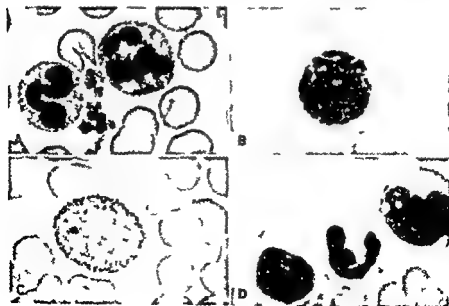


Figure 3. Later cell of the granulocytic series. A Neutrophils. B Basophil. C Eosinophil. D Comparison of lymphocyte, neutrophil, monocyte.

may not be visible at this stage. The appearance and development of the granules appear to be closely related to the differentiation of the cytoplasmic proteins. Thorell has shown that the myeloblast has a high concentration of cytoplasmic polynucleotides and a prominent nucleolus.¹³¹ When the cell matures to the progranulocytic stage the cytoplasmic polynucleotides decrease as the granules appear. Further development of the granules is associated with continued decrease in the polynucleotide content and none is demonstrable by the time the myelocyte stage is reached. The nucleolus, which has been thought to have considerable influence over the differentiation of the cytoplasmic proteins, contains ribonucleic acid; this material decreases gradually and is no longer detectable in the myelocytic stage. When the nucleolus disappears, further differentiation of the cytoplasmic protein cannot take place.⁸⁰

3 Myelocyte

Myelocytes are the first cells of the granulocytic series that contain specific granules which are either neutrophilic, eosinophilic or basophilic. Both neutrophilic and eosinophilic granules give a positive peroxidase reaction. As the myelocyte develops from the progranulocyte it becomes smaller and the nuclear chromatin becomes coarser. When supravital stains are used numerous small mitochondria and a variable number of neutral red bodies can be demonstrated in the cytoplasm. The number, location and arrangement of the neutral red bodies have been employed as a basis for classifying myelocytes according to different stages of development as myelocytes A, B and C.⁹

4 Metamyelocyte (Juvenile)

As the myelocyte matures, the chromatin structure of the nucleus becomes coarser, specific granulation persists and the nucleus becomes indented. At this stage the cell is termed a metamyelocyte.

5 Band Cell (Stab Cell)

According to the Committee on Nomenclature of Blood Cells, any cell of the granulocytic series is classed as a band cell "which has a nucleus which could be described as a curved or coiled band, no matter how marked the indentation, if it does not completely segment the nucleus into lobes connected by a filament."¹³³

6 Segmented Cell (Polymorphonuclear)

These are the fully developed cells of the granulocytic series whose nuclei contain two or more lobes that are joined by filamentous connections. The nuclear chromatin is coarse and has the appearance of blocks or knots.

enzyme in the granulocytes has been found to be increased in infection and in polycythemia and decreased in myelocytic leukemia. It has been reported that alkaline phosphatase activity parallels glycogen concentration.¹¹ Neither the function of this cellular enzyme nor the mechanism underlying the variations that have been found in various disease states is known.^{12, 13}

4. Acid phosphatase activity has also been demonstrated in the leukocytes. Unlike alkaline phosphatase which is confined mainly to the granulocytes,^{13, 17} acid phosphatase occurs in all types of leukocytes. The acid phosphatase activity of the leukocytes is high in chronic myelogenous leukemia and normal in the leukocytosis of infection.

Among the other substances that have been identified in leukocytes are histamine¹ which is confined largely to the granulocytes¹ (predominantly the basophils¹⁸), dipeptidases, tripeptidases,²¹ sulphydryl groups,^{8, 22} lipase and maltase²³, beta glucuronidase,² peroxidase⁹ and glucuronic acid.⁵ Phospholipids are present in the granules in granulocytes.¹⁴

FUNCTION OF THE GRANULOCYTES

Although the recognition of a large number of enzymes and other chemical substances in granulocytes suggests that these cells have multiple functions, at the present time the primary function of the leukocyte is considered to be concerned with the defense of the body against various noxious agents. The importance of phagocytosis as one of the main defense mechanisms of the body was suggested by Metchnikoff in 1882 after he had observed the accumulation of mobile cells about a thorn placed under the skin of the star fish larva.¹⁶ The stimulus responsible for the movement of the leukocyte into the proximity of the offending particle is believed to be chemical in nature and is termed chemotaxis while the actual engulfment of the particle by the leukocyte is termed phagocytosis.

Chemotaxis is said to be positive if the leukocyte moves toward the particle, negative if repelled and indifferent if it is unaffected by the presence of the particle. The term is applied only to the direction of movement and not to the speed of movement.¹⁶ Numerous investigators have tried to identify the specific substance or substances responsible for chemotaxis. It has been demonstrated that crystalline nitrogenous material from inflammatory exudates attracts leukocytes in large numbers when placed in the cutaneous tissue of an animal.^{24, 25, 26, 27} This substance which has been termed leukotaxine appears to be a polypeptide.²⁸ It has also been suggested that the attracting substance is glycogen.¹³

After the granulocyte has been attracted to the site, phagocytosis occurs. The neutrophil is more adept than the eosinophil or basophil at this operation. The younger granulocytes bands and metamyelocytes are more avid than the segmented cells in attacking bacteria in the presence of opsonins.¹²

Various factors influence phagocytosis. It appears to be enhanced in some types of anemia²⁹ possibly as a result of pteroylglutamic acid deficiency^{1, 30} and by an increase in temperature from 0° C to 35° C.⁴⁰ It is reduced by

amounts of histamine^{60 1139} about one half of the histamine content of normal blood.⁹⁴ The presence of heparin has been suspected but not proved.

ORIGIN OF THE GRANULOCYTES

Under normal conditions the older granulocytic cells, the bands and segmented cells, develop from the myelocytes in the bone marrow. Various cells have been considered to be the non granular ancestors of the granular myelocytes.^{60 61} Although these theories differ in details, all agree that in the adult under normal circumstances the older cells of the granulocytic series arise in the bone marrow and are derived from the myelocytes and their precursors, which are either myeloblasts or cells that have an identical appearance in fixed smears.

CHEMISTRY OF THE GRANULOCYTES

Advances in biochemical and histochemical methods have revealed interesting information about the chemistry and function of the granulocytes. Although the functional significance of many of the enzymes and chemical substances that have been identified in the granulocytes is as yet unknown, a brief discussion is presented in order to indicate the extent and complexity of this rapidly expanding field. Many of the studies have been concerned with various aspects of carbohydrate metabolism. Some have been undertaken in an effort to determine if metabolic pathways in normal granulocytes differ from those found in certain diseases, particularly leukemia.⁷

1. Glucose¹ and other hexoses⁷⁴ are metabolized by the granulocytes to lactic acid. Immature forms have a predominantly oxidative metabolism and do not form lactic acid under aerobic conditions, while mature forms have high lactic acid production uninfluenced by the presence of oxygen.⁶ The presence of the intact cellular membrane is believed important to the metabolic activity of white blood cells,⁶ because in broken cells absolute respiration drops to one half and the glycolytic rate to but one fifth that of intact cells. Several enzymes and a number of phosphorylated intermediates^{14 140} important in glucose metabolism¹⁴⁰ have been identified. Recent work suggests that glycolysis may follow more than one pathway in the mature leukocyte.^{7 79}

2. Glycogen has been demonstrated in the cytoplasm of granular leukocytes and its concentration is thought to increase as the phagocytic and ameboid activities of the cell increase.^{77 143} The glycogen content of the leukocytes from children with glycogen storage disease has been reported to be increased.¹⁴⁴ The possibility has been suggested that the leukocytes act as a transport system for delivery of glycogen to areas where it is needed.¹⁴³

3. The determination of alkaline phosphatase activity, which has been demonstrated in both normal and abnormal cells of human blood and bone marrow, may prove useful in clinical hematology.¹⁴⁰ The activity of this

and the identity of a blast cell usually is assumed from the recognition of the older cells that accompany it. The nucleus of the lymphoblast is round and has a fine chromatin structure in which several nucleoli are often visible. The cytoplasm stains pale blue and contains no granules

2 *Prolymphocyte*

Lymphocytic cells that are intermediate between lymphoblasts and lymphocytes are termed prolymphocytes. Although the nuclear chromatin appears coarser than that of the blast cells, it is finer than that of the lymphocytes. At times nucleoli or nucleolar remnants are visible. Usually the diameter of these cells is greater than 15 microns.

3 *Lymphocyte*

In dry smears the diameter of small lymphocytes varies from 7 to 10 microns, but the less common large lymphocytes may have a diameter of 20 microns. When Wright's stain is used the nucleus of the small lymphocytes which is usually round but sometimes indented, appears almost to fill the entire cell. The nucleus has a prominent membrane, stains deeply, and contains large masses of chromatin. No nucleoli can be identified. In the large lymphocytes the nuclear chromatin stains less deeply and appears somewhat less compact. The cytoplasm, which is much more abundant in the larger lymphocytes, stains pale blue. A small number of reddish violet granules are scattered through the cytoplasm of many of the cells of this series. The lymphocytes do not give a positive reaction with the peroxidase stain. When stained supravitaly with Janus green and neutral red, the lymphocytes are seen to contain a variable number of short rodlike mitochondria that usually appear clumped in one part of the cytoplasm, often opposite the nuclear indentation. A few small neutral red vacuoles are also seen.

Lymphocytes at times show definite staining abnormalities in disease states, particularly in virus infections. The cytoplasm of the larger cells is

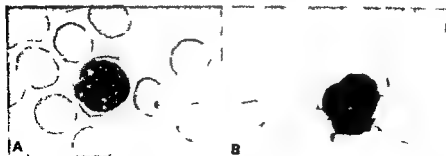


Figure 3 Lymphocytes A small B large

high concentration of glucose,⁷³ and by malnutrition.⁶ The application of agents which alter the surface charge of the cells or the particles alters the phagocytic activity.¹ These results are in agreement with other observations^{29, 30} that relate phagocytosis to surface charge. However other results seem to indicate a chemical relationship between the particle and the cell.^{24, 27, 28}

The important role that the properties of the particles to be engulfed play in the process of phagocytosis is demonstrated by studies that utilized inert solid particles⁴⁴ and bacteria.¹⁰⁷ Many bacteria produce antiphagocytic substances which are toxic for the phagocytic cell.¹⁰⁸ Among these are the somatic "O" antigen on the surface of many gram negative species, exotoxins, and leukocidins. The growing type III pneumococcus resists phagocytosis in a different manner. It produces a polysaccharide "slime" layer composed of long chained carbohydrate polymers of glucose and glucuronic acid which protects the organism from phagocytosis and contributes to the virulence of this organism.¹¹

The enhanced phagocytosis of organisms which occurs in the presence of immune sera and complement is known as the opsonic function of the antibody.¹⁰⁹ The manner by which opsonin renders microorganisms more susceptible to destruction is incompletely understood. In the absence of opsonin phagocytes are unable to engulf bacteria floating free in a liquid medium. In such circumstances cells can phagocytize organisms after they have succeeded in tripping them against a convenient surface such as the wall of an alveolus or another leukocyte. This process has been termed surface phagocytosis.^{1, 6, 13}

Studies in patients with cyclic neutropenia and in patients with persistent agranulocytosis associated with aplastic anemia indicate that the granulocytes play a minor role at most in defense mechanisms other than phagocytosis.¹⁰¹ Such studies indicate no influence on antibody production, the febrile response to endotoxin administered intravenously, or the local reactions to endotoxin or bacterial allergy. The responses to appropriate stimuli in the form of increased production of C reactive protein and mucoprotein appear to be unimpaired in the absence of granulocytes. Perhaps the most significant observation in such patients concerns the deficiency not only of granulocytes but also of lymphocytes in cutaneous inflammation which suggests that the neutrophilic granulocytes (or a product of their reaction with the tissue) afford the stimulus for the migration of lymphocytes to the area of inflammation and their subsequent transformation into macrophages.

II THE LYMPHOCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1 Lymphoblast

The lymphoblast occurs in the peripheral blood rarely if at all except in cases of leukemia. It is distinguished from the myeloblast with difficulty

and the identity of a blast cell usually is assumed from the recognition of the older cells that accompany it. The nucleus of the lymphoblast is round and has a fine chromatin structure in which several nucleoli are often visible. The cytoplasm stains pale blue and contains no granules.

2 *Prolymphocyte*

Lymphocytic cells that are intermediate between lymphoblasts and lymphocytes are termed prolymphocytes. Although the nuclear chromatin appears coarser than that of the blast cells, it is finer than that of the lymphocytes. At times nucleoli or nucleolar remnants are visible. Usually the diameter of these cells is greater than 15 microns.

3 *Lymphocyte*

In dry smears the diameter of small lymphocytes varies from 7 to 10 microns, but the less common large lymphocytes may have a diameter of 20 microns. When Wright's stain is used the nucleus of the small lymphocytes which is usually round but sometimes indented, appears almost to fill the entire cell. The nucleus has a prominent membrane, stains deeply, and contains large masses of chromatin. No nucleoli can be identified. In the large lymphocytes the nuclear chromatin stains less deeply and appears somewhat less compact. The cytoplasm, which is much more abundant in the larger lymphocytes, stains pale blue. A small number of reddish violet granules are scattered through the cytoplasm of many of the cells of this series. The lymphocytes do not give a positive reaction with the peroxidase stain. When stained supravitaly with Janus green and neutral red, the lymphocytes are seen to contain a variable number of short rodlike mitochondria that usually appear clumped in one part of the cytoplasm, often opposite the nuclear indentation. A few small neutral red vacuoles are also seen.

Lymphocytes at times show definite staining abnormalities in disease states, particularly in virus infections. The cytoplasm of the larger cells is



Figure 3 Lymphocytes A small B large

sometimes deeply basophilic and opaque and at other times it is almost colorless. Nuclear fenestrations and cytoplasmic vacuoles are often present.

ORIGIN OF THE LYMPHOCYTES

Lymphocytes are produced in lymph nodes⁽¹⁾ in the perarterial pulp of the spleen, in nodules of the tonsils⁽²⁾ in the mucous membranes of the gastrointestinal, genitourinary and respiratory tracts⁽³⁾ and possibly in the lymph nodes in the bone marrow^(4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11). Various cellular origins of the lymphocytes have been suggested. Among these are preexisting lymphocytes^(12, 13) reticulum cells^(14, 15, 16, 17, 18) hemocytoblasts^(19, 20) and "primitive white cells" intermediate between reticulum cells and lymphoblasts.⁽²¹⁾ Much evidence suggests that the lymphocyte is not an irreversible end cell such as the granulocyte but instead is a cell that retains the potential for further differentiation at least under special circumstances. The lymphocyte has been considered to be the source of plasma cells^(22, 23) and also of wandering tissue phagocytes.^(24, 25) The conclusion has also been reached by some investigators that lymphocytes can produce myeloid cells^(26, 27, 28) and erythrocyte precursors^(29, 30, 31) under the specific stimulus of special environmental factors.

CHEMISTRY OF THE LYMPHOCYTES

Most of the studies on the quantitative and qualitative chemistry of the leukocytes have been performed on mixtures of granulocytes and lymphocytes. What is known of the chemistry of the lymphocyte has been determined largely by the application of histochemical methods. By such methods a number of enzymes and other chemical substances of uncertain function have been identified in the lymphocytes. Acid phosphatase⁽³²⁾ and glycogen⁽³³⁾ have been identified in the lymphocytes in the circulating blood. These cells have been found to contain more dipeptidase and less tripeptidase than the granulocytes.⁽³⁴⁾ When the lymphocyte migrates to a site of inflammation its morphological change into a macrophage is accompanied by changes in its cytochemistry.⁽³⁵⁾ These are the acquisition of oxidase and peroxidase activity, the appearance of alkaline phosphatase and an increase in sudanophilic cytoplasmic constituents. These changes occur when the lymphocyte is undergoing hypertrophy at which time there is both a relative and an absolute increase in mitochondria.

FUNCTION OF THE LYMPHOCYTES

The function of the lymphocyte in the circulation and in other tissues throughout the body continues to be the subject of considerable controversy. It has been considered by many to be an adult cell perhaps more vestigial than functional because it was thought to possess neither nuclei nor powers of movement. Others have always considered it to be a young

cell capable of forming other cells normally or in the times of stress. The observation that enormous numbers of lymphocytes enter the circulation each day via the thoracic duct, the visualization of nucleoli by means of supravital stains and the newer types of microscopy, the recognition of a characteristic type of motility and the demonstration that these cells contain a large amount of deoxyribonucleic acid have all combined to produce a reawakening of interest in lymphocytes.¹⁰ At the present time most of the interest and controversy related to the lymphocyte is concerned with its possible function as a hematopoietic cell or as a vital part of the defense mechanism of the body.

The ability of even small lymphocytes to form other lymphocytes homoplastically is considered established by some because of the demonstration of mitoses in material from lymph nodes, bone marrow, and spleen.¹¹⁰ However, mitoses are seen much more often in large and medium sized lymphocytes than in small lymphocytes in the germinal centers of lymph nodes. The discrepancy between the large number of lymphocytes present in the body and the infrequent occurrence of mitosis in lymphoid tissue may be explained by a heteroplastic origin from reticulum cells and by a long life span of at least twenty one days as measured by studies with DNA labeled with radioactive phosphorus.¹¹⁰ Toffey has calculated that for every lymphocyte normally present in the circulation, three lymphocytes enter the circulation each day from the thoracic duct and 23 are present in the bone marrow.¹⁶² The origin of the marrow lymphocytes is thought to be hematogenous rather than myelogenous. The function of the large number of lymphocytes contained in the marrow but not organized into lymphoid tissue remains an unsettled problem. According to one concept, these are resting primitive cells able to be transformed into blast cells of various types, including erythrocyte precursors, and thus the main function of the small lymphocyte is cellular production.⁶ ¹⁶³ It has also been suggested that the large number of lymphocytes in the tissues and their reaction to adrenal cortical steroids indicate that these cells have a role in protein metabolism.¹ (2)

The role of the lymphocyte in defense depends in large measure on its ability to be transformed into other cells such as macrophages and plasma cells. The lymphocytes possess limited but definite power of phagocytosis. However, transformation of lymphocytes into macrophages at a site of tissue inflammation is accompanied by a marked enhancement in phagocytic ability.¹¹⁰ Macrophages, which arise also from monocytes and histiocytes of the connective tissue, are probably the most powerful phagocytes in the body. It has been suggested that the small lymphocyte is simply a small edition of the macrophage and that those in the circulating blood constitute a reserve of potential macrophages.¹⁴⁵

The lymphocyte is also concerned with antibody formation. Results obtained with the fluorescent antibody technique are consistent with the hypothesis that a small amount of antibody is formed in lymphocytes.³ However, these studies show that the major portion of the antibody formation takes place in plasma cells, and it is possible that the most important

function of the lymphocyte in this connection is in the production of plasma cells. Lymphocytes may be transformed into plasma cells directly or indirectly by becoming histiocytes which in turn develop into plasma cells¹¹⁸. The lymphocyte is assigned to still another role in antibody production in the reutilization hypothesis.⁶ Antibodies are not self replicating and it has been suggested that the transfer of immune reactions by the lymphoid tissue occurs because the nucleic acids of the lymphocytes which provide templates for the proteins concerned in antibody synthesis act as mediators when large fragments of the nucleic acids of small lymphocytes are phagocytized by reticulum cells which later become transformed into new lymphocytes or plasma cells.⁸ It has also been postulated that the initial step in antibody formation is the phagocytosis of the antigen by macrophages which become transformed into plasma cells and basophilic staining lymphocytes both of which possess the capacity for antibody synthesis. The heteroplastic type of antibody formation which includes the concept of reutilization of antibody containing cells or components of these cells apparently predominates in active immunization. A homoplastic type of antibody production the passing on to daughter cells of increments of antibody by proliferation of antibody containing lymphocytes (which may also involve a reutilization process) may be important in certain circumstances such as the proliferation of lymphoid tissue and sensitization by the transfer of antibody containing cells.¹

Views of the lymphocyte that are contrary to those presented above have been expressed by Gowans. Gowans states that the small lymphocyte has long life span perhaps measured in months and its transformation into another cell type either in the bone marrow or in areas of inflammation has not been demonstrated unequivocally. From his own studies he concludes that the large number of small lymphocytes that enter the venous system from the thoracic duct each day are cells that have recirculated from the blood. Failure of others to find any significant DNA production in small lymphocytes in radioautographic studies that utilized tritiated thymidine which is incorporated solely into DNA supports the concept that the small lymphocyte does not possess significant proliferative activity.¹

At the present time it is apparent that many important details of the lymphocyte particularly the small lymphocyte remain uncertain and controversial.

III THE MONOCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1 Monoblast

According to the Committee on the Nomenclature of Blood Cells (1949) the monoblast is any cell of the monocytic series that has a fine chromatin structure.¹¹⁹ Nucleoli are usually visible and such cells found in association with monocytes should be tentatively classed as monoblasts. These cells do not occur in the peripheral blood or bone marrow under normal conditions.

but may be seen in patients with monocytic leukemia. In such circumstances many of the blast cells appear identical with the myeloblast.

2 Promonocyte

Promonocytes are cells that have an indented nucleus and appear younger than the monocytes in that the nuclear chromatin appears more finely divided and contains nucleoli or nucleolar remnants. These cells are thought to be intermediate between the blast cells and adult monocytes. They are not seen in the peripheral blood normally but at times do occur in disseminated tuberculosis and other diseases involving the reticuloendothelial system as well as in monocytic leukemia.

3 Monocyte

The monocyte is usually larger than the other cells of the peripheral blood. In dried smears the diameter measures from 16 to 22 microns. When stained with Wright's preparation the monocyte possesses an abundant pale bluish gray cytoplasm which appears somewhat more opaque than the cytoplasm of the lymphocytes. The cytoplasm contains numerous fine reddish blue granules and vacuoles are often present. The nucleus which is often but not invariably indented has a stringy chromatin structure that appears more condensed where the strands of chromatin meet. When these cells are stained supravitaly with neutral red and Janus green, large numbers of short mitochondria can be seen in the cytoplasm. Neutral red regularly stains a group of cytoplasmic vacuoles near the indentation of the nucleus. This rosette of red vacuoles has been considered by some authors to be a characteristic peculiar to monocytes¹²⁸ but others do not share this opinion.⁶¹ Although monocytes are usually easily distinguished from lymphocytes and myelocytes by their size and the appearance of the nucleus and cytoplasm at times atypical cells are seen that cannot be identified with confidence by any of the staining methods.

ORIGIN OF THE MONOCYTES

In 1924 Maximow stated that of all the cells in the circulating blood the monocytes offer the greatest difficulty to elucidation of their relationship and origin.⁹ Three decades later both their origin and their relationship to the histiocytes (macrophages) remain uncertain. At various times monocytes have been considered to arise from lymphocytes¹⁶ = endothelial cells⁷⁶ histiocytes¹⁹ myeloblasts⁹ and monoblasts.¹²⁸

A relationship between monocytes, histiocytes and lymphocytes is shown by the study of the reaction in inflammation. Maximow⁹ considered it proved that the tissue macrophages (polyblasts, mononuclear phagocytic elements) arise partly through direct transformation of the free histiocytes of the tissue by mobilization and also through changes that occur in monocytes and lymphocytes that migrate from blood vessels into the field of inflammation.

buck and Crowley who recently published an extensive review of the work on this subject studied the cellular reactions occurring in sterile inflammation of the human skin and concluded that the main source of macrophages in the inflammation is the emigrated lymphocytes while the monocytes and tissue cells play a subsidiary role because of their numbers¹⁰⁹

CHEMISTRY OF THE MONOCYTES

Sufficient numbers of monocytes have not been obtained for any quantitative chemical determinations. However histochemical methods have revealed the presence of nucleic acids, glycogen¹⁴, a dehydrogenase, lipids and phospholipids¹⁴. The monocytes do not contain alkaline phosphatase but do contain acid phosphatase, oxidases and peroxidases¹⁴¹. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) are also present^{18, 111}.

FUNCTION OF THE MONOCYTES AND MACROPHAGES

The monocyte is considered to be a young cell that is capable of many biologic activities¹³³. Normally it develops into a macrophage in occurrence which indicates that the monocyte has great potentialities for growth and development of enzyme systems, phagocytosis and digestion. Recent studies that utilized tritium labeled thymidine indicate that monocytes in the circulation are capable of synthesizing deoxyribonucleic acid, an observation that suggests that the cell is destined to divide¹⁷. It is not known whether this activity in a circulating cell indicates merely a capacity to propagate itself or the wider capacity possessed by a totipotential mesenchymal cell of fixed tissue. The monocyte has the ability to synthesize protein and it has been suggested that these cells produce antibodies and other substances that are released by cytoplasmic shedding and cellular disruption^{33, 113}. Others who believe that antibody production occurs almost entirely in the plasma cells and to a small extent in lymphocytes consider that the evidence for antibody production by monocytes is indirect or negative. The monocyte and macrophages possess great capacity for phagocytosis and in certain disease states they respond to specific stimuli by the formation of epithelioid cells and multinucleated giant cells^{7, 8}. The monocyte responds to the presence of the tubercle in a characteristic fashion. Multinucleated cells are formed and are believed to be the epithelioid cells of tuberculosis¹¹⁷.

IV THE THROMBOCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1. Megakaryoblast

Megakaryoblasts which are found only in the bone marrow in special circumstances are larger than the other blast cells. The cytoplasm is pale

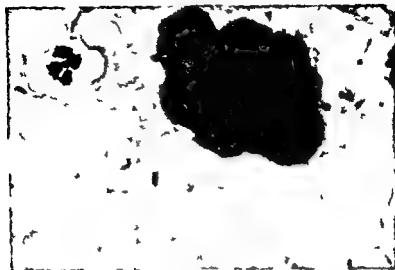


Figure 4 Megakaryocyte

blue. The nucleus, which is round or oval, has a finely divided chromatin structure and a variable number of small nucleoli may be apparent.

2 Promegakaryocyte

Promegakaryocytes are considered to be intermediate between megakaryoblasts and megakaryocytes. The nucleus, which has a shape similar to that of the megakaryocyte, contains nucleoli surrounded by a rather coarse chromatin structure. The cytoplasm contains a number of fine purplish red granules.

3 Megakaryocyte

The megakaryocytes do not occur in the peripheral blood normally but are found in the bone marrow. They are very large cells that often have a diameter that varies from 50 to 100 microns. The nucleus, which is usually multilobed, stains dark blue with Wright's stain and contains no visible nucleoli. The abundant cytoplasm stains light blue and contains numerous purplish red granules. These granules often appear in aggregates.

4 Thrombocyte (Platelet)

Thrombocytes or blood platelets are the smallest stained elements in the peripheral blood. Ordinarily they have a diameter of from 2 to 4 microns, but in some disease states and on smears made from blood collected with

Rebuck and Crowley who recently published an extensive review of the work on this subject studied the cellular reactions occurring in sterile inflammation of the human skin and concluded that the main source of macrophages in the inflammation is the emigrated lymphocytes while the monocytes and tissue cells play a subsidiary role because of their limited numbers¹⁰⁹

CHEMISTRY OF THE MONOCYTES

Sufficient numbers of monocytes have not been obtained for any quantitative chemical determinations. However histochemical methods have revealed the presence of nucleic acids, glycogen¹¹, a dehydrogenase, lipids and phospholipids¹⁴. The monocytes do not contain alkaline phosphatase but do contain acid phosphatase, oxidases and peroxidases¹⁴⁰. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) are also present^{18, 3, 111}.

FUNCTION OF THE MONOCYTES AND MACROPHAGES

The monocyte is considered to be a young cell that is capable of many biologic activities¹³³. Normally it develops into a macrophage in occurrence which indicates that the monocyte has great potentialities for growth development of enzyme systems, phagocytosis and digestion. Recent studies that utilized tritium labeled thymidine indicate that monocytes in the circulation are capable of synthesizing deoxyribonucleic acid, an observation that suggests that the cell is destined to divide¹⁷. It is not known whether this activity in a circulating cell indicates merely a capacity to propagate itself or the wider capacity possessed by a totipotential mesenchymal cell of fixed tissue. The monocyte has the ability to synthesize protein and it has been suggested that these cells produce antibodies and other substances that are released by cytoplasmic shedding and cellular disruption^{33, 113}. Others who believe that antibody production occurs almost entirely in the plasma cells and to a small extent in lymphocytes consider that the evidence for antibody production by monocytes is indirect or negative. The monocytes and macrophages possess great capacity for phagocytosis and in certain disease states they respond to specific stimuli by the formation of epithelioid cells and multinucleated giant cells¹³³. The monocyte responds to the presence of the tubercle in a characteristic fashion. Multinucleated cells are formed and are believed to be the epithelioid cells of tuberculosis¹¹⁷.

IV THE THROMPOCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1 Megakaryoblast

Megakaryoblasts which are found only in the bone marrow in special circumstances are larger than the other blast cells. The cytoplasm is pale



Figure 4 Megakaryocyte

blue The nucleus which is round or oval has a finely divided chromatin structure and a variable number of small nucleoli may be apparent

2 Promegakaryocyte

Promegakaryocytes are considered to be intermediate between megakaryoblasts and megakaryocytes The nucleus which has a shape similar to that of the megakaryocyte contains nucleoli surrounded by a rather coarse chromatin structure The cytoplasm contains a number of fine purplish red granules

3 Megakaryocyte

The megakaryocytes do not occur in the peripheral blood normally but are found in the bone marrow They are very large cells that often have a diameter that varies from 50 to 100 microns The nucleus which is usually multilobed stains dark blue with Wright's stain and contains no visible nucleoli The abundant cytoplasm stains light blue and contains numerous purplish red granules These granules often appear in aggregates

4 Thrombocyte (Platelet)

Thrombocytes or blood platelets are the smallest stained elements in the peripheral blood Ordinarily they have a diameter of from 2 to 4 microns but in some disease states and on smears made from blood collected with

Rebuck and Crowley who recently published an extensive review of the work on this subject studied the cellular reactions occurring in sterile inflammation of the human skin and concluded that the main source of macrophages in the inflammation is the emigrated lymphocytes while the monocytes and tissues cells play a subsidiary role because of their limited numbers ¹⁰⁸

CHEMISTRY OF THE MONOCYTES

Sufficient numbers of monocytes have not been obtained for any quantitative chemical determinations. However histochemical methods have revealed the presence of nucleic acids, glycogen ¹⁴ a dehydrogenase lipids and phospholipids ¹⁵ The monocytes do not contain alkaline phosphatase but do contain acid phosphatase, oxidases and peroxidases ¹⁴⁰ Ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) are also present ^{18 3 111}

FUNCTION OF THE MONOCYTES AND MACROPHAGES

The monocyte is considered to be a young cell that is capable of many biologic activities ¹³³ Normally it develops into a macrophage in occurrence which indicates that the monocyte has great potentialities for growth development of enzyme systems phagocytosis and digestion ² Recent studies that utilized tritium labeled thymidine indicate that monocytes in the circulation are capable of synthesizing deoxyribonucleic acid an observation that suggests that the cell is destined to divide ¹⁷ It is not known whether this activity in a circulating cell indicates merely a capacity to propagate itself or the wider capacity possessed by a totipotent mesenchymal cell of fixed tissue. The monocyte has the ability to synthesize protein and it has been suggested that these cells produce antibodies and other substances that are released by cytoplasmic shedding and cellular disruption ^{33 113} Others who believe that antibody production occurs almost entirely in the plasma cells and to a small extent in lymphocytes consider that the evidence for antibody production by monocytes is indirect or negative. The monocytes and macrophages possess great capacity for phagocytosis and in certain disease states they respond to specific stimuli by the formation of epithelioid cells and multinucleated giant cells ¹³³ The monocyte responds to the presence of the tubercle in a characteristic fashion. Multinucleated cells are formed and are believed to be the epithelioid cells of tuberculosis ¹¹⁷

IV THE THROMBOCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1 Megakaryoblast

Megakaryoblasts which are found only in the bone marrow in special circumstances are larger than the other blast cells. The cytoplasm is pale

(ethanolamine phosphatide) that is essential in the first phase of blood coagulation

V THE PLASMACYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

1 Plasmablast (Myeloma Cell)

Plasmablasts do not occur normally in the peripheral blood or in the bone marrow and are seen only in plasmacytic leukemia or multiple myeloma. The nucleus which is usually eccentric, has a fine chromatin structure and contains one or more large nucleoli. The cytoplasm stains blue and is more opaque than that of the myeloblast or lymphoblast

2 Proplasmacyte

These cells are intermediate between the plasmablasts and the plasma cells. The chromatin of the nucleus appears more coarse than that of the plasmablast but is definitely more immature than that of the plasma cell. Usually a single nucleolus is present but at times more than one are seen.

3 Plasma cell (Plasma Cell, Marschalko's Plasma Cell)

In fixed smears the plasma cells vary considerably in size and diameters range from 10 to 20 microns. The characteristic feature of the cell is the eccentric location of the round or oval nucleus which has extremely coarse chromatin. The chromatin consists of blocks which stain deeply. The arrangement of the chromatin in the nucleus has been compared in appearance to the spokes of a wheel. The cytoplasm which often has an irregular border is abundant, stains dark blue and is characterized by a perinuclear area of lighter staining. The cytoplasm is non homogeneous and small vacuoles are often present. When supravital stains are used numerous small mitochondria can be seen in the cytoplasm of the cell.

Plasmacytes are not usually seen in the peripheral blood but may appear in serum sickness, rubella, infectious mononucleosis, infectious hepatitis, multiple myeloma, plasma cell leukemia, and other conditions. Normally plasmacytes are present in the lymph nodes, the connective tissue and the bone marrow.

ORIGIN OF THE PLASMACYTES

Michels reviewed the rather extensive literature on the plasma cell that appeared prior to 1931 and noted that at least four different cellular origins had been suggested.²² These were (1) histogenous origin from connective tissue cells including tissue lymphocytes, fibroblasts, resting wandering cells (2) origin from emigrated lymphocytes (3) origin from emigrated lympho-

an anticoagulant the platelets appear much larger. In such circumstances they may approach the small lymphocyte in size or may form a strand that stretches across an entire oil immersion field. These elements contain no nuclei and when stained with Wright's stain appear to consist of a pale cytoplasm that contains numerous reddish purple granules.

ORIGIN OF THE THROMBOCYTES

Megakaryocytes are thought to arise from primitive mesenchymal cells by way of the hemocytoblast that is the precursor of the megakaryoblast.¹³

Wright's hypothesis of the origin of the blood platelets is fragmented portions of the cytoplasm of the megakaryocytes of the bone marrow is generally accepted.¹⁰¹ More recent studies that utilized antisera⁹ and the electron microscope^{4, 64} support the same conclusion.

CHEMISTRY OF THE THROMBOCYTES

The chemistry of the megakaryocytes and the platelets has been investigated extensively. The cells are metabolically active and have a considerable turnover of phosphorus.¹¹ Peptidases, nucleotidase, acid phosphatase and alkaline phosphatase occur in substantial amounts. The granulations of both thrombocytes and megakaryocytes are polysaccharides. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) is present only in the megakaryocytic nucleus.^{111, 113} Investigation of the lipid content of platelets has revealed that the largest percentage of the total lipid fraction consists of phospholipid, 68 per cent of which is cephalin.⁴⁵ It is interesting that the platelets contain the same amount of lipid by weight as the leukocytes. Dehydrogenase activity, which ordinarily disappears with the destruction of the integrity of the cell structure, is present in the platelet.⁷ Platelets contain pyrophosphatase which is liberated before evidence of platelet damage becomes apparent.¹² Cytoplasmic nucleotides are present in the megakaryocytes and are broken down as the cell grows older. The finding of their degradation products in the platelets is interpreted as evidence that the older cells are responsible for the formation of platelets.⁹³

FUNCTION OF THE THROMBOCYTES

The chief function of the platelet is in hemostasis. However, there is increasing evidence that the platelet, like other formed elements in the blood, may serve as part of a transport system that carries enzymes or other chemicals from one part of the body to another.

In hemostasis the platelet serves in both a mechanical and a chemical role. It acts mechanically to seal defects in the vascular endothelium and also to promote clot retraction by its influence on the strands of fibrin. Platelets contain serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine) and may act chemically to promote vasoconstriction of the small vessels. They exert a more important influence on blood coagulation by releasing a substance (probably

cytes or preexisting tissue lymphocytes (4) origin from immature blood cells such as myeloblasts or erythroblasts, through aberration Sundberg has recently reviewed the subject of the origin and function of the plasma cells¹⁻⁹ and pointed out that while studies on the production of antibodies emphasize a close relationship between the plasma cells and the lymphocytes the concept of multiple origins of plasma cells from lymphocytes, perivascular cells, mesothelial cells, macrophages and fibroblasts, which was proposed by Downey in 1911 cannot be excluded with certainty.⁴⁾

CHEMISTRY OF THE PLASMACYTES

Although both ribonucleic acid and deoxyribonucleic acid have been identified in plasma cells the small number of these cells that are available has limited the study of their chemical composition.

FUNCTION OF THE PLASMACYTES

Since the discovery of antibodies by von Behring in 1890 a great body of data has been accumulated as the result of attempts to find the site of their production. The lively discussions which have resulted¹⁷ may be due in part to the confusion arising from the morphologic similarities of the young lymphocyte and plasma cell and to the variations in experimental methods used by various investigators. Recently the evidence that the plasma cell is the major site of antibody production has become almost indisputable.^{4-8, 10} It has been demonstrated that a marked increase in plasma cells occurs in the spleens of animals receiving repeated injections of antigen tissue explants from the spleens of these animals continue to produce antibody in vitro. These tissue explants contain plasma cells. By means of the fluorescein labeled antibody technique it has been shown that the antibody develops in response to the second injection of antigen. The production of antibody in the plasma cells is associated with a marked increase in the number of plasma cells.

The plasma cell is only rarely phagocytic¹⁹ and the various inclusion bodies that sometimes occur in the cytoplasm are probably formed intracellularly.

VI THE ERYTHROCYTIC SERIES

MORPHOLOGY

The terminology that has been used in discussions of the nucleated cells of the erythrocytic series has been the source of considerable confusion. Because different definitions have been given to the same term by different authors the Committee for Clarification of the Nomenclature of Cells and Diseases of the Blood and Blood Forming Organs has recommended an entirely new terminology for the nucleated cells of the erythrocytic series.²³ The terms recommended—rubriblast, prorubricyte, rubricyte, and metarubricyte—have not been used widely. The Committee felt that the recommended

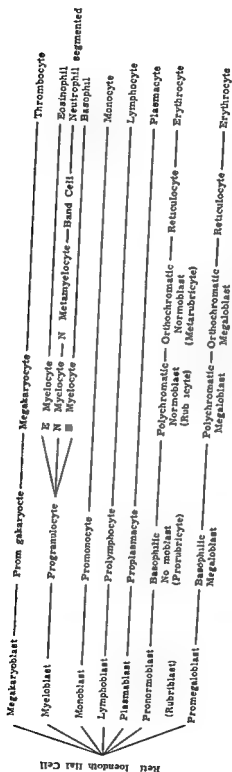
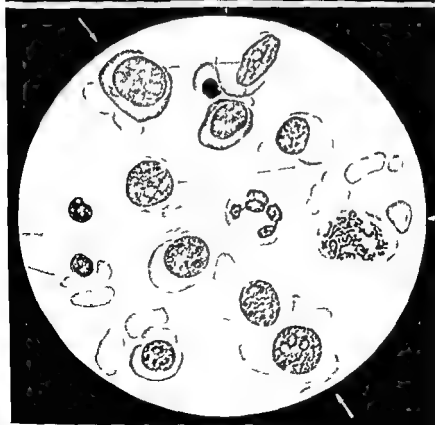
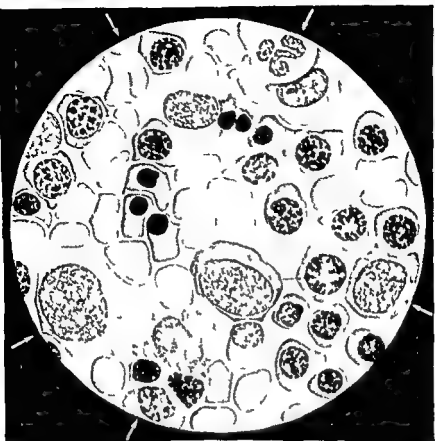


Table 1. Origin and Relationship of Blood Cells

(Adapted from Diggs, Sturm and Bell
The Morphology of Human Blood Cells
W. B. Saunders and Co. Philadelphia 1936)



names indicated stages of differentiation in development of the adult erythrocyte. They recommended that the qualifying phrase "pernicious anemia type" be used to indicate the cells that showed the morphological characteristics seen in patients with untreated pernicious anemia.

Usually the type of erythropoiesis is described as being either "normoblastic" or "megaloblastic." The term "megaloblast" has been used with different meanings in the literature. Ehrlich introduced the term to indicate the large nucleated precursor of the erythrocytes that is characterized by its much weaker affinity for nuclear stains.⁴² He thought that the presence of this cell indicated an abnormal type of erythropoiesis that was seen in adults almost exclusively in pernicious anemia, and that it represented an embryonic type of cell. He considered it a line of cell maturation different from the normoblastic type which was seen in nearly all other types of anemia. The normoblastic type of maturation was characterized by erythrocyte precursors that contained a nucleus that gave an intense color with nuclear stains. Doan, Cunningham, and Sabin used the term "megaloblast" to indicate the first generation of cells in the red blood cell series that could be distinguished from endothelial cells in either the embryonic or adult types of erythropoiesis.³⁴ Thus, according to one usage of the term, "megaloblast" indicates an abnormal type of erythropoiesis that occurs only in special disease states when seen in postnatal human beings; according to the other usage the term indicates a very young erythrocyte precursor that may occur whenever erythropoiesis is markedly increased but otherwise normal. The term "erythroblast" has been used by some authors to refer to all forms of nucleated red corpuscles, but Doan, Cunningham, and Sabin have used this term to indicate an intermediate stage in the development of the erythrocyte.³⁴ The term "megaloblast" is used in this text as it has been used by Ehrlich, Downey, Jones, and Wintrobe.^{41, 43, 1}

Erythropoiesis is considered as being normal in type when the normoblastic series is present and abnormal when the megaloblastic series is present. Similar stages in the development of the nucleated red cells can be recognized in both series. In normoblastic maturation the cells of the different stages are termed pronormoblast, basophilic normoblast, polychromatic normoblast, and orthochromatic normoblast. In the megaloblastic type of maturation the corresponding cells are termed promegaloblast, basophilic megaloblast, polychromatic megaloblast, and orthochromatic megaloblast.

1. Pronormoblast (Rubriblast)

The pronormoblast is the youngest recognizable precursor of the erythrocyte. Its diameter varies from 12 to 19 microns. The nucleus, which is round

Figure 5 (opposite page — upper). Normoblastic hyperplasia in hemolytic anemia.

Figure 6 (opposite page — lower). Megaloblastic hyperplasia in pernicious anemia. (Both figures from Heilmeyer I and Begemann H. Atlas der klinischen Hamatologie und Cytologie. Springer 1955.)

present. Both of these staining reactions are signs of immaturity and reflect the persistence of ribose nucleoprotein in the cells. Punctate basophilia (stippling) is increased after exposure to lead and other metals.

In disease states the erythrocytes are often abnormal. The cells may show

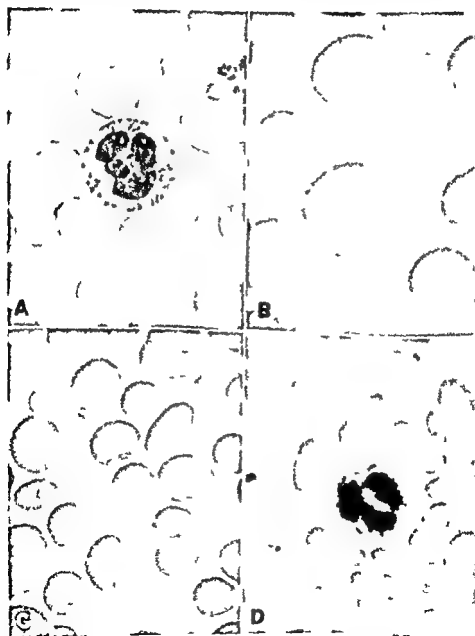


Figure 1. Erythrocyte in peripheral blood. Wright's stain. A Normal erythrocytes B Macrocytes C Hypochromic microcytes D Ovalocytes

certain conditions catalase functions as a peroxidase and this may be the role it plays in the red blood cells⁶⁷

Acetylcholinesterase has been the subject of widespread interest recently. That which is present in the erythrocyte is firmly fixed to the stroma¹⁰ and may influence the permeability of the cell to potassium and sodium ions⁶⁰. It may serve also in the protection of the body against excessive acetylcholine production. The acetylcholinesterase content of reticulocytes and young red cells is increased and measurement of the enzyme in the erythrocytes can serve as an index of marrow activity.^{109, 110, 1, 2, 3} Markedly reduced activity of erythrocyte acetylcholinesterase has been demonstrated in patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

Carbonic anhydrase catalyzes the formation and dissociation of carbonic acid. It makes possible the rapid removal of carbon dioxide from the tissues and its release from the lungs.¹¹⁵ The observation that this enzyme was partially inhibited by the sulfonamides led to the development of the more potent carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.

A deficiency of red cell glutathione has been found in persons sensitive to primaquine.¹² Administration of primaquine results in destruction of the older red blood cells perhaps as the result of oxidative damage to the hemoglobin or the stroma which is evidenced by the appearance of Heinz bodies. The appearance of Heinz bodies will also result from the exposure of sensitive cells to acetylphenylhydrazine *in vitro*. A deficiency of glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase has also been demonstrated in primaquine sensitive cells. It has not been demonstrated that either deficiency is the primary defect in these cells but it has been postulated that glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency results in impaired triphosphopyridine nucleotide reduction which in turn results in a deficiency of reduced glutathione. Patients sensitive to primaquine have been demonstrated to be sensitive to acetanilid, furadantin, sulfanilamide, naphthalene and other substances. This defect is transmitted by a gene which is sex linked and has variable expressivity. It occurs in approximately 10 per cent of Negroes and 1 per cent of Caucasians. Fava bean sensitive subjects have also been demonstrated to have deficiencies of the same factors but other factors may be operative as well.

Two enzymes have recently been isolated from mammalian erythrocytes which are believed to be concerned with maintenance of hemoglobin in a functional state. Methemoglobin reductase⁶⁴ is a hemoprotein with a molecular weight of approximately 185,000. It has been postulated that together with reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide and possibly reduced diphosphopyridine nucleotide, methemoglobin reductase maintains the hemoglobin of the intact red blood cell in the reduced form. Glutathione peroxidase⁹⁰ is a heat labile and non dialyzable enzyme isolated recently from mammalian erythrocyte hemolysates which catalyzes the oxidation of reduced glutathione by hydrogen peroxide. It has been suggested that this enzyme functions with glutathione to protect hemoglobin from oxidative damage in the intact

The overall aerobic reaction produces 35 moles of adenosine triphosphate and is nineteen times as efficient as the anaerobic pathway which results in but 2 moles of adenosine triphosphate.

It has been shown that the erythrocytes consume minute quantities of oxygen. If this represents true respiratory activity it could contribute to the energy production of the cell.^{22, 23} This important point has not been settled but the aerobic mechanism appears unlikely because the mature red blood cell contains no mitochondria, which are thought to be essential to the aerobic pathway of glucose metabolism.^{2, 12} The available evidence indicates that anaerobic glycolysis but not the tricarboxylic acid cycle is important for the metabolism of glucose by the erythrocyte. The enzymes necessary for the operation of the phosphogluconate oxidative pathway are present in the red blood cell. As a result of the operation of this shunt reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide is made available in the red blood cell. Ordinarily glucose is broken down through a series of reactions to lactic acid.⁶ The rate of glycolysis by the mature erythrocyte is from 0.3 to 0.4 mg. glucose/cc. of packed cells/hr. The erythrocyte in contrast to other cells utilizing anaerobic glycolysis contains an unusually large amount of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate and no glycogen. Some consider that 2,3-diphosphoglycerate serves as a carbohydrate storage compound in place of glycogen. It is utilized when the supply of glucose to the cell is exhausted. This substance is also an important catalyst in glycolysis.¹³

During glycolysis for every mole of glucose degraded to lactic acid there is a net gain of two moles of ATP. Hydrolysis of a mole of ATP to one mole of ADP and one mole of inorganic phosphate results in the release of the equivalent of 7000 calories. The utilization of this energy in the red blood cell is poorly understood. It may be concerned with the maintenance of the cellular membrane and with transport of materials across the membrane. The mechanism by which ions and molecules enter and leave the erythrocyte has not been clearly defined in any instance but there is general agreement that an active process is involved.⁶ Insulin has not been demonstrated to play a role in the transport of glucose across the red blood cell membrane.

With the exception of the enzymes that are involved in glycolysis, catalase has perhaps been more extensively studied than the other erythrocyte enzymes. It is similar to hemoglobin in its structure and is composed of a protein moiety and four iron-containing heme groups. All of the heme compounds—catalase, hemoglobin, myoglobin, the cytochromes and peroxidase—have in common the porphyrin ring structure with complexed iron atoms but they contain different protein fractions. All are involved in essential metabolic activities. The synthesis of catalase remains at normal levels even when iron deficiency is severe enough to produce anemia. The catalase content of the erythrocytes has not yet been shown to vary sufficiently in diseases to be diagnostic of any particular disorder.¹¹ Catalase is a potent catalyst for the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide. The function usually ascribed to catalase is that of protecting hemoglobin against decomposition by hydrogen peroxide.^{6, 7, 11} However, it has been pointed out that under

certain conditions catalase functions as a peroxidase and this may be the role it plays in the red blood cells.⁷⁷

Acetylcholinesterase has been the subject of widespread interest recently. That which is present in the erythrocyte is firmly fixed to the stroma¹⁰ and may influence the permeability of the cell to potassium and sodium ions.⁸⁰ It may serve also in the protection of the body against excessive acetylcholine production. The acetylcholinesterase content of reticulocytes and young red cells is increased and measurement of the enzyme in the erythrocytes can serve as an index of marrow activity.^{108, 119, 1-3} Markedly reduced activity of erythrocyte acetylcholinesterase has been demonstrated in patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

Carbonic anhydrase catalyzes the formation and dissociation of carbonic acid. It makes possible the rapid removal of carbon dioxide from the tissues and its release from the lungs.¹¹² The observation that this enzyme was partially inhibited by the sulfonamides led to the development of the more potent carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.

A deficiency of red cell glutathione has been found in persons sensitive to primaquine.¹³ Administration of primaquine results in destruction of the older red blood cells perhaps as the result of oxidative damage to the hemoglobin or the stroma which is evidenced by the appearance of Heinz bodies. The appearance of Heinz bodies will also result from the exposure of sensitive cells to acetylphenylhydrazine *in vitro*. A deficiency of glucose 6 phosphate dehydrogenase has also been demonstrated in primaquine sensitive cells. It has not been demonstrated that either deficiency is the primary defect in these cells but it has been postulated that glucose 6 phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency results in impaired triphosphopyridine nucleotide reduction which in turn results in a deficiency of reduced glutathione. Patients sensitive to primaquine have been demonstrated to be sensitive to acetanilid, furadantin, sulfanilamide, naphthalene and other substances. This defect is transmitted by a gene which is sex linked and has variable expressivity. It occurs in approximately 10 per cent of Negroes and 1 per cent of Caucasians. Fava bean sensitive subjects have also been demonstrated to have deficiencies of the same factors but other factors may be operative as well.

Two enzymes have recently been isolated from mammalian erythrocytes which are believed to be concerned with maintenance of hemoglobin in a functional state. Methemoglobin reductase⁴⁴ is a hemoprotein with a molecular weight of approximately 185,000. It has been postulated that together with reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide and possibly reduced diphosphopyridine nucleotide, methemoglobin reductase maintains the hemoglobin of the intact red blood cell in the reduced form. Glutathione peroxidase⁹⁰ is a heat labile and non dialyzable enzyme isolated recently from mammalian erythrocyte hemolysates which catalyzes the oxidation of reduced glutathione by hydrogen peroxide. It has been suggested that this enzyme functions with glutathione to protect hemoglobin from oxidative damage in the intact

erythrocyte Complete understanding of the role of these enzymes in erythrocyte metabolism must await further study

Erythrocyte and a number of enzymes including phosphatases^{10 13} urease¹⁴ peptidases¹⁵ arginase¹⁶ glyoxalase¹⁷ lactic dehydrogenase¹⁸¹⁹ and glutamic oxalacetic transaminase²⁰ have also been identified in the erythrocyte Whether they play a role in the metabolic life of the mature erythrocyte or are merely remnants of the metabolic functions of the normoblast is unknown It has also been suggested that the red blood cell may serve to transport these substances from one area of the body to another

The Stroma

The stroma is the insoluble portion of the erythrocyte which remains after the cell has been hemolyzed and washed free of hemoglobin The stroma is frequently referred to as a "ghost" It is composed of 40 to 60 per cent protein and 10 to 12 per cent lipids The lipid fraction consists of 60 per cent phospholipids 30 per cent free cholesterol and 10 per cent cholesterol esters and neutral fats⁴⁸ The free cholesterol is in dynamic equilibrium with the cholesterol of the plasma The blood group substances A and B and the Rh antigen are located in the stroma

FUNCTION OF THE ERYTHROCYTES

The function of the erythrocyte is to carry oxygen from the lungs to the cells of the body and to transport carbon dioxide to the lungs The hemoglobin molecule in the mature erythrocyte is in a stable state and there is no degradation or resynthesis during the life span of the cell However hemoglobin does change constantly from the reduced to the oxidized state When the iron is in the reduced form hemoglobin can bind and transport oxygen Ferric or oxidized hemoglobin which is known as methemoglobin is not able to function as part of an oxygen transport system As the reduced form is auto-oxidized to the ferric form special reactions are necessary to reduce methemoglobin as rapidly as it is formed These reactions function so efficiently that not more than 1 per cent of the hemoglobin in the erythrocyte is in the oxidized state It is probable that reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide which arises from the phosphogluconate oxidative pathway and the enzyme methemoglobin reductase are mainly responsible for the reduction of methemoglobin^{49 50 51 52}

Patients with congenital methemoglobinemia have a defect in the methemoglobin reductase mechanism leading to a concentration of methemoglobin much higher than normal and to secondary polycythemia⁵³ These patients have been successfully treated with methylene blue an auto-oxidizable dye which functions as an electron carrier This compound greatly accelerates glucose oxidation via the phosphogluconate oxidative pathway and the reduction of methemoglobin in the mature erythrocyte⁵⁴

An elevated level of methemoglobin is also found following the introduc

tion into the body of compounds which preferentially oxidize hemoglobin and exceed the capacity of the normal red blood cell reducing systems. Among the most important offenders are nitrites, sulfonamides, and aniline derivatives⁴³. This secondary methemoglobinemia is usually mild but serious cell damage and hemolysis may occur. Treatment with methylene blue is usually successful.

Sulfhemoglobin is another compound which is not capable of carrying oxygen. Its formation represents an irreversible change in hemoglobin and it persists until the destruction of the red blood cell. It is unaffected by methylene blue or ascorbic acid. Some source of sulfur such as a sulfur-containing drug or chronic constipation plus the ingestion of a drug which will oxidize hemoglobin is thought necessary for its production. The syndrome of enterogenous cyanosis is probably related to the formation of either methemoglobin or sulfhemoglobin secondary to disturbed bowel function.⁴⁴

REFERENCES

- 1 Ackerman G A. Microscopic and histochemical studies of the Auer bodies in leukemic cells. *Blood* 5:847 1950.
- 1a Adams E, McFadden M and Smith E L. Leptidases of erythrocytes (1) Distribution in man and other species. *J Biol Chem* 193:683 1952.
- 2 Agner K. Verdoperoxidase. *Acta physiologica Scandinavica* Suppl 8:2 1941.
- 3 Agner K. Detoxicating effect of verdoperoxidase on toxins. *Nature* 159:271 1947.
- 4 Albrecht M. Studies on the evolution of thrombocytes: experiences with megakaryocytes in vitro. *Internat Soc Hem Abstract* #437 p 346 1956.
- 5 Aschoff L and Kiyono K. Zur Frage der grossen Mononuklearen Golia haemat (1 Teil) 15:383 1913.
- 6a Auditore J V and Hartmann H C. Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria. II. Erythrocyte acetylcholinesterase defect. *Am J Med* 27:401 1959.
- 7 Bartlett G R and Marlow A A. Enzyme systems in the red blood cell. *Bull Scripps Metabolic Clinic* 2 No 5 1951.
- 8 Beck W S and Valentine W N. The carbohydrate metabolism of leukocytes. A review. *Cancer Research* 13:309 1953.
- 9 Beck W S and Valentine W N. Biochemical studies on leukocytes. II. Phosphatase activity in chronic lymphatic leukemia, acute leukemia and miscellaneous hematologic conditions. *J Lab Clin Med* 38:245 1951.
- 10 Bedson S P and Johnston M E. Further observations on platelet genes. *J Pathol & Bact* 29:101 1945.
- 11 Belrendt H. Phosphatase activity of human erythrocytes. *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 54:268 1943.
- 12 Berry L J, Leyendecker R M and Spies T D. Comparative studies on phagocytosis in normal and anemic blood. *Blood* (Special Issue No 1) 98 1947.
- 13 Berry L J, Starr H W III and Hall E C. The effect of surface active agents on phagocytosis. *J Bact* 57:603 1949.
- 14 Beutler E, Dem R J, Flanagan C L and Alving A S. Hemolytic effect of primaquine. VII. Biochemical studies of drug sensitive erythrocytes. *J Lab Clin Med* 45:286 1955.
- 15 Bloom L M and Wislocki C B. The localization of lipid in human blood and bone marrow cells. *Blood* 5:79 1950.
- 16 Bloom W. In Downey's *Handbook of Hematology* Vol 1 p 435 Paul H Hoeber Inc New York 1938.
- 17 Bloom W and Bartelm z G W. Hematopoiesis in young human embryos. *Am J Anat* 67:21 1940.

- 17 Bond V P Cronkite E P Fliedner T M and Schork P Deoxyribonucleic acid synthesizing cells in peripheral blood of normal human beings *Science* 128 202 1958
- 17a Bond V P et al Proliferative potentials of bone marrow and blood cells studied by in vitro uptake of H^3 thymidine *Acta haemat* 21 1 1959
- 18 Brachet J La detection histochemique des acides pentose nucleiques *Compt Rend Soc Biol* 133 88 1940
- 19 Butterworth C E Jr Frommeyer W B and Riser W H Jr Erythrophagocytosis in a case of plasma cell leukemia *Blood* 8 519 1953
- 20 Code C F The histamine like activity of white blood cell *J Physiol* 90 485 1937
- 21 Code C F The source in blood of the histamine like constituent *J Physiol* 90 349 1937
- 22 Coman D R Chemotaxis of monocytes contrasted with that of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and lymphocytes *Arch Path* 30 896 1940
- 23 Condensation of the First Two Reports of the Committee for Clarification of the Nomenclature of Cells and Diseases of the Blood and Blood Forming Organs *Blood* 4 69 1949
- 24 Coons A H and Kaplan M H Localization of antigen in tissue cells *J Exper Med* 91 1 1950
- 25 Coons A H Leclue E H and Connolly J M Leukocytes involved in antibody formation *Ann N Y Acad Sc* 59 951 1955
- 26 Cottingham E and Mills C A Tuning of phagocytic changes in malnutrition *J Lab Clin Med* 30 493 1945
- 27 Craddock C G Jr Adams W S Perry S Skoog W A and Lawrence J S Studies of leukopenias. The technique of leukopheresis and the response of myeloid tissue in normal and irradiated dogs *J Lab Clin Med* 45 881 1955
- 28 Craddock C G Jr Perry S and Lawrence J L The dynamics of leukopoiesis and leukocytosis as studied by leukopheresis and isotopic techniques *J Clin Invest* 35 285 1956
- 29 Cunningham R S Sabin F R and Dean C A The development of leukocytes lymphocytes and monocytes from a specific stem cell in adult tissues *Contrib Embryol Carnegie Inst* 16 227 1925
- 30 Datta N Thorell B and Akerman I Cytoplasmic nucleotides in the megakaryocytes *Acta haemat* 24 176 1955
- 31 Datta N and Zajack J Presence of pyrophosphate in platelets *Acta haemat* 12 81 1954
- 32 Demerec M Ed *Nucleic Acids and Nucleoproteins* Cold Spr Harb Symp Quant Biol 12 1 1947
- 33 Denstedt O The enzymology of the erythrocyte In Tullis J L Ed *Blood Cells and Plasma Proteins* Academic Press New York 1953
- 34 Dorn C A Cunningham R S and Sabin F R Experimental studies on the origin and maturation of avian and mammalian red blood cells *Contrib Embryol Carnegie Inst* 16 163 1928
- 35 Dorn C A Zerfas I C Warren S and Ames O A study of the mechanism of nutrient induced leukopenia and leukocytic states with special reference to the relative roles of liver spleen and bone marrow *J Exper Med* 47 403 1928
- 36 Dougherty F I Effect of hormones on lymphatic tissue *Physiol Rev* 32 373 1952
- 37 Dougherty F F and Kemper L E Influence of stress stimuli on lymphatic tissue of adrenal trimmed mice *Endocrinology* 49 691 1951
- 38 Dougherty T I and Whit A Influence of adrenal cortical secretion on blood element *Science* 74 367 1943
- 39 Downey H The structure and significance of the myeloblast under normal and pathologic conditions *Arch Int Med* 33 301 1921
- 40 Downey H Origin of monocytosis in monocytic leukemia and leukemic reticulosis *Leukemia Anat Rec* 79 16 1931
- 41 Downey H *Handbook of Hematology* Paul B Hoeber New York 1938
- 42 Dreyfus C Some milestones in the history of hematology *Critic and Stratton* New York 1957

- 42a Eder H A Finch C and McKee R W Congenital methemoglobinemia A clinical and biochemical study of a case J Clin Invest 23 265 1949
- 43 Ehrlich I and Lazarus A Anemia 2nd Ed Reiman Ltd London 1910
- 44 Eichen H N Mayer M V Moore D H Tarr R and Stoerk H C Failure of adrenal cortical activity to influence circulating antibodies and gamma globulin Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 65 301 1947
- 45 Erickson H N Williams H H Arvin I and Lee P The lipid distribution of human platelets in health and disease J Clin Invest 18 81 1939
- 46 Erickson H N et al The lipid distribution of posthemolytic residue or stroma of erythrocytes J Biol Chem 122 515 1938
- 47 Fagraeus A Antibody production in relation to the development of plasma cells Acta med scandinav Suppl 204 1948
- 48 Fenn W O The phagocytosis of solid particles III Carbon and quartz J Gen Physiol 3 575 1920 21
- 49 Fenn W O The temperature coefficient of phagocytosis J Gen Physiol 4 331 1921 22
- 49a Finch C A Methemoglobinemia and sulfhemoglobinemia New England J Med 239 470 1948
- 50 Finch C A Eder H A and McKee R W Methemoglobin reversion in the erythrocyte J Clin Invest 26 1181 1947
- 51 Fleisher G A Leptodiscs in human leukocytes Ann NY Acad Sc 59 1012 1955
- 52 Follette J H Valentine W N Hardin E B and Lawrence J S Studies on the glucuronic acid content of human leukocytes in health and in disease J Lab Clin Med 43 134 1954
- 53 Follette J H Valentine W N and Lawrence J S The beta glucuronidase content of human leukocytes in health and in disease J Lab Clin Med 40 825 1952
- 54 Gibson Q H The reduction of methaemoglobin in red blood cells and studies on the cause of idiopathic methaemoglobinemia Biochem J 42 13 1948
- 55 Gilnour J R Normal haemopoiesis in the intra uterine and neonatal life J Path Bact 69 25 1911
- 56 Gordon A S Some aspects of hormonal influences upon the leukocytes Ann NY Acad Sc 59 907 1955
- 57 Gordon A S and Katsh G The relation of the adrenal cortex to the structure and phagocytic activity of the macrophagic system Ann NY Acad Sc 52 1 1949
- 58 Gowans J L Life history of lymphocytes Brit Med Bull 15 50 1959
- 58a Graham H T Lowry O H Wheelwright P Lenz M A and Parish H H Jr Distribution of histamine among leukocytes and platelets Blood 10 467 1955
- 59 Green H and Martin S P The nonprotein soluble sulphhydryl content of human leukocytes and erythrocytes in infection and leukemia J Lab Clin Med 45 119 1955
- 60 Greig M E and Holland W C Studies on the permeability of erythrocytes I The relationship between cholinesterase activity and permeability of dog erythrocytes Arch Biochem 23 370 1949
- 61 Hall H E A critical review of the hematological literature dealing with the results of the upravital staining method Folia haemat 43 206 1930
- 62 Hamilton L D Control and functions of the lymphocyte Ann NY Acad Sc 73 39 1958
- 63 Hardin E Valentine W N Follette J H and Lawrence J S Studies on the sulphhydryl content of human leukocytes and erythrocytes Am J Med Sc 228 73 1954
- 64 Hirak K The function of the megakaryocyte Observations both in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura and normal adults Internat Soc Hematol Abstr 436 p 345 1956
- 64a Hirschens F M Caffrey R W Basford R C and Caborn B W Erythrocyte metabolism II Isolation and properties of methemoglobin reductase J Biol Chem 227 261 1957

- 64b Huennekens F M Liu L Myers H A P and Gabrio M W Erythrocyte metabolism III Oxidation of glucose *J Biol Chem* 227 253 1957
- 65 Jordan H E The significance of the lymphoid nodule *Am J Anat* 57 1 1935
- 66 Jordan H E and Johnson E P Erythrocyte production in the bone marrow of the pigeon *Am J Anat* 56 71 1935
- 67 Kass E H The occurrence of normal serum gamma globulin in human lymphocytes *Science* 101 337 1945
- 68 Keilin D and Hartree E F Properties of catalase catalysis of coupled oxidation of alcohols *Biochem J* 39 293 1945
- 69 Kempner W The nature of leukemic blood cells as determined by their metabolism *J Clin Invest* 18 291 1939
- 70 Keuning F J and van der Sluike L B The role of immature plasma cells lymphoblasts and lymphocytes in the formation of antibodies as established in tissue culture experiments *J Lab Clin Med* 36 167 1950
- 71 Kline D L and Clifton E E Life span of leukocytes in man *J Appl Physiol* 5 79 1952
- 72 Koppel J L and Olwin J H Dehydrogenase activities of human platelets *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 86 641 1954
- 73 Kuna A and Chambers R Effect of saccharides on leukocyte movement *J Clin Invest* 32 436 1953
- 74 Levene P A and Meyer C M On the action of leukocytes on glucose *J Biol Chem* 12 265 1912
- 75 Levene P A and Meyer C M On the action of leukocytes on some hexoses and pentoses *J Biol Chem* 14 149 1913
- 76 Mallory F B A histological study of typhoid fever *J Exper Med* 3 611 1898
- 76a Maloney M A and Patt H M Neutrophil life cycle with tritiated thymidine *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 98 801 1958
- 77 Mancini R E Histochemical study of glycogen in tissues *Anat Rec* 101 149 1948
- 78 Martin S P McInnes G R and Green R The metabolism of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 998 1955
- 79 Maximow A Relation of the blood cells to connective tissue and endothelium *Physiol Rev* 4 533 1924
- 80 Mazia D and Prescott D M Nuclear function and mitosis *Science* 120 120 1954
- 81 McCutcheon M Chemotaxis and locomotion of leukocytes *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 941 1955
- 82 McInnes G R Martin S P Rundles R W and Green R Respiratory and glycolytic activities of human leukocytes in vitro *J Appl Physiol* 5 335 1952 53
- 83 Menkin V Studies on inflammation XVI On the formation of chemotactic substance by enzymatic action *J Exper Med* 67 153 1938
- 84 Menkin V Studies on inflammation XIV Isolation of the factor concerned with increased capillary permeability in injury *J Exper Med* 67 129 1938
- 85 Menkin V Studies on inflammation XV Concerning the mechanism of cell migration *J Exper Med* 67 145 1938
- 86 Menkin V The determination of the level of leukocytes in the blood stream with inflammation A thermostable component concerned with the mechanism of leukocytosis *Bk of* 4 1323 1949
- 87 Menkin V Pyrexin the pyrogenic factor of inflammatory exudates and its relation to some bacterial pyrogens *J Lab Clin Med* 46 423 1955
- 88 Menkin V Factor concerned in the mobilization of leukocytes in inflammation *Ann NY Acad Sc* 53 956 1955
- 89 Michels N A The plasma cell *Arch Path* 11 775 1931
- 90 Michels N A Erythropoiesis A critical review of the literature *Folia haemat* 45 75 1931
- 90a Mill G C Hemoglobin metabolism I Glutathione peroxidase an erythrocyte enzyme which protects hemoglobin from oxidative breakdown *J Biol Chem* 229 189 1957
- 91 Miner R W Ed Leukocyte functions *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 667 1969 19 5

- 92 Montagna W and Noback C R Localization of lipids and other chemical substances in the mast cell of man and laboratory animals *Anat Rec* 100 535 1948
- 93 Morris S and Boggs T R Leukocytic enzymes in leukemia in neutral media *Arch Int Med* 88 806 1911
- 94 Mudd S McCutcheon M and Lucke B Phagocytosis *Physiol Rev* 14 210 1934
- 95 Naegeli O *Blutkrankheiten und Blutdiagnostik* Verlag von Veit and Comp Leipzig 1908 p 117
- 96 Nettleship A Leucocytosis associated with acute inflammation *Am J Clin Path* 8 391 1938
- 97 Nungester W J and Ames A M Effect of selected chemical substances on phagocytosis *J Infect Dis* 90 51 1952
- 98 Nungester W J Ames A M and Lanning W Electrophoresis studies of leukocytes and bacteria in relation to the mechanisms of phagocytosis *J Infect Dis* 90 61 1952
- 99 Osgood H E Number and distribution of human hemic cells *Blood* 8 1141 1954
- 100 Ottesen J On the age of human white cells in peripheral blood *Acta physiol scandinav* 32 75 1954
- 101 Page A R and Good R A Studies on cyclic neutropenia *Am J Dis Child* 194 623 1957
- 102 Paley S On the localization of the specific cholinesterase in human blood *Arch Biochem* 12 153 1947
- 103 Perry S Weinstein I M Craddock C C Jr and Lawrence J S The combined use of typhoid vaccine and P 32 labelling to assess myelopoiesis *Blood* 12 549 1957
- 104 Piney A The oxidase reaction in acute myeloid leukemia *J Path & Bact* 28 97 1925
- 105 Ponder E The influences of surface charge and of cytoplasmic viscosity on the phagocytosis of a particle *J Gen Physiol* 11 757 1928
- 106 Ponder E Hemolysis and Related Phenomena Grune and Stratton New York 1948
- 107 Price Jones C Red cell diameter in one hundred healthy persons and in pernicious anemia The effect of liver treatment *J Path & Bact* 37 479 1929
- 108 Pritchard J Erythrocyte age and cholinesterase activity *Am J Physiol* 159 72 1960
- 109 Rebuck J W and Crowley J H A method of studying leukocyte functions in vivo *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 757 1953
- 110 Rebuck J W Monto H W Monaghan E A and Ruddle J W Potentialities of the lymphocyte with an additional reference to its dysfunction in Hodgkin's disease *Ann NY Acad Sc* 73 8 1958
- 111 Reingold J J and Wislocki G B Histochemical methods applied to hematology *Blood* 3 641 1948
- 112 Richardson M Huddleson I T Trostorf M and Bethea R Catalase activity of erythrocytes from humans and animals in various pathological states *Arch Biochem* 47 338 1953
- 113 Richter K M Studies on leukocytic secretory activity *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 863 1955
- 114 Roberts H R and Kracke R R Agranulocytosis—report of a case *J Am M A* 95 780 1930
- 115 Roughton F J W Recent work on carbon dioxide transport by the blood *Physiol Rev* 15 241 1935
- 116 Sabin F R On the origin of the cells of the blood *Physiol Rev* 2 38 1922
- 117 Sabin F R Cellular reactions to fractions isolated from tubercle bacilli *Physiol Rev* 12 141 1932
- 118 Sabin F R Duan C A and Cunningham R S Discrimination of two types of phagocytic cell in connective tissue by the survival technique *Contrib Embryol Carnegie Inst* 16 125 1925
- 119 Sabine J C The cholinesterase of erythrocytes in anemias *Blood* 6 141 1951
- 120 Sals H Erythrophagocytosis in bone marrow culture with relation to antagonism of pteroylglutamic acid *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 68 382, 1948

- 64b Huennekens F M, Lau L, Myers H A P and Gabrio B W Erythrocyte metabolism III Oxidation of glucose J Biol Chem 227 253 1957
- 65 Jordan H E The significance of the lymphoid nodule Am J Anat 57 1 1935
- 66 Jordan H E and Johnson E P Erythrocyte production in the bone marrow of the pigeon Am J Anat 56 71 1935
- 67 Kass E H The occurrence of normal serum gamma globulin in human lymphocytes Science 101 337 1945
- 68 Keilin H and Hartree E F Properties of catalase catalysis of coupled oxidation of alcohols Biochem J 39 293 1945
- 69 Kempner W The nature of leukemic blood cells as determined by their metabolism J Clin Invest 18 291 1939
- 70 Keuning F J and van der Sluike L B The role of immature plasma cells lymphoblasts and lymphocytes in the formation of antibodies as established in tissue culture experiments J Lab Clin Med 36 167 1950
- 71 Kline D L and Clifton E E Life span of leucocytes in man J Appl Physiol 5 79 1952
- 72 Koppel J L and Olwin J H Dehydrogenase activities of human platelets Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 86 641 1954
- 73 Kuna A and Chambers H Effect of saccharides on leukocyte movement J Clin Invest 32 436 1953
- 74 Levene P A and Meyer G M On the action of leukocytes on glucose J Biol Chem 12 265 1912
- 75 Levene P A and Meyer G M On the action of leukocytes on some hexoses and pentoses J Biol Chem 14 149 1913
- 76 Mallory F B A histological study of typhoid fever J Exper Med 3 611 1898
- 76a Maloney M A and Pitt H M Neutrophil life cycle with tritiated thymidine Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 98 801 1958
- 77 Mancini R E Histochemical study of glycogen in tissues Anat Rec 101 149 1948
- 78 Martin S P McKinney G R and Green R The metabolism of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes Ann NY Acad Sc 59 996 1955
- 79 Maximow A Relation of the blood cells to connective tissue and endothelium Physiol Rev 4 533 1924
- 80 Mazia D and Prescott D M Nuclear function and mitosis Science 120 120 1954
- 81 McCutcheon M Chemotaxis and locomotion of leukocytes Ann NY Acad Sc 59 941 1955
- 82 McKinney G R Martin S P Rundles R W and Green R Respiratory and glycolytic activities of human leukocytes in vitro J Appl Physiol 5 335 1952 53
- 83 Menkin V Studies on inflammation XVI On the formation of chemotactic substance by enzymatic action J Exper Med 67 153 1938
- 84 Menkin V Studies on inflammation XIV Isolation of the factor concerned with increased capillary permeability in injury J Exper Med 67 129 1938
- 85 Menka, V Studies on inflammation V Concerning the mechanism of cell migration J Exper Med 67 145 1938
- 86 Menkin V The determination of the level of leukocytes in the blood stream with inflammation A thermostable component concerned with the mechanism of leukocytosis Blood 4 13-3 1949
- 87 Menkin V Pyrexin the pyrogenic factor of inflammatory exudates and its relation to some bacterial pyrogens J Lab Clin Med 46 423 1955
- 88 Menkin V Factors concerned in the mobilization of leukocytes in inflammation Ann NY Acad Sc 59 956 1955
- 89 Michels N A The plasma cell Arch Path 11 775 1931
- 90 Michels N A Erythropoiesis A critical review of the literature Folia haemat 45 75 1931
- 90a Mills G C Hemoglobin metabolism I Glutathione peroxidase an erythrocyte enzyme which protects hemoglobin from oxidative breakdown J Biol Chem 229 189 1957
- 91 Miner R W Ed Leukocyte functions Ann NY Acad Sc 59 667 1969 1955

- 148 Wendel W B Oxidations by erythrocytes and the catalytic influence of methylene blue II Methemoglobin and the effect of cyanide J Biol Chem 102 385 1933
- 149 Wendel W B Oxidations by erythrocytes and the catalytic influence of methylene blue I The oxidation of lactate to pyruvate J Biol Chem 102 373 1933
- 150 Whitby L H H and Britton C J C Disorders of the Blood 5th Ed The Blakiston Co Philadelphia 1947
- 151 White A Relation of the adrenals to immunity Bull NY Acad Med 24 26 1948
- 152 White A Effects of steroids on aspects of the metabolism and functions of the lymphocyte a hypothesis of the cellular mechanism in antibody formation and related immune phenomena Ann NY Acad Sc 73 79 1958
- 153 White J C The cytoplasmic basophilia of bone marrow cells J Path Bact 59 223 1947
- 154 White L P The intravascular life span of transfused leukocytes tagged with atabrine Blood 9 73 1954
- 155 Wintrobe M M Clinical Hematology 4th Ed Lea and Febiger Philadelphia 1956
- 156 Wood W B Jr and Smith M R Surface phagocytosis—its relation to the mechanism of recovery in acute pneumonia caused by encapsulated bacteria Tr Assoc Am Physicians 60 77 1947
- 157 Wood W B Jr and Smith M R The nature and biological significance of the capsular slime layer of pneumococcus Type III Tr Assoc Am Physicians 60 90 1949
- 158 Wood W B Jr Smith M R and Watson B Studies on the mechanism of recovery in pneumococcal pneumonia IV The mechanism of phagocytosis in the absence of antibody J Exper Med 84 397 1946
- 159 Woodard H Q The phosphatases of human erythrocytes Blood 5 660 1950
- 160 Wright C S and Dodd M C Phagocytosis Ann NY Acad Sc 59 945 1955
- 161 Wright J H The histogenesis of the blood platelets J Morphol 21 263 1910
- 161a Wroblewski F and LaDue J S Lactic dehydrogenase activity in blood Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 90 210 1955
- 162 Yoffey J M and Hanks G A and Kelly J Some problems of lymphocyte production Ann NY Acad Sc 73 47 1958
- 163 Zarafonitis C Harmon D R and Clark P F The influence of temperature upon opsonization and phagocytosis J Bact 53 343 1947

- 121 Silvadio E Biochemical aspects of blood platelets *Acta haemat* 11 301 1954
- 122 Saslaw S and Doan C A The role of phagocytosis in resistance as related to age of granulocytes following primary and reinfection studies with hemolytic streptococci in *Macacus rhesus* *J Lab Clin Med* 32 878 1947
- 122a Siv M and Speir P W Whole blood transaminase levels in anemia *J Lab and Clin Med* 51 926 1958
- 123 Schneider W C and Hageboom G H Cytochemical studies of mammalian tissues *Cancer Res* 11 1 1951
- 124 Scudamore H H Vorhans L J and Kark R M Observations on erythrocyte and plasma cholinesterase activity in dyscrasias of the blood *Blood* 11 1260 1951
- 125 Selwyn J G Heinz bodies in red cells after splenectomy and after phenacetin administration *Brit J Haemat* 1 173 1955
- 126 Slovic A Étude sur la glycolyse aseptique dans le sang *Arch internat physiol* 11 154 1911
- 127 Speers H S Physiological approaches to an understanding of the function of eosinophiles and basophiles *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 706 1955
- 128 Storti E Perugini S and Soldati M Cytochemical investigations of normal megakaryocytes and platelets *Acta haemat* 10 144 1953
- 128a Sumner J B and Myrback K *The Enzymes* Vol 1 Part II Academic Press Inc New York 1950
- 129 Sundberg R B Lymphocytes and plasma cells *Ann NY Acad Sc* 53 671 1955
- 130 Sutherland E W Pasternak T and Cori C F Mechanism of the phosphoglyceric mutase reaction *J Biol Chem* 181 183 1949
- 131 Thorell B Studies on the formation of cellular substances during blood cell production *Acta med scandinav Suppl* 200 1947
- 132 Tocantins L M The mammalian blood platelets in health and disease *Medicine* 17 155 1938
- 133 Tompkins E H The monocyte *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 732 1955
- 134 Touster O and Yarbro M C The ergothioneine content of human erythrocytes the effect of age race malignancy and pregnancy *J Lab Clin Med* 39 720 1952
- 135 Trovelli O A Some properties of lymphocytes in vivo and in vitro *Ann NY Acad Sc* 73 105 1958
- 136 Tullis J L Effect of experimental hypertonia on circulating leukocytes *J Clin Invest* 26 1099 1947
- 137 Valentine W N and Beck W S Biochemical studies on leucocytes I Phosphatase activity in health leukocytosis and myelocytic leukemia *J Lab Clin Med* 35 39 1951
- 138 Valentine W N Pearce M L and Lawrence J S Studies on the histamine content of blood *Blood* 5 623 1950
- 139 Vischer M B and Halberg F Daily rhythms in numbers of circulating eosinophiles and some related phenomena *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 834 1955
- 140 Wachstein M Alkaline phosphatase activity in normal and abnormal human blood and bone marrow cells *J Lab Clin Med* 31 1 1946
- 141 Wachstein M Reduction of potassium tellurite by living tissue *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 72 175 1949
- 142 Wachstein M The distribution of histochemically demonstrable glycogen in human blood and bone marrow cells *Blood* 4 54 1949
- 143 Wagner R Studies on the physiology of the white blood cell—The glycogen content of the leukocyte in leukemia and polycythemia *Blood* 2 235 1947
- 144 Wagner R Glycogen content of isolated white blood cell in glycogen storage disease *Am J Di Child* 73 559 1947
- 145 Wagner R and Yourke A Enzyme studies on white blood cell III Phosphorylating glycogenolysis and phosphorylated intermediates *Arch Biochem* 39 174 1952
- 146 Wagner R and Yourke A Enzyme studies on white blood cells IV Glycolysis of added glucose Hexokinase and adenylypyrophosphatase activity *Arch Biochem* 44 415 1953
- 147 Weil L The activation of arginase *J Biol Chem* 110 201 1935

peripheral destruction. At present it appears that tissue oxygen tension controls erythropoiesis, this control being mediated by a humoral factor which has been named *erythropoietin*.^{13, 21, 24} Despite the efforts of numerous investigators the biochemical nature of this substance has not been characterized.²⁵ Erythropoietin increases red blood cell production by increasing the rate at which cellular division proceeds in the marrow. The rate at which the erythrocyte matures or is released into the circulating blood does not seem to be affected.^{1, 67} If the stimulus is sufficiently intense the rate of erythrocyte production may be increased six to eight times normal.¹⁷

Figures 8 to 11 indicate how a simple negative feedback system might operate to control erythropoiesis.

The physiological control of erythropoiesis in the normal person assuming an adequate supply of necessary protein, vitamins, and minerals is depicted in Figure 8. The daily destruction of approximately 2×10^{11} erythrocytes must be compensated by the release of an equal number of erythrocytes from the marrow. The location of the cells which produce erythropoietin in response to oxygen deficit is not yet known,⁷ though there is evidence which suggests that the kidneys are involved.⁴⁸

Hemorrhage or an increase in the rate of destruction of erythrocytes results in an anemia if uncompensated. The total quantity of oxygen reaching the tissue cells is reduced because of the decreased number of cells. An increase in erythropoietin activity of the plasma has been demonstrated under such conditions and is thought to be responsible for the increased erythropoiesis which compensates for the loss of red blood cells (Fig. 9).

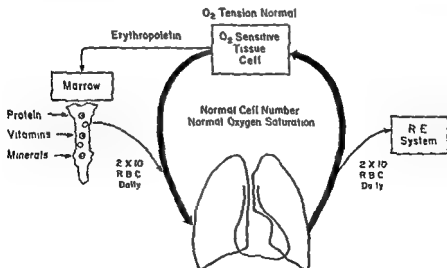


Figure 8 Schematic representation of the control of erythropoiesis under normal conditions

Erythropoiesis and the Metabolism of Hemoglobin and Iron

ERYTHROPOIESIS

THE PRIMARY FUNCTION of the red blood cell is the transport of respiratory gases. In order to fulfill this function there must be sufficient circulating erythrocytes to meet the metabolic needs of the body. There is a compensatory increase in the number of peripheral red blood cells when there is a decrease in the amount of oxygen reaching the tissue cells of the body. If there is a surfeit of oxygen available there occurs a decrease in circulating erythrocytes.

THE CONTROL OF ERYTHROPOIESIS

The physiological control of the number of circulating erythrocytes is maintained by regulation of erythropoiesis and not by regulation of their

peripheral destruction. At present it appears that tissue oxygen tension controls erythropoiesis, this control being mediated by a humoral factor which has been named *erythropoietin*.^{11, 30, 50, 74} Despite the efforts of numerous investigators the biochemical nature of this substance has not been characterized.^{8, 3} Erythropoietin increases red blood cell production by increasing the rate at which cellular division proceeds in the marrow. The rate at which the erythrocyte matures or is released into the circulating blood does not seem to be affected.^{3, 67} If the stimulus is sufficiently intense the rate of erythrocyte production may be increased six to eight times normal.¹

Figures 8 to 11 indicate how a simple negative feedback system might operate to control erythropoiesis.

The physiological control of erythropoiesis in the normal person assuming an adequate supply of necessary protein, vitamins, and minerals is depicted in Figure 8. The daily destruction of approximately 2×10^{11} erythrocytes must be compensated by the release of an equal number of erythrocytes from the marrow. The location of the cells which produce erythropoietin in response to oxygen deficit is not yet known,⁷ though there is evidence which suggests that the kidneys are involved.⁴⁶

Hemorrhage or an increase in the rate of destruction of erythrocytes results in an anemia if uncompensated. The total quantity of oxygen reaching the tissue cells is reduced because of the decreased number of cells. An increase in erythropoietin activity of the plasma has been demonstrated under such conditions and is thought to be responsible for the increased erythropoiesis which compensates for the loss of red blood cells (Fig. 9).²

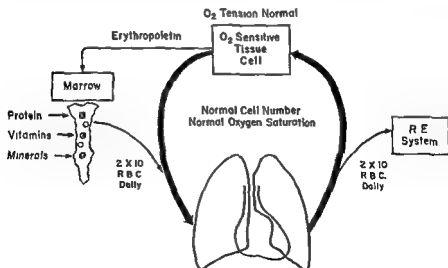


Figure 8 Schematic representation of the control of erythropoiesis under normal conditions

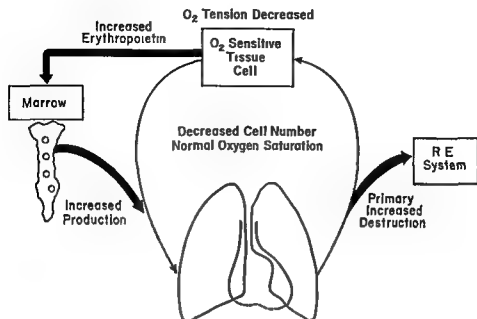


Figure 9 Schematic representation of the control of erythropoiesis with increased loss of red cells by bleeding or increased destruction

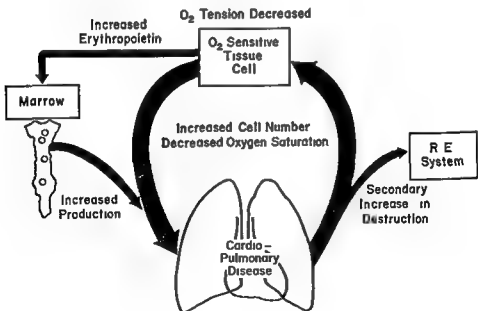


Figure 10 Schematic representation of the control of erythropoiesis in cardiopulmonary disease with decreased arterial oxygen saturation

Decreased arterial oxygen saturation resulting from cardiopulmonary conditions has been found to increase erythropoietin activity and to be associated with hyperactive erythropoiesis (Fig 10). A secondary polycythemia results from the sustained stimulus.¹ A similar situation is thought to be obtained when cobaltous chloride is administered to a patient. Increased levels of erythropoietin have been demonstrated following administration of cobalt² but the mechanism through which this effect is produced is unknown.⁴

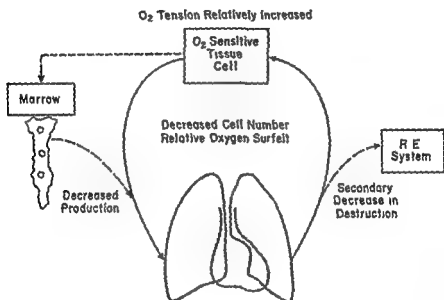


Figure 11. Schematic representation of the control of erythropoiesis under conditions of oxygen surfeit.

Anemia is associated with hypothyroidism in a high percentage of cases. Decreased oxygen demand by the tissue cells might be expected to be reflected by diminished erythropoietin production and anemia (Fig 11). The red blood cell count stabilizes at a level sufficient to meet the diminished metabolic demands of the body. It has been shown, however, that further reduction of the circulating red blood cells by bleeding results in a prompt reticulocytosis with a return of the red blood cell count to the prebleeding level in a normal period of time. These studies suggest that the anemia of myxedema occurs as the result of diminished metabolic demands rather than as an abnormality of the erythropoietic system.

THE ROLE OF HEMOGLOBIN

Hemoglobin is formed by the developing erythrocyte in the bone marrow. The most rapid hemoglobin formation is in the class III (polychromatophilic

normoblast) red cell when approximately 80 per cent of the hemoglobin carried by the mature cell is formed.¹⁰⁰ Though hemoglobin may be formed in the reticulocyte and under exceptional circumstances the immature non reticulated erythrocyte its formation under normal conditions is confined to the developing normoblasts in the marrow.^{81, 10}

The level of hemoglobin in the blood represents the balance between production and destruction of the hemoglobin molecule. In the normal person the hemoglobin level is constant as production and destruction are nicely balanced.

The total quantity of hemoglobin in the blood may be determined by multiplying the concentration of hemoglobin by the blood volume since hemoglobin production and destruction are in a state of equilibrium. If the concentration of hemoglobin is 15 gm per cent (mean male equals 16.3 gm per cent mean female 14.5 gm per cent)¹ and the total volume roughly 5000 ml the total quantity of hemoglobin is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total hemoglobin} &= \text{concentration of hemoglobin (gm/ml)} \times \text{blood volume (ml)} \\ \text{Total hemoglobin} &= 0.15 \times 5000 = 750 \text{ gm hemoglobin}\end{aligned}$$

The life span of the hemoglobin molecule is approximately 120 days its destruction occurs coincident with that of the erythrocyte. If the total amount of hemoglobin in the body at any one time is 750 gm and the life span of the red blood cell is 120 days the amount of hemoglobin formed each day can be calculated since 1/120 of the total amount must be formed daily.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\text{Total hemoglobin}}{\text{life span in days}} &= \text{rate of production/day} \\ \frac{750}{120} &= 6.25 \text{ gm hemoglobin/day}\end{aligned}$$

Under normal conditions the body produces approximately 6.25 gm of hemoglobin per day. The maximum effort of the body as for example in the event of hemolytic disease has been calculated to be approximately 40 gm/day.¹⁰ This means that the survival time of the erythrocyte may be reduced to 18 or 19 days without the occurrence of anemia if the bone marrow functions at maximal capacity.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\text{Total hemoglobin}}{\text{life span in days}} &= \text{rate of production/day} \\ \frac{750 \text{ gm}}{X} &= 40 \text{ gm/day} \quad X = 18.8 \text{ days}\end{aligned}$$

When hyperhemolysis is compensated excessive destruction of red blood cells exists without the development of anemia. It is generally felt that the increase in the production of red blood cells and hemoglobin is brought about by increase in the mass of erythroid precursors rather than an increase in the rate of maturation in the individual red blood cell.¹⁰ though the latter has not been ruled out as a contributing factor.

If the destruction of red blood cells exceeds the maximum effort of the bone marrow anemia develops. The anemia becomes stabilized when eryth

rocyte production and erythrocyte destruction proceed at a constant rate. While the values found for hemoglobin and red blood cells are not normal they do not decrease progressively unless the life span of the cell is further shortened or unless there is interference with marrow activity. The laboratory findings of patients with sickle cell anemia illustrate these points. The life span of the erythrocyte is shorter than can be compensated for by maximal marrow activity and in usual circumstances the subnormal hemoglobin value stabilizes at a level that depends on the life span of the erythrocyte and the maximal marrow output. This anemia is made more severe by a sudden increase in hemolytic activity or by a decrease in erythrocyte production. Either mechanism results in a further reduction of circulating erythrocytes.

THE CHEMISTRY OF HEMOGLOBIN

Hemoglobin has a molecular weight of 66 700⁴ and is thought to be ellipsoid in shape.³⁸⁻⁴⁰ The results of x-ray crystallographic studies have indicated that the hemoglobin molecule is composed of two identical half molecules⁴⁰ and this has been confirmed by the analysis of tryptic hydrolysates.⁴¹ Each half molecule has now been shown to contain two different peptide chains which have been designated α and β .⁷ The organization of the approximately 300 amino acids which comprise the α and β peptide chains is under genetic control and their synthesis occurs early in the development of the normoblast.²¹ The importance of the proper organization of the amino acids during the synthesis of these proteins has been demonstrated recently by comparing the molecular structure of the hemoglobin from normal persons with that obtained from patients with one of the hemoglobinopathies.⁴²

Of the approximately thirty peptide spots obtained from heat and trypsin digested hemoglobin by electrophoresis and chromatography, only one peptide from sickle cell hemoglobin differed from normal.⁴³ Analysis of the abnormal peptide revealed that a glutamic acid residue had been replaced by valine.⁴ A similar study of the C hemoglobin molecule indicated that the same peptide was again abnormal but in this instance the normal glutamic acid had been replaced by lysine.⁴⁴ In both instances the abnormal peptide was a component of the β peptide chain. Subsequent investigations of hemoglobins E, D, and I have revealed similar amino acid substitutions in other peptides of both the α and β chains.⁴⁵ These brilliant studies have revealed that a variation of but one amino acid out of more than 300 in the half molecule can mean the difference between normal health, a moderate disability, or a fatal illness.

It has been suggested⁴⁶ that the chemical structure of the two genes which appear to be involved in the production of hemoglobin determines the amino acid sequence of the peptide chains. Any alteration of the chemical structure of the genes would alter in turn the sequence of the amino acids of the hemoglobin molecule. Since the genes are self-replicating macromolecules any structural abnormality would be transmitted from one gen-

eration to the next. Whether or not the effect of such an abnormality is clinically important is believed to depend on the portion of the peptide chain involved.⁴³

In addition to the protein moiety the hemoglobin molecule contains four heme groups. These groups are believed to develop coincident with¹⁰⁰ or slightly later than⁷⁷ the protein portion of the molecule. The four heme groups are thought to be arranged in two pairs related by the dyad axis.^{88, 69} Their exact location on the molecule remains unknown.⁴⁶ On the basis of data obtained from studies of oxygen equilibrium it has been suggested that the four hemes form a conjugated system, each heme connected to two others.⁶⁴ They are the site of the reversible binding of the respiratory gases.

Heme is a porphyrin ring structure containing a chelated iron atom and has been found to be part of the molecular structure of myoglobin, the cytochromes, peroxidase and catalase as well as hemoglobin. Porphyrins are widely distributed in nature and are found in both plants and animals where they serve many vital metabolic processes. Chlorophyll, which is essential for photosynthesis and thus for the existence of life on earth, is a magnesium porphyrin compound. A porphyrin structure with a complexed cobalt atom forms part of the vitamin B₁₂ molecule.^{3, 1, 81}

The Chemistry of Porphyrins

Porphyrins differ from one another and are classified according to the nature and order of the side chains which may be substituted for the eight beta hydrogen atoms. One important group of porphyrins is that which has the same two side chains substituted for the replaceable hydrogen atoms in the 3 and 4 positions in each of the constituent pyrroles. Such an arrangement

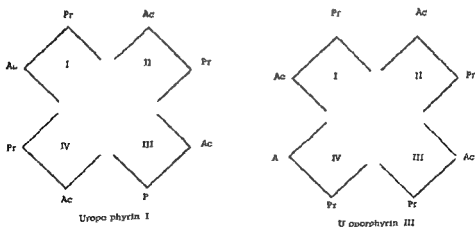


Figure 12 Schematic diagram of uroporphyrins I and III acetic acid and propionic acid side chains

allows four possible isomers the notations of which are I II III IV Uroporphyrin and coproporphyrin are examples of this group Only types I and III are important to man

Note that the structural difference between uroporphyrin I and uroporphyrin III lies in the position of the acetic and propionic acid side chains in pyrrole ring IV (Fig 12)

The structural difference between coproporphyrins I and III also lies in the position of the side chains located on pyrrole IV and the difference between the uroporphyrins and coproporphyrins is in the presence of a methyl group in the coproporphyrins in the position occupied by the acetic acid side chain in the uroporphyrins (Fig 13)

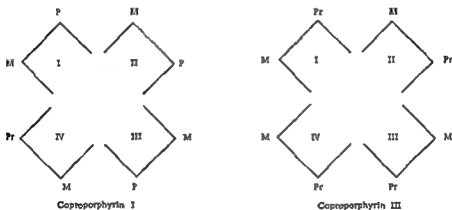


Figure 13 · Schematic diagram of coproporphyrins I and III methyl and propionic acid side chains

Uroporphyrin and coproporphyrin each occur in both urine and feces despite the impression to the contrary given by their names The urine contains small amounts of uroporphyrin (5 to 10 $\mu\text{g/day}$) with both isomers present¹⁴ Larger quantities of coproporphyrin are found in the urine (100 to 300 $\mu\text{g/day}$) and the type III isomer predominates¹⁴ ⁴ ¹¹ ⁵ Inadequate data are available to determine a normal range of fecal uroporphyrin excretion The quantity of fecal coproporphyrin excreted daily is from 150 to 400 μg ⁵⁶ ⁷⁶

When there are three different side chains substituted for the replaceable hydrogen atoms of the constituent pyrroles a larger number of isomers are possible Mesoporphyrin is a tetramethyl diethyl dipropionic acid porphyrin and fifteen isomers have been enumerated Protoporphyrin is similar but two vinyl are substituted for the two ethyl side chains The isomer which is found in the hemoglobin molecule is classified as protoporphyrin IX type III

Porphyrin is composed of four monopyrroles The elucidation of the synthesis of porphyrin has made it clear that glycine and succinyl Co A are the basic building blocks⁷¹ ⁹ ⁹⁷ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁷ ¹¹ Succinyl Co A from the

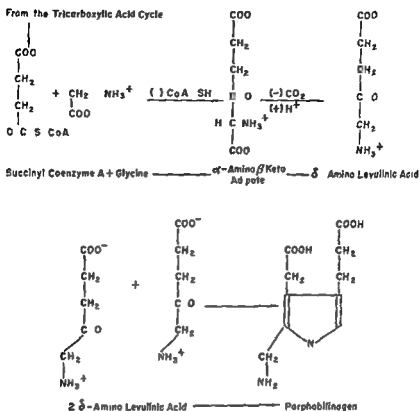


Figure 14 Formation of porphobilinogen from succinyl coenzyme A and glycine

tricarboxylic acid cycle with the addition of glycine forms α amino β keto adipic acid. Pyridoxal phosphate⁸, CoA⁷ and ferrous iron¹⁰ are required for the reaction as well as enzymes which appear to be localized in the mitochondria.⁹ α Amino β keto adipic acid is then decarboxylated to form δ aminolevulinic acid. Two molecules of δ aminolevulinic acid condense to form porphobilinogen, a monopyrrole which contains acetic and propionic acid side chains.^{11, 12} This reaction has been shown to be catalyzed by an enzyme which contains —SH groups¹³ and which has been recently shown to contain copper as well.¹⁴ A dietary deficiency of copper results in a reduction of the concentration of this enzyme in the blood and liver of ducklings.

A cell free extract of erythrocytes is capable of converting porphobilinogen to uroporphyrin.^{15, 16} An enzyme, porphobilinogenase, has been described which is capable of catalyzing this transformation. The normal result of the reaction is the production of the type III isomer but after heating the type I isomer is produced. It is felt that the macrocyclic structures which are formed from porphobilinogen are porphyrinogens and that the porphyrins result from auto oxidation of these compounds.^{3, 7}

¹⁰ While uroporphyrin is poorly utilized by hemolysates to form copropor

phyrin uroporphyrinogen III is easily transformed to coproporphyrinogen III⁶⁻⁷⁸ The conversion of coproporphyrinogen III to protoporphyrin requires enzymes located in mitochondria and oxygen.⁸ The biosynthesis of heme from protoporphyrin and iron is also enzyme dependent.¹⁰

The intermediates in the biosynthesis of heme are then uro- and coproporphyrinogens and not uro- and coproporphyrins. It appears however that iron is incorporated into protoporphyrin and not protoporphyrinogen.⁹

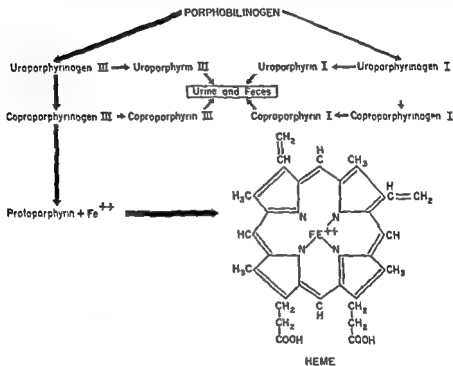


Figure 15 : Formation of heme from porphobilinogen

Free protoporphyrin and coproporphyrin have been demonstrated in both the nucleated and non nucleated erythrocytes. The concentration of both compounds increases just prior to reticulocytosis^{10-8, 85} It has been suggested that they represent incomplete hemoglobin synthesis¹¹⁻⁶ or residuals left after hemoglobin synthesis.⁸⁴ The level of free erythrocyte protoporphyrin III from 13 to 139 micrograms/100 ml of erythrocytes¹⁰³ Erythrocyte coproporphyrin concentration has been found to be from 0.5 to 1.5 micrograms per 100 ml of erythrocytes¹⁰⁻¹⁰⁴

HEMOGLOBIN CATABOLISM

Following its release from the red blood cell none of the hemoglobin is reutilized as such and each of the component parts of the molecule goes its

separate way. The protein fraction returns to the general protein pool where fragments may or may not be incorporated into future hemoglobin molecules.^{33 109 110} Iron returns to the iron pool and is probably quickly reutilized in the formation of hemoglobin. The porphyrin fraction is not reutilized at all.

The destruction of the hemoglobin molecule begins in the reticuloendothelial cell under normal conditions. Following rupture of the methene bridge, bilirubin is formed from the heme fraction. This fragment is carried in the plasma in an insoluble form to the liver. There it is conjugated with glucuronic acid and a water soluble compound results which is excreted in the bile.^{9 80} Should the liver be unable to carry on this conjugation in the normal manner, a high indirect acting bilirubin level in the blood would result. Should there be obstruction to the excretion of the conjugated form via the biliary system, an increase in the direct acting bilirubin in the blood would result. Whether the bilirubin gives a direct or "indirect" van den Bergh reaction depends on the presence or absence of the glucuronic acid conjugation. The enzyme transferase found in the microsomes of the liver cells and uridine diphosphoglucuronic acid are both necessary for this reaction to occur. It has been suggested that the excess unconjugated bilirubin found in the newborn is due to inadequate development of the glucuronide conjugating system.⁹

In the bowel the action of the intestinal bacteria on bilirubin leads to several degradation products which are known collectively as fecal urobilinogen. Approximately 50 per cent of the urobilinogen is reabsorbed from the gut and recirculated in the blood to be reexcreted by the liver. This is the source of urobilinogen in liver bile and of the small amount lost through the kidney that is termed urinary urobilinogen. Normal daily excretion of urinary urobilinogen is from 0 to 35 mg.

The amount of fecal urobilinogen in the stool may be measured and has been found to vary from 40 to 280 mg./day. Since the amount of fecal urobilinogen excreted depends on the amount of bilirubin secreted by the liver into the bile, it has been used as an index of hemoglobin breakdown. Hemoglobin from destroyed red blood cells is not the only source of urobilinogen, however, and the excretion of fecal urobilinogen does not always measure red cell destruction accurately. Studying the excretion of stercobilin, one of the components of fecal urobilinogen, investigators have found that as much as 11 per cent must come from sources other than the breakdown of mature red blood cells.⁹ Whether this represents a breakdown of developing cells while still in the marrow or some non hemoglobin porphyrin pathway is not known. In certain disease states the amount of non hemoglobin stercobilin rises to as high as 50 per cent.^{9 61}

ABNORMAL PORPHYRIN METABOLISM

There are several disorders associated with abnormal porphyrin metabolism. Despite their rarity, these disorders have evoked widespread interest and have afforded unique opportunities for the study of porphyrin metabo-

lism. A new approach to the investigation of protein synthesis was recently opened when it was established that δ aminolevulinic acid is a common intermediate in both porphyrin and purine synthesis.^{1,9} Already the suggestion has been made that the porphyrin abnormalities found in a variety of disease states may be a reflection of abnormal purine metabolism.¹⁰ There is no doubt that continued investigation of these disorders will widen our knowledge of both protein and porphyrin metabolism.

The disease states which result from disordered porphyrin metabolism may be classified as follows:¹¹

1. Porphyrin (congenital) Erythropoietica
2. Porphyrin Hepatica
 - a. Intermittent acute
 - b. Cutanea tarda
 - c. Mixed

1. Porphyrin Erythropoietica

Porphyrin erythropoietica is a rare metabolic disorder of the erythrocyte which is probably transmitted as a recessive genetic abnormality.¹² Patients with this disorder appear to have both normal and abnormal erythroid cell lines in the marrow.¹³ The nuclei and to a lesser extent the cytoplasm of cells of the affected line show a characteristic red fluorescence when studied with the fluorescence microscope. In addition they may have a dark nuclear inclusion body containing hemoglobin. As destruction of circulating erythrocytes cannot account for the quantity of porphyrin excreted by these patients it has been postulated that uroporphyrin may be released into the plasma at a rapid rate during the maturation of the nucleated red cells in the marrow.¹⁴ The red fluorescence which has been demonstrated in the spleen is thought to result from the local destruction of red blood cells containing the abnormal porphyrin. The isomers found in the urine and blood of these patients are copro- and uroporphyrin I. These porphyrins are not complexed with a metal and the monopyrrole porphobilinogen is not found.

Recent work¹⁵ suggests that the metabolic error of the abnormal erythroid precursors in the marrow is occasioned by the genetically induced loss or alteration of an enzyme essential for the formation of uroporphyrin III from porphobilinogen. The alternate formation of excessive quantities of uroporphyrin I which cannot be used in heme synthesis is believed responsible for the clinical manifestations of the disorder.^{1, 6, 16, 17}

The clinical picture is characterized by photosensitivity which leads to erythema, blisters, ulcer formation and ultimate mutilation of exposed areas. Hemolytic anemia is usually present and splenomegaly is expected. Because of the deposition of uroporphyrin I in the bones and teeth these structures are often red brown and will fluoresce under a Wood's light.^{10,1}

Treatment is non specific. Sunlight must be avoided. Splenectomy has been demonstrated¹⁸ to relieve the hemolytic anemia in a number of patients.

2 *Porphyria Hepatica*

The site of deranged porphyrin metabolism in this disorder is not the bone marrow but the liver.¹⁰² *Porphyria hepatica* may be the result of a metabolic defect in the synthesis of heme proteins other than hemoglobin. Catalase synthesis has for example been shown to be abnormal in experimental porphyria.¹⁰³ These disorders are more common than the erythropoietic type.

a. Intermittent Acute Type The intermittent acute type of porphyria hepatica is a familial disorder inherited as an autosomal dominant. It usually appears after puberty though in rare cases it may be evident in childhood.¹⁰¹ In this disorder the erythrocyte porphyrins are normal but excessive quantities of zinc complexed uroporphyrin I and III and coproporphyrin III are found in the urine. The porphyrin precursor porphobilinogen, is found in the urine during the acute attacks and the finding of this monopyrrole is diagnostic. The liver contains large quantities of porphyrin precursors and increased amounts of porphyrin. Marrow porphyrins are normal.

The clinical manifestations of the intermittent acute type of porphyria hepatica are varied but abdominal colic—which can be of extreme severity—weakness and paresthesia of extremities constipation convulsions coma psychoses and hypertension may occur. Fatalities are generally due to respiratory paralysis but may occur during coma or from cachexia.¹⁰¹

Treatment includes avoidance of alcohol barbiturates or other liver toxins. Recently¹⁰⁷ chlorpromazine has been reported effective in relief of symptoms and this has been confirmed.¹⁰¹ Splenectomy is not indicated.

b. Cutanea Tarda Type As its name suggests this disorder begins later in life and its symptoms include photosensitivity. It is a familial disorder associated with parenchymal liver disease in a high percentage of cases. The photosensitivity is moderate in severity. The disease runs a mild course if the patients protect themselves from exposure to sunlight and hepatotoxins. A history of chronic alcoholism is not uncommon. The porphyrins excreted are the zinc complexed uroporphyrin I and III and coproporphyrin III. Porphyrins may be found in the blood and are elevated in the liver. Porphobilinogen is not found in the urine of these patients. The prognosis is generally good but depends on the degree of liver damage.

c. Mixed Type There is considerable disagreement¹⁰⁷ regarding this designation. It includes those patients with cutanea tarda who develop in addition symptoms of the acute intermittent variety. The urine contains uroporphyrin I a type III porphyrin and porphobilinogen as well.

Porphyrimurias

There are a number of conditions in which increased porphyrin excretion may occur. The increased excretion of porphyrin in these varied disease states may reflect disordered hemoglobin or protein synthesis or disordered synthesis of heme compounds other than hemoglobin.

- 1 Lead Poisoning—coproporphyrin III uroporphyrin (Type III?) porphobilinogen⁴
- Rheumatic fever—coproporphyrin III⁴⁷
- 3 Poliomyelitis—coproporphyrin III¹⁰³
- 4 Liver disease¹⁰⁸
 - a Alcoholic cirrhosis—coproporphyrin III
 - b Infectious hepatitis—coproporphyrin I
- 5 Anemia^{83 10 106}
 - a Refractory—coproporphyrin III
 - b Hemolytic anemia—coproporphyrin I
 - c Pernicious anemia—coproporphyrin I
- Idiopathic—coproporphyrin III¹⁰⁶

IRON METABOLISM

Iron ■ an essential element in many of the physiological processes in the body. It combines with protoporphyrin and various proteins to form hemoglobin and many important enzymes such as catalase, cytochrome and peroxidase. Since iron plays an essential role in hemoglobin metabolism, some knowledge of iron metabolism is necessary for the understanding and proper management of many of the problems of anemia seen in clinical practice. The history of iron in medicine has been reviewed by Fowler^{1 2} and excellent summaries of the current views on iron metabolism have been published by Moore and Dubach,¹³⁴ Gubler^{1 2} and Demulder.¹¹⁰

SOURCES OF IRON

The average daily diet of healthy adults in the United States contains 12 to 15 mg. of iron which is mainly in the ferric state.¹³⁶ As the normal adult absorbs less than 10 per cent of this amount, the quantity of iron absorbed each day is in the range of 0.6 to 1.5 mg.¹³⁶ Good dietary sources of iron are liver, beef, muscle, eggs, molasses, dried fruits and spinach. Bread fortified with iron is another effective source.¹³⁶

ABSORPTION OF IRON

Iron in the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract is still outside the body in a physiological sense and the factors that influence its absorption are probably more important than the quantity of iron that is ingested. In 1933 Lintzel demonstrated that iron is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract in the

ferrous form¹ When 0.05 to 0.20 per cent of alpha alpha dipyridyl a compound that reacts specifically with ferrous iron to form a complex that is red in color was added to the diet of young rats it was observed that binding of the ferrous iron occurred in the pyloric area at the pH of the stomach The iron that was bound in this manner was excreted in the feces The growing rats which were deprived of ferrous iron by the alpha alpha dipyridyl binding became anemic and it was concluded that no significant amount of iron was absorbed in the ferric state Other investigators have concluded that in man iron is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract almost entirely in the ferrous form^{137 148} The conversion of the ferric iron of the food to the available ferrous forms occurs mainly in the stomach or upper small intestine Certain proteins and ascorbic acid promote iron absorption because they are capable of reducing ferric iron to the ferrous state at an acid reaction other compounds such as phosphatides and phosphoproteins hinder iron absorption¹⁴⁹

The quantity of iron in the body is regulated by the amount of iron that is absorbed There is no balanced mechanism of absorption and excretion like that which exists for many metals such as calcium and sodium This was first shown in 1937 by Widdowson and McCance who studied the urinary and fecal excretion of iron by two men and two women on a low iron intake on a very high iron intake of 1000 mg a day and when they were again placed on a low iron intake¹⁵⁰ It was observed that on the low iron intake practically all of the ingested iron was recovered in the feces and the subjects were considered to be "in balance" During the high iron intake period when each subject ingested 1000 mg per day for 36 to 40 days it was calculated that each individual absorbed from 2000 to 5000 mg of iron without any significant increase in the hemoglobin levels When the subjects were again placed on a low iron intake of 7 to 10 mg a day for a period of eight to ten days they excreted all of the iron ingested during that time but none of the iron that was absorbed during the preceding period of high iron intake From these studies it was concluded that the intestine has no power to regulate iron by varying the amount excreted in the feces and therefore the amount of iron in the body must be regulated by the amount that is absorbed

A similar conclusion regarding the important role of the mucosa of the gastrointestinal tract in iron absorption was reached in 1943 by Hahn Bale Ross Balfour and Whipple who utilized radioactive iron to study iron metabolism in dogs¹⁵¹ The effects of various factors on iron absorption were studied The amount of the radioactively tagged iron that appeared in the red cells was considered to be a measure of iron absorption They found that when acute anemia was produced in the dogs by bleeding there was no increase in the absorption of iron until more than seven days had elapsed In contrast chronically anemic dogs promptly absorbed iron at from ten to twenty times the normal rate Another experiment suggested that the lowered oxygen content of anemic blood was not the factor responsible for increased absorption of iron in anemia anoxia produced by breathing a gas

that contained only 50 per cent of the normal concentration of oxygen for 48 hours did not have any significant effect on the absorption of iron. A lack of control of absorption of iron by the state of the iron stores was suggested by the observation that administration of colloidal iron intravenously in an amount sufficient to saturate the body stores did not block the iron absorption from the gastrointestinal tract three days later. Colloidal iron given orally acted differently. Iron administered orally produced a partial block to the absorption of radioactive iron when the latter was administered orally from one to six hours later. From these studies it was concluded that "physiological saturation" with iron is a term that could be applied to the mucosal epithelium of the gastrointestinal tract to explain one phase of the acceptance or refusal of iron. In these experiments "desaturation" appeared to be a matter of days while "saturation" was a matter of one or two hours. Although these experiments of Hahn et al. are important, certain details of the methods restrict the conclusions that can be drawn. All of the experiments were done with metallic iron, not food iron. The amount of radioactive iron that appeared in the erythrocytes was used as a measure of iron absorption but it is really a measure of both iron absorption and erythropoiesis. The conclusions regarding the effect of anemia on iron absorption were drawn from test animals that were deficient in iron.

The Mucosal Block Theory

In order to explain the mechanism whereby the gastrointestinal tract mucosa regulates iron absorption, Granick has proposed the "mucosal block" theory of the regulation of absorption of iron by ferritin in the mucosal cells.¹⁻⁶ Ferritin is a compound of iron and a protein, apoferritin. Iron which occurs on the surface of this compound as small micellar units of ferric hydroxide can make up as much as 23 per cent by dry weight of this compound. Ferritin was identified in the duodenal mucosa of guinea pigs and it was observed that variations in the quantity of ferritin present in the mucosa paralleled the increase or decrease of resistance to iron absorption. It was also found that the amount of apoferritin in the mucosal cells paralleled the amount of ferritin, an observation which suggested that the absorption of iron stimulated the formation of the specific protein, apoferritin. These observations form the basis of Granick's theory that ferrous iron from the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract enters the mucosal cells until all the apoferritin is converted to ferritin. The ferrous iron is then considered to be in equilibrium with the ferric iron of ferritin. In this circumstance a state of physiological saturation with the ferrous iron exists and no more iron is absorbed. Only when iron has passed into the plasma does the ferric iron of the mucosal ferritin decrease. When this occurs, "physiological saturation" no longer exists and more ferrous iron can be absorbed. The outline of this theory is shown in the accompanying diagram (Figure 16).

The ferritin mucosal block theory appears to be the best explanation for many of the details of iron absorption that have been demonstrated but not

ferrous form¹³ When 0.05 to 0.20 per cent of alpha alpha dipyridyl a compound that reacts specifically with ferrous iron to form a complex that is red in color was added to the diet of young rats it was observed that binding of the ferrous iron occurred in the pyloric area at the pH of the stomach The iron that was bound in this manner was excreted in the feces The growing rats which were deprived of ferrous iron by the alpha alpha dipyridyl binding became anemic and it was concluded that no significant amount of iron was absorbed in the ferric state Other investigators have concluded that in man iron is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract almost entirely in the ferrous form¹³⁻¹⁴ The conversion of the ferric iron of the food to the available ferrous forms occurs mainly in the stomach or upper small intestine Certain proteins and ascorbic acid promote iron absorption because they are capable of reducing ferric iron to the ferrous state at an acid reaction other compounds such as phosphitides and phosphoproteins hinder iron absorption^{14b}

The quantity of iron in the body is regulated by the amount of iron that is absorbed There is no balanced mechanism of absorption and excretion like that which exists for many metals such as calcium and sodium This was first shown in 1937 by Widdowson and McCance who studied the urinary and fecal excretion of iron by two men and two women on a low iron intake on a very high iron intake of 1000 mg a day and when they were again placed on a low iron intake¹⁵ It was observed that on the low iron intake practically all of the ingested iron was recovered in the feces and the subjects were considered to be "in balance" During the high iron intake period when each subject ingested 1000 mg per day for 36 to 40 days it was calculated that each individual absorbed from 2000 to 5000 mg of iron without any significant increase in the hemoglobin levels When the subjects were again placed on a low iron intake of 7 to 10 mg a day for a period of eight to ten days they excreted all of the iron ingested during that time but none of the iron that was absorbed during the preceding period of high iron intake From these studies it was concluded that the intestine has no power to regulate iron by varying the amount excreted in the feces and therefore the amount of iron in the body must be regulated by the amount that is absorbed

A similar conclusion regarding the important role of the mucosa of the gastrointestinal tract in iron absorption was reached in 1943 by Hahn Bale Ross Balfour and Whipple who utilized radioactive iron to study iron metabolism in dogs¹⁶ The effects of various factors on iron absorption were studied The amount of the radioactively tagged iron that appeared in the red cells was considered to be a measure of iron absorption They found that when acute anemia was produced in the dogs by bleeding there was no increase in the absorption of iron until more than seven days had elapsed In contrast chronically anemic dogs promptly absorbed iron at from ten to twenty times the normal rate Another experiment suggested that the lowered oxygen content of anemic blood was not the factor responsible for increased absorption of iron in anemia anemia produced by breathing a gas

that contained only 50 per cent of the normal concentration of oxygen for 48 hours did not have any significant effect on the absorption of iron. A lack of control of absorption of iron by the state of the iron stores was suggested by the observation that administration of colloidal iron intravenously in an amount sufficient to saturate the body stores did not block the iron absorption from the gastrointestinal tract three days later. Colloidal iron given orally acted differently. Iron administered orally produced a partial block to the absorption of radioactive iron when the latter was administered orally from one to six hours later. From these studies it was concluded that "physiological saturation" with iron is a term that could be applied to the mucosal epithelium of the gastrointestinal tract to explain one phase of the acceptance or refusal of iron. In these experiments "desaturation" appeared to be a matter of days while "saturation" was a matter of one or two hours. Although these experiments of Hahn et al. are important, certain details of the methods restrict the conclusions that can be drawn. All of the experiments were done with metallic iron, not food iron. The amount of radioactive iron that appeared in the erythrocytes was used as a measure of iron absorption but it is really a measure of both iron absorption and erythropoiesis. The conclusions regarding the effect of anemia on iron absorption were drawn from test animals that were deficient in iron.

The Mucosal Block Theory

In order to explain the mechanism whereby the gastrointestinal tract mucosa regulates iron absorption, Granick has proposed the "mucosal block" theory of the regulation of absorption of iron by ferritin in the mucosal cells.¹⁻⁶ Ferritin is a compound of iron and a protein, apoferritin. Iron which occurs on the surface of this compound as small micellar units of ferric hydroxide can make up as much as 23 per cent by dry weight of this compound. Ferritin was identified in the duodenal mucosa of guinea pigs and it was observed that variations in the quantity of ferritin present in the mucosa paralleled the increase or decrease of resistance to iron absorption. It was also found that the amount of apoferritin in the mucosal cells paralleled the amount of ferritin, an observation which suggested that the absorption of iron stimulated the formation of the specific protein, apoferritin. These observations form the basis of Granick's theory that ferrous iron from the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract enters the mucosal cells until all the apoferritin is converted to ferritin. The ferrous iron is then considered to be in equilibrium with the ferric iron of ferritin. In this circumstance a state of "physiological saturation" with the ferrous iron exists and no more iron is absorbed. Only when iron has passed into the plasma does the ferric iron of the mucosal ferritin decrease. When this occurs, physiological saturation no longer exists and more ferrous iron can be absorbed. The outline of this theory is shown in the accompanying diagram (Figure 16).

The ferritin mucosal block theory appears to be the best explanation for many of the details of iron absorption that have been demonstrated, but not

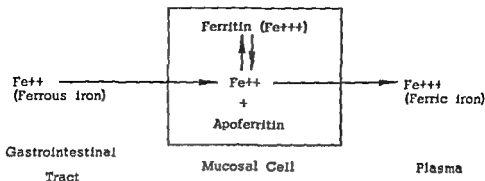


Figure 16 Schematic representation of the mucosal block theory (after Granick)

all of the observations are explained by this theory. Dubach, Callender and Moore, who utilized radioactive iron to study iron absorption as well as iron utilization, found that the level of plasma iron and the presence of anemia *per se* did not influence iron absorption; they were unable to demonstrate the presence of any "iron absorption promoting factor" by the injection of plasma of patients with iron deficiency.¹⁰ In addition, Pirzio-Biroli, Bothwell and Finch have shown in both experimental animals and human subjects that large iron stores cause a diminution in the absorption of iron while increased erythropoiesis is associated with an increase in absorption.¹³⁰ In these studies individuals who were apparently normal showed considerable variation in absorption that could not be explained.

In idiopathic hemochromatosis there appears to be a breakdown in the regulation of iron absorption and as a result there is an increase in the absorption of iron which leads to a great increase in the stores. Several observations indicate that the control of iron absorption is only partial or even ineffective at times in other conditions as well as in idiopathic hemochromatosis. In patients with idiopathic hemochromatosis and large iron stores, iron absorption increases when erythropoiesis increases following phlebotomy.¹¹⁷ It has been demonstrated also that iron will be absorbed in spite of adequate stores by normal individuals and by patients with refractory anemia, pernicious anemia in relapse, and hemolytic anemia even though the iron is not used for hemoglobin production.^{11, 10}

The lack of absolute control of absorption by the mucosal cells when faced with a large amount of iron in the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract was also shown by Whipple and Rabsch, Robbins.¹⁴⁰ It was observed that where the percentage of iron absorbed was high with small doses of iron, the actual amount used in hemoglobin production was larger when large doses of iron were administered even though the percentage of utilization was smaller. A similar observation was reported by Hegsted, Finch and Kinney who found that iron increased in the liver in animals on a normal diet when iron was added.¹³⁰ They concluded that the normal regulatory mechanism is effective only when the iron phosphate ratio of the diet is

within normal limits and at low levels of iron intake since both the absolute amounts of iron and phosphate and the iron phosphate ratio in the diet influence the amount of iron that is absorbed. The studies that have been reported on factors influencing iron absorption were the subject of a recent critical review.¹³¹

Absorption of Iron in Food

Most of the studies on iron metabolism have been concerned with the action of inorganic iron salts. Moore and Dubach have investigated the important problem of the absorption of iron contained in foodstuffs.¹³² They studied the effectiveness of bread fortified with radioactive iron, spinach grown in nutrient solution containing radioactive iron, as well as egg liver and muscle from hens that had been injected with radioactive iron. Normal individuals rarely absorbed more than 10 per cent of the iron in the food. Iron deficient patients absorbed some types of food iron better than normal individuals, but this increase in absorption did not occur with iron incorporated in eggs. Bread fortified with various iron preparations was effective since normal individuals absorbed 1 to 2 per cent of the iron while three patients with iron deficiency anemia absorbed 45 to 64 per cent. The effect of other foodstuffs on the absorption of the iron containing foods was tested and only ascorbic acid was found to produce a marked increase in iron absorption. It is interesting and somewhat surprising that no increase in the absorption of iron could be demonstrated after the addition of dilute hydrochloric acid to the diet of patients with hypochlorhydria.

Although the patient with iron deficiency anemia absorbs more iron from the normal diet than the normal individual does,^{117, 130, 133} dietary iron may be inadequate when the anemia is severe. It is very difficult for even the severely anemic patient to absorb more than 5 mg. of iron from a normal diet¹ and usually the amount of food iron absorbed by an iron deficient patient is considerably less than 5 mg. per day. In such circumstances supplementary medicinal iron is generally necessary to correct the deficiency in stored iron.¹¹⁷ The absorption of food iron is less than normal even though anemia is present in patients with idiopathic steatorrhea, infection, and myxedema.¹³⁰ After partial gastrectomy the ability to absorb food iron is lost or seriously diminished but the ability to absorb oral iron salts is increased as in any patients with iron deficiency.^{117, 133}

TRANSPORT OF IRON

On leaving the mucosal cells iron is transported in the plasma in the ferric form attached to a beta 1 globulin fraction of protein variously termed transferrin, siderophilin, iron binding protein, or metal binding globulin. This binding component of the serum was reported in 1945 by Holmberg and Laurell who utilized alpha alpha dipyridyl to demonstrate that normal serum could contain only about 500 micrograms per 100 ml. of iron in a firm binding.¹³² They concluded that the toxic effects of intravenously ad-

ministered iron which had been observed by Waldenstrom occurred when the saturation limit of the plasma was exceeded and the surplus iron left the blood stream. At about the same time in 1946 Schade and Caroline reported the presence in human plasma of a protein fraction that possessed the capacity to bind iron at physiological pH and identified it as being in the beta 1 globulin fraction.¹⁴⁴ Each molecule of this protein combines with two molecules of ferric iron.^{1, 7, 136} The protective effect of the protein binding of the iron in the blood has been demonstrated by means of intravenous injections of iron preparations. Poorly dissociated iron compounds such as iron saccharide can be given in large amounts intravenously whereas the easily dissociated iron compounds can be given only in small amounts of 5 to 10 mg. Larger amounts of easily dissociated iron compounds quickly saturate the total iron binding capacity of the serum and the excess iron causes flushing, nausea, vomiting, shock and even death.

The normal plasma iron level in micrograms per 100 ml. has been reported to be 50 to 150¹³⁶, 80 to 160¹¹³ and 43 to 210.¹¹ In the latter study the mean was 104.7 ± 3.4 . In some series the plasma iron values for males have been higher than those for females; in others there has been no significant difference. In one series the mean serum iron for men was 119.6 ± 6.7 micrograms per 100 ml. (range 61-238) and for women was 101.9 ± 5.5 micrograms per 100 ml. (range 35-246).¹⁴⁵ In another the ranges were 81 to 162 micrograms per 100 ml. in men and 64 to 128 micrograms per 100 ml. in women.¹³¹ Large unsystematic daily variations in the serum iron levels that amounted to 100 per cent were noted in some patients in one series.¹⁴³ The serum iron level is usually highest in the morning and falls in the evening; in one study mean changes were -35.3 ± 6.0 for men and -16.1 ± 3.6 micrograms per 100 ml. for women.¹⁴³ A mean serum level of 107.6 micrograms per 100 ml. has been reported in a group of boys and girls four and a half to eight years of age.¹⁴² In children two to four and a half years of age the mean for boys was 95.9 micrograms per 100 ml. and for girls 59.7 micrograms per 100 ml.¹⁴³

Plasma iron which has a complete turnover every two or three hours^{114, 133} is the iron that is being transported to the storage areas and to the marrow for hemoglobin production and also iron that may be destined for other use. Studies with radioactive iron have indicated that the plasma iron turnover rate is 0.56 mg. per kilo per day and the red cell iron turnover rate is 0.52 mg. per kilo per day in an adult male.¹¹⁴ In a 70 kilo man this represents a plasma iron turnover of 39 mg. per day with 36 mg. being used for hemoglobin production. Others have found the plasma turnover rate to be 37.5 mg. a day and the iron utilization for hemoglobin production to be 29 mg. per day. These values exceed the theoretical figure of 18.5 to 22.3 mg. per day for hemoglobin production.^{1, 4} From these studies it was concluded that measurements of plasma iron utilization do not measure effective erythropoiesis and it was suggested that the excess turnover in the plasma may represent exchange of iron with other tissues or the production in the marrow of hemoglobin which does not enter the circulation in the form of viable erythrocytes.¹²⁴

The studies of Jandl and others indicate that plasma iron which is firmly bound to human iron binding protein is transferred preferentially to immature but not mature erythrocytes. This transfer which is related to metabolic energy producing processes is dependent upon the extent of saturation of the iron binding protein and is maximum in the normal range of 20 to 60 per cent saturation.¹³³

The total iron binding capacity of normal serum has been reported to be in the range of 300 to 359¹¹⁵ micrograms per 100 ml or as high as 420¹³⁶. Normally the protein is about 33 per cent saturated.¹⁴⁰

Plasma iron levels and the amount of iron binding protein in the plasma vary in certain disease states. The serum iron level is increased in hemolytic anemia, pernicious anemia, aplastic anemia, hemochromatosis and hemosiderosis.¹¹ Under such circumstances the total iron binding capacity of the serum is not increased. The serum iron level is increased in infectious hepatitis and the rise appears to be correlated with the degree of parenchymal necrosis.^{14, 147} In iron deficiency anemia the plasma iron is decreased while the total iron binding capacity is usually greatly elevated. Similar changes usually occur during the latter part of pregnancy. In infections both the plasma iron and total iron binding capacity are usually lower than normal. A decrease in the plasma iron may be noted within 24 hours after the production of fever.^{11, 116} A rise in the plasma iron may be noted in less than an hour after iron is given orally. (Values for the serum iron and latent iron binding capacity observed in various disease states are shown in Table 2.)

Table 2 Actual Values of Serum Iron and Latent Iron Binding Capacity Observed in Patients with Various Disorders

Diagnosis	Hb (gm %)	RBC (million / cubic millimeter)	Hct (%)	SI (%)	LIBC (%)
Normal	15.0	5.0	46	105	200
Iron deficiency	5.0	2.0	31	11	850
Iron deficiency moderately	9.4	4.0	33	17	585
Iron deficiency mild	12.4	4.0	30	47	476
Aplastic Anemia idiopathic (untreated)	6.2	1.7	18	137	270
Aplastic Anemia drug induced (?) (treated)	5.9	1.4	14	260	Sat
Aplastic Anemia idiopathic (357 treated)	8.5	1.5	18	142	Sat
Idiopathic Hemorrhagic anemia	14.0	4.8	43	105	Sat
Viral hepatitis	14.2	4.5	46	212	Sat
Infection	14.5	4.7	44	111	268

STORAGE OF IRON

Iron is stored in the fixed phagocytic tissues of the reticuloendothelial system of the liver spleen and bone marrow and also in the parenchymal cells of the liver and glandular tissues such as the pancreas and adrenals mainly in the form of ferritin and hemosiderin¹. Ferritin contains up to 23 per cent of iron in the ferric form and hemosiderin also a compound of ferric hydroxide and protein contains from 9 to 55 per cent. Studies of patients with excess iron stores who have been subjected to repeated bleedings have demonstrated that iron from both these compounds can be used for hemoglobin formation. The relationship of these compounds to each other is still not certain but some authors state that hemosiderin and ferritin are intimately associated and functionally indistinguishable and consider it likely that the compounds differ only in physical form¹¹.

Finch et al in 1950 studied the iron absorption in dogs by determining the distribution of radioactive iron given orally and intravenously¹. They found equal amounts of radioactivity per gram of tissue in the liver and spleen after administering radioactive iron in the food and a similar distribution as soon as a few hours and as long as twenty one days after intravenous injections. They observed that small or large amounts of iron were distributed similarly but most of the iron gaining entrance to the body by either the oral or intravenous route was stored in the liver because of its size. In hemolytic anemias and after blood transfusions most of the iron is found in the spleen probably because this organ is the main site of erythrocyte destruction.

The total amount of iron in the body in adults is between 3.0 and 5.0 grams^{118 119 127 1 9 136}. Some authors state that about 73 per cent of this iron is contained in the hemoglobin^{118 1 2} while others give figures of 55 per cent¹³⁶ and 1.5 to 3.0 gm^{1 9}. The amount of iron contained in the body in the form of myoglobin catalase and cytochrome has been estimated as 100 to 300 mg¹¹⁸ or 3.5 per cent^{1 2}. The remainder of the iron is storage iron which constitutes from 16 to 23 per cent of the total about 1.0 to 1.5 grams^{118 1 9 136}.

*Table 3 Iron Values in the Human Adult according to Various
Authors^{1119 119 1 7 1 9 136}*

Daily dietary intake	12-15 mg
Daily absorption	0.6-1.5 mg
Total body iron	3.0-5.0 gm
Hemoglobin iron	1.5-3.0 gm
Storage iron	1.0-1.5 gm
Parenchymatous iron	0.1-0.3 gm
Daily loss males	0.5-1.5 mg
Daily loss females	1.0-2.5 mg
Daily loss pregnant females	1.0 mg

Either a deficiency or an excess of storage iron may be important clinically. In severe iron deficiency the iron stores are largely depleted and are corrected only with difficulty by the administration of oral iron since the increased absorption of iron that exists when iron deficiency anemia is present seems directed toward hemoglobin production and absorption decreases markedly when the hemoglobin level is restored to normal.¹ For this reason extra iron must either be given orally for long periods or administered parenterally in order to restore the iron reserves.

Iron excess occurs in the form of hemosiderosis or hemochromatosis. In the former abnormally large amounts of iron are deposited in the reticuloendothelial cells of the spleen, liver and bone marrow. This situation which is not associated with serious physiologic derangement is seen chiefly in hemolytic anemia and after numerous blood transfusions. In "idiopathic" hemochromatosis which results from increased iron absorption from the gastrointestinal tract there is an excess of tissue iron associated with fibrosis of the liver and pancreas and also increased iron in the parenchymal cells of the liver. Clinical features such as portal cirrhosis, cardiac failure, pigmentation of the skin and diabetes mellitus often occur. Finch and Finch have published a comprehensive review of their work and the literature on the subject of iron storage disease.^{1,2} Whether or not iron excess per se either as a result of increased absorption from the gastrointestinal tract or as a result of numerous transfusions can produce tissue damage that occurs in both "idiopathic" hemochromatosis and "exogenous" hemochromatosis remains an unsettled point.^{1,2,141}

EXCRETION OF IRON

The amount of iron in the body is determined largely by regulation of absorption. The body seems to conserve iron in a tenacious fashion and a very small amount is lost daily. This occurs by desquamation of cells of the skin and gastrointestinal tract by the migration of leukocytes into the gastrointestinal tract by the shedding of hair and by excretion of bile, urine and sweat. Moore and Dubach found the fecal excretion of normal persons to be 0.3 to 0.5 mg per day whereas in iron deficiency the amount may be only one tenth as much.¹⁴⁶ Thus the average adult male loses about 0.5 to 1.5 mg per day and the female loses an average of 1.0 to 2.5 mg per day because of menstruation. During pregnancy the female loses an additional 1 mg per day since the fetus is furnished a total of 0.3 to 0.5 gram and other iron is lost at delivery. The normal excretion of only 1.0 mg per day indicates that it would require many years for a deficient diet to produce iron deficiency anemia in an adult male for this reason therefore iron deficiency in the adult male should be considered primarily as a sign of chronic blood loss. Whereas the conservation of iron is generally advantageous to the body the inability of the body to excrete more than around 1.0 mg a day is a factor that promotes the increase of body iron when excessive amounts are administered by any route. At the

present time bleeding by phlebotomy or by some other means, is the only known way to reduce the iron stores

SUMMARY

The metabolic pathways of iron are shown schematically in Figure 17

The daily diet of the average adult in the United States contains 12 to 15 mg of iron which is present mainly in the ferric form. Reduction to the ferrous form, the type of iron that is absorbed, is promoted by the acid reac-

METABOLIC PATHWAYS OF IRON

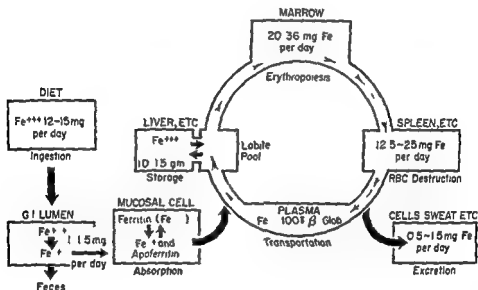


Figure 17. Schematic representation of the metabolic pathways of iron

tion of the stomach and upper small intestine by ascorbic acid and by certain proteins. Iron is absorbed mainly in the upper portion of the small intestine and the amount of iron that gains entrance to the body is largely controlled by regulation of the absorption of iron through the mucosa. Normally, less than 10 per cent of the ingested iron is absorbed. Various factors such as the amount and form of iron in the intestine, the iron phosphate ratio and possibly other details of the diet, the status of the iron stores, the degree of erythropoietic activity, and perhaps other factors influence this absorptive mechanism. After absorption, the iron is transported in the plasma in the ferric state in combination with a beta 1 globulin fraction to the reticulo-endothelial cells of the liver, spleen and bone marrow where it is stored in the form of ferritin and hemosiderin. From these stores, the iron is mobilized for hemoglobin production in the bone marrow. The body has no means of excreting significant amounts of iron and only minute amounts of iron, about

1 mg per day are lost by cell desquamation and other means. Reduction of the amount of iron in the body occurs mainly as the result of bleeding and pregnancy.

ADDITIONAL FACTORS NEEDED FOR ERYTHROPOIESIS

In addition to an adequate balance of iron and protein other metals and certain vitamins must be present if normal erythropoiesis is to continue.¹

Copper Although anemia due to copper deficiency has not been produced in adult humans, in experimental animals a deficiency of copper leads to the development of an anemia that is similar to iron deficiency anemia. The adult human body contains 100 to 150 mg of copper.¹¹ The plasma level has been found to be 105 ± 16 micrograms per cent in males and 116 ± 16 micrograms per cent in females. Ninety per cent of the copper in the plasma is bound to the alpha 2 globulin ceruloplasmin.¹¹ Copper appears to function in the absorption, mobilization, and utilization of iron in hemoglobin synthesis and in the formation and maintenance of the cytochromes.¹¹

¹¹ The metal may exert an effect on hematopoiesis through an effect on the function of respiratory enzymes. Recently copper has been shown to be a component of an enzyme essential for the synthesis of porphobilinogen from δ -aminolevulinic acid,¹² thus establishing its role in heme synthesis.

Cobalt Cobalt is known to play a role in animal nutrition and the administration of cobalt is known to stimulate erythropoiesis in man and in animals.¹³ However, the mechanism by which cobalt effects an increase in red blood cell production is not understood.¹⁴ It has not been established that cobalt has any role in normal erythropoiesis aside from its importance as a part of the vitamin B₁₂ molecule.

Pyridoxine For many years it was known that a deficiency of pyridoxine (vitamin B₆) in animals would produce a severe hypochromic microcytic anemia but only recently has a similar disorder been described in man.⁵ The deficiency, which is corrected by the administration of pyridoxine, is characterized by splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, hypochromic microcytic anemia, elevation of serum iron level, and saturation of the iron binding capacity. The inability of these patients to metabolize iron normally is associated with disturbed tryptophan metabolism and the excretion of xanthurenic acid.

Vitamin B₁₂ and Folic Acid Both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid are necessary for the normal maturation of the red cells. A deficiency of either

results in a defect in nucleic acid metabolism that is reflected by the development of the megaloblastic type of erythrocyte maturation. Vitamin B₁₂ has now been identified as the *extrinsic factor* of Castle. An *intrinsic factor* in the stomach is a mucoprotein is necessary in order that the vitamin B₁₂ ingested in the diet be absorbed.¹³ The chemical characteristics of the intrinsic factor have been worked out in considerable detail.^{31, 89, 111} An absence or deficiency of the intrinsic factor is responsible for pernicious anemia. The mode of action of the intrinsic factor is not known though it is suspected that it acts to catalyze the absorption of vitamin B₁₂.¹¹¹ Folic acid also present in the diet does not require the intrinsic factor for its absorption. The functions of these two vitamins are not completely understood. Both are concerned with the formation of purine or pyrimidine bases which are constituent parts of the nucleic acids. There seems to be a reciprocal relationship between vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid in the synthesis of nucleic acid in many tissues of the body, particularly those with rapid turn over such as the hematopoietic and gastrointestinal cells.^{3, 4}

Ascorbic Acid Ascorbic acid appears to participate in metabolic activities which affect both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid. It is important in the conversion of folic acid to folinic acid and there is some evidence that it stimulates the formation of folic acid. This vitamin has intense reducing properties and must play a significant role in oxidation reduction reactions in the body.^{9, 38}

Other vitamins may possibly play a role in erythropoiesis. Nicotinic acid is thought to be essential for the synthesis of coenzymes in the developing erythrocyte but its role in hematopoiesis is not clearly established.³⁴ Riboflavin deficiency has been reported to be responsible for anemia in animals but no anemia of this type has been recognized in man. It is thought to exert its influence by taking part in cellular oxidations.⁹⁹

REFERENCES

1. Adair G. C. A comparison of the molecular weights of the proteins. *Proc. Cambridge Phil. Soc.* 2: 75, 1924.
2. Aldrich R. F., Libbe F. F. and Talman E. L. A review of porphyrin metabolism with special reference to childhood. *Am. J. M. Sc.* 230: 675, 1955.
3. Angier R. H. et al. Synthesis of a compound identical with the L. casei factor isolated from liver. *Science* 102: 237, 1945.
4. Baehner F. A. Urinary uroporphyrin, porphobilinogen and coproporphyrin excretion in lead exposed workers. *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 44: 764, 1954.
5. Berk L. et al. Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia. *New England J. Med.* 239: 911, 1948.
6. Bogorad L. The enzymatic synthesis of uroporphyrinogens from porphobilinogen. *Conference on Hemoglobin, National Academy of Sciences, National Research Council Publ.* 557, 1958, p. 74.
7. Bogorad L. and Granick S. The enzymatic synthesis of porphyrins from porphobilinogen. *Nat. Acad. Sc. Proc.* 39: 1176, 1953.
8. Borsook H., Graybiel A., Keighley G. and Windsor E. Polycythemic response in normal adult rats to a nonprotein plasma extract from anemic rabbits. *Blood* 7: 734, 1954.
9. Brown A. K. and Zuelzer W. W. Studies on the neonatal development of the glucuronide conjugating system. *J. Clin. Invest.* 37: 332, 1958.

- 10 Brown E C Evidence for the involvement of ferrous iron in the biosynthesis of δ aminolaevulinic acid by chicken erythrocyte preparations *Nature* 182 313 1958
- 11 Carnot P and DeFlandre C Sur l'activite du serum hemopoietique des differents organs au cours de la regeneration du sang *Comp Rend Acad Sc* 143 384 1906
- 12 Cartwright G Dietary factors concerned in erythropoiesis *Blood* 2 111 1947
- 13 Castle W B The etiology of pernicious and related macrocytic anemias *Science* 82 159 1935
- 14 Comfort A Moore H and Weatherall M Normal human urinary porphyrins *Biochem J* 58 177 1954
- 15 Contopoulos A N McCombs R Lawrence J H and Simpson M E Erythropoietic activity in the plasma of patients with polycythemia vera and secondary polycythemia *Blood* 12 614 1957
- 16 Cookson G H and Rimington C Porphobilinogen *Biochem J* 57 476 1954
- 17 Crosby W H and Akersoyd J H The limit of hemoglobin synthesis in hereditary hemolytic anemia Its relation to the excretion of bile pigment *Am J Med* 13 273 1952
- 18 Cullis A C Dintzis H M and Perutz H F X ray analysis of hemoglobin Conference on Hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences National Research Council Publ 557 1958 p 50
- 19 Dacie J C The Hemolytic Anemias Grune and Stratton New York 1954
- 20 Dietrich L S N chol C A Monson W J and Elvehjem C A Observations on the interrelation of vitamin B₁₂ folic acid and vitamin C in the chick *J Biol Chem* 181 915 1949
- 21 Drabkin D L Metabolism of heme chromoproteins *Physiol Rev* 31 345 1951
- 22 Erslev A Humoral regulation of red cell production *Blood* 8 349 1953
- 23 Erslev A Physiologic control of red cell production *Blood* 10 924 1955
- 24 Falk J E Dresel E I B and Rimington C Porphobilinogen as a porphyrin precursor and interconversion of porphyrins in a tissue system *Nature* 172 292 1953
- 25 Gibson K D Neuburger A and Scott J J The purification and properties of δ aminolaevulinic acid dehydrase *Biochem J* 61 618 1955
- 26 Goldwasser E Jacobson L O Fried W and Plzak L F Studies on erythropoiesis V The effect of cobalt on the production of erythropoietin *Blood* 13 55 1958
- 27 Gordon A B Pihlers S J Medici P T Siegel C D and Tannenbaum M Attempts to identify the site of production of circulating erythropoietin *Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med* 92 598 1957
- 28 Cranick S Direct evidence for iron insertion into protoporphyrin to form heme *Fed Proc* 13 219 1954
- 29 Cranick S Enzymatic studies of protoporphyrin synthesis Conference on Hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences National Research Council Publ 557 1958 p 84
- 30 Grant W C and Root W S Fundamental stimulus for erythropoiesis *Physiol Rev* 37 449 1957
- 31 Graebek R Studies on the vitamin B₁₂ binding principle and other biocolloid of human gastric juice *Acta med scandinav Suppl* 314 1956
- 32 Gray C H and Neuberger A Studies on congenital porphyria I Incorporation of ¹⁴N into coproporphyrin uroporphyrin and hydropuric acid *Biochem J* 47 81 1950
- 33 Hahn P F and Whipple C H Hemoglobin production in anemia limited by low protein intake Influence of iron intake protein supplements and fasting *J Exper Med* 69 315 1939
- 34 Handler P and Featherson W P The biochemical defect in nicotinic acid deficiency II On the nature of the anemia *J Biol Chem* 151 395 1943
- 35 Hurri J W Wintington R M Weisman H Jr and Horngan H L Pyridoxine responsive anemia in the human adult *Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med* 91 427 1956
- 36 Harris L Vitamin C *Brit M Bull* 12 57 1956
- 37 Hodgkin D C et al Structure of vitamin B₁₂ *Nature* 176 325 1955

- 38 Holmberg C G and Laurell C B Investigations in serum copper I Nature of serum copper and its relation to the iron binding protein in human serum *Acta chem scandinav* 1 944 1947
- 39 Hunt J A and Ingram V M Allelomorphism and the chemical differences of the human hemoglobins A S and C *Nature* 181 1062 1958
- 40 Ingram D J E Gibson J F and Perutz M F Orientation of the four haem groups in haemoglobin *Nature* 178 906 1958
- 41 Ingram V M A specific chemical difference between the globins of normal human and sickle cell anaemia haemoglobin *Nature* 178 792 1956
- 42 Ingram V M Gene mutation in human hemoglobin The chemical difference between normal and sickle cell hemoglobin *Nature* 180 326 1957
- 43 Ingram V M Constituents of human haemoglobin *Nature* 183 1793 1959
- 44 Jodice A A Richert D A and Schulman M P Copper content of purified δ amino levulinic acid dehydrase *Fed Proc* 17 248 1958
- 45 Itano H The human hemoglobin Their properties and genetic control In Andersen C B Jr Anson M L Bailey K and Edsall J T Eds *Advances in Protein Chemistry* vol 12 Academic Press New York 1957 p 215
- 46 Jacobson L O Goldwasser E Fried W and Plzak L The role of the kidney in erythropoiesis *Nature* 179 633 1957
- 47 Kapp E M and Coburn A F Studies on the excretion of urinary porphyrin in rheumatic fever *Brit J Exp Path* 17 255 1936
- 48 Kendrew J C and Perutz M F X ray studies of compounds of biological interest *Ann Rev Biochem* 26 327 1957
- 49 Krueger R C Melnick I and Klein J R Formation of heme by broken-cell preparations of duck erythrocytes *Arch Biochem* 64 302 1956
- 50 Krumdieck N Erythropoietic substance in the serum of anemic animals *Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med* 54 14 1943
- 51 Kuehl F A Shunk C H and Folkers K Vitamin B₁₂ *J Am Chem Soc* 77 251 1955
- 52 Labbe R F Talman E L and Aldrich R A Porphyrin metabolism II Uric acid excretion in experimental porphyria *Biochim et biophys acta* 15 590 1954
- 53 Labbe R F Talman E L and Aldrich R A Purine metabolism in porphyria *Fed Proc* 14 241 1955
- 54 Laforet M F and Thomas E D The effect of cobalt on heme synthesis by bone marrow in vitro *J Biol Chem* 218 593 1956
- 55 Leavell H S Thorup O A Jr and McClellan J R Observations on the anemia in myxedema *Tr Am Clin & Climat Ass* 68 137 1957
- 56 Lemberg R and Legge J W *Hematin Compounds and Bile Pigments* Interscience Publishers Inc New York 1949
- 57 Lockwood W H and Rimington C Purification of an enzyme converting prophobilinogen to uroporphyrin *Biochem J* 67 8p 1957
- 58 London I M and West R The formation of bile pigment in pernicious anemia *J Biol Chem* 184 359 1950
- 59 London I M West R Shemin D and Rittenberg D On the origin of bile pigment in normal man *J Biol Chem* 184 351 1950
- 60 London I M West R Shemin D and Rittenberg D Porphyrin formation and hemoglobin metabolism in congenital porphyria *J Biol Chem* 184 365 1950
- 61 London I M Shemin D and Rittenberg D Synthesis of heme in vitro by the immature non nucleated mammalian erythrocyte *J Biol Chem* 183 749 1950
- 62 Moore C V Bierbaum O S Welch A D and Wright L D The activity of synthetic Lactobacillus casei factor (folic acid) as an antipernicious anemia substance *J Lab & Clin Med* 30 1056 1945
- 63 Neuberger A and Muir H M Biosynthesis of porphyrins and congenital porphyria *Nature* 165 348 1950
- 64 Neve R A and Aldrich R A Porphyrin metabolism III Urinary and erythrocyte porphyrin in children with acute rheumatic fever *Pediatrics* 15 553 1955
- 65 Neve R A Labbe R F and Aldrich R A Reduced uroporphyrin III in the biosynthesis of heme *J Am Chem Soc* 78 611 1956

- 66 Orten J M Underhill F A Magrage E R and Lewis R C Blood volume studies in cobalt polycythemia *J Biol Chem* 99 457 1932 33
- 67 O good E E Number and distribution of human hemic cells *Blood* 1141 1954
- 68 Pauling L The oxygen equilibrium of hemoglobin and its structural interpretation *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 21 186 1935
- 69 Perutz M F Absorption spectra of single crystals of haemoglobin in polarized light *Nature* 143 731 1939
- 70 Perutz M F Liguori A M and Eirich F X ray and solubility studies of the haemoglobin of sickle cell anaemia patients *Nature* 167 929 1951
- 71 Radin N S Rittenberg D and Shemin D The role of glycine in the biosynthesis of heme *J Biol Chem* 184 745 1950
- 72 Radin N S Rittenberg D and Shemin D The role of acetic acid in the biosynthesis of heme *J Biol Chem* 184 755 1950
- 73 Raine D N An ether soluble precursor of coproporphyrin in urine *Biochem J* 47 xiv 1950
- 74 Reissmann K R Studies on the mechanism of erythropoietic stimulation in parabiotic rats during hypoxia *Blood* 5 372 1950
- 75 Rhinesmith H S Schroeder W A and Pauling L A quantitative study of the hydrolysis of human dimethylphenyl (DMP) globin The number and kind of polypeptide chains in normal adult human hemoglobin *J Am Chem Soc* 79 468 1957
- 76 Rimington C Haems and porphyrins in health and disease II *Acta med scandinav* 149 177 1952
- 77 Rimington C Biosynthesis of haemoglobin *Brit M Bull* 15 19 1959
- 78 Salomon K Richmond J E and Altman K I Tetrapyrrole precursors of protoporphyrin IX *J Biol Chem* 196 463 1952
- 79 Schachter H Nature of the glucuronide in direct reacting bilirubin *Science* 126 507 1957
- 80 Schmid R Direct reacting bilirubin bilirubin glucuronide in serum bile and urine *Science* 124 76 1956
- 81 Schmid R and Schwartz S Disturbance of catalase metabolism in experimental porphyria *J Lab & Clin Med* 40 939 1952
- 82 Schmid R Schwartz S and Sundberg R D Erythropoietic (congenital) porphyria A rare abnormality of the normoblasts *Blood* 10 416 1955
- 83 Schmid R Schwartz S and Watson C J Porphyrin content of bone marrow and liver in the various forms of porphyria *Arch Int Med* 93 167 1954
- 84 Schmid R and Shemin D The enzymatic formation of porphobilinogen from δ aminolevulinic acid and its conversion to protoporphyrin *J Am Chem Soc* 77 506 1955
- 85 Schulman M P and Richert D A Utilization of glycine succinate and δ amino levulinic acid for heme synthesis *Fed Proc* 15 349 1956
- 86 Schultze M O The relation of copper to cytochrome oxidase and hematopoietic activity of the bone marrow of rats *J Biol Chem* 133 219 1941
- 87 Schwartz S Glickman M Hunter R and Wallace J Plutonium project report CH3720 AEC D 2109 (1945) GC770 V 632
- 88 Schwartz S and Wikoff H M The relation of erythrocyte coproporphyrin and protoporphyrin to erythropoiesis *J Biol Chem* 194 563 1952
- 89 Shemin D The biosynthesis of porphyrins Conference on Hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences National Research Council Publ 507 1957 p 68
- 90 Shemin D Alramsky T and Russell C S The synthesis of protoporphyrin from δ aminolevulinic acid in a cell free extract *J Am Chem Soc* 76 1204 1954
- 91 Shemin D Corcoran J W Rosenblum C and Miller I M On the biosynthesis of the porphyrinlike moiety of vitamin B₁₂ *Science* 124 272 1956
- 92 Shemin D and Kumon S J The mechanism of porphyrin formation The formation of a succinyl intermediate from succinate *J Biol Chem* 193 827 1952
- 93 Shemin D and Rittenberg D The utilization of glycine for the synthesis of a porphyrin *J Biol Chem* 159 567 1945
- 94 Shemin D and Rittenberg D The biological utilization of glycine for the synthesis of the protoporphyrin of hemoglobin *J Biol Chem* 166 621 1946
- 95 Shemin D and Russell C S δ Aminolevulinic acid its role in the biosynthesis of porphyrins and purines *J Am Chem Soc* 75 4873 1953

- 96 Shemin D Russell C S and Abramsky T The succinate glycine cycle I The mechanism of pyrrole synthesis J Biol Chem 215 613 1955
- 97 Shemin D and Wittenberg J The mechanism of porphyrin formation The role of the tricarboxylic acid cycle J Biol Chem 192 315 1951
- 98 Smith L L Vitamin B₁₂ Brit M Bull 12 52 1956
- 99 Spector H Maass A R Michaud L Elvehjem C A and Hurt E H The role of riboflavin in blood regeneration J Biol Chem 150 75 1943
- 100 Thorell H Studies on the formation of cellular substances during blood cell production Acta med scandinav Suppl 200 1947
- 101 Waldenström J The porphyrias as inborn errors of metabolism Am J Med 22 758 1957
- 102 Walsh R J Thomas E D Chow S K Fluharty R G and Finch C A Iron metabolism Heme synthesis in vitro by immature erythrocytes Science 110 396 1949
- 103 Ward E and Mason H L Free erythrocyte protoporphyrin J Clin Invest 29 905 1950
- 104 Watson C J The erythrocyte coproporphyrin Arch Int Med 86 797 1950
- 105 Watson C J Porphyrin metabolism in anemias Arch Int Med 90 323 1957
- 106 Watson C J and Larson E A The urinary coproporphyrins in health and disease Physiol Rev 27 478 1947
- 107 Watson C J deMello R P Schwartz S Hawkinson V E and Bossenmater J Porphyrin chromogens or precursors in urine blood bile and feces J Lab Clin Med 37 831 1951
- 108 Watson C J Schulze W Hawkinson V and Baker A H Coproporphyrinuria (Type III) in acute polomyelitis Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med 64 73 1947
- 109 Whipple G H and Rabschtein Robbins F S Amino acids and hemoglobin production in anemia J Exper Med 71 569 1940
- 110 Whipple G H and Madden S C Hemoglobin plasma protein and cell protein—their interchange and construction in emergencies Medicine 23 215 1944
- 111 Williams R T Biochemistry of vitamin B₁₂ Biochemical Society Symposium 13 Cambridge University Press London 1955
- 112 Wintrobe M M Cartwright G E and Gehler C J Studies on the function and metabolism of copper J Nutrition 50 395 1953
- 112a Wittenberg J and Shemin D The location in protoporphyrin of the carbon atoms derived from the α carbon atom of glycine J Biol Chem 185 103 1950
- 112b Zieve L Hill E Schwartz S and Watson C J Normal limits of urinary coproporphyrin excretion determined by an improved method J Lab Clin Med 41 663 1953

IRON METABOLISM

- 113 Bothwell T H Pirzio Biroli G and Finch C A Iron absorption I Factors influencing absorption J Lab & Clin Med 51 24 1958
- 114 Bush J A Ashenbrucker H Cartwright G E and Wintrobe M M The anemia of infection XX The kinetics of iron metabolism in the anemia associated with chronic infection J Clin Invest 35 89 1956
- 115 Cartwright G E Huguley C M Jr Ashenbrucker H Fav J and Wintrobe M M Studies on free erythrocyte protoporphyrin plasma iron and plasma copper in normal and anemic subjects Blood 3 501 1948
- 116 Cartwright G E et al Anemia of infection II The experimental production of hypoferrremia and anemia in dogs J Clin Invest 25 81 1946
- 117 Chodos N B Ross J F Apt L Polheove M and Halkett J A E The absorption of radiolabelled foods and iron salts in normal and iron deficient subjects and in idiopathic hemochromatosis J Clin Invest 36 314 1957
- 118 Drabkin B L Metabolism of the hemin chromoproteins Physiol Rev 31 345 1951
- 119 Demulder H Iron Arch Int Med 102 254 1958
- 120 Dubach R Callender S and Moore C V Studies in iron transportation and metabolism VI Absorption of radioactive iron in patients with fever and with anemias of varied etiology Blood 3 526 1948

- 121 Finch H C and Finch C A Idiopathic hemochromatosis an iron storage disease *Medicine* 34 381 1955
- 122 Finch C A et al Iron metabolism The pathophysiology of iron storage *Blood* 5 983 1950
- 123 Fowler W M Chlorosis—an obituary *Ann Med Hist* 8 168 1936
- 124 Ciblett E R et al Erythrokinetics Quantitative measurements of red cell production and destruction in normal subjects and patients with anemia *Blood* 11 291 1956
- 125 Granick S Iron and porphyrin metabolism in relation to the red blood cell *Ann N Y Acad Sc* 48 657 1947
- 126 Granick H Protein apoferitin and ferritin in iron feeding and absorption *Science* 103 107 1946
- 127 Gubler C J Absorption and metabolism of iron *Science* 123 87 1956
- 128 Hahn P H Bale W F Rois J F Balfour W M and Whipple G H Radio active iron absorption by the gastro intestinal tract *J Exper Med* 78 169 1943
- 129 Haslan D Stevens A R Jr Finch S and Finch C A Iron metabolism Iron stores in man as measured by phlebotomy *J Clin Invest* 31 543 1952
- 130 Hegsted D M Finch C A and Kinney T D The influence of diet on iron absorption II The interrelation of iron and phosphorus III Comparative studies with rats mice guinea pigs and chickens *J Exper Med* 90 147 1949 90 137 1949 96 115 1952
- 131 Heilmeyer L and Floetner K Das Serum Eisen und die Eisenerkrankheit Pathogenese Symptomatologie und Therapie Jena 1937
- 132 Holmberg C G and Laurell C B Studies on the capacity of serum to bind iron A contribution to our knowledge of the regulation mechanism of serum iron *Acta physiol scandinav* 10 307 1945
- 133 Huff R L et al Plasma and red cell iron turnover in normal subjects and in patients having various hematopoietic disorders *J Clin Invest* 29 1041 1950
- 133a Jandl J H Inman J A Simmons R I and Allen D W Transfer of iron from the serum iron binding protein to human reticulocytes *J Clin Invest* 38 161 1959
- 134 Josephs H W Absorption of iron as a problem in human physiology A critical review *Blood* 13 1 1953
- 135 Lantzel W Zum nachweis der Resorption des Nahrungseisens als Ferroiron *Biochem Z* 263 173 1933
- 136 Moore C V and Dubach R Iron metabolism and requirements of iron in the human *JAMA* 162 197 1956
- 137 Moore C V Dubach R Minnich V and Roberts H A Absorption of ferrous and ferric radioactive iron by human subjects and by dogs *J Clin Invest* 23 755 1944
- 138 Moore C V and Dubach R Observations on the absorption of iron from foods tagged with radioiron *Tr.A Am Phys* 64 245 1951
- 139 Pizzio Buol G Bothwell T H and Finch C A Iron absorption II The absorption of radioiron administered with a standard meal in man *J Lab & Clin Med* 51 37 1958
- 140 Rath C E and Finch C A Chemical clinical and immunological studies on the products of human plasma fractionation XXVIII Serum iron transport measurement of serum iron binding capacity in man *J Clin Invest* 28 79 1949
- 141 Rother L J Hemochromatosis and hemosiderosis *Am J Med* 21 857 1956
- 142 Reisman K H Boley J Christanson J F and Delp M H The serum iron in experimental hepatocellular necrosis *J Lab & Clin Med* 43 572 1954
- 143 Rusting E Studies on serum iron *Acta dermat venerol* Vol 20 Suppl 21 1949
- 144 Schide A L and Carolle L An iron binding component in human blood plasma *Science* 104 340 1946
- 145 Shoden A Gabrio B W and Finch C A The relationship between ferritin and hemosiderin in rabbit and man *J Biol Chem* 204 823 1953

- 146 Steinkamp R Dubach H and Moore C V Studies in iron transportation and metabolism VIII Absorption of radioiron from iron enriched bread Arch Int Med 95 181 1955
- 147 Stone C M Jr Rumball J M and Hassett C P An evaluation of the serum iron in liver disease Ann Int Med 43 229 1955
- 148 Tompsett S L Factors influencing the absorption of iron and copper from the alimentary tract Biochem J 34 961 1940
- 149 Whipple G H and Rabscheit Robbins F S Iron and its utilization in experimental anemia Am J M Sc 191 11 1936
- 150 Widdowson E M and McCance H A The absorption and excretion of iron before during and after a period of very high intake Biochem J 31 2029 1937

Mechanisms and Diagnosis of Anemia

THE CLASSIFICATION OF ANEMIA

PROBLEMS related to anemia constitute a large segment of investigative hematology and an appreciable part of any clinical practice. The present chapter is devoted to the classification of anemia and to brief discussions of the underlying mechanisms that are involved in each type of anemia. The different mechanisms are discussed at this time to emphasize the importance of these fundamentals and to provide a basis for the development of a unifying systematic approach to the various clinical syndromes. More detailed discussions of the pathophysiology of most of the individual syndromes that are associated with anemia are given in Chapter IV.

Anemia may be defined as a reduction in the circulation of either hemoglobin or erythrocytes. It occurs whenever the hemitopoietic equilibrium is disturbed and the loss of erythrocytes or hemoglobin from the circulation exceeds production.

Anemia is usually classified according to either causative factors or mor

phologic characteristics Both classifications are important because neither is entirely satisfactory Classification according to causative factors may be somewhat ambiguous because various details of a disease may be considered as causes Thus anemia may be caused by chronic blood loss the blood loss may be due to several causes such as excessive vaginal bleeding and hemorrhoidal bleeding Each of these types of bleeding may arise from one of several causes such as functional menorrhagia or uterine malignancy in one circumstance and simple hemorrhoids or hemorrhoids associated with cirrhosis of the liver in the other Difficulty in classification also arises if the mechanism is viewed as a "cause" when anemia results from more than one factor such as increased destruction and diminished production of erythrocytes Classification according to the morphologic characteristics of the erythrocytes is not entirely satisfactory either because the same underlying disease may produce more than one type of anemia "Aplastic anemia may be normocytic or macrocytic chronic bleeding may produce a simple microcytic type of anemia at one stage and a hypochromic microcytic type of anemia at another Although each classification has shortcomings when used alone both are very helpful in clinical hematology when they are used together Determinations of the morphologic characteristics of the anemia and of the mechanism of its production are both important steps toward the identification of the underlying cause which is the objective of diagnosis

Morphologic Classification

The morphologic classification of anemia is helpful in diagnosis because the characterization of the anemia according to the size and hemoglobin content of the erythrocytes directs the future investigation toward a definite group of possible causative factors or clinical syndromes and eliminates others from consideration In order to classify anemia morphologically it is necessary to determine the size and hemoglobin content of the erythrocytes With the proper experience abnormalities in these details can be detected when a well prepared smear of the peripheral blood is examined carefully In other circumstances the size and hemoglobin content of the erythrocytes can be determined most satisfactorily by the formulae devised by Wintrobe ⁸⁷

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Mean Corpuscular Volume (MCV)} &= \frac{\text{Vol packed red cells (in cc per 100 cc blood)}}{\text{RBC (in mil per cu mm)}} \\
 &\quad (\text{in cubic microns } \mu^3) \\
 \text{Mean Corpuscular Hemoglobin (MCH)} &= \frac{\text{Hb (in gm per 100 cc blood)}}{\text{RBC (in mil per cu mm)}} \\
 &\quad (\text{in microgram } \gamma\gamma) \\
 \text{Mean Corpuscular Hemoglobin Conc (MCHC)} &= \frac{\text{Hb (in gm per 100 cc)} \times 100}{\text{Vol packed RBC (in cc per 100 cc blood)}} \\
 &\quad (\text{in per cent } \%)
 \end{aligned}$$

Wintrobe's classification of anemia according to cell size and hemoglobin content is given in Table 4 with slight modifications

Table 4 Classification of Anemia According to Size and Hemoglobin Content of the Erythrocytes^a

TYPE	MCH (cg)	MCHC (%)
1 Macrocytic	> 94	> 30
2 Normocytic	80-94	> 30
3 Simple Microcytic	< 80	> 30
4 Hypochromic Microcytic	< 80	< 30

Classification According to Mechanism

If "cause" of the anemia is thought of in the restricted sense of the immediate cause or "mechanism," a workable classification of anemia can be devised. Such a classification helps the physician focus on this aspect of the problem and provides a sound basis for further systematic investigation or treatment. A classification of anemia according to causative mechanisms is presented in Table 5.

Table 5 Classification of Anemia According to Mechanism of Production

MECHANISM	CAUSE	DISEASE OR CLINICAL SYNDROME
I DISTURBED ERYTHROPOIESIS		
A. Nutritional Deficiency		
1 Diet	Inadequate intake	Multiple deficiencies
2 Defective absorption	Failure to secrete intrinsic factor	Vitamin B ₁₂ deficiency (Pernicious anemia)
Stomach	Total gastrectomy	
	Partial gastrectomy	Iron deficiency
Intestine	Diarrhea	Folic acid, vitamin B ₁₂ or iron deficiency
	Disentery	
	Fistula	(Sprue, malabsorption syndrome or pernicious anemia)
	Stricture	
3 Increased demand	Pregnancy	(Folic acid, vitamin B ₁₂ or iron deficiency)
	Growth	Iron deficiency
B. Bone Marrow Failure		
	1 Associated Disease	Primary disease
	2 Drugs	Aplastic anemia
	3 Chemicals	Aplastic anemia
	4 Irradiation	Aplastic anemia
	5 Endocrine	Myxedema, pituitary disease
	6 Idiopathic	Aplastic anemia
II BLOOD LOSS		
A Acute	Trauma or disease	Shock or anemia
B Chronic	Lesion of gastrointestinal tract or gynecologic disturbance	Iron deficiency anemia or primary disease

Table 5—(Continued)

MECHANISM	CAUSE	DISEASE OR CLINICAL SYNDROME
III INCREASED HEMOLYSIS		
A Intracorporeal	Congenital defects	Hereditary spherocytosis Sickle cell and other hemoglobinopathies Thalassemia Drug sensitivity Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria Congenital non spherocytic anemia
B Extracorporeal	Acquired Defects	
	1 Iso antibodies	Erythroblastosis fetalis transfusion reaction
	2 Auto antibodies	Idiopathic and secondary autoimmune hemolytic disease
	3 Auto hemolysis	Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria
	4 Infections	Malaria septicemia etc
	5 Chemicals	Phenylhydrazine etc
	6 Physical agents	Burns
	7 Vegetable poisons	Favism (also intracorporeal)
	8 Miscellaneous	Splenomegaly liver disease hemopathic hemolytic anemia

MECHANISMS RESPONSIBLE FOR ANEMIA

I DIMINISHED ERYTHROPOIESIS

When anemia results from diminished blood production study of the peripheral blood usually reveals a normocytic or macrocytic anemia associated with a low or normal level of the reticulocytes. Leukopenia and thrombocytopenia are often present. If the diminished blood production is the result of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency, erythropoiesis is megaloblastic in type if the anemia is due to other causes, erythropoiesis is normoblastic. Blood production may be inadequate because there is (a) a deficiency of the factors that are essential for erythropoiesis or (b) a failure of the bone marrow to utilize the essential substances although they are available.

A Nutritional Deficiency

The factors essential for normal erythropoiesis are metals (cobalt iron copper) protein (certain amino acids) and vitamins (vitamin B₁₂ folic acid ascorbic acid pyridoxine niacin and possibly riboflavin pantothenic acid and thymine).⁸¹ A deficiency of any one of these factors might be expected to produce anemia. A lack of amino acids appears to be an unlikely

cause of anemia in man since amounts of these substances sufficient for erythropoiesis become available from some body source even when the serum protein levels and the protein intake are exceedingly low.³³ In man only deficiencies of folic acid, vitamin B₁₂, iron, and ascorbic acid are important in the production of anemia.³⁴ A deficiency of these essential factors may arise in various ways such as (1) faulty diet (2) defective absorption or (3) excessive demands for erythropoiesis.

1 Faulty diet is responsible for anemia in various parts of the world in usual or unusual circumstances. In the United States except in food faddists or alcoholics nutritional deficiency is rarely a cause of anemia unless other factors operate to produce a conditioned or secondary deficiency.³⁵ When anemia occurs in adults because of faulty diet the anemia is usually the result of folic acid deficiency possibly because of the large body reserves of vitamin B₁₂ and iron.

2 Defective absorption is a common cause of nutritional anemia in adults. In pernicious anemia vitamin B₁₂ deficiency arises in this manner as a result of defective gastric function and the failure to secrete the "intrinsic factor" that is essential for the normal absorption of vitamin B₁₂.³⁶ A similar disorder is produced by total gastrectomy, a procedure that removes the tissue that secretes the intrinsic factor. In this circumstance the deficiency does not appear for several years after gastrectomy because the normal body reserves of vitamin B₁₂ do not become depleted for some time. Macrocytic anemia associated with a megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis that is characteristic of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency sometimes occurs in sprue or other diseases accompanied by severe diarrhea or other abnormalities which may lead to malabsorption. A similar anemia due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency that is refractory to oral treatment yet responsive to parenteral therapy has been reported in patients with diverticula, strictures and fistulas of the small intestine. In such circumstances the bacterial flora of the gut seems to play an important role in some way possibly by inhibiting the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ or by competing for this vitamin since treatment with antibiotics may induce a remission accompanied by a return of the ability to absorb vitamin B₁₂ that is administered orally.³⁷ Although total gastrectomy is rarely followed by an iron deficiency anemia this type of anemia often occurs several years after partial gastrectomy. Investigation of such patients has shown that the iron deficiency in this circumstance is probably at least partly the result of an inability to absorb iron that is contained in food while the ability to absorb medicinal iron may be normal.³⁸

3 Excessive demands for erythropoiesis may produce a deficiency of essential factors if the reserve stores of the body have been depleted even though the normal dietary intake has been maintained. During pregnancy anemia sometimes occurs because of iron deficiency that is the result of the added demands of fetal erythropoiesis. A similar type of anemia is seen in some children because of the increased need for iron to meet the increase in blood volume that accompanies body growth. A deficiency of folic acid or more rarely of vitamin B₁₂ develops in some women during pregnancy.

particularly in those who have a poor diet or suffer from severe gastrointestinal upsets. Depletion of the body reserves of folic acid may be a factor in megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy but it has been pointed out that in man neither the daily requirement of folic acid nor the quantity of the body stores is known.⁴⁷ The existence of some reserves of folic acid is shown by the observation that some expectant mothers do not develop megaloblastic anemia despite extremely poor diets.

B Bone Marrow Failure

Even if adequate amounts of all the substances required for erythropoiesis are ingested and absorbed normally, erythropoiesis may be inadequate because of defective function of the bone marrow. Inadequate erythropoiesis is responsible for the occurrence of anemia in a number of circumstances such as (1) in the presence of other disease (2) after the ingestion of drugs (3) after exposure to chemicals (4) after irradiation (5) in endocrine diseases (6) in many patients the disease is idiopathic.

1 Diseases of long duration such as chronic infections particularly if accompanied by fever and various metabolic disorders, such as the uremic state often depress erythropoiesis. The decreased marrow activity is reflected by diminished iron utilization and reduced production of young red cells.⁴⁸ Although all of the factors that are responsible for the depression of marrow activity are not known, some important details have been established. The plasma of uremic rabbits has been shown to contain a lower than normal quantity of the erythropoietic factors and uremic rabbits have been shown to be less responsive than normal to injection of plasma rich in erythropoietin.⁴⁹ Bone marrow cultures from uremic patients have been shown to have lower iron utilization than cultures from normal individuals.⁵¹ In other diseases such as carcinomatosis, disseminated tuberculosis and leukemia, actual mechanical encroachment on the erythropoietic tissue may be a factor in the anemia although it is rarely the sole mechanism.

2 Drugs act to depress the bone marrow in various ways. Anemia may occur alone but more often it occurs in combination with leukopenia or thrombocytopenia. Some drugs depress the bone marrow which is a tissue composed of rapidly dividing cells by their pharmacologic action which interferes with nucleic acid metabolism and inhibits cell division or maturation. In this category are benzol, the alkylating agents (nitrogen mustard, chlorambucil, triethylene melamine (TEM), Myleran), folic acid antagonists (aminopterin, methopterin), the purine antagonists (6-mercaptopurine) and urethane. The effects of these drugs which are discussed in more detail in Chapter IX are predictable and quantitative although individual patients vary considerably with regard to the amount of drug that is required to produce the effects. Other drugs produce depression of hematopoiesis only in certain susceptible individuals. Marrow depression which may be temporary or permanent may occur without warning even after only a very small dose of the drug particularly if the individual has been

exposed to the drug previously. Reactions of this type have been reported to follow exposure to a variety of coal tar products, antibiotics, anticonvulsants, and heavy metals.⁵⁹

3 Chemicals that are employed in various industries and occupations may damage the bone marrow in the same manner as chemicals used as drugs. Usually an element of individual susceptibility is a factor. The chemicals that have been incriminated most often are organic solvents, particularly benzol and its derivatives.⁶⁰ Exposure to chemicals often occurs through the use of cleaning agents or insecticide sprays.

4 Ionizing radiation from x rays or radioactive materials causes anemia by depression of erythropoiesis if the bone marrow is exposed sufficiently. During roentgen ray therapy, or after the use of radioactive isotopes, the full hematologic effect may not be evident until several weeks after exposure. With the carefully calculated daily and total dosages that are used in irradiation therapy, permanent damage rarely results because therapy is rarely continued for more than several weeks at a time. However, if large doses of irradiation are used, as is sometimes the case when carcinoma is treated, or if courses of therapy are repeated frequently over a period of years, as happens in some patients with diseases of the lymphoma group, the effects on the marrow may be so marked and persistent that they may limit or preclude further therapy of this type. Although the exact mechanism of action of irradiation is incompletely understood at present, it is known that cell multiplication is suppressed, possibly by inhibition of nucleic acid synthesis.⁶ (See also Chapter IX.)

5 Hormones. Both the pituitary gland and the thyroid gland are important in erythropoiesis. This is shown by the development of anemia after removal of either of the glands in animals and by the occurrence of anemia in patients with hypopituitarism and myxedema.⁶ It has been postulated that the anemia in myxedema, which is rarely severe, represents an adjustment to the decreased body metabolism comparable to the effect produced by exposure to increased oxygen tension rather than a deficiency of the thyroid hormone per se.⁶ The demonstration that patients with myxedema and anemia respond in a normal fashion to bleeding without thyroxin administration favors this interpretation,⁶⁰ as does the observation that patients who have an associated deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ or iron can respond to some extent to these substances without the administration of thyroxin.⁶ It has been shown that some individuals with myxedema absorb vitamin B₁₂⁶¹ and iron poorly.³

6 "Idiopathic" aplastic anemia. In some patients no explanation can be found for the bone marrow failure that is responsible for severe anemia. There is no history of unusual exposure to drugs, chemicals, or irradiation and no evidence of an associated disease that might cause bone marrow depression. A congenital defect has been postulated for the disorder that occurs in infants and very young children, but aplastic anemia also develops in adults. The marrow hypoplasia is usually associated with pancytopenia, but in some patients anemia occurs alone; in others the anemia is accompanied

by either leukopenia or thrombocytopenia. Theoretically the marrow failure may be due either to the lack of some factor necessary for erythropoiesis or to the inability of the cells to respond to the factor or factors that normally stimulate erythropoiesis. Against the first possibility is the evidence that the plasma of at least some adult patients with aplastic anemia contains large amounts of erythropoietin; such plasma induces an erythropoietic response when injected into hypophysectomized test animals.²⁹ These observations suggest that the hemopoietic cells have been damaged in some way and are unable to respond normally to stimuli. The observation that extramedullary hematopoiesis rarely occurs in aplastic anemia and occurs often when there is encroachment on the marrow by other tissue such as carcinoma or fibrosis also favors this interpretation.

II BLOOD LOSS

A Acute blood loss usually results in a normocytic, normochromic type of anemia. Although the total blood volume falls immediately after hemorrhage the hematocrit determination may not reflect the degree of blood loss until 48 hours have elapsed. In persons with a responsive bone marrow acute hemorrhage which affords a well known stimulus to erythropoiesis is usually followed by an increase in platelets, leukocytes, and reticulocytes. The rise in platelets and leukocytes which is greater with internal hemorrhage than with external hemorrhage occurs in a few hours. The reticulocytes begin to increase in two or three days and reach a peak in five to ten days.

B Chronic blood loss is a common cause of anemia. Bleeding of this type nearly always results in a deficiency of iron which when severe is characterized by a hypochromic microcytic anemia associated with normoblastic erythropoiesis in the bone marrow. In milder degrees of anemia due to deficiency of iron hypochromia and microcytosis may be absent.³ The reticulocyte count, serum bilirubin level, platelet count and leukocyte count are usually normal. Any disorder which leads to chronic or repeated gastrointestinal or uterine bleeding may produce iron deficiency. If the iron stores have been reduced previously by growth, menstruation or pregnancy the actual blood loss need not be conspicuous in order to produce anemia. Even the physiologic blood loss of menstruation may be sufficient to cause anemia in young girls with borderline stores of iron. Mild menorrhagia at the menopause may produce the same result in older women.

III INCREASED HEMOLYSIS

The normal survival time of the circulating erythrocyte as determined by the Ashby, chromium⁵¹, N⁵ glycine and disopropyl fluorophosphate methods is about 120 days. The actual mechanisms by which the erythrocytes are destroyed even in normal circumstances are poorly understood. The following mechanisms have been considered: (1) erythrophagocytosis by cells of the reticuloendothelial system; (2) osmotic lysis; (3) destruction

by tissue lysins (4) mechanical fragmentation of old or damaged cells or (5) damage by agglutinins.⁴ In normal circumstances and in most instances of hemolytic disease destruction of the erythrocytes or at least the conversion of hemoglobin into bilirubin apparently takes place in the cells of the reticuloendothelial system. In certain hemolytic anemias the erythrocytes are fragmented or lysed intravascularly and hemoglobin is released into the plasma. Hemolytic anemia occurs whenever a decreased survival time of the erythrocytes is not balanced by increased erythropoiesis. A decrease in survival time of the erythrocytes to less than 20 days may be necessary to produce anemia if the bone marrow is functioning normally since the bone marrow has the capacity to increase its production of erythrocytes six fold. Unless erythropoiesis is depressed for some reason hemolytic anemia is characterized by both increased hemolysis and increased erythropoiesis. Evidence of increased hemolysis is found in the increased excretion of fecal urobilinogen and urinary urobilinogen and in the elevation of indirect reacting bilirubin in the serum. Increased erythropoiesis is manifested by hyperplasia of the bone marrow, reticulocytosis in the peripheral blood and increased iron utilization.

Several different pathogenic mechanisms may cause a diminution in the survival time of erythrocytes. These mechanisms can be conveniently classified as "intracorpuseular" or "extracorpuseular." "Intracorpuseular defects" which are intrinsic in the erythrocytes produced by the patient result in a diminished survival time of the patient's erythrocytes in his own circulation and also after transfusion into a normal compatible recipient. "Extracorpuseular" factors are different in that they are part of the environment that the erythrocytes encounter in the patient's circulation. Normal erythrocytes have a diminished survival when transfused into the patient while the erythrocytes produced by the patient survive for the normal time when transfused into a normal recipient.⁵ Intracorpuseular defects are generally congenital the result of some inherited disorder. Extracorpuseular defects are usually acquired as the result of some associated disease or disorder. In some patients the hemolytic anemia is the result of a combination of intracorpuseular and extracorpuseular abnormalities.

A. Intracorpuseular Defects

1. Hereditary spherocytosis (congenital hemolytic jaundice) is inherited as a Mendelian dominant⁶ and is characterized by erythrocytes that have a thickness/diameter ratio greater than normal. The cells are abnormally susceptible to hypotonic saline^{16, 17} and the tendency of the cells to undergo lysis is increased by incubation.^{41, 44} Perfusion experiments have demonstrated that the increased thickness of the erythrocytes leads to their sequestration in the spleen where they are destroyed.^{21, 22, 23} These studies have demonstrated that although there is an inherited "intrinsic" defect in the erythrocytes in hereditary spherocytosis, the decreased survival time of the red cells is the result of their sequestration and destruction by the spleen.

and for this reason splenectomy cures the hemolytic anemia in nearly all patients even though the defect in the erythrocytes—spherocytosis—persists. The actual spherocytosis may be a reflection of an inherited abnormality in phosphate partitioning associated with derangements in energy yielding glycolytic reactions.^{1, 2} The finding of increased sodium transport across the surface membrane of the erythrocytes in hereditary spherocytosis—which did not correlate with the osmotic fragility, autohemolysis or other tests—has led to the suggestion that hereditary spherocytosis is a composite of genetically determined biochemical abnormalities.³

2 Thalassemia (Cooley's anemia, Mediterranean anemia) is a rare inherited disorder that is found most often in families of Mediterranean origin. It may be manifested by different syndromes that vary in severity from mild hematologic abnormalities to severe anemia. Studies of families with this disorder led to the suggestion that the severe form of the disease represents homozygosity of the genetic factor (thalassemia major) while the milder state reflects heterozygosity of the genetic factor (thalassemia minor).^{1, 2} A prominent feature of the disorder is the occurrence of hypochromic microcytes that are abnormally thin (leptocytes). These cells have the appearance of target cells on the stained blood smear and are abnormally resistant to hypotonic saline.^{4, 50} The alterations that are responsible for the leptocytosis and the method of destruction of the cells in the patient which occurs in the absence of the spleen are unknown. Although the main defect in this disease is intracorpuscular in some patients there is an additional extra corpuscular mechanism associated with the splenomegaly that leads to premature destruction of even normal cells that are transfused.³ Hemoglobin analysis has revealed an increase in fetal hemoglobin (HbF) and hemoglobin A in the different thalassemic syndromes. The percentage of hemoglobin F does not correlate with the clinical severity of the disorder.⁷⁸ The hemoglobin F in thalassemia major has been found to range from 40 to almost 100 per cent. In other milder cases the hemoglobin F usually ranges from 20 to 40 per cent.³ In some patients with only minimal evidence of thalassemia in the peripheral blood the level of hemoglobin F may be as high as 80 per cent,¹ while in other similar cases it may not be detectable.⁷⁹

3 Hemoglobinopathies. Pauling, Itano, Singer and Wells made the important discovery that the sickling phenomenon in sickle cell disease is due to a pathologic difference in the hemoglobin molecule that could be demonstrated by electrophoresis.⁷⁰ The difference between these hemoglobin molecules is in the globin portion and not in the heme fraction. This new concept that a disease can be an expression of a molecular disorder that is genetically controlled has opened up an entirely new field of investigation in hematology.⁶ Several excellent reviews of this important and rapidly changing field have been published.^{14, 53, 63, 81}

The determination of the type of hemoglobin is genetically controlled and for a satisfactory explanation of the various combinations of normal and abnormal hemoglobins that have been reported it may be necessary to postulate at least three different genetic loci.^{67, 68} When the abnormal hemo

1 - - - - 7

A (M J)

C (patient)

S (L J)

-

A (C J)

A (F J)

Figure 18: Example of hemoglobin electrophoresis showing characteristic mobilities of homozygous hemoglobins A, C and S using filter paper as a supporting medium with a veronal buffer at pH 8.6. Cathode to the right.

globin occurs in the heterozygous state along with normal adult hemoglobin a non symptomatic "trait" condition usually results. When the abnormal hemoglobin is present in the homozygous state or when an individual is heterozygous for two abnormal hemoglobin types a clinical disease characterized by a hemolytic disorder of the intracorpuscular type usually occurs (Fig. 19). In addition to the normal adult hemoglobin⁷⁰ and fetal hemoglobin, F, the following electrophoretically abnormal hemoglobins have been reported: S⁷⁰, C⁵⁵, D¹⁹, E⁵⁴, G⁸³, H⁷⁴, I⁷⁴, J⁶⁰, K¹¹, L¹, N³, Q⁸³, "Norfolk"¹, "Barts"¹. Hemoglobins D, G, H, I, J, K, L, N, Q, "Norfolk" and "Barts" have been found only in the heterozygous or trait condition. Disease states characterized by hemolytic anemia have been reported in the following hemoglobin combinations: SS (sickle cell anemia), SC (sickle cell-hemoglobin C disease), S (thalassemia (microdrepanocytic disease) thalassemia-sickle cell disease), SD (sickle cell-hemoglobin D disease), CC (homozygous C disease), C (Thalassemia (hemoglobin C-thalassemia disease)), EE (homozygous E disease).

The chemical differences between hemoglobin S (and the other abnormal hemoglobins) and hemoglobin A are slight. It is now known that of the

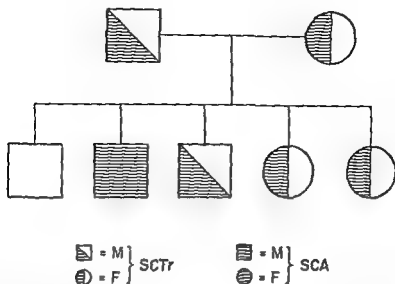


Figure 19 Heredity in sickle cell disease Study of the hemoglobin types in a family which illustrates the results that occurred from the mating of parents who were heterozygous for hemoglobin S

nearly 300 amino acids present in each of the identical half molecules of hemoglobin only one is abnormal in hemoglobin S. In each half of the hemoglobin S molecule one normally occurring glutamic acid is replaced by valine with the net loss of two carboxyl groups by the entire molecule.⁵¹

Little is known about the mechanism of increased cell destruction in the disease states characterized by abnormal hemoglobin. Sickle cell anemia has been studied more extensively than the others. The amount of hemoglobin S in individuals with sickle cell trait varies from 22 to 45 per cent of the total, the remainder being hemoglobin A. In patients with sickle cell anemia no hemoglobin A is present; the predominant hemoglobin is of the S type and the remainder, up to 20 per cent of the total, is hemoglobin F.⁵² It is known that the capacity of the erythrocytes to sickle is a property of the hemoglobin of the erythrocytes rather than a peculiarity of the plasma or the stroma of the cells.⁵³ The actual development of the sickle form appears to be related to the diminished solubility of unsaturated S hemoglobin molecules which causes the appearance of S shaped tactoids which in turn cause the cell to assume the characteristic sickle cell shape.⁵⁴ Sickling occurs under conditions of reduced oxygen tension and less reduction in oxygen tension for a shorter period of time is required to produce sickling in erythrocytes of patients with sickle cell anemia than in those of individuals with the sickle cell trait.⁵⁵ It has been demonstrated that physiologic oxygen tensions that may be encountered in the body are low enough to produce sickling of the erythrocytes in sickle cell anemia.⁵⁶ It has been postulated that the cell destruction results from mechanical trauma since it has been

demonstrated that the mechanical fragility of the erythrocytes in sickle cell anemia is increased when the cells are in the sickle form^{21, 22}

4 Primaquine Sensitivity Primaquine sensitivity has been studied extensively and it has been shown that the hemolytic anemia induced by the drug is due to intracorpuseular defects that render the cells susceptible to the drug.²³ This drug sensitivity which has a familial distribution is seen but rarely in Caucasians but occurs in about 10 per cent of the American Negroes.²⁴ The primaquine induced hemolytic anemia is characterized by an acute hemolytic phase of about eight days duration which is followed first by a recovery phase and then by a phase of equilibrium when further administration of primaquine in large doses does not produce further hemolysis. Survival studies in which young erythrocytes tagged with radioactive iron were utilized demonstrated that the hemolytic action of primaquine affected only older erythrocytes.²⁵ The intrinsic defect in the erythrocyte is characterized by several biochemical abnormalities. The following have been demonstrated: (1) low reduced glutathione (2) unstable reduced glutathione that falls when a hemolytic drug is administered in vivo or when the erythrocytes are incubated with acetylphenylhydrazine in vitro (3) deficiency of glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (4) increased glutathione reductase (5) increase in aldolase.²⁶ A deficiency of glucose 6 phosphate dehydrogenase has also been found in 72 per cent of healthy Negroes and in 13 per cent of healthy Caucasians.²⁷

The studies on primaquine sensitivity have an importance beyond the problem of primaquine hemolytic anemia. These investigations have established that an inherited abnormality in cellular physiology is responsible not only for primaquine sensitivity but also for the sensitivity that is concerned in the hemolytic anemia occurring in some individuals after the ingestion of sulfonamide drugs, fava beans and other compounds such as phenylhydrazine and naphthalene.²⁸ The clinical disease occurs as a result of the action of one of the extrinsic factors on erythrocytes that are susceptible because of an intrinsic hereditary defect.

5 Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria (Machajava-Micheli Syndrome) Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria is a rare hemolytic disorder that is characterized by intravascular hemolysis and hemoglobinuria which is usually more marked during or immediately after sleep.²⁹ It has been demonstrated that the increased hemolysis is due to an intracorpuseular defect since erythrocytes from patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria have a diminished survival time when transfused into normal subjects while erythrocytes from normal individuals survive normally when transfused into patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.^{30, 31} Auto-survival studies on three patients utilizing Cr⁵¹ tagged cells have shown half survival times of 2, 7 and 17 days however in each instance a portion of the cell population survived for prolonged periods and suggested the presence of a double population.³² Although the serum of patients with this disease is normal hemolysis of the abnormal erythrocytes occurs when the pH is reduced to a level of 6.7 to 7.1. This has suggested that the increased

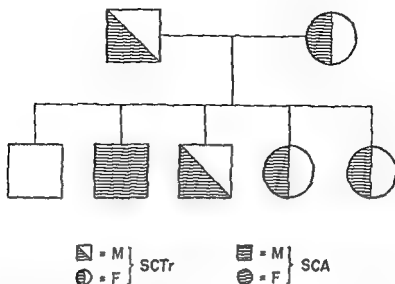


Figure 19 Heredity in sickle cell disease Study of the hemoglobin types in a family which illustrates the results that occurred from the mating of parents who were heterozygous for hemoglobin S

nearly 300 amino acids present in each of the identical half molecules of hemoglobin only one is abnormal in hemoglobin S. In each half of the hemoglobin S molecule one normally occurring glutamic acid is replaced by valine with the net loss of two carboxyl groups by the entire molecule.⁶¹

Little is known about the mechanism of increased cell destruction in the disease states characterized by abnormal hemoglobin. Sickle cell anemia has been studied more extensively than the others. The amount of hemoglobin S in individuals with sickle cell trait varies from 22 to 45 per cent of the total the remainder being hemoglobin A. In patients with sickle cell anemia no hemoglobin A is present the predominant hemoglobin is of the S type and the remainder up to 20 per cent of the total is hemoglobin F.⁶² It is known that the capacity of the erythrocytes to sickle is a property of the hemoglobin of the erythrocytes rather than a peculiarity of the plasma or the stroma of the cells.⁴ The actual development of the sickle form appears to be related to the diminished solubility of unsaturated S hemoglobin molecules which causes the appearance of S shaped tactoids which in turn cause the cell to assume the characteristic sickle cell shape.⁴⁶ Sickling occurs under conditions of reduced oxygen tension and less reduction in oxygen tension for a shorter period of time is required to produce sickling in erythrocytes of patients with sickle cell anemia than in those of individuals with the sickle cell trait.⁴⁷ It has been demonstrated that physiologic oxygen tensions that may be encountered in the body are low enough to produce sickling of the erythrocytes in sickle cell anemia.⁴⁷ It has been postulated that the cell destruction results from mechanical trauma since it has been

countered in the circulation may lead to increased destruction. It has also been suggested that the presence of the antibody on the cell membrane alters the metabolism at the cell surface and thereby causes irreversible changes in the membrane with the production of spherocytosis that leads to erythrocyte destruction in the spleen or in the circulation.⁴ The speed with which hemolysis was found to occur in some studies is evidence against the occurrence of this mechanism.⁵ Another possible explanation is that spherocytosis *in vivo* is caused by auto-agglutination and stagnation leading to ischemia of tissue cells which release substances that further damage the erythrocytes.¹⁴ Erythrophagocytosis by the leukocytes of the peripheral blood and by cells of the reticuloendothelial system may also be a mechanism of cell destruction. It seems probable that the mechanism of destruction of the red cells is not the same in every case of "auto-immune" hemolytic disease. It has been suggested that three pathways exist: (1) intravascular destruction due to the presence of a complete "antibody," a hemolysin; (2) lysis after sequestration primarily in the liver or lungs that occurs because of the presence of a complete "antibody," an agglutinin; (3) lysis primarily in the spleen after sequestration that follows agglutination produced by an incomplete agglutinin plus other factors.⁶⁷

2 Iso Immune Hemolytic Disease Iso-antibodies are the naturally occurring antibodies such as anti A and anti B and those that develop in response to the stimulus afforded by exposure to erythrocytes of other blood groups. These antibodies do not affect the patient's own erythrocytes. Iso-immune hemolytic disease occurs as a result of the incompatibility of the blood group antigens. It occurs as a result of mismatched transfusions involving the ABO system, the Rh system and other groups when the individual's serum contains antibodies for the other blood group agglutinogens. A similar mechanism is responsible for the hemolytic disease of the newborn, erythroblastosis fetalis. This disease most commonly occurs when the mother is Rh negative (lacks the D antigen) while the fetus is Rh positive (has the D antigen) but it also occurs in some instances of ABO incompatibility. The mother develops antibodies against the red cells of the fetus and the antibodies pass through the placenta to destroy erythrocytes in the fetal circulation. The exact method by which the immunizing antigen enters the mother's circulation is not known but it is likely that the event occurs at parturition since the disease generally spares the first born child and affects later children. Sensitization may also be present in nulliparous women because of previous blood transfusions. However, incompatibility of the blood groups of mother and child does not necessarily mean that hemolytic disease will develop since antibodies are not always formed in sufficient quantity.

3 Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is a very rare disease characterized by sudden attacks of intravascular hemolysis and hemoglobinuria. It has been considered to be a manifestation of syphilis but its occurrence in patients in whom syphilis has been excluded has led to the suggestion that in some patients the positive serologic tests

hemolysis that occurs during sleep is due to carbon dioxide retention. Studies have shown that for the *in vitro* destruction of erythrocytes in nocturnal hemoglobinuria the following are essential: serum complement, magnesium ion (Mg^{++}), pH between 6.7 and 7.1, properdin. Properdin is a normal constituent of serum, distinct from complement; that it is concerned in natural immune activities that do not require serum antibodies. The lytic action of serum parallels the properdin content, but the other factors are essential for the reaction.^{44, 45}

B Extracorporeal Defects

1. Auto-immune Hemolytic Anemias. Auto-immune hemolytic anemias are characterized by the production of "antibodies" that have the ability to act on the patient's own corpuscles. In most instances these "auto-antibodies" also act as iso-antibodies and react with other normal human erythrocytes to some degree. Hemolytic anemias of this type are acquired and from a clinical standpoint may be classified as (1) idiopathic (cause unknown) or (2) symptomatic (occurring in association with some other disease such as malignant lymphoma, leukemia, virus pneumonia, collagen disease). From a serologic standpoint the antibodies may be classified as "cold" antibodies which are markedly potentiated by cold or "warm" antibodies which act *in vitro* at 37° at least as well as at lower temperatures.⁴ The presence of the auto-antibodies of both the warm and cold types (which are absorbed on the patient's erythrocytes) is shown best by the antiglobulin (Coombs) test. During clinical remission the presence of auto-antibodies in the patient's serum can sometimes be demonstrated by testing with trypsinized cells when the indirect antiglobulin test is negative.²²

The factors that lead to the formation of the auto-antibodies in hemolytic anemia are not well understood. Two mechanisms have been suggested: (1) an alteration in the patient's erythrocytes that causes them to act as antigens and leads to a specific immune response by the patient; and (2) the production of antibodies or substances that resemble antibodies as part of an outpouring of globulin from the antibody-forming tissue of the patient in response to some other non-specific stimulus. The occurrence of this type of hemolytic anemia in patients who have disorders of the reticuloendothelial system, the frequent association of increases in the serum globulin level, and the frequent occurrence of other positive serologic reactions favor the production of abnormal protein as the fundamental disorder.^{3, 4} Furthermore, classic types of immune red cell reactions have been observed when it was clear that an antibody had not developed against the unaltered red cell.⁴⁷

The mechanisms by which the erythrocytes are actually destroyed are not known with certainty. The first phase in the destruction of the cells appears to be fixation of the globulin to the cell membrane.³ Since most auto-antibodies are not lytic, destruction probably occurs through other mechanisms. The demonstration that agglutinated erythrocytes coated with antibody have an increased mechanical fragility suggests that the trauma en-

countered in the circulation may lead to increased destruction. It has also been suggested that the presence of the antibody on the cell membrane alters the metabolism at the cell surface and thereby causes irreversible changes in the membrane with the production of spherocytosis that leads to erythrocyte destruction in the spleen or in the circulation.⁴ The speed with which hemolysis was found to occur in some studies is evidence against the occurrence of this mechanism.⁵ Another possible explanation is that spherocytosis in vivo is caused by auto-agglutination and stagnation leading to ischemia of tissue cells which release substances that further damage the erythrocytes.¹⁴ Erythrophagocytosis by the leukocytes of the peripheral blood and by cells of the reticuloendothelial system may also be a mechanism of cell destruction. It seems probable that the mechanism of destruction of the red cells is not the same in every case of "auto-immune hemolytic disease." It has been suggested that three pathways exist: (1) intravascular destruction due to the presence of a complete "antibody," a hemolysin; (2) lysis after sequestration primarily in the liver or lungs that occurs because of the presence of a complete "antibody," an agglutinin; (3) lysis primarily in the spleen after sequestration that follows agglutination produced by an incomplete agglutinin plus other factors.³⁷

2 Iso-immune Hemolytic Disease Iso-antibodies are the naturally occurring antibodies such as anti A and anti B and those that develop in response to the stimulus afforded by exposure to erythrocytes of other blood groups. These antibodies do not affect the patient's own erythrocytes. Iso-immune hemolytic disease occurs as a result of the incompatibility of the blood group antigens. It occurs as a result of mismatched transfusions involving the ABO system, the Rh system and other groups when the individual's serum contains antibodies for the other blood group agglutinogens. A similar mechanism is responsible for the hemolytic disease of the newborn, erythroblastosis fetalis. This disease most commonly occurs when the mother is Rh negative (lacks the D antigen) while the fetus is Rh positive (has the D antigen) but it also occurs in some instances of ABO incompatibility. The mother develops antibodies against the red cells of the fetus and the antibodies pass through the placenta to destroy erythrocytes in the fetal circulation. The exact method by which the immunizing antigen enters the mother's circulation is not known but it is likely that the event occurs at parturition since the disease generally spares the first born child and affects later children. Sensitization may also be present in nulliparous women because of previous blood transfusions. However, an incompatibility of the blood groups of mother and child does not necessarily mean that hemolytic disease will develop since antibodies are not always formed in sufficient quantity.

3 Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is a very rare disease characterized by sudden attacks of intravascular hemolysis and hemoglobinuria. It has been considered to be a manifestation of syphilis but its occurrence in patients in whom syphilis has been excluded has led to the suggestion that in some patients the positive serologic tests

for syphilis are false positive reactions that have occurred in the presence of the antibody of paroxysmal cold hematuria.³ The attacks are precipitated by chilling of the body and hemolysis occurs during the subsequent warming. Donath and Landsteiner demonstrated that hemolysis occurred in paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria because of the presence of an autohemolysin in the patient's blood.⁴ The hemolysin in the patient's plasma unites with the patient's erythrocytes in the presence of complement at temperature of 15° C or less. In the presence of complement hemolysis occurs on warming at a pH of 7.0 to 8.0. The hemolysin is not active at body temperature or at room temperature.⁴ The paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria antibody, which is the hemolysin, is a gamma globulin and erythrocytes that are sensitized by incubation in dilute paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuric serum are agglutinated by antiglobulin (Coxsack) serum.⁵ It has been suggested that the damaged erythrocytes are removed by erythrophagocytosis since this reaction has been demonstrated *in vitro*.⁶

4 **Infectious Agents** Hemolytic anemia may occur as a result of a variety of infections. Among these are septicemia due to *Clostridium*, *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, and infections due to *Vibrio cholerae*. Hemolytic anemia has also been reported in various types of tuberculosis, bacterial endocarditis, and influenza meningitis. In malaria destruction of the erythrocytes occurs as a consequence of the localization of the parasites within the red cells. The severe fulminating hemolytic anemia "blackwater fever" that sometimes occurs in infections with *Plasmodium falciparum* may be due in part to antibodies that are produced as a result of quinine ingestion.⁷ A severe acute hemolytic anemia occurs in Oroya fever which is caused by infection with the *Bartonella bacilliformis*. The mechanism by which certain viruses cause hemolytic anemia appears to be through the production of auto antibodies rather than by a direct action of the virus on the erythrocytes.

5 **Chemical Agents** A variety of chemical agents have been incriminated as causes of hemolytic anemia. Thirty one different compounds have been listed by Wintrobe.⁸ With some such as phenylhydrazine and naphthalene (present in mothballs) the effect is related to the amount of the compound that is ingested. Other compounds such as sulfonamides, quinine, and primaquine cause hemolytic anemia because of idiosyncrasy on the part of the patient. It now appears that in most individuals the susceptibility of the erythrocytes to these drugs and chemicals is the result of an inherited intracorpuscular defect.⁹

6 **Physical Agents** Hemolytic anemia which is sometimes severe occurs in extensive burns. As a result of damage to the erythrocytes by heat the red corpuscles become more susceptible to the trauma in the circulation and to stagnation in the tissues.⁴ Increased hemolysis has been demonstrated during the first week in burns and is severe in third degree burns of more than 20 per cent.⁴ In addition N¹ glycine studies of hemoglobin production have shown that marked depression of erythropoiesis occurs about 10 days after the injury at a time when the hemolytic anemia might be expected to lead to increased erythropoiesis.^{4, 10}

7 Vegetable Poisons A severe hemolytic anemia known as favism occurs in some individuals as the result of the ingestion of the bean *Vicia fava*. Most of the cases have occurred in Italy and Sardinia but cases have also been seen in other Mediterranean countries and the Middle East. The hemolytic episodes often acute are sometimes fatal. The direct and indirect antiglobulin (Coombs) tests are often positive at the time of an attack indicating the presence of incomplete warm antibodies on the erythrocytes and in the plasma.⁶¹ Favism was formerly considered to be a manifestation of allergic sensitization.³ Recent studies indicate that individuals who are susceptible to the fava bean have a constitutional anomaly of the erythrocytes glutathione deficiency similar to that found in patients who are sensitive to primaquine and other drugs.⁷⁰ Since some persons apparently do not develop the hemolytic anemia until after the second exposure to the offending drug or the fava bean it has been postulated that at times both a glutathione deficiency and the sensitization to the noxious agent are necessary to produce hemolysis.⁷¹

8 Miscellaneous Types of Hemolytic Anemia **HYPERSPLENISM** Hemolytic anemia sometimes develops in patients who have splenomegaly when no auto-antibodies or other abnormal hemolytic mechanisms can be demonstrated by the usual tests. The usual features of hemolytic anemia may be present, but on occasions during the management of a patient with anemia by means of transfusions an increased demand for transfusions is the main clinical evidence of the hyperhemolysis. In some patients leukopenia and thrombocytopenia of considerable severity also occur. The reductions in the cellular elements of the circulating blood are associated with an apparently active bone marrow. Splenectomy is sometimes beneficial and the syndrome has been termed "hypersplenism". A primary disorder of this type appears to be extremely rare if it exists. The syndrome is seen with splenomegaly that occurs in many different diseases such as cirrhosis, portal vein thrombosis, diseases of the lymphoma group, collagen disorders, fungus disease and tuberculosis. The mechanism of the hyperhemolysis is unknown. The increased destruction of the erythrocytes may be related to the circulatory stasis in the enlarged spleen in some way but the possibility of some humoral mechanism cannot be excluded.

HEMOPATHIC HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA The term hemopathic hemolytic anemia has been suggested for the hemolytic anemia that occurs in various disease states such as uremia, carcinoma, leukemia and infections when no abnormal antibodies can be demonstrated.⁶ The anemia is the result of a shortened survival time of the erythrocytes associated with an inadequate marrow response. The presence of a hemolytic element has been established by cell survival studies and the subnormal response of the marrow has been shown by the absence of reticulocytosis or increased iron utilization. The survival curve of the erythrocytes in this type of anemia is linear and resembles a normal curve except for its slope. For this reason it has been postulated that the increased cell destruction reflects premature senescence of the erythrocytes as the result of abnormal metabolism which occurs in the pri-

mary disease. It has been suggested that such metabolic abnormalities may lead to an early dissipation of the enzymes that are responsible for maintaining the normal integrity of the red blood cells.¹⁰ Increased hemolysis also occurs in some patients with "aplastic" or "refractory" anemia but in such patients the hemolytic element is a minor factor compared to the failure of the bone marrow.^{10, 68}

HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH LIVER DISEASE An acute type of hemolytic anemia has been observed in acute hepatic necrosis without evidence of autoimmunization.⁶⁹ Chronic hemolytic anemia that is due to an extracorporeal mechanism has been found to be the commonest type of anemia in chronic liver disease.^{15, 70} The spleen is apparently the main site of hemolysis in these patients.

DIAGNOSIS OF THE PATIENT WITH ANEMIA

The objectives in the management of the patient with anemia are first the discovery of the cause of the anemia and second correction of the underlying defect. It is important to remember that the demonstration of "anemia" does not constitute a diagnosis but merely the recognition of a sign comparable to fever or edema. For this reason the seriousness of the anemia in any patient depends on the underlying cause of the anemia rather than the severity of the anemia. A mild degree of anemia caused by a carcinoma of the gastrointestinal tract is a serious affair for the patient while a severe degree of anemia from hemorrhoidal bleeding is not. Treatment of a patient with iron or vitamins or blood transfusions *without first making a diagnosis* other than anemia may jeopardize his chances of recovery. Anemia that is the result of iron deficiency secondary to blood loss from a carcinoma of the cecum may respond to iron salts orally or to blood transfusions while the carcinoma changes from a curable to an incurable lesion. In situations where the underlying cause cannot be corrected accurate diagnosis is still essential for proper management. Unless this fact is recognized a patient with a macrocytic anemia may be "cured" of his anemia by treatment with the folic acid present in many multivitamin preparations but the central nervous system lesions may progress and become irreversible if the patient is suffering from the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency of pernicious anemia.

A systematic investigation of the patient with suspected anemia nearly always provides the information necessary for the correct diagnosis and

proper treatment This investigation aims to provide answers to the following questions

- 1 Does the patient have anemia?
- 2 What are the morphologic characteristics of the anemia?
- 3 What is the mechanism of the anemia?
- 4 What is the underlying cause or disease that is responsible for the abnormal mechanism?
- 5 What is the best form of treatment?

Although it is at times impossible to establish a complete diagnosis in a patient with anemia in the vast majority of patients it is possible to classify the anemia according to the responsible mechanism as due to either deficient production blood loss or increased hemolysis Thus it is usually possible by the use of relatively simple laboratory procedures that can be performed in the physician's office or the hospital laboratory. If the physician understands the mechanism that is responsible for the anemia he is in a position to manage the patient intelligently by administering the proper treatment or by planning any further investigation that may be necessary to identify the disorder that is responsible for the abnormal mechanism.

The answer to the question Does the patient have anemia? often cannot be gained from the history or the physical examination. Anemia of moderate severity may not be detected even by careful inspection of the skin and mucous membranes. In another circumstance a neurasthenic individual with pallor of the skin and mucous membranes may report all of the symptoms of anemia even though the blood is entirely normal. The presence of anemia can be established only by laboratory procedures. The simplest and most reliable screening procedure is the hematocrit determination.⁶ The normal range for adult males is 40 to 54 (47.0 ± 7.0) per cent and for adult females 37 to 47 (42.0 ± 5.0) per cent.⁷ The hemoglobin determination which has⁸ an accuracy comparable to that of the hematocrit if it is performed properly is also advocated as a screening procedure by some authors.¹⁰ In our experience the hematocrit determination is more accurate than the determinations of the levels of hemoglobin or erythrocytes as these are usually performed but even this procedure is far from infallible. Misleading values may be obtained if the blood is drawn from a vein subjected to too much stasis if an improper amount of anticoagulant is used or if centrifugation is faulty. The volume of packed cells is also influenced by the osmotic pressure in the plasma low levels of serum electrolytes cause a rise in the hematocrit while elevations cause a fall (Fig 20). Even if the techniques are not faulty values in the normal range may be obtained occasionally in patients with either macrocytic anemia or iron deficiency anemia of mild degree. We have seen a patient with pernicious anemia and involvement of the central nervous system who had a hematocrit of 42 per cent a hemoglobin of 14.3 gm per 100 ml. and an erythrocyte count of 3.3 mil per cu mm. An analogous difficulty has been encountered in patients with iron deficiency when the hematocrit was 40 per cent red blood count 5.0 mil per cu mm and the

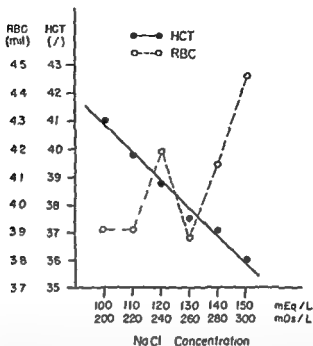


Figure 20 Effect of changing osmotic pressure on the hematocrit. A single sample of blood was centrifuged and the plasma was removed and discarded. The red cells were divided into six aliquots and the samples were restored to the original volume with varying saline concentrations as noted.

hemoglobin 80 gm per 100 ml. Such unusual occurrences do not detract seriously from the usefulness of the hematocrit as a screening test because the use of either the hemoglobin determination or erythrocyte count alone as a screening procedure is subject to the same limitations.

In order to answer the question "What is the mechanism responsible for the anemia?" a careful history, physical examination and certain laboratory tests that reveal the morphologic and other characteristics of the blood are necessary. Laboratory procedures have assumed the most prominent place in the diagnosis of hemitologic problems but this does not mean that a carefully taken history is not important. Without the benefit of a complete history the laboratory results may be puzzling or even misleading.

The History. When the history is obtained the patient should be allowed to give his account of his illness first and then he should be questioned about various details. A family history of anemia or splenectomy or a past history of recurrent episodes of anemia may be helpful, particularly if the patient has hemolytic anemia. The dietary history is important in children, in pregnancy and in chronic illness for it is in these circumstances that a dietary deficiency is most likely to become manifest. The history of the use of "tonics" and vitamins may help clarify an anemia that is difficult to classify.

because the hematologic features characteristic of the underlying disease or syndrome have been altered by such preparations. Repeated exposures to drugs or chemicals encountered in the patient's occupation or in the pursuit of a hobby may be a factor in the causation of anemia. A careful review of the body systems should be part of the history taking because systematic questioning of this type may elicit important symptoms such as paresthesias, mild ataxia, excessive menstrual bleeding, or even tarry stools that have not been volunteered by the patient.

Physical Examination Although the physical examination alone rarely if ever suffices for the complete diagnosis of anemia, nearly any part of the examination may contribute important information. The appearance of hemorrhages and exudates in the fundi may be the first indication that the patient has bacterial endocarditis, leukemia, uremia, or aplastic anemia. The presence of tumor masses, lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, or splenomegaly may bring the diseases of the reticuloendothelial system into consideration for the first time. Most hemolytic anemias, with the exception of sickle cell anemia, are associated with splenomegaly. Splenomegaly is unusual in untreated aplastic anemia and the detection of an enlarged spleen makes some other diagnosis more likely. An appraisal of the nutritional state of the patient, the color of the tongue, the appearance of the papillae, the presence of fissuring of the lips, and the texture of the fingernails may give clues to the presence of a deficiency of folic acid, vitamin B₁₂, or iron. The detection of telangiectases on the skin or mucous membranes may give the first clue to an explanation of gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Even the general appearance of the patient, the tone of his voice, and his manner of speaking may lead to the recognition of myxedema as the cause of an undiagnosed case of anemia that has proved refractory to the usual forms of "antianemic" therapy. The demonstration of mild ataxia or decreased vibratory sense in the extremities may be the first indication that the patient has pernicious anemia, particularly if the hematologic picture has been altered by inadequate specific therapy or by coexisting iron deficiency.

Laboratory Studies Examination of the peripheral blood by laboratory methods is a most important step in the identification of the mechanism that is responsible for the anemia. If the hematocrit value is low, the following procedures are indicated: determination of the hemoglobin, erythrocyte count, leukocyte count, and a study of the stained blood smear. The study of a film of blood that is properly made and stained gives valuable information about the size, shape, and hemoglobin content of the erythrocytes, the level of the blood platelets, and the type of leukocyte reaction. A stain for reticulocytes affords a generally reliable indication of the erythropoietic activity of the bone marrow. With the results of the hemoglobin, hematocrit, and erythrocyte determination, the mean corpuscular volume (MCV), mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), and mean corpuscular hemoglobin con-

centration (MCHC) can be determined and the anemia can be classified according to cell size and hemoglobin content as

- macrocytic ($MCV > 94 \text{ c}\mu$) (MCHC $> 30\%$)
- normocytic ($MCV 80-94 \text{ c}\mu$) (MCHC $> 30\%$)
- microcytic ($MCV < 80 \text{ c}\mu$) (MCHC $> 30\%$)
- hypochromic ($MCV > 80 \text{ c}\mu$ MCHC $< 30\%$)
- hypochromic microcytic (MCHC $< 30\%$) ($MCV < 80 \text{ c}\mu$)⁸⁷

Table 6 Laboratory Procedures Often Helpful in the Study of a Patient with Anemia

USUAL INITIAL STUDIES

- Hematocrit determination
- Hemoglobin determination
- Erythrocyte count
- Reticulocyte count
- Study of stained blood smear
- Leukocyte count and differential count
- Platelet count (or estimate from blood smear)

SUSPECTED IRON DEFICIENCY

- Stool for occult blood
- Serum iron and latent iron binding capacity
- Stain of marrow preparations for iron
- Röntgenographic study of the gastrointestinal tract

SUSPECTED VITAMIN B₁₂ OR FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY

- Bone marrow
- Gastric analysis after histamine injection
- Vitamin B₁₂ absorption test (radioactive cobalt)
- Serum vitamin B₁₂ level
- Röntgenographic study of the gastrointestinal tract

SUSPECTED HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

- Bone marrow
- Serum bilirubin level
- Fecal urobilinogen excretion
- Test for sickling
- Hemoglobin electrophoresis
- Antiglobulin (Coombs) test
- Hypotonic saline fragility test
- Alkali denaturation test
- Hemoglobin determination plasma and urine

SUSPECTED APLASTIC ANEMIA

- Bone marrow (aspiration or biopsy)
- Skeletal roentgenograms
- Serum iron and latent iron binding capacity
- Mediastinal roentgenograms for thymoma

OTHER TESTS OFTEN USED ESPECIALLY TO DIAGNOSE THE PRIMARY DISEASE

- L.E. preparation
- Blood urea
- Tissue biopsy (skin lymph node liver)
- Peroxidase stain
- Plasma electrophoresis
- Urine electrophoresis
- Bone marrow

The method of calculating these values is given on page 70. The characterization of the anemia as macrocytic, normocytic, microcytic, or hypochromic, microcytic, provides a guide to other appropriate studies that are necessary to determine the mechanism and cause of the anemia. The determination of the cell size and hemoglobin content by such calculations does not mean that a careful study of the blood smear is unimportant. Study of the smear gives valuable information that may not be apparent in the calculations. A list of the studies that are often helpful is presented in Table 6.

MACROCYTIC ANEMIA

If the patient is found to have macrocytic anemia of significant degree ($MCV > 100 \text{ c}\mu$) it is unlikely that acute hemorrhage has occurred and for practical purposes chronic blood loss may be eliminated from consideration. A macrocytic anemia is usually due primarily to deficient blood production. Less often a hemolytic mechanism is responsible. Macrocytic anemia is most likely to be seen in the following circumstances: (1) deficiency of vitamin B_{12} or folic acid, (2) "aplastic" anemia, (3) myxedema, and (4) hemolytic anemia.

Deficiency of Vitamin B_{12} and Folic Acid

If the macrocytosis is due to a deficiency of vitamin B_{12} , there is usually leukopenia and thrombocytopenia often of mild degree. If the anemia is moderate or severe in degree, study of the blood smear reveals considerable anisocytosis and poikilocytosis and the presence of large multisegmented neutrophils. In the untreated patient the normal or subnormal reticulocyte count reflects the failure of a normal response to anemia. The slightly elevated level of indirect reacting serum bilirubin and the increased fecal urobilinogen excretion reflect the increased destruction of erythrocytes in the peripheral circulation or in the bone marrow. The occurrence of the megalo-blastic type of erythropoiesis in the bone marrow establishes the presence of a deficiency of vitamin B_{12} or folic acid almost unequivocally.

Since deficiencies of vitamin B_{12} and of folic acid can give identical hematologic pictures, further study is necessary to determine which is responsible. In this connection the gastric analysis is a very helpful procedure. With but rare exceptions, patients with pernicious anemia do not secrete hydrochloric acid after the administration of histamine and the presence of free HCl in the gastric analysis can almost be considered to exclude pernicious anemia from consideration. The other causes of vitamin B_{12} deficiency, such as total gastrectomy, intestinal shunts, fistulae, and malabsorption syndromes, are usually suggested by the history and confirmed by appropriate examinations. If the patient has evidence of posterolateral sclerosis associated with a normocytic or macrocytic anemia and histamine fast achlorhydria, the diagnosis of pernicious anemia should be strongly suspected even though the marrow is not megaloblastic.

Folic acid administration can modify the appearance of the bone marrow and the peripheral blood in a patient with pernicious anemia while allowing the central nervous system lesions to progress. For this reason measurement of the level of vitamin B₁₂ in the serum or use of one of the tests of vitamin B₁₂ absorption such as the Schilling test that utilize vitamin B₁₂ labeled with radioactive cobalt may be necessary to establish the diagnosis. In the Schilling test^{70a} a measured amount of radioactive B₁₂ is administered by mouth and a large "flushing" dose (1000 micrograms) of non radioactive vitamin B₁₂ is administered parenterally. Urine is collected and the amount of vitamin B₁₂ absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract is measured by determining the amount of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ that is excreted in the urine. If subnormal amounts of B₁₂ are absorbed and excreted the test is repeated and intrinsic factor is administered with the oral vitamin B₁₂. The addition of the intrinsic factor leads to substantial improvement in absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in patients with pernicious anemia but has little or no effect in those with malabsorption syndrome, shunts, and fistulae. If the patient has anemia and a megaloblastic bone marrow that are due to a deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ the fact can be established if the administration of vitamin B₁₂ parenterally produces a conversion of the megaloblastic erythropoiesis to the normoblastic type followed by a reticulocytosis and a rise of the hemoglobin and erythrocyte levels to normal.

When folic acid deficiency is responsible for the macrocytic anemia there is usually a history of inadequate diet or some disorder such as a malabsorption syndrome that produces a secondary deficiency. A dietary deficiency sufficient to produce this type of anemia is rare in the United States except in infancy during pregnancy in food faddists and in alcoholics. Folic acid deficiency may produce the same hematologic picture as vitamin B₁₂ deficiency but the neurologic lesions that are so common in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency are usually absent or mild in folic acid deficiency. The occurrence of a macrocytic anemia and a megaloblastic marrow in an adult who has retained the ability to secrete free HCl strongly suggests the possibility of folic acid deficiency.

Aplastic Anemia

Mild or moderate macrocytosis is slightly more common than normocytic anemia in aplastic anemia. Although anemia of this type is usually accompanied by definite leukopenia and thrombocytopenia, anemia may occur alone. The term chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia is sometimes used to distinguish patients of the latter type. The reticulocyte count and serum bilirubin level are usually normal or subnormal in chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia; the reticulocyte count is often 0 or 0.1 per cent. A slight increase in the percentage of reticulocytes is occasionally seen but when this occurs the absolute value (the number of reticulocytes per cu mm) is usually normal. The macrocytic anemia of aplastic anemia even if severe is rarely accompanied by a significant degree of poikilocytosis or anisocytosis. The

bone marrow examination nearly always reveals the normoblastic type of erythropoiesis but in rare cases a megakoblastic marrow occurs. Usually the marrow of patients with aplastic anemia is hypocellular often markedly so but the presence of normal or increased cellularity does not exclude the diagnosis. Recognition of the cause of anemia of this type usually comes from the appropriate laboratory examinations. At times the history of exposure to irradiation chemicals or drugs is helpful. On occasion examination of the bone marrow in a patient with suspected aplastic anemia establishes a definite diagnosis of some other primary disease such as multiple myeloma leukemia carcinomatosis or tuberculosis. In the majority of patients with aplastic anemia the cause remains obscure and the anemia is classified as "idiopathic."

Myxedema

A mild or moderately severe macrocytic anemia occurs commonly in patients with myxedema. The red blood count usually is over 30 mil per cumm. The peripheral blood shows no appreciable poikilocytosis or anisocytosis and is generally normal in other respects. The erythropoiesis in the bone marrow is normoblastic and the cellularity is either normal or slightly reduced. The diagnosis of myxedema is usually suggested by the clinical features of the disease and is confirmed by the appropriate laboratory tests such as determinations of the serum cholesterol level basal metabolic rate radioactive iodine uptake and measurement of the plasma bound iodine. If vitamin B₁₂ deficiency occurs in association with the myxedema the anemia is more severe and the clinical and hematologic features of pernicious anemia are found.

Hemolytic Anemia

A macrocytic type of anemia is not uncommon in hemolytic disorders particularly in the extracorporeal or acquired type. The diagnosis of the patient with hemolytic anemia is considered in the discussion of hemolytic normocytic anemias.

NORMOCYTIC ANEMIA

If the patient is found to have a normocytic type of anemia (MCV 80-94 μ) hyperhemolysis acute blood loss and deficient blood production must be considered.

Hyperhemolysis

A reticulocyte count greater than 4 per cent in a patient who has neither had a recent hemorrhage nor received antianemic therapy should raise the suspicion of a hemolytic anemia. Often the reticulocyte count is over 10 per cent, and sometimes it is 30 per cent or more. Study of the stained smear

often reveals suggestive evidence of a hemolytic process in the form of nucleated red cells polychromatophilia punctate basophilia target cells or spherocytes. Leukocytosis is often present. These abnormalities in the peripheral blood reflect the hyperplasia that is evident on examination of the bone marrow. At times the increase in erythropoiesis is so marked that a differential cell count of the marrow reveals that the myeloid erythroid (M:E ratio) is 1:1 or less (normal 3:1 to 10:1). In some patients with hemolytic anemia striking hyperplasia occurs and the early forms of normoblasts become so numerous that the normoblastic nature of the erythropoiesis may be misinterpreted as megakoblastic because of the morphological similarities between the youngest cells of both series. However careful study of the cells at all different stages of development particularly at the polychromatophilic stage nearly always enables one to interpret the marrow properly.

Evidence of the hyperhemolysis is found in the moderate elevation of the indirect reacting bilirubin (1.0 to 4.0 mg per 100 ml) and in the increased fecal urobilinogen excretion. Measurement of the fecal urobilinogen may be a very useful test in suspected hemolytic disease even though the wide normal range of daily variations from 40 to 280 mg seriously limits the usefulness of the test as an accurate measure of hemoglobin destruction. When the mechanism of the anemia is not apparent particularly in patients with mild degrees of anemia the demonstration of an increase in the average 24 hour fecal urobilinogen excretion over a three or four day period may establish the presence of increased hemoglobin breakdown. In interpreting the values obtained for the 24 hour fecal urobilinogen excretion it is important to remember that the fecal urobilinogen excretion may be reduced by antibiotics that change the bacterial flora of the intestinal tract and may be increased by recent blood transfusions. The amount of urobilinogen excreted in the feces in 24 hours also depends on the total amount of circulating hemoglobin because a fixed percentage of the circulating hemoglobin is destroyed each day as a rule. The mass of the circulating hemoglobin can be approximated by determining the number of grams of hemoglobin per 100 ml of blood and the body weight. The following formula suggested by Dameshek⁶⁴ is helpful in interpreting the significance of the average daily fecal urobilinogen excretion in patients with anemia.

$$\frac{\text{Normal Hb (15 gm / 100 ml)}}{\text{Pts Hb (gm / 100 ml)}} \times \frac{\text{Normal weight (70 kg)}}{\text{Pts weight}} \times \frac{\text{daily fu output (mg)}}{\text{fecal urobilinogen output (mg)}} = \text{corrected daily}$$

The hemolytic index was also devised by Miller, Singer and Dameshek⁶⁴ to relate the fecal urobilinogen excretion to the circulating mass of hemoglobin. It is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{avg (of 4 days) daily output of fecal urobilinogen (mg)} \times 100}{\text{total Hb (Hb gm / 100 ml)} \times \text{total blood volume / 100}}$$

The hemolytic index indicates the amount of urobilinogen derived daily from 100 grams of hemoglobin. The normal index is from 11 to 21.

Although recognition of the hemolytic process is as easy as a rule it is sometimes difficult because all the signs of increased hemolysis and increased erythropoiesis may be absent or inconspicuous if the patient is seen during an aplastic crisis which occasionally develops during an intercurrent infection.

If the anemia is established as hemolytic in type further tests are necessary to determine the nature of the hemolytic disorder. These include the antiglobulin (Coombs) test, hypotonic saline fragility test, tests for sickling and hemoglobin electrophoresis. Occasionally erythrocyte survival determinations and other studies may be employed. Most of the important hemolytic anemias due to intracorpuscular defects are inherited and can be identified by the demonstration of characteristic abnormalities in the erythrocytes. At times the study of parents or siblings is helpful in establishing the diagnosis. Most instances of hemolytic anemia of the extracorpuscular variety are acquired and can be recognized by the demonstration of an autoimmune mechanism or the coexistence of some other disease.

Sickle cell disease is a disease of the Negro race almost exclusively. Splenomegaly is rarely seen in adults with this disease. The presence of the abnormal hemoglobin HbS can be demonstrated by placing the erythrocytes in moist preparations under a cover slip on a glass slide and sealing the cover slip by rimming the edges with petrolatum or by exposing the erythrocytes to freshly prepared reducing agents such as 2 per cent solution of sodium bisulfite (NaHSO_3). Sickle cell trait, the heterozygous condition, can be distinguished from sickle cell anemia, the homozygous state, by the lack of evidence of hyperhemolysis in patients with the trait and by means of hemoglobin electrophoresis. By this technique the hemoglobin of cells from individuals with sickle cell trait can be shown to contain both normal hemoglobin (HbA) and sickle cell hemoglobin (HbS) while the erythrocytes of patients with sickle cell anemia appear to contain only sickle cell hemoglobin (SS). By means of hemoglobin electrophoresis patients with sickle cell-hemoglobin C disease (SC), homozygous hemoglobin C disease (CC), and other disorders can be identified. Sickle cell-hemoglobin D disease can not be distinguished from sickle cell disease by electrophoresis as usually performed because hemoglobin S and hemoglobin D migrate similarly. The presence of hemoglobin C, thalassemia, or hemoglobin D is often suggested by the presence of a large number of target cells in the stained smear of peripheral blood. The severity of the anemia that is found in a patient who has a positive sickling test suggests various diagnostic possibilities. Individuals with sickle cell trait have no anemia unless there is some associated disorder. Patients with sickle cell anemia usually have a severe degree of anemia (Hb 6.5 to 7.5 gm per 100 ml), a moderate anemia (Hb 8.0 to 10.0 gm per 100 ml) is usual in persons with sickle cell anemia-hemoglobin C disease and other double heterozygous conditions.

Hereditary spherocytosis is rare in Negroes. Splenomegaly is nearly always present. The erythrocytes in this disorder, the "spherocytes," are thicker than normal and have a decreased diameter. The diagnosis frequently can

often reveals suggestive evidence of a hemolytic process in the form of nucleated red cells polychromatophilia punctate basophilia target cells or spherocytes. Leukocytosis is often present. These abnormalities in the peripheral blood reflect the hyperplasia that is evident on examination of the bone marrow. At times the increase in erythropoiesis is so marked that a differential cell count of the marrow reveals that the myeloid erythroid (M:E ratio) is 1:1 or less (normal 3:1 to 10:1). In some patients with hemolytic anemia striking hyperplasia occurs and the early forms of normoblasts become so numerous that the normoblastic nature of the erythropoiesis may be misinterpreted as megakaryoblastic because of the morphological similarities between the youngest cells of both series. However careful study of the cells at all different stages of development particularly at the polychromatophilic stage nearly always enables one to interpret the marrow properly.

Evidence of the hyperhemolysis is found in the moderate elevation of the indirect reacting bilirubin (1.0 to 4.0 mg per 100 ml) and in the increased fecal urobilinogen excretion. Measurement of the fecal urobilinogen may be a very useful test in suspected hemolytic disease even though the wide normal range of daily variations from 40 to 280 mg seriously limits the usefulness of the test as an accurate measure of hemoglobin destruction. When the mechanism of the anemia is not apparent particularly in patients with mild degrees of anemia the demonstration of an increase in the average 24 hour fecal urobilinogen excretion over a three or four day period may establish the presence of increased hemoglobin breakdown. In interpreting the values obtained for the 24 hour fecal urobilinogen excretion it is important to remember that the fecal urobilinogen excretion may be reduced by antibiotics that change the bacterial flora of the intestinal tract and may be increased by recent blood transfusions. The amount of urobilinogen excreted in the feces in 24 hours also depends on the total amount of circulating hemoglobin because a fixed percentage of the circulating hemoglobin is destroyed each day as a rule. The mass of the circulating hemoglobin can be approximated by determining the number of grams of hemoglobin per 100 ml of blood and the body weight. The following formula suggested by Dameshek¹⁴ is helpful in interpreting the significance of the average daily fecal urobilinogen excretion in patients with anemia.

$$\frac{\text{Normal Hb (15 gm / 100 ml)}}{\text{Pts Hb (gm / 100 ml)}} \times \frac{\text{Normal weight (70 kg)}}{\text{Pts weight}} \times \frac{\text{daily fu output (mg)}}{\text{fecal urobilinogen output (mg)}} = \text{corrected daily}$$

The hemolytic index was also devised by Miller, Singer and Dameshek¹⁵ to relate the fecal urobilinogen excretion to the circulating mass of hemoglobin. It is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{avg (of 4 days) daily output of fecal urobilinogen (mg)} \times 100}{\text{total Hb (Hb gm / 100 ml)} \times \text{total blood volume / 100}}$$

The hemolytic index indicates the amount of urobilinogen derived daily from 100 grams of hemoglobin. The normal index is from 11 to 21.

Acute Blood Loss

The anemia that follows acute blood loss is nearly always normocytic. If the acute hemorrhage is external and results from trauma or disease its occurrence is generally recounted in the history. If the hemorrhage occurs from the gastrointestinal tract the event may not be noticed by the patient and the finding of anemia may be the first clue to its occurrence. In some patients hemorrhages from a duodenal ulcer or a lesion of the small intestine recur over a period of years and cause anemia that can be puzzling if the patient does not consult his physician until after the occult blood has disappeared from the feces. An elevated reticulocyte count in the absence of an increase in the serum bilirubin suggests recent hemorrhage if the patient has not recently been given specific therapeutic agents such as iron or vitamin B₁₂. Leukocytosis and thrombocytosis in the peripheral blood and marked normoblastic hyperplasia in the bone marrow may also afford clues to a recent hemorrhage. The diagnosis of gastrointestinal bleeding is usually made from the history and by the detection of blood in the feces. The demonstration that a gastrointestinal lesion is the source of the bleeding is not always easy and may not be possible without repeated roentgenographic study of the gastrointestinal tract or periodic observation of the patient. In the unusual circumstances where the hemorrhage occurs into the muscles or other tissues as a result of trauma or ascorbic acid deficiency, reticulocytosis may occur in association with an elevation of the serum bilirubin and suggest the presence of hemolytic anemia.

Deficient Blood Production

Anemia that is the result of deficient blood production is nearly always normocytic or macrocytic but occasionally is slightly microcytic. If the anemia is due to diminished erythropoiesis alone or to mild hyperhemolysis associated with depressed erythropoiesis, as sometimes occurs in patients with malignancies and other diseases, only the erythrocytes are reduced. The leukocytes and platelets are usually normal unless altered by the primary disease. It is unusual for anemia of this type to be the primary problem in diagnosis because the underlying disease such as chronic infection, arthritis, renal disease, malignancy or endocrine disturbance is usually apparent. More important is the fact that anemia of this type is sometimes the first clinical indication of the underlying disease. Some ambulatory patients with renal disease present as problems of anemia because the slowly progressing renal insufficiency has not been recognized or suspected. Uremia is probably not the explanation of anemia unless the renal disease is chronic and severe. The diagnosis of aplastic anemia, which is often normocytic, is discussed with the macrocytic anemias.

A normocytic anemia also occurs in some patients with mild anemia associated with iron deficiency. This may occur as an intermediate stage in the development of severe iron deficiency that is characterized by hypo-

be suspected after an examination of the blood smear since the cells often appear smaller than normal show little or no poikilocytosis and have little or no central pallor. However the diagnosis of hereditary spherocytosis can not be made with certainty from the blood smear alone because spherocytes may also be seen in other types of hemolytic anemia. The osmotic fragility test is employed to demonstrate the increased osmotic fragility that is characteristic of spherocytes. In this test samples of blood from the patient and from a normal control subject are placed in tubes containing aqueous solutions of sodium chloride of different concentrations. The concentrations of saline in the tubes where hemolysis begins and where it is complete are noted. Because of their shape spherocytes begin to hemolyze at higher concentrations than normal biconcave erythrocytes do. In the vast majority of patients with hereditary spherocytosis hemolysis begins and is complete at higher dilutions than in the case in normal blood. In normal blood hemolysis usually begins at 0.44 per cent and is complete at 0.32 per cent. In hereditary spherocytosis hemolysis often begins in concentrations of 0.50 to 0.70 per cent and is complete at 0.40 per cent. A twenty-four hour period of incubation may be necessary to demonstrate the increased osmotic fragility in some patients with hereditary spherocytosis.¹⁰ The demonstration of an abnormal osmotic fragility test in other members of the family may be helpful in establishing the diagnosis in some patients with equivocal findings. The presence of increased susceptibility to hypotonic saline is not diagnostic of hereditary spherocytosis; the test may be positive in other hemolytic disorders if spherocytes are present in appreciable numbers.

Hemolytic anemia due to an extracorporeal defect may be microcytic or normocytic. In some patients the disease appears to be due to an autoimmune mechanism and in others to some other mechanism. If the anti-globulin (Coombs) test is positive autoimmune hemolytic disease is likely even though the osmotic fragility test reveals abnormal susceptibility to hypotonic saline. In such circumstances further study is necessary to determine if the hemolytic process is idiopathic or secondary¹¹ to some underlying disease such as one of the lymphoma group, carcinoma, sarcoidosis or one of the collagen disorders. A careful diagnostic study that may include roentgenographic examinations, serum protein studies, a search for LE cells and biopsy of a lymph node or other tissue is often necessary. A diagnosis of the idiopathic type of disease is reached by exclusion. At times the diagnosis of autoimmune hemolytic disease as either idiopathic or symptomatic can be established only after a prolonged period of observation and repeated examinations. The macrocytic anemia of chronic liver disease is usually due to an extracorporeal type of hyperhemolysis but the Coombs test is usually negative. When the hemolytic anemia is due to chronic liver disease abnormal liver function tests and clinical evidence of liver disease are usually present. In other disease states a hemolytic element may be present but demonstrable only by careful study; in these patients the hemolytic process is usually mild and inadequate blood production is the most important mechanism.

blood loss Blood loss usually occurs because of some ulcerated lesion in the gastrointestinal tract. Esophageal lesions, hiatus hernia, gastric carcinoma, benign gastric ulcer, duodenal ulcer, tumor of the small intestine, carcinoma of the colon, and hemorrhoids are all possible sources of chronic blood loss. Should the examination reveal no satisfactory source of bleeding, the patient should be reexamined periodically, and the roentgenographic studies repeated, because any of the lesions, particularly carcinoma of the cecum and stomach and tumors of the small intestine, may be a source of bleeding even though they are not recognized on the initial roentgenographic study. A diaphragmatic hernia can be responsible for chronic blood loss, but this lesion is found so frequently in patients in the middle aged and older groups that it should not be accepted as the explanation of the anemia unless careful study of the remainder of the gastrointestinal tract has disclosed no other lesion. Although iron deficiency can occur as the result of repeated bleeding from the genitourinary or respiratory tract, bleeding from these sites of sufficient degree to cause anemia is unusual. When bleeding of this type occurs it is readily apparent to the patient.

In women, menstruation and pregnancy afford added opportunities for the development of iron deficiency, since the increased need for iron in these circumstances may not be met by increased absorption of dietary iron. Even mildly excessive menstrual bleeding may lead to iron deficiency if the iron stores are low. If the individual has low iron stores early in life, the iron reserves may not be restored to normal by the diet during growth and adolescence. In some premenopausal women it may be difficult to decide whether the number of pregnancies and the amount of menstrual bleeding can be accepted as a satisfactory explanation of the iron deficiency. If there is any reasonable doubt, repeated tests for occult blood in the feces and study of the gastrointestinal tract for a possible source of bleeding are indicated.

TREATMENT IN RELATION TO DIAGNOSIS

The purpose of the diagnostic study is to enable the physician to decide what is the best form of treatment for the patient. The most desirable form of treatment is the removal or correction of the cause. When this cannot be accomplished, therapy is directed toward the disordered mechanism. For either form of therapy, it is important to establish an accurate diagnosis before treating the anemia, unless the patient's condition demands immediate measures, such as transfusions. Premature treatment may be detrimental to the patient. The use of complex preparations that contain iron, vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, and other substances, under the impression that such therapy will afford adequate treatment for all types of anemia, may confuse the interpretation of the diagnostic studies without correcting the anemia. Even more important is the fact that treatment may produce a false sense of security when it corrects the anemia, which is but one aspect of the disorder, without affecting other more serious aspects of the disease. When no diagnosis has been established, often the best course is to withhold treatment until the

chronic microcytic anemia or it may occur during the stage of incomplete recovery.⁸ In patients with this type of anemia the history often suggests iron deficiency but the demonstration of a low level of serum iron and/or an increased iron binding capacity or the demonstration of reduced iron stores by examination of an appropriately stained specimen of marrow or even a therapeutic trial with iron may be necessary to establish the diagnosis.

SIMPLE MICROCYTIC ANEMIA

Simple microcytic anemia ($MCV < 80 \text{ c}\mu$ $MCHC > 30\%$) is most often seen in association with various chronic diseases; circumstances where a normocytic anemia is more common.

HYPOCHROMIC MICROCYTIC ANEMIA

The finding of a hypochromic microcytic type of anemia ($MCV < 80 \text{ c}\mu$ $MCHC < 30\%$) almost invariably means iron deficiency. The erythrocytes on a stained blood smear have an increase in central pallor and show considerable poikilocytosis and anisocytosis. Elongated cigar forms, ringed cells, and microcytes are often numerous. The leukocytes and platelets are usually normal. The cellularity of the bone marrow may be subnormal, normal, or increased; erythropoiesis is normoblastic in type. The existence of iron deficiency can be established definitely by finding a subnormal level of the serum iron associated with an increase in the latent iron binding capacity of the serum or by the demonstration of reduced iron stores in the bone marrow.⁸

The other diseases that may be confused with iron deficiency occur much less commonly and usually can be distinguished without difficulty. The rare anemia that is due to pyridoxine deficiency is hypochromic and microcytic but the serum iron level is elevated rather than reduced.⁴⁴ In thalassemia the erythrocytes are hypochromic and microcytic but the condition can generally be distinguished from iron deficiency by the family history, reticulocytosis, marked splenomegaly, the presence of alkali-resistant hemoglobin, the elevated level of the serum iron and, if necessary, by the failure to respond to therapy with iron preparations. When the serum iron level is low in thalassemia minor, as has been demonstrated in some cases, the differential diagnosis may be difficult and examination of the sternal marrow for stainable iron may be helpful.⁸

When anemia is due to iron deficiency it is important to determine the cause. Except in infants and young children a dietary lack should not be accepted as an explanation of iron deficiency unless there are modifying factors. Among these are the increased need of iron during pregnancy and growth. However, iron deficiency may develop despite an adequate diet if absorption is impaired because of a malabsorption disorder or partial gastrectomy. In an adult male unless there is some absorptive defect iron deficiency anemia can be considered as practically synonymous with chronic

- 23 Dacie J V The Hemolytic Anemias Congenital and Acquired Grune and Stratton New York 1954
- 24 Dacie J V The auto immune hemolytic anemias Amer J Med 18 810 1955
- 25 Dacie J V Acquired hemolytic anemia with special reference to the antiglobulin (Coombs) reaction Blood 8 813 1953
- 26 Dacie J V Transfusion of saline washed red cell in nocturnal hemoglobinuria (Marchiafava Michel disease) Clin Sc 7 65 1948
- 27 Dacie J V and Mellison P L Survival of transfused erythrocytes from a donor with nocturnal hemoglobinuria Lancet 1 300 1949
- 28 Dameshek W Hemolytic anemia Am J Med 18 315 1955
- 29 Daughaday W N Williams R H and Daland G A The effect of endocrinopathies on the blood Blood 3 1342 1948
- 30 Dern H J Weinstein I M LeRoy G V Talmage D W and Alving A S The hemolytic effect of primaquine I The localization of the drug induced hemolytic defect in primaquine sensitive individual J Lab & Clin Med 49 303 1954
- 31 Diggs L W and Bibb J The erythrocyte in sickle cell anemia Morphology size hemoglobin content fragility and sedimentation rate JAMA 112 695 1939
- 32 Donath J and Landsteiner R Ueber paroxysmale Hamoglobinurie Munchen med wchnschr 51 1090 1904
- 33 Edington G M and Lehman H Hemoglobin C Lancet 2 173 1954
- 34 Emerson C P Shen S C Ham T H and Castle W B The mechanism of blood destruction in congenital hemolytic jaundice J Clin Invest 26 1160 1947
- 35 Erylev A J Erythropoietic function in uremic rabbits Clin Res Proc 5 141 1957
- 36 Gablett E R et al Erythrokinetics Quantitative measurements of red cell production and destruction in normal subjects and patients with anemia Blood 11 291 1956
- 37 Girdwood R H Seasonal incidence of megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and the puerperium Lancet 272 1302 1958
- 38 Gross Ruth I Hurvitz Ruth F and Marks P A An inherited enzymatic defect in erythrocyte metabolism Glucose 6 phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency J Clin Invest 37 1176 1958
- 39 Gurney C W Goldwasser E Jacobson L O and Pan C Demonstration of erythropoietin in human plasma J Clin Invest 36 896 1957
- 40 Hahn E V and Gillespie E H Sickle cell anemia Report of a case greatly improved by splenectomy Experimental study of sickle cell formation Arch Int Med 34 233 1927
- 41 Halstead J A Lewis P M and Gasster M Absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in the syndrome of megaloblastic anemia associated with intestinal stricture or anastomosis Am J Med 20 42 1956
- 42 Ham T H Hemoglobinuria Am J Med 18 990 1955
- 43 Ham T H and Castle W Studies on the destruction of red cells Relation of increased hypotonic fragility and erythrostasis to the mechanism of hemolysis in certain anemias Proc Am Philos Soc 86 411 1940
- 44 Ham T H and Castle W B Relation of increased hypotonic fragility and of erythrostasis to the mechanism of hemolysis in certain anemias Tr A Am Phys 55 127 1940
- 45 Ham T H Shen S C Fleming E M and Castle W B Studies on the destruction of red blood cells in thermal injury Blood 3 373 1948
- 45a James C W III Funnell O J and Evans F I The anemia of thermal injury I Studies of pigment excretion J Clin Invest 30 181 1951
- 45b James C W III Abbot L D Jr Brooks J W and Evans F I Anemia of thermal injury III Erythropoiesis and hemoglobin metabolism studied with N¹⁵ glycine in dog and man J Clin Invest 33 150 1954
- 46 Harris J W Studies on destruction of red blood cells VIII Molecular orientation in sickle cell hemoglobin solutions Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 75 197 1950
- 47 Harris J W Brewster H H Ham T H and Castle W B Studies on the destruction of red blood cells X The biophysics and biology of sickle cell disease Arch Int Med 97 145 1956

nature of the anemia is better understood. It is rare that a delay in treatment until the necessary diagnostic studies are performed works to the disadvantage of the patient.

REFERENCES

1. Ager J A M and Lehmann H. Haemoglobin Norfolk. A new hemoglobin in an English family. *Brit M J* 2:539 1958.
2. Ager J A M and Lehmann H. Haemoglobin L. A new hemoglobin found in a Punjabi Hindu. *Brit M J* 2:142 1957.
3. Alving A S, Kellermeyer R W, Tarlov A, Schrier S and Carson P E. Biochemical and genetic aspects of primaquine sensitive hemolytic anemia. *Ann Int Med* 49:240 1958.
4. Barrett A M. A special form of erythrocyte possessing increased resistance to hypotonic saline. *J Path & Bact* 46:603 1938.
5. Berlin N I, Woldmann T A and Weissman S M. Life span of red blood cell. *Physiol Rev* 39:577 1959.
6. Bertles J F. Sodium transport across the surface membrane of red blood cells in hereditary spherocytosis. *J Clin Invest* 36:816 1957.
7. Beutler E, Dem H J and Alving A S. The hemolytic effect of primaquine IV. The relationship of cell age to hemolysis. *J Lab & Clin Med* 44:439 1954.
8. Beutler E, Robson M J and Bittenwieser E. A comparison of the plasma iron binding capacity, sternal marrow iron and other methods in the clinical evaluation of iron stores. *Ann Int Med* 48:60 1958.
- 8a. Biggs R and Macmillan H L. The errors of some hematological methods as they are used in a routine laboratory. *J Clin Path* 1:269 283 1948.
- 8b. Block M. Importance and interpretation of routine blood counts. *Rocky Mountain M J* 54:894 1957.
9. Bomford R. Anemia in myxedema and the role of the thyroid gland in erythropoiesis. *Quart J Med* 7:495 1938.
10. Bomford R R and Rhoads C P. Refractory anaemia. *Quart J Med* 10:175 1941.
11. Cabannes H et al. Hemoglobines anormales chez l'algerien musulman. *Le sang* 27:580 1956.
12. Caminpetros J. Recherches sur l'anémie erythroblastique infantile des peuples de la Méditerranée orientale. *Ann Med* 43:27 61 104 125 1938.
13. Castle W B. Erythropoiesis. Normal and abnormal. *Bull N Y Acad Med* 30:827 1954.
14. Castle W B, Ham T H and Shen S C. Observations on the mechanism of hemolytic transfusion reactions occurring without demonstrable hemolysin. *Tr A Am Phys* 63:161 1950.
15. Chaplin H Jr and Mollison P L. Red cell life span in nephritis and hepatic cirrhosis. *Clin Sc* 13:351 1953.
16. Chauffard M D. Pathologie de l'ictère congénital de l'adulte. *Semaine med* 27:25 1907.
17. Chernoff A I. The Thalassemia Syndromes. Conference on Hemoglobin. National Academy of Sciences National Research Council 1958. p. 283.
18. Chernoff A I. The human hemoglobins in health and disease. *New England J Med* 253:322 365 416 1955.
19. Chernoff A I, Munich V, Chongcharoensook S, Nanakorn S and Chernoff H. Clinical hematologic and genetic studies of hemoglobin E. *J Lab & Clin Med* 44:780 1954.
20. Childs II, Zinkham W, Browne E A, Kumbro E L and Torbert J V. A genetic study of a defect in glutathione metabolism of the erythrocytes. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 10:21 1958.
21. Coombs R R A, Mourant A H and Race R R. A new test for the detection of weak and incomplete Rh agglutinins. *Brit J Exper Path* 26:255 1945.
22. Crosby W H and Akroyd J H. Limit of hemoglobin synthesis in hereditary hemolytic anemia. Its relation to the excretion of bile pigment. *Am J Med* 13:273 1952.

- 73 Pirzio B roli G Bothwell T H and Finch C A Iron absorption II The absorption of radioron administered with a standard meal in man J Lab & Clin Med 51 37 1958
- 74 Rugas D A Koler R D and Osgood E E New hemoglobin possessing a higher electrophoretic mobility than normal adult hemoglobin Science 121 372, 1955
- 75 Robinson A R Zuelzer W W Neel J V Livingston F B and Miller M J Two "fast" hemoglobin components in Liberian blood samples Blood 11 902 1956
- 76 Rucknagel D L Page H B and Jensen W A Hemoglobin "I" An inherited hemoglobin anomaly Blood 10 999 1955
- 76a Schilling R F Intrinsic factor studies II The effect of gastric juice on the urinary excretion of radioactivity after the oral administration of radioactive B₁₂ J Lab & Clin Med 42 860 1953
- 77 Shen S C Castle W B and Fleming E M Experimental and clinical observations on the increased mechanical fragility of erythrocytes Science 100 387 1944
- 78 Singer K Hereditary hemolytic disorders associated with abnormal hemoglobins Am J Med 18 633 1955
- 79 Szeinberg A Asher Y and Sheba C Studies on glutathione stability in erythrocytes of cases with past history of favism or sulfa-drug induced hemolysis Blood 13 348 1958
- 80 Thorup O A Itano H A Wheby M and Leavell B S Hemoglobin J Science 123 899 1956
- 81 Thorup O A Strole W C and Leavell B S The rate of removal of iron from culture medium by human bone marrow suspension J Lab & Clin Med 52 286 1958
- 82 Valentine W N and Neel J V Hematologic and genetic study of the transmission of thalassemia Arch Int Med 74 185 1944
- 83 Vella F Wells R H C Ager J A M and Ichmann H Hemoglobinopathy involving haemoglobin H and a new (Q) haemoglobin Brit M J 1 752 1958
- 84 Wallerstein R O Harns J W Schilling R F and Castle W B Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia VI Hematopoietic effects of simultaneous intravenous and of simultaneous oral administration of intrinsic factor and vitamin B₁₂ J Lab & Clin Med 41 363 1953
- 85 Wasserman L R Stats D Schwartz L and Fudenberg H Symptomatic and hemopathic hemolytic anemia Am J Med 18 961 1955
- 86 Welch H Lewis C N and Berlin I Blood dyscrasias Antibiotics & Chemother 4 607 1954
- 87 Wintrobe M M The size and hemoglobin content of the erythrocyte J Lab & Clin Med 17 899 1932
- 88 Wintrobe M M Principles in the management of anemias Bull N Y Acad Med 30 6 1954
- 89 Wintrobe M M Clinical Hematology 4th Ed Lea and Febiger Philadelphia 1956 p 564
- 90 Wintrobe M M Matthews E Pollack R and Dobyns B M A familial hemopoietic disorder in Italian adolescents and adults JAMA 114 1530 1940
- 91 Young L E Hemolytic disorders New York State J Med 47 1875 1947
- 92 Young L E Hereditary spherocytosis Am J Med 18 486 1955
- 93 Young L E Platzer R F Ervin H M and Izzo M J Hereditary spherocytosis II Observations on the role of the spleen Blood 6 109 1951
- 94 Zuelzer W W Neel J V and Robinson A R Abnormal hemoglobins In Focantius L M ed Progress in Hematology vol 1 Grune and Stratton New York and London 1956

- 48 Harn J W, Jordan W S, Fillemmer L and Desforbes J F The enzymatic nature of the factor in normal serum which hemolyzes the erythrocytes in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria J Clin Invest 30 648 1951
- 48a Harris J W, Whittington H M, Weisman H Jr and Horrigan D L Pyridoxine responsive anemia in the human adult Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 91 427 1956
- 49 Hinz C F Jr, Jordan W S Jr and Fillemmer L Properdin A specific hemolytic factor in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria J Lab & Clin Med 44 811 1954
- 50 Hinz C F Jr, Hurley T H and Weisman R Jr Relation of anemia to in vitro and in vivo hemolysis in 3 patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria Clin Res Proc 37 1955
- 51 Ingram V M The chemical difference between normal human and sickle cell anemia hemoglobins Conference on hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences National Research Council 1958 p 233
- 52 Itano H A A third abnormal hemoglobin associated with hereditary hemolytic anemia Proc Nat Acad Sci 37 775 1951
- 53 Itano H A Human hemoglobin Science 117 89 1953
- 54 Itano H A, Berggren W R and Sturgeon P Identification of a fourth abnormal human hemoglobin J Am Chem Soc 76 2278 1954
- 55 Itano H A and Neel J V A new inherited abnormality of human hemoglobin Proc Nat Acad Sci 36 613 1950
- 56 Jandl J The anemia of liver disease Observations on its mechanism J Clin Invest 34 390 1955
- 57 Jandl J H, Jones A R and Cristle W B The destruction of red cells by antibodies in man I Observation on the sequestration and lysis of red cells altered by immune mechanism J Clin Invest 36 1428 1957
- 58 Jordan W S Jr, Fillemmer L and Dingle J H The mechanism of hemolysis in paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria II Observations on the behavior and nature of the antibody J Clin Invest 30 22 1951
- 59 Jordan W S Jr, Prouty R L, Heinle R W and Dingle J H The mechanism of hemolysis in paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria III Erythrophagocytosis and leukopenia Blood 7 387 1952
- 60 Leavell B S, Thorup O A and McClellan J E Observations on the anemia in myxedema Tr Amer Clin Climat Assoc 69 137 1956
- 61 Leithold S L, David D and Best W H Hypothyroidism with anemia demonstrating abnormal vitamin B₁₂ absorption Am J Med 24 535 1958
- 62 Lichtman H C, Watson R J, Feldman F, Ginsberg V and Robinson J Studies on thalassemia J Clin Invest 32 1229 1953
- 63 Malissenet R Les hemoglobines humaines Revue d hematologie 12 84 1957
- 64 Marcolongo F Anemia emolitica acquisita Recent Prog Med 15 137 1953
- 64a Miller E B, Singer A and Dameshek W Use of the daily fecal output of urobilinogen and the hemolytic index in the measurement of hemolysis Arch Int Med 70 722 1942
- 65 Mitchell J M Metabolic effects of therapeutic doses of X and gamma radiations Brit J Radiol 16 333 1943
- 66 Mohler D H and Leavell B S Aplastic anemia A review of 50 patients Ann Int Med 49 326 1958
- 67 Neel J V Perspectives in the genetics of sickle cell disease Blood 7 467 1952
- 68 Neel J V Genetic Aspects of Abnormal Hemoglobin Conference on Hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences National Research Council 1958 p 253
- 69 Osgood C E Hypoplastic anemias and related syndromes caused by drug idiosyncrasies JAMA 152 916 1953
- 70 Pauling L, Itano H A, Singer S J and Wells I C Sickle cell anemia A molecular disease Science 110 543 1949
- 71 Prankerd T A J and Altman K I Phosphate partition and turnover in human red cells Nature 173 870 1954
- 72 Prankerd T A J, Altman K I and Young L E Abnormalities of carbohydrate metabolism of red cells in hereditary spherocytosis J Clin Invest 33 957 1954

- 73 Pirzio-Biroli G Bothwell T H and Finch C A Iron absorption II The absorption of radioiron administered with a standard meal in man *J Lab & Clin Med* 51 37 1958
- 74 Rigas D A Koler R D and O good E E New hemoglobin possessing a higher electrophoretic mobility than normal adult hemoglobin *Science* 121 372 1955
- 75 Robinson A R Zuehlke W W Neel J V Livingston F M and Miller M J Two fast hemoglobin components in Liberian blood samples *Blood* 11 902 1958
- 76 Rucknagel D L Page E B and Jensen W N Hemoglobin "I" An inherited hemoglobin anomaly *Blood* 10 999 1955
- 76a Schilling R F Intrinsic factor studies II The effect of gastric juice on the urinary excretion of radioactivity after the oral administration of radioactive B₁₂ *J Lab & Clin Med* 42 860 1953
- 77 Shen S C Castle W B and Fleming E M Experimental and clinical observations on the increased mechanical fragility of erythrocytes *Science* 100 387 1944
- 78 Singer J Hereditary hemolytic disorders associated with abnormal hemoglobins *Am J Med* 18 633 1955
- 79 Szentegery A Asher I and Sheba C Studies on glutathione stability in erythrocytes of cases with past history of fava or sulfa drug induced hemolysis *Blood* 13 549 1958
- 80 Thorup O A Itano H A Wheby M and Leavell B S Hemoglobin J *Science* 123 859 1958
- 81 Thorup O A Strole W E and Leavell B S The rate of removal of iron from culture medium by human bone marrow suspension *J Lab & Clin Med* 53 266 1958
- 82 Valentine W N and Neel J V Hematologic and genetic study of the transmission of thalassemia *Arch Int Med* 74 185 1944
- 83 Vella F Wells R H C Ager J A M and Lehmann H Hemoglobinopathy involving haemoglobin H and a new (Q) haemoglobin *Brit M J* 1 752 1958
- 84 Wallerstein R O Harris J W Schilling R F and Castle W B Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia XV Hematopoietic effects of simultaneous intravenous and of simultaneous oral administration of intrinsic factor and vitamin B₁₂ *J Lab & Clin Med* 41 363 1953
- 85 Wasserman L R Stats B Schwartz L and Fudenberg H Symptomatic and hemipathic hemolytic anemia *Am J Med* 18 961 1955
- 86 Welch H Lewis C N and Kerlan I Blood dyscrasias *Antibiotics & Chemotherapy* 4 607 1954
- 87 Wintrobe M M The size and hemoglobin content of the erythrocyte *J Lab & Clin Med* 17 699 1932
- 88 Wintrobe M M Principles in the management of anemias *Bull N Y Acad Med* 30 11 1954
- 89 Wintrobe M M Clinical Hematology 4th Ed Lea and Febiger Philadelphia 1956 p 564
- 90 Wintrobe M M Matthews E Pollack R and Dobyns H M A familial hemopoietic disorder in Italian adolescents and adults *JAMA* 114 1530 1940
- 91 Young L E Hemolytic disorders *New York State J Med* 47 1875 1947
- 92 Young L E Hereditary spherocytosis *Am J Med* 18 486 1955
- 93 Young L F Platz R F Ervin D M and Izzo M J Hereditary spherocytosis II Observations on the role of the spleen *Blood* 11 1099 1951
- 94 Zuehlke W W Neel J V and Robinson A R Abnormal hemoglobins In Tocantins L M ed *Progress in Hematology* vol 1 Grune and Stratton New York and London 1956

Clinical Syndromes Associated with Anemia

PERNICIOUS ANEMIA

Synonyms Primary Anemia, Addison's Anemia,
Biermer's Anemia

PERNICIOUS ANEMIA is a disease that has intrigued numerous investigators for many years. The history of pernicious anemia is an "illustrative case" of the development and progress of medicine. First centuries of almost complete ignorance, then the slow accumulation of clinical information from many scattered sources over a period of about a hundred years—a period which was followed by the rapid progress in the past few decades. The disease affords an example of the successful combining of information gained from animal experiments with careful clinical observations to discover the clinical cure of a previously fatal disease. It is also an illustration of the way in which a significant contribution to clinical medicine stimulates further more basic investigation. This in turn leads to a better understanding of human physiology and chemistry that has a significance far beyond a particular disease.

HISTORY

The history of pernicious anemia has been reviewed by Haden²⁰ Credit for reporting the first case of pernicious anemia is generally given to Combe for his report to the Medico-Chirurgical Society of Edinburgh on May 1, 1822. Thomas Addison of Guy's Hospital is given credit for recognizing the disease as a clinical entity. Addison described a progressive fatal type of anemia of unknown cause that occurred in both sexes generally beyond the middle period of life. He observed the insidious onset, the increasing weakness and pallor, and commented on the remarkable absence of wasting despite the fatal outcome of the extremely debilitating disease.¹⁵ Biermer in 1871 independently described 15 cases of severe anemia to which he gave the name progressive pernicious anemia. Interest in the disease was stimulated and numerous papers followed. Ehrlich described the megaloblasts which he considered diagnostic of pernicious anemia¹⁶ and provided a subject of interest and controversy for those interested in morphology that has continued to the present time. The importance of the gastric secretion of acid in various diseases was studied by Cahn and von Mering in 1886 and in 1921 Levine and Ladd demonstrated the almost constant occurrence of achlorhydria in pernicious anemia in a study of 107 patients with the disease. The relation of the gastric defect to the causation of pernicious anemia was demonstrated by Castle in 1928.^{4, 6}

The studies of Whipple and Robscheit Robbins demonstrated the importance of food factors, particularly liver, in correction of posthemorrhagic anemia in dogs and suggested that such therapy deserved serious consideration in other more complex anemias such as pernicious anemia.¹⁷ Minot and Murphy's dramatic report on "The Treatment of Pernicious Anemia by a Special Diet" followed soon after.¹⁸ The excellent results obtained with liver in this series of 45 patients with pernicious anemia were soon confirmed. The significance of this contribution has been emphasized by Haden.¹ There is nothing more dramatic in medicine than the effect of liver therapy on a patient with pernicious anemia. Only the use of sulfa drugs and other antibiotics such as penicillin afford such brilliant results.²⁰

The use of whole liver by mouth led to the development of liver extracts of increasing potency that could be administered parenterally. The search for the active principle of liver extract culminated in the discovery of vitamin B₁₂ by Rickes and colleagues in 1948.²¹ Subsequent investigations by numerous workers have demonstrated important roles of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid in nucleic acid metabolism in the body.

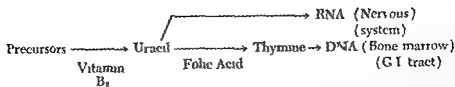
MECHANISM OF VITAMIN B₁₂ DEFICIENCY IN PERNICIOUS ANEMIA

The relationship between the abnormal gastric secretion and the effectiveness of the liver diet in pernicious anemia was shown by Castle and Townsend,³ who utilized beef muscle normal gastric juice hydrochloric

acid and gastric juice from patients with pernicious anemia in their investigation. In a series of classic experiments they studied the hematologic effects of various combinations of these substances on patients with pernicious anemia in relapse. They demonstrated that patients with pernicious anemia lack a substance in the gastric juice that is necessary for the absorption of some factor present in meat that is essential for normal erythropoiesis. It was shown that this gastric factor which could be destroyed by heat is not hydrochloric acid. These studies thus established that the primary defect in pernicious anemia is the failure of the stomach to secrete a substance probably an enzyme that is necessary for the absorption of a dietary element essential to normal hematopoiesis. As a result of these observations it was postulated that an "extrinsic factor" present in the beef muscle reacted with an "intrinsic factor" secreted in the normal gastric juice to form an "erythrocyte maturation factor" which was the active principle that was stored in the liver. After vitamin B₁₂ was isolated, Castle and coworkers repeated these experiments but substituted vitamin B₁₂ for the beef muscle.¹ The results demonstrated that vitamin B₁₂ is both an "extrinsic factor" and an "erythrocyte maturation factor." The function of the intrinsic factor is that of making possible the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ from the diet for utilization in the bone marrow and for storage in the liver.

The problem of the identity and method of action of the intrinsic factor has been reviewed recently.² Investigations have shown that in man the intrinsic factor is secreted only by the glands of the body of the stomach and that there is no secretion of this factor in the pyloric end of the stomach or in the small intestine as is the case in swine. The intrinsic factor which is water soluble but not nondialyzable is destroyed by heat or boiling and can be precipitated with ammonium sulfate. These characteristics indicate that it is a protein, probably an enzyme. Other studies have shown that it is a mucoprotein which is capable of binding vitamin B₁₂.³ Several theories have been advanced to explain the action of the mucoprotein. It has been suggested that it functions by binding vitamin B₁₂ and preventing the absorption of the vitamin by the bacteria in the intestine. This explanation appears unlikely because it has been demonstrated that patients with megaloblastic anemia associated with abnormalities of the intestine respond to antimicrobial therapy but not to added "intrinsic factor."⁴ Another possibility also considered unlikely is that the intrinsic factor actually unites with the vitamin B₁₂ in order to form an active product.⁵ A different role is suggested by the concept that intrinsic factor acts on the intestinal mucosa rather than on vitamin B₁₂ to facilitate the absorption by the mucosal cells.

Although both vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid are known to be important in normal hematopoiesis, the role of these vitamins and their relationship to each other remain uncertain despite considerable study. An interesting hypothesis that would explain many of the observations has been presented by Nieweg et al.¹⁰ According to this theory, vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid act at different steps in the metabolism of the nucleic acids. This theory is shown in the following diagram:



If vitamin B₁₂ is necessary for the synthesis of both RNA (ribonucleic acid) and DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) and folic acid is necessary only for the synthesis of DNA many of the clinical evidences of the deficiencies of these vitamins could be explained. DNA which is an essential constituent of chromosomes is utilized by tissues such as the gastrointestinal tract and the bone marrow where cell division is active. RNA which occurs in the cytoplasm and the nucleolus of the cell is not involved with the chromosomes or cell division and is most important in cells that have a large amount of cytoplasmic substance without very active cell division. In such circumstances one would expect that the greatest demand for RNA would occur in the central nervous system of the adult where the nerve cells do not divide but are the site of active protein synthesis that is necessary to maintain the function of the axones. This theory which postulates that folic acid is concerned mainly with DNA metabolism would explain how gastrointestinal and bone marrow lesions might occur without any neurologic disturbance as a result of a deficiency of folic acid. It would also explain how a deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ could cause neurologic disease as a result of RNA deficiency as well as changes in the bone marrow and gastrointestinal tract as a result of DNA deficiency. This theory would further account for the effectiveness of thymine in correcting the anemia in patients with combined folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and the ineffectiveness of uracil in a patient with megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy due to folic acid deficiency.¹⁰ The importance of these vitamins in the metabolism and growth of cells in many parts of the body is shown by the increased size and altered appearance of the nuclei in the gastric mucosal cells obtained by gastric lavage of patients with pernicious anemia.¹

If vitamin B₁₂ absorption is impaired sufficiently from any cause a macrocytic anemia and the clinical picture of pernicious anemia will develop. Such a situation occurs after total gastrectomy if the patient survives the three or four year interval that is usually necessary to deplete the body stores of vitamin B₁₂. A deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ also occurs in certain patients with fistulae, diverticula and other lesions of the small intestine even though achlorhydria is not present. In these conditions the cause of the vitamin B₁₂ deficiency is not clearly understood but it appears to be related in some way to the bacterial flora of the intestine since the ability to absorb vitamin B₁₂ is restored by treatment with oral antibiotics but is not corrected by the administration of the intrinsic factor.⁹

A disease with hematologic and neurologic manifestations identical to those in pernicious anemia occurs in some individuals who are infected with the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium latum*.⁴ The disease is found mainly

in Finland, Norway, and Sweden. Only about one in five or ten thousand carriers infected with the tapeworm develops anemia.⁹ The pathogenesis of the disease is not fully understood but the tapeworm appears to compete successfully for the available vitamin B₁₂ or interfere with the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ because elimination of the parasite without other therapy is followed by recovery.

The occurrence of a macrocytic anemia with the hematologic characteristics of pernicious anemia has been reported in patients treated with anticonvulsant drugs.¹⁰ Only a small percentage of the patients so treated develop anemia of this type and the mechanism has not been established.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Pernicious anemia affects individuals of either sex, occurs most often after the age of forty, and is rare before the age of thirty. Although pernicious anemia has been considered rare in Negroes and in dark-skinned white races,¹⁰ the incidence in Negroes in the United States approaches that in Caucasians.¹⁰

The clinical picture of pernicious anemia is variable. Patients with untreated pernicious anemia usually complain of an insidious onset of weakness, anorexia, pallor, indigestion, and numbness and tingling in the extremities. In older persons dyspnea, palpitation, dizziness, and angina of effort often develop because of the effect of anemia on the circulatory system. Soreness of the tongue and diarrhea may be present. Although seldom severe, some loss of weight usually occurs in a series of patients seen by the authors; the average weight loss before treatment was 25 pounds in Negroes and 15 pounds in Caucasians.¹⁰

In some patients with pernicious anemia, particularly since the advent of folic acid and the widespread use of multivitamin preparations, the hematologic abnormalities are mild or absent when neurologic manifestations are prominent. Subjective and objective neurologic findings have been reported in 80 per cent of patients and were severe enough to cause some degree of incapacity in about 50 per cent.¹ The most common manifestations are paresthesias, incoordination, disturbance of motility, impairment of position and vibratory sense, and absence of reflexes. The symptoms range from subjective numbness and tingling of the extremities in the mildest form to an unsteady gait, difficulty in locomotion, and difficulty in buttoning the clothes in the more severely affected patients. In the most severe form of the disease the patient is unable to walk and voluntary control of the bladder and rectum is impaired or lost. Some patients undergo marked personality changes associated with memory loss, impaired judgment, disorientation, hallucinations, and delusions.

At times the diagnosis of pernicious anemia is suggested by aspects of the patient's appearance, such as gray hair, sallow skin, slight sclerotic icterus, and atrophy of the papillae of the tongue. The spleen is usually enlarged in hematologic relapse and is often palpable. In most patients neurologic ex-

amination reveals abnormalities of the peripheral nerves and posterolateral columns that are most marked in the lower extremities. The earliest signs are usually some loss of vibratory sense in the lower extremities and impairment of sensation to pin prick and touch that may be either spotty or of the "stocking" type. With more severe changes the Romberg test is positive, position sense is impaired, and the deep tendon reflexes are lost at the ankles and knees. Further progression of the disease in the spinal cord is associated with the development of hyperreflexia and the presence of pathologic reflexes such as an extensor plantar response. Paraplegia and loss of sphincter control are late manifestations. The neurologic dysfunctions in pernicious anemia have been classified as (1) cerebral (2) olfactory (3) peripheral nerve and posterior column of the spinal cord (4) peripheral nerve posterior and lateral columns of the spinal cord.⁴ The distinction between peripheral neuropathy, posterior column disease and combined system degeneration is useful as an indication of the severity of the disease, but classification in this way is not always easy. For this reason some authors quantitate the extent of the process by grading the severity of all the objective changes as I, II, III or IV.²

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

In nearly every patient with uncomplicated and untreated pernicious anemia macrocytic anemia occurs. Erythrocyte counts range from less than a million to near normal values. The MCV is nearly always over 100 cu microns and is often in the range of 120 to 130 cu microns. The hemoglobin values are not reduced as much as the erythrocyte count and the MCH is usually increased (over 33 $\gamma\gamma$). The blood smear shows considerable anisocytosis and poikilocytosis of erythrocytes that appear to be well filled with hemoglobin. If the anemia is severe stippled red cells and nucleated red cells of the megaloblastic series may be seen. In the untreated patient the reticulocyte count is either normal or subnormal.

Leukopenia and thrombocytopenia occur commonly in pernicious anemia. Leukocyte counts of 3000 to 4000 per cu mm are common and levels of 1600 to 2000 per cu mm sometimes occur. The leukopenia is due mainly to a reduction in the granulocytes. Some of the granulocytes show abnormalities such as hypersegmentation and an increase in size; these cells are called "macropolycytes" (Fig. 21). In patients with severe anemia the platelets often number less than 100,000 per cu mm.

The gastric secretion in pernicious anemia is abnormal in several respects. The total quantity of the gastric juice is greatly reduced and achlorhydria is an almost constant finding. These abnormalities persist after treatment. Because exceptions occur so rarely, failure to secrete free hydrochloric acid after the injection of histamine subcutaneously can be considered an almost essential feature for the diagnosis of pernicious anemia.

The bone marrow in relapse is usually hypercellular. The characteristic feature is the occurrence of the megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis (Fig.

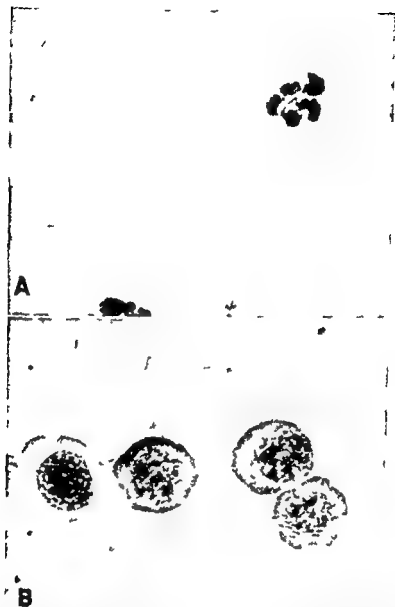


Figure 21 A Peripheral blood and B bone marrow from a patient with untreated pernicious anemia. The peripheral blood smear shows macrocytosis, anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, and a macropolocyte. The bone marrow shows the megaloblastic type of maturation.

21) If anemia is severe, promegaloblasts and bisophilic megaloblasts are increased in number and mitotic figures are numerous. The polychromatophilic megaloblasts, which are the easiest cells to identify in this series, persist even after the anemia in the peripheral blood has been abolished by

transfusion.^{10, 16} The erythrocytic precursors in the marrow are extremely sensitive to specific therapy and the parenteral administration of even a few micrograms of vitamin B₁₂ or the ingestion of a few milligrams of folic acid is sufficient to change the megaloblastic picture in the marrow to a normoblastic one within a day or two. In such circumstances the appearance of the bone marrow may not be diagnostic. However, the morphologic abnormalities in the marrow in pernicious anemia are not confined to cells of the erythrocytic series. Deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid also leads to the production of giant metamyelocytes and multisegmented macropolyleytes. These abnormalities in the granulocytic series do not disappear as promptly as the megaloblasts do after specific therapy and their presence may be helpful in diagnosis when the patient is seen for the first time soon after specific therapy has been started.

Other laboratory tests in the untreated patient generally reveal an increased level of the indirect reacting bilirubin in the plasma (10-15 mg), an elevation of the serum iron, an increase in fecal urobilinogen excretion, a decreased blood volume, and an increase in the plasma lactic acid dehydrogenase (400 to 4000 units). A diminution of the plasma protein is not unusual.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of pernicious anemia in the untreated patient is usually made without difficulty. The presence of macrocytic anemia associated with histamine fast achlorhydria and a megaloblastic bone marrow practically establishes the diagnosis. The diagnosis is proved when the parenteral administration of vitamin B₁₂ produces the characteristic hematologic changes. These are the conversion of the megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis to the normoblastic type within a day or two, a rise in reticulocytes during the first week, and a return of the hemoglobin and red count to normal levels in succeeding weeks. The magnitude of the reticulocyte response depends on the degree of anemia and varies inversely with the erythrocyte count. The maximum reticulocyte count (R) that is expected to follow the intramuscular injection of liver extract or vitamin B₁₂ in adequate amounts can be calculated from the formula

$$R = \frac{82 - 22E_0}{1 + 0.5E_0}$$

where R represents the reticulocyte count in per cent and E₀ represents the initial erythrocyte count in million per cu mm.¹¹ For example, if the initial erythrocyte count = 1.5 mil per cu mm

$$R = \frac{82 - (22 \times 1.5)}{1 + (0.5 \times 1.5)} = \frac{82 - 33}{1 + 0.75} = \frac{49}{1.75} = 28 \text{ per cent}$$

In our experience it is not uncommon for the maximum reticulocyte count to fall slightly short of the expected maximum, even when the reticulocytes are counted twice a day (Fig. 22).

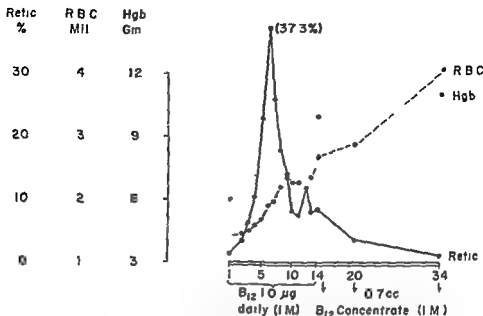


Figure 22 Reticulocyte response of a patient with untreated pernicious anemia to treatment with vitamin B₁₂. The maximum reticulocyte response which was reached about the end of the first week in this patient depends on the level of the erythrocytes before treatment.

At times pernicious anemia must be differentiated from other conditions characterized by the megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis. The most common disorders in this category are folic acid deficiency due to sprue and other dietary deficiencies and vitamin B₁₂ deficiency secondary to intestinal fistulae shunts and diverticula. The fact that most conditions associated with folic acid deficiency do not produce histamine fast achlorhydria often helps to distinguish pernicious anemia from folic acid deficiency. In addition the disorders associated with folic acid deficiency are often manifested by rather severe gastrointestinal disturbance accompanied by only minor neurologic symptoms while the reverse is more likely to be the case in pernicious anemia. In doubtful cases the determination of the serum B₁₂ level or the use of some test of vitamin B₁₂ absorption such as the Schilling test may be necessary in order to establish the diagnosis.⁵

The term "achrestic anemia" was proposed for the group of patients with a megaloblastic bone marrow and a peripheral blood picture identical with that of pernicious anemia who responded poorly or not at all to parenteral therapy with liver extract of known potency.^{12, 13} The patients that were reported had free HCl in the gastric secretion. The morbid anatomy closely resembled that of pernicious anemia. Known causes of macrocytic anemia such as dietary deficiency, pregnancy, sprue, intestinal parasites and gastric operations were excluded in the reported cases. Because extracts made from the livers of fatal cases were shown to give excellent hematopoietic

responses when administered parenterally to patients with pernicious anemia in relapse it was suggested that the disease in these patients was due to a failure to utilize or mobilize the antianemic principle that was present in the tissue stores.¹ Sternal marrow biopsies showed various degrees of conversion from the megaloblastic to the normoblastic type of erythropoiesis after treatment with liver extract but usually resembled the marrow from an inadequately treated patient. In our experience cases that fit this description are even rarer than the reported incidence of one per 100 patients with pernicious anemia.¹³ The report of Davidson suggests that at least some patients whose symptoms fit the description of achrestic anemia may well represent instances of folic acid deficiency. In a group of 375 patients with macrocytic anemia associated with a megaloblastic bone marrow 25 with unexplained megaloblastic anemia (15 with achlorhydria) were refractory to therapy with potent extract. The 15 who were treated orally with folic acid or proteolyzed liver responded to the treatment.

When the patient with pernicious anemia has the neurologic features of the disease without the characteristic hematologic abnormalities the diagnosis may be difficult. In such circumstances usually the patient has received vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid in an amount that is sufficient to convert the megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis to the normoblastic type and raise the erythrocyte count to near normal levels. If examination of the peripheral blood and bone marrow does not suffice for the diagnosis a gastric analysis should be done. If free hydrochloric acid is secreted after the histamine injection the diagnosis of pernicious anemia can be discarded with considerable assurance. If histamine fast achlorhydria is present the Schilling test for vitamin B₁₂ absorption or some other similar test should be performed since it will often clarify the diagnosis.

The tests of vitamin B₁₂ absorption are also helpful in the evaluation of patients without neurologic disease who have received treatment with vitamin B₁₂ or liver extract before the diagnosis was established. By such means the diagnosis can be verified or corrected without waiting months or years after specific therapy is withheld to see whether hematologic relapse occurs.

TREATMENT

Prior to the report of Minot and Murphy in 1926 on the efficacy of liver the treatment of pernicious anemia was unsatisfactory and the disease was invariably fatal.¹⁴ Since that time more efficient preparations have been developed but all are forms of substitution therapy that must be continued for the life of the patient. Vitamin B₁₂ is the essential factor and the parenteral administration of as little as 1 microgram each day to a patient in relapse is sufficient to restore the blood to normal and prevent the development of neurologic lesions if these are not already present. In practice it is customary to administer larger amounts at longer intervals and to err toward an excessive dose rather than risk an amount that may be suboptimal.

Although the selection of the details of the schedule may be somewhat

arbitrary some definite program of treatment should be followed. The following schedule has been found satisfactory for patients in relapse in our experience: vitamin B₁₂ 30 micrograms intramuscularly three times during the first week, then 30 micrograms once a week until the blood returns to normal. This schedule produces the expected reticulocyte response within the first week or ten days and a return of the erythrocyte level to normal within six to ten weeks. Thereafter the patient receives injections of 30 micrograms every four weeks or 60 micrograms every two months. This program has maintained patients in hematologic remission and prevented the development of neurologic lesions. However in one reported series of 51 patients treated with 30 micrograms of vitamin B₁₂ parenterally each month definite neurologic relapse occurred in the absence of hematologic relapse; three of these patients improved when the amount of vitamin B₁₂ was increased and one responded to liver extract.⁶ Such reports appear to confirm the clinical impression that not all patients with pernicious anemia require the same maintenance dosage. For this reason it is advisable to check the hematocrit levels every few months and the neurologic status at regular intervals so that the dosage of vitamin B₁₂ can be adjusted if the therapy is not adequate. Although effective oral preparations are available parenteral therapy is preferred because of greater reliability, less expense and better supervision of the patient. Unless careful supervision is maintained some patients will develop hematologic or more important neurologic relapse as a consequence of inadequate therapy. In one report of 41 patients treated orally with vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid 5 failed to return and in 14 others oral therapy was discontinued because of neurologic or hematologic relapse.⁶

When an elderly patient is severely anemic the circulation is sometimes compromised by the low levels of the circulating hemoglobin. When this occurs transfusions may be administered if it is considered inadvisable to wait for the erythropoietic effect of the vitamin B₁₂. The use of packed cells is preferred to whole blood because the former gives the desired increase in circulating hemoglobin without as great an increase in blood volume.

When severe neurologic complications are present vitamin B₁₂ is often administered in amounts larger than those that are usually given to the patient with uncomplicated anemia. This practice is based on clinical observations which led to the belief that the optimal therapeutic dose of vitamin B₁₂ may not be the same for both the hematopoietic and nervous systems. It has been recognized that there is little or no correlation between the severity of the anemia and the extent of the neurologic lesion because some patients present with severe anemia and little or no neurologic involvement while others have severe neurologic disease and only mild anemia. Although neurologic complications rarely if ever develop if a normal hematologic status is maintained with parenteral vitamin B₁₂, it has not been established that one microgram a day is the optimal initial treatment for the patient with existing neurologic involvement of significant degree. The neurologic response to therapy is much slower than the hematologic and improvement may continue for several months after the blood has returned

to normal. Some patients who show little neurologic improvement during the first month or two of therapy show gratifying improvement between the third and sixth month. Apparently little or no improvement can be anticipated after ten to twelve months of therapy.¹

Because of these considerations we employ a larger dose of vitamin B₁₂ in patients with neurologic involvement (100 micrograms three times a week for three months then 100 micrograms weekly for three months) although it is recognized that the value of a dose larger than that necessary to produce hematologic remission has not been established. Although parenteral vitamin B₁₂ is the most important treatment for patients with neurologic disease physiotherapy is often very helpful in patients who are severely affected. It has been shown clearly that while folic acid therapy may maintain the patient in a normal hematologic status it does not prevent the development of neurologic lesions.²

Vitamin B₁₂ appears to be a complete therapy in pernicious anemia. Dilute hydrochloric acid, folic acid, and liver extract are unnecessary. Like wise iron is not indicated unless there is an associated iron deficiency from some other cause.

Failure to respond to therapy or the occurrence of a hematologic relapse while the patient is receiving adequate amounts of vitamin B₁₂ should raise the suspicion of the development of some infection, renal insufficiency, gastrointestinal bleeding, or the appearance of a carcinoma of the stomach. In former years the presence on the market of ineffective liver preparations was responsible for some therapeutic failures.

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

If the patient does not have significant neurologic involvement when he is first seen the prognosis is excellent. He should be restored to his previous status and with proper maintenance therapy his outlook should be that of his age group with the possible exception of a greater likelihood of developing carcinoma of the stomach. The reported incidence of carcinoma of the stomach in patients with pernicious anemia varies considerably. One report placed the incidence in living patients at 1.7 per cent,³ while another roentgen study of 211 patients found gastric carcinoma in 8 per cent and benign polyps in 7.1 per cent. Several reports place the frequency of carcinoma of the stomach at autopsy at from 8.4 per cent to 12.3 per cent.¹⁴⁻²¹ Figures that are three to four times the incidence in individuals of the same age group who do not have pernicious anemia.²¹ The increased frequency of carcinoma suggests the desirability of periodic examinations in an effort to detect the carcinoma in an early stage. It has been recommended that the stool be examined for occult blood each month and that gastric cytology be studied every three to six months. Suspicious cases should have gastroscopy and roentgenographic study of the upper gastrointestinal tract.²¹

If neurologic complications are present the prognosis is related to the extent and duration of the manifestations. If symptoms have been present

arbitrary some definite program of treatment should be followed. The following schedule has been found satisfactory for patients in relapse in our experience: vitamin B₁₂ 30 micrograms intramuscularly three times during the first week then 30 micrograms once a week until the blood returns to normal. This schedule produces the expected reticulocyte response within the first week or ten days and a return of the erythrocyte level to normal within six to ten weeks. Thereafter the patient receives injections of 30 micrograms every four weeks or 60 micrograms every two months. This program has maintained patients in hematologic remission and prevented the development of neurologic lesions. However in one reported series of 51 patients treated with 30 micrograms of vitamin B₁₂ parenterally each month definite neurologic relapse occurred in the absence of hematologic relapse; three of these patients improved when the amount of vitamin B₁₂ was increased and one responded to liver extract.⁹ Such reports appear to confirm the clinical impression that not all patients with pernicious anemia require the same maintenance dosage. For this reason it is advisable to check the hematocrit levels every few months and the neurologic status at regular intervals so that the dosage of vitamin B₁₂ can be adjusted if the therapy is not adequate. Although effective oral preparations are available, parenteral therapy is preferred because of greater reliability, less expense and better supervision of the patient. Unless careful supervision is maintained some patients will develop hematologic or more important neurologic relapse as a consequence of inadequate therapy. In one report of 41 patients treated orally with vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid 5 failed to return and in 14 others oral therapy was discontinued because of neurologic or hematologic relapse.¹⁰

When an elderly patient is severely anemic the circulation is sometimes compromised by the low levels of the circulating hemoglobin. When this occurs transfusions may be administered if it is considered inadvisable to wait for the erythropoietic effect of the vitamin B₁₂. The use of packed cells is preferred to whole blood because the former gives the desired increase in circulating hemoglobin without as great an increase in blood volume.

When severe neurologic complications are present vitamin B₁₂ is often administered in amounts larger than those that are usually given to the patient with uncomplicated anemia. This practice is based on clinical observations which led to the belief that the optimal therapeutic dose of vitamin B₁₂ may not be the same for both the hematopoietic and nervous systems. It has been recognized that there is little or no correlation between the severity of the anemia and the extent of the neurologic lesion because some patients present with severe anemia and little or no neurologic involvement while others have severe neurologic disease and only mild anemia. Although neurologic complications rarely if ever develop if a normal hematologic status is maintained with parenteral vitamin B₁₂, it has not been established that one microgram a day is the optimal initial treatment for the patient with existing neurologic involvement of significant degree. The neurologic response to therapy is much slower than the hematologic and improvement may continue for several months after the blood has returned

to normal. Some patients who show little neurologic improvement during the first month or two of therapy show gratifying improvement between the third and sixth month. Apparently little or no improvement can be anticipated after ten to twelve months of therapy.⁴

Because of these considerations we employ a larger dose of vitamin B₁₂ in patients with neurologic involvement (100 micrograms three times a week for three months, then 100 micrograms weekly for three months) although it is recognized that the value of a dose larger than that necessary to produce hematologic remission has not been established. Although parenteral vitamin B₁₂ is the most important treatment for patients with neurologic disease, physiotherapy is often very helpful in patients who are severely affected. It has been shown clearly that while folic acid therapy may maintain the patient in a normal hematologic status, it does not prevent the development of neurologic lesions.⁵

Vitamin B₁₂ appears to be a complete therapy in pernicious anemia. Dilute hydrochloric acid, folic acid, and liver extract are unnecessary. Like wise iron is not indicated unless there is an associated iron deficiency from some other cause.

Failure to respond to therapy or the occurrence of a hematologic relapse while the patient is receiving adequate amounts of vitamin B₁₂ should raise the suspicion of the development of some infection, renal insufficiency, gastrointestinal bleeding, or the appearance of a carcinoma of the stomach. In former years the presence on the market of ineffective liver preparations was responsible for some therapeutic "failures."

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

If the patient does not have significant neurologic involvement when he is first seen the prognosis is excellent. He should be restored to his previous status and with proper maintenance therapy his outlook should be that of his age group, with the possible exception of a greater likelihood of developing carcinoma of the stomach. The reported incidence of carcinoma of the stomach in patients with pernicious anemia varies considerably. One report placed the incidence in living patients at 17 per cent,⁶ while another roentgen study of 211 patients found gastric carcinoma in 8 per cent and benign polyps in 71 per cent.⁷ Several reports place the frequency of carcinoma of the stomach at autopsy at from 8.4 per cent to 12.3 per cent,¹⁴⁻³¹ figures that are three to four times the incidence in individuals of the same age group who do not have pernicious anemia.³¹ The increased frequency of carcinoma suggests the desirability of periodic examinations in an effort to detect the carcinoma in an early stage. It has been recommended that the stool be examined for occult blood each month and that gastric cytology be studied every three to six months. Suspicious cases should have gastroscopy and roentgenographic study of the upper gastrointestinal tract.³¹

If neurologic complications are present the prognosis is related to the extent and duration of the manifestations. If symptoms have been present

for only a few months the outlook is excellent particularly if the individual is less than 50 years old. "Signs of an upper motor neurone lesion such as the Babinski sign usually persist despite treatment but sometimes disappear. Absent deep tendon reflexes usually return. Marked improvement may occur promptly and maximal improvement occurs within ten or twelve months." "If paraplegia and loss of sphincter control have developed the outlook for recovery is poor. However many patients who are severely ataxic and unable to walk improve after months of treatment and eventually recover sufficiently to resume most of their previous activities even though subjective and objective neurologic abnormalities persist.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Case 1

A 56 year old white housewife was admitted to the hospital for the evaluation of progressive numbness and pain in her hands and feet of two years duration. In the last few weeks before admission her gait had become unsteady. She had been taking "vitamin pills" as a tonic for many months. On admission thirteen years previously she was found to have histamine fast achlorhydria and hypochromic anemia; the anemia responded to treatment with iron.

Physical Examination. The patient was an obese white woman in no apparent distress. Pertinent abnormalities were found only on the neurologic examination. These were absent gag reflex, moderate spastic paraparesis and increased tendon reflexes in the lower extremities, abnormal Babinski signs bilaterally, impairment of position sense in the hands and feet and absence of vibratory sense in the feet and legs.

Laboratory Examination. Admission blood studies disclosed the following: hct 42 per cent, hb 14.3 gm per 100 ml, rbc 4.3 mil per cu mm. There was moderate anisocytosis of the red cells, both microcytic and macrocytic forms were present. Examination of the urine, stool and spinal fluid was normal. Gastric analysis on two occasions revealed the absence of free hydrochloric acid after the injection of histamine. Examination of the bone marrow showed a normoblastic type of erythropoiesis. A Schilling test for radioactive vitamin B₁₂ (B₁₂ Co⁶⁰) absorption was performed. No significant absorption of vitamin B₁₂ occurred (0% excretion). When the test was repeated with the addition of intrinsic factor, absorption of the orally administered vitamin B₁₂ occurred (9% excretion).

Diagnosis and Treatment. A diagnosis of pernicious anemia with subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord was made. The patient was treated with vitamin B₁₂ intramuscularly. During the next ten months her gait improved gradually and returned to normal. Impaired vibratory sense and paresthesias persisted.

Comment. The neurologic manifestations of pernicious anemia occurred in this patient in the absence of anemia. The diagnosis was suggested by the

commonly in idiopathic steatorrhea.³⁴ The relative importance of the different mechanisms that are responsible for the deficiency varies in different patients. Poor absorption is usually the main factor but in some patients deficient diet or failure to secrete the gastric intrinsic factor is important.³

If the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid is impaired sufficiently is hematologic picture identical with that seen in untreated pernicious anemia occurs. The anemia is macrocytic the erythrocytes manifest considerable anisocytosis and poikilocytosis and examination of the bone marrow reveals a megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis associated with the abnormal leukocytes that occur in pernicious anemia. When a megaloblastic anemia which is the commonest type of anemia found in sprue⁴ occurs in patients with the malabsorption syndrome a deficiency of folic acid is usually responsible. The administration of folic acid orally or intramuscularly in doses of 10 to 30 mg per day usually produces a good hematologic response that is followed by marked clinical improvement.^{34, 37, 4} Some patients are refractory to treatment with vitamin B₁₂ parenterally^{37, 4} while others respond at least partially.⁴¹ The response in the individual patient probably depends on the state of the vitamin B₁₂ stores and the degree of folic acid deficiency. When both substances are deficient both folic acid and parenteral vitamin B₁₂ are necessary. In some patients the gastrointestinal symptoms persist or recur despite improvement in the blood after administration of both folic acid and vitamin B₁₂.

Iron deficiency anemia also develops in some patients with this syndrome as a result of blood loss from the gastrointestinal tract or because of impaired absorption of iron from the alimentary tract. When iron deficiency is severe the anemia is hypochromic and microcytic but in milder degrees of iron deficiency the anemia is normocytic microcytic or hypochromic. Anemia of this type responds to iron administered orally in the usual dosage but in some patients parenteral administration is necessary. A combined deficiency of iron and folic acid or iron and vitamin B₁₂ may result in a normocytic anemia that requires both iron and folic acid or iron and vitamin B₁₂ in treatment.³

Impaired absorption of vitamin B₁₂ occurs in other conditions not associated with diarrhea or other evidence of the malabsorption syndrome. Such impairment has been demonstrated in patients with blind intestinal loops, fistulae, strictures and diverticula of the small bowel.⁴⁶ A severe deficiency may cause a megaloblastic anemia that responds to parenterally administered vitamin B₁₂ but does not respond to the oral administration of both vitamin B₁₂ and intrinsic factor. The improved absorption of vitamin B₁₂ that follows the administration of chlortetracycline and tetracycline suggests that in some way the abnormal intestinal flora inhibits absorption of the vitamin B₁₂.⁴⁶ Impaired vitamin B₁₂ absorption occurs regularly after total gastrectomy because of the absence of the gastric intrinsic factor.⁴⁷ Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency rarely occurs after partial gastrectomy^{48, 49} but sometimes develops after resection of the small bowel for regional enteritis or other similar disorders.⁴⁸

Comment This case illustrates many interesting points that are considered typical of pernicious anemia. When first seen the patient was an elderly man with a severe anemia without significant weight loss. The anemia was macrocytic and was associated with leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and megaloblastic bone marrow and histamine fast achlorhydria. The diagnosis of pernicious anemia was established by the response to specific therapy. Neurologic disease was never a problem. After being well for nearly eight years the patient developed a carcinoma of the stomach which proved fatal in less than two years. The incidence of carcinoma of the stomach in patients with pernicious anemia has been reported to be several times that in the general population. The difficulty in dealing with the problem is shown by this patient. Radiographic study of the upper gastrointestinal tract was performed every 12 to 18 months and yet the patient had an incurable carcinoma when it was recognized only one month after the onset of vague gastrointestinal complaints.

ANEMIAS ASSOCIATED WITH DEFICIENT ABSORPTION FROM THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT (SPRUE AND OTHER SYNDROMES)

In the clinical entities characterized by malabsorption in the small bowel (sprue, non-tropical sprue, idiopathic steatorrhea, celiac disease, lymphoma, and intestinal lipodystrophy) the most prominent symptoms usually are flatulence, anorexia, diarrhea, bulky stools, weight loss, and glossitis. Neurologic signs and symptoms other than tetany occur only in a minority of patients.¹ Disturbed intestinal absorption is usually manifested by the presence of increased fat in the stools, a flat oral glucose tolerance curve, lowering of the serum calcium, and roentgenographic abnormalities in the small bowel. Although diarrhea occurs frequently in patients with these syndromes, malabsorption also occurs in the absence of diarrhea.

Various types of anemia develop as the result of the defective absorption of the factors essential for normal erythropoiesis. In one group of 25 patients with idiopathic sprue, 20 were found to have impaired absorption of vitamin B₁₂ that did not improve when intrinsic factor was administered.²⁰ In another study, lowered serum vitamin B₁₂ levels were found in about one third of the patients with steatorrhea.²¹ The absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in the presence of added intrinsic factor has been found to improve after the administration of corticotropin.³ Impaired absorption of folic acid has been shown to occur

some degree of iron deficiency antedates the pregnancy^{44, 45}. Severe iron deficiency is evidenced by the occurrence of a hypochromic microcytic type of anemia but a milder degree of iron deficiency may be associated with only minor changes in the indices and in the appearance of the erythrocytes^{41, 47}. When iron deficiency is present the serum iron level is reduced to less than 60 micrograms per 100 ml⁴⁷ and the latent iron binding capacity is increased. Erythropoiesis is normoblastic in type.

Other types of anemia are much less common than that due to iron deficiency. Macrocytic anemia attributed to dietary deficiency was observed in 8.4 to 25.7 per cent of the patients in one series⁴. The higher incidence of this type of anemia occurred in a group of 70 patients of a distinctly low economic status. Anemia associated with a megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis sometimes occurs during pregnancy or the puerperium. In one series of 45 patients with megaloblastic erythropoiesis indistinguishable from that seen in pernicious anemia the mean corpuscular volume was greater than 100 cu microns in only one half the patients. The changes in the blood smears were similar to those seen in pernicious anemia but were less marked. Free hydrochloric acid was present in the gastric secretion in three fourths of the patients. Megaloblastic anemia is usually the result of a deficiency of folic acid but the factors responsible for its development are not apparent in all patients who develop this type of anemia. Known dietary deficiencies, vomiting and altered gastric secretion do not seem to afford adequate explanations and it has been suggested that multiple factors are concerned⁴⁸.

Recognition of the factors responsible for anemia during pregnancy is not always easy because iron deficiency occurs in association with normal indices⁴ and megaloblastic anemia occurs with normal indices or even with microcytosis⁴⁹. Determination of the serum iron level which is reduced in iron deficiency and normal or elevated in other types of anemia and a study of the bone marrow usually enable one to establish the diagnosis. Even with the benefit of the bone marrow examination recognition of the type of anemia may be difficult if the patient has taken multivitamin tablets. These often contain amounts of folic acid that may be sufficient to convert a megaloblastic type of erythropoiesis to the normoblastic type and yet be inadequate to correct the anemia.

When the patient with anemia is seen for the first time during pregnancy the possibility that the anemia may be the result of some coexisting disease rather than the pregnancy must be considered. Leukemia, diseases of the lymphoma group, renal disease or almost any other cause of anemia may be recognized for the first time during pregnancy. The occurrence of pregnancy in a patient with one of the hemoglobinopathies may be serious because of the high incidence of complications in the mother or the child. When one of the hemoglobinopathies is considered in the diagnosis it is important to differentiate the benign combination of a trait condition and an anemia of pregnancy from the more serious homozygous or doubly heterozygous abnormalities.

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH PREGNANCY

During normal pregnancy reductions in the hematocrit hemoglobin and erythrocyte count are found. The maximal decrease occurs during the last trimester when the reduction may amount to 15 or 25 per cent.^{44 46 1} These changes are due at least in part to hemodilution since the plasma volume increases by 800 to 1300 ml while the red cell volume increases by only about 300 ml.⁴³ Because of these disproportionate changes decreases in hematocrit, erythrocytes and hemoglobin levels can be considered to be physiologic to a certain extent.

Not all changes that occur in the blood during pregnancy can be explained by hemodilution because the level of the serum iron falls^{40 47 50} while the values for the free erythrocyte protoporphyrin^{47 8} and the latent iron binding capacity rise.⁴⁶ In non pregnant patients elevations of the free erythrocyte protoporphyrin and latent iron binding capacity are most often seen in iron deficiency. More direct evidence of the frequent development of actual iron deficiency during pregnancy is the observation that the serum iron level fell in about 80 per cent of a group of patients who received no supplemental iron during pregnancy but remained normal in 80 per cent of those who received iron salts orally.^{47 1}

The mother loses iron to the fetus and also with bleeding during delivery. The iron requirements for the fetus which will be met at the expense of the mother amount to about 400 mg. As the absence of menstruation during pregnancy allows the mother to conserve 325 mg of iron that would ordinarily be lost through menstruation the net added requirement of pregnancy is about 75 mg. However the loss of iron in the placenta and in bleeding at the time of parturition has been estimated to average about 325 mg. Calculations from these figures therefore indicate that the net additional iron necessary for pregnancy is 400 mg or more.⁴⁷

There is disagreement concerning the normal range of the blood values during pregnancy. The following values have been said to represent the lower normal limits of hemoglobin and erythrocytes during pregnancy: hemoglobin 10 gm per 100 ml, erythrocytes 3.5 mil per cu mm, hemoglobin 11.3 to 11.5 gm per 100 ml, red cells 3.7 mil per cu mm, hematocrit 35 per cent.^{41 50} The reported frequency of anemia in pregnancy varies from 30 per cent² to 80 per cent.¹

TYPES OF ANEMIA

Iron deficiency is the commonest cause of anemia during pregnancy. It occurred in about 75 per cent of one series of patients.^{44 51} In many instances

The anemia associated with chronic renal disease is nearly always normochromic and normocytic in type but a macrocytic anemia occurs occasionally. In one series of patients with uremia secondary to various types of renal disease the hemoglobin levels ranged from 5.6 to 8.4 gm per 100 ml and the erythrocytes counts ranged from 1.5 to 3.5 mil per cu mm.⁶¹ In the same series varying degrees of reticulocytosis 2.4 to 22.5 per cent occurred irregularly. The leukocyte and platelet counts are usually normal. Examination of the bone marrow reveals erythrocytic hypoplasia, normal cellularity or erythrocytic hyperplasia. The serum iron level and the unsaturated iron binding capacity are usually normal or slightly decreased unless significant blood loss has occurred. The antiglobulin (Coombs) test, hypotonic saline fragility test, mechanical fragility test, and serum bilirubin levels are usually normal.⁶² The fecal urobilinogen excretion is increased when hyperhemolysis is present.

For many years the anemia of uremia was ascribed to an accumulation in the blood of poisons secondary to defective renal function.⁴ It was noted that whatever the nature of these "poisons" might be, the action on the marrow appeared to be selective because erythrocyte precursors seemed to be depressed while activity was normal or increased in the other marrow elements.² Histologic evidence of hypoplasia of the erythroid series was found on examination of the marrow only when the non-protein nitrogen level of the blood was above 150 mg per 100 ml. Complete aplasia was not found and it was suggested that a defect in the delivery of red blood cells to the peripheral blood from the bone marrow might be a factor in the anemia.

In 1949 Emerson and Burroughs⁷ published the first of a series of reports indicating that hemolysis contributes to the production of anemia in uremia in some circumstances. When the survival time of erythrocytes was measured by the Ashby technique of differential agglutination, it was found that normal donor cells were destroyed in the recipient uremic patient at one and a half to three times the normal rate. Erythrocytes from uremic patients survived normally in the normal recipient. It was concluded that some extra-corporeal factor present in the plasma of uremic patients was responsible for the premature destruction of red blood cells. Other investigators demonstrated that this hemolytic activity was not found in all patients and was not constant in the same patient.⁶³ The occurrence of hemolysis appeared to coincide with the periods of rapid progression of the underlying renal disease. However, it is apparent that hyperhemolysis is not the only mechanism concerned in the anemia of uremia. Even during periods of increased hemolytic activity the decrease in the life span of the red blood cells is not sufficient to produce anemia if the marrow responds normally.³ Thus while hemolysis contributes to the anemia in certain patients it appears that depression of erythropoiesis is the most important and most common factor.

The diminished erythropoiesis in uremia has been demonstrated in several ways. It has been reported that in patients with uremia there is a decreased rate of utilization of radioactive iron⁶⁴ and an increased storage of iron in the liver and spleen.⁶¹ *In vitro* studies of bone marrow cells sus-

TREATMENT AND PROGNOSIS

The best therapy for the anemia of pregnancy is preventive. In most patients iron deficiency anemia can be prevented by the ingestion of an adequate diet or by supplementation with 0.3 gm of ferrous sulfate three times a day. A single 0.3 gm tablet taken at bedtime is also effective. Most macrocytic anemias can be prevented by a liberal daily diet which contains one quart of milk, one fourth pound of lean meat, and one egg a day or by supplementing the diet with 5 mg of folic acid. If an iron deficiency anemia has developed it can generally be corrected by the administration of 0.3 gm of ferrous sulfate three times a day. In the occasional patient who does not tolerate oral iron because of gastrointestinal symptoms, parenteral iron may be required. Most patients with megaloblastic anemia do not respond to vitamin B₁₂ or concentrated liver extract⁴²⁻⁴³ but usually respond to folic acid in a dose of 20 mg a day. The unusual occurrence of a response to the combination of vitamin B₁₂ and ascorbic acid after the failure of each preparation singly has been reported.⁴⁰ As is true in other circumstances, the pregnant patient who is seriously ill with a severe degree of anemia may need blood transfusions before the diagnosis of the type of anemia can be established. Even in this situation it is rare that the necessary hematologic studies cannot be initiated or the necessary specimens obtained before the therapy is started.

The prognosis of the patients who develop anemia during pregnancy is excellent when proper treatment is given if no serious complicating disorders are present. If iron deficiency develops, therapy with iron may be necessary for some months after the pregnancy in order to replenish the iron stores. Megaloblastic anemia rarely relapses after adequate therapy but may recur in subsequent pregnancies.⁴³

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH CHRONIC RENAL DISEASE

The majority of patients with chronic renal insufficiency develop a significant degree of anemia some time during the course of the disease. Anemia is not a common clinical feature of nephrosis but it occurs in nearly all patients with chronic renal insufficiency if uremia is present. The mechanism by which this anemia is produced has been the subject of a number of investigations but is still incompletely understood. The subject has been reviewed recently by Loge, Lange, and Moore.⁴⁴

ing surgical removal of the thyroid gland.¹² Since that time anemia has been recognized as a frequent development in patients with spontaneous myxedema and also in those who develop thyroid deficiency following surgery. The incidence of anemia was reported as 52 per cent in one series of patients⁷ and was found to be about 60 per cent in a series of 50 patients reviewed by the authors.

MECHANISM OF THE ANEMIA

There is no evidence that the anemia in myxedema is due to blood loss and studies of the survival time of the erythrocytes in myxedema have revealed no evidence of hyperhemolysis.⁸ The anemia which results from diminished blood production appears to be an indirect effect of the lack of the thyroid hormone rather than being due to a deficiency of some specific factor necessary for erythropoiesis. The anemia is of only moderate severity

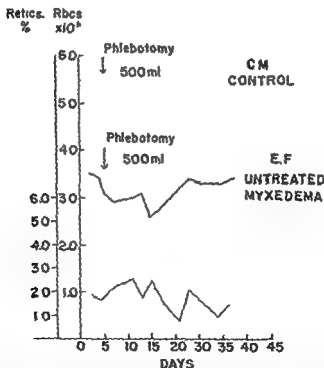


Figure 24 Response to bleeding of a normal patient and a patient with untreated myxedema. The restoration of the erythrocyte count to the pre-phlebotomy level within the normal period of time indicates that the bone marrow of patients with untreated myxedema is capable of responding to a stimulus for erythropoiesis. (From Leavell, Thorup and McClellan. *Tr. Am. Clin. & Clin. Assoc.* vol. 68, 1956.)

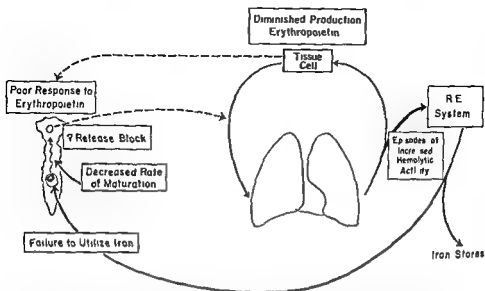


Figure 23 Schematic representation of the factors thought to be concerned in the production of anemia in chronic renal disease. Despite the presence of anemia and the reduced oxygen carrying capacity of the blood there is a failure of the factors which normally operate to compensate for this deficiency.

pendent in culture media containing uremic serum have revealed a decrease in the rate of maturation of erythrocyte precursors⁶¹ and a diminished rate of removal of iron from the culture media.⁶² The mechanism by which erythropoiesis is depressed in uremia is still uncertain. It has been suggested that uremia in some way interferes with the production of erythropoietin.⁶³ Jacobson et al. concluded that the kidney is the site of production of erythropoietin or a precursor⁶⁴ but it is difficult to distinguish the hematologic effects produced by nephrectomy from those that are caused by azotemia. Another aspect of this complex problem has been indicated by the studies of Rees et al. which suggest that a disorganization of metabolism occurs in red blood cells that are suspended in uremic serum.⁶⁵ The transfer of iron into the developing erythrocyte seems to be energy dependent and it is possible that a metabolic dysfunction which alters energy output interferes with iron uptake in vivo and in vitro.

Figure 23 summarizes the various factors thought to play a role in the production of anemia in decompensated renal disease.

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH MYXEDEMA

The occurrence of anemia in myxedema was first noted by Charcot in 1881⁶⁶ and in 1883 Kocher reported that anemia appeared gradually follow

to 99 μg per 100 ml (normal 60–150). Three of the patients with low serum iron levels were women who had mild normocytic anemia and the fourth was a man with a hematocrit of 40 per cent in whom no chronic blood loss could be demonstrated. Whether these values indicate undetected blood loss or the poor absorption of food iron that has been reported to occur in myxedema is uncertain.⁶⁰ Leukocyte counts varied from 3400 to 13 000 per cu mm but were usually normal. The platelet counts were also normal. Although bone marrow hypoplasia has been reported to be a feature of myxedema,⁶ bone marrow aspiration in this series revealed the cellularity of the marrow to be within normal limits in slightly more than one half the patients and hypocellular in the remainder. Erythropoiesis was normoblastic in every instance.

The results of the other laboratory tests are similar to those that are usually found in any patient with myxedema, such as a low basal metabolic rate, elevation of the serum cholesterol, decreased uptake of radioactive iodine, and low plasma bound iodine. The plasma bilirubin is normal although the plasma may appear slightly icteric because of carotenemia.

DIAGNOSIS AND PROGNOSIS

If myxedema is considered in the differential diagnosis, its presence can usually be established or excluded without difficulty by a consideration of the clinical features and by means of appropriate laboratory tests. Myxedema is sometimes mistaken for pernicious anemia because the pallor and yellowish tint of the skin of patients with myxedema suggest pernicious anemia, as does the macrocytosis. An incorrect diagnosis of aplastic anemia is also made at times because of the failure of the anemia to respond to treatment with iron, vitamin B₁₂, and other preparations.

The anemia of myxedema generally responds to the administration of thyroid substance in the usual dosage (desiccated thyroid 0.03 to 0.1 gm per day) by a gradual rise in the hemoglobin and erythrocytes to normal levels in from three to nine months. The prognosis is excellent as long as the patient continues treatment. If there is an associated deficiency of iron or vitamin B₁₂, the appropriate preparation must be given in addition to desiccated thyroid in order to restore the blood to normal.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

A 42-year-old white housewife was seen with the chief complaint of swelling of the eyelids. During the preceding six or seven years she had noticed increasing fatigue, aching in the arms, legs, and back, and severe constipation. She had noted marked intolerance to cold and stated that she "could wear a sweater even in the summer." During much of this time she had been treated unsuccessfully for "anemia" with various drugs.

Physical examination revealed the face to be pale and puffy. The upper eyelids were edematous. The patient spoke slowly and her voice was hoarse.

and responds but slowly to the administration of thyroid substance without the occurrence of reticulocytosis. Bomford postulated that the anemia in myxedema represents an adjustment to the decreased metabolic needs of the patient and compared it to changes that occur when there is an excess of oxygen.⁶⁸ The demonstration that thyroidectomized animals respond to bleeding and exposure to low atmospheric pressures by increased erythropoiesis indicates that the thyroid hormone per se is not necessary for increased erythropoiesis.⁷¹ Evidence that a similar situation exists in man is afforded by the observation that patients with myxedema recover from bleeding without the administration of thyroid substance (Fig. 21).^{68, 74} The same conclusion can be drawn from the response of patients with myxedema and coexisting pernicious anemia or iron deficiency because the anemia responds at least partially to specific treatment with vitamin B₁₂ or iron without the administration of thyroid substance.⁶⁸ Impaired absorption of either dietary iron or vitamin B₁₂ which have been demonstrated in myxedema^{70, 80} may be important in the production of anemia in some patients.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The onset of the symptoms in myxedema is often insidious with increasing weakness, muscular aches, lack of energy, increased tolerance to heat and intolerance to cold. Severe constipation is often a troublesome symptom. Puffiness of the eyelids and swelling of the face and extremities are often apparent to the patient. Contrary to the popular lay opinion, weight gain is by no means a universal symptom in thyroid deficiency.

When the patient is examined the diagnosis may be suggested by the appearance of the patient's face which is often pale, puffy, dull and expressionless. The trunk and extremities frequently appear edematous but the edema does not pit on pressure. Much of the hair normally present on the head and body may be lost and that which remains is coarse in texture. In severe cases the skin is dry and scaly and has a pale yellow tinge. The voice is usually hoarse and deep and speech is slow and deliberate. In many patients the tongue is enlarged. The recovery phase of the deep tendon reflexes is sluggish. In addition to the signs characteristic of myxedema the patient may have the signs of associated cardiovascular disturbance such as edema, ascites and pericardial effusion.

LABORATORY EXAMINATIONS

The anemia is not severe in the uncomplicated case of myxedema. The lowest erythrocyte count observed in the authors' series of 50 patients was 3.0 mil. per cu. mm.⁵ The MCV ranged from 81 to 110 cu. microns and was over 94 cu. microns in 60 per cent. The blood smears showed little or no poikilocytosis or anisocytosis. There was no instance of hypochromic microcytic anemia in this group but the serum iron level was found reduced in four of ten patients in whom it was measured. The values ranged from 32

of an illness characterized by menorrhagia, retinal hemorrhages and marked pallor. The peripheral blood, which showed marked anemia and leukopenia, was considered unusual in that no nucleated red cells were seen despite the severe anemia. This apparent lack of increase in blood production in response to the anemia was explained by the fatty, inactive appearance of the bone marrow at autopsy. Following Ehrlich's description, similar cases of this acute fatal illness were reported. It was recognized also that a clinical picture identical with these "idiopathic" cases occurred as a result of exposure to toxic agents such as benzene, arsenicals and roentgen rays. The concept of the disorder was broadened further by the inclusion of patients with the clinical picture and peripheral blood characteristic of "aplastic" anemia even though the bone marrow showed normal or increased cellularity.¹¹ In addition, cases have been considered to belong in this category if the anemia resulted from a failure of erythropoiesis when the anemia occurred alone or was associated with either neutropenia or thrombocytopenia.

The syndrome of "aplastic anemia" occurs in children as well as adults. In 1927, Fanconi described three siblings with bone marrow hypoplasia, pancytopenia and congenital anomalies.⁹ In a review of the 31 cases of Fanconi's syndrome reported up to 1957, small stature and hypogenitalism were found to be the most frequent of the twenty abnormalities that occurred. Anomalies of the thumbs, strabismus and renal defects were next in order. Both hypoplastic and normally cellular marrows have been noted in patients thought to have the Fanconi syndrome.¹² Other syndromes that have been described in infants are the familial hypoplastic anemia characterized by pancytopenia without associated congenital anomalies¹³ and a type of hypoplastic anemia which affects the red cell series solely or predominantly.¹⁴

MECHANISM OF THE ANEMIA

The primary defect in patients with this type of anemia is the failure of the bone marrow to produce erythrocytes in normal numbers in spite of adequate amounts of all the known hematopoietic factors. The defect may be either an unresponsiveness of the erythropoietic tissues to adequate stimuli or the lack of some necessary stimulus.^{10,1} The presence of a defective response of the erythropoietic tissue is indicated by the reports of the presence of apparently adequate amounts of erythropoietin in the plasma of patients with hypoplastic anemia.^{15, 16} However, it has been suggested that in children with congenital hypoplastic anemia there may be a congenital deficiency of erythropoietin because the infusion of "anemic plasma" (containing erythropoietin) into a patient of this type was followed by reticulocytosis.¹⁶ On the basis of the evidence available at present it appears that the defect in most patients is an inability of the erythropoietic tissue to respond to adequate stimuli.

Causative Agents. The defective erythropoiesis may be the result of

and deep. The hair of the scalp was dry and axillary and forearm hair was scant. The skin over the arms was dry and somewhat scaly. The palms appeared yellow and the fingernails were soft and spoon shaped. The remainder of the physical examination was within normal limits.

Laboratory Examination. Admission blood studies showed the following: hb 11.3 gm per 100 ml, hct 33 per cent, rbc 3.0 mil per cu mm, wbc 5000 per cu mm, retics 0.6 per cent. The 24 hour radioactive iodine uptake was 10 per cent (normal 12 to 42 per cent).

Treatment and Course. A diagnosis of myxedema was made and the patient was advised to take desiccated thyroid 32 mg a day. On this therapy there was marked symptomatic improvement and five months later the hematocrit was 37 per cent, hemoglobin 11.4 gm per 100 ml, red count 3.8 mil per cu mm. The dosage of the desiccated thyroid was increased to 64 mg per day. Within another three months the patient was entirely asymptomatic; the physical examination revealed no significant abnormalities but mild anemia persisted. The hematocrit, red count, and hemoglobin values did not return to normal until nine months after treatment was started.

Comment. This patient illustrates most of the classic features of myxedema. A diagnosis of myxedema was not made for some years because the presence of the disease was not suspected. The history, the abnormalities on physical examination, and mild or moderately severe macrocytic anemia are all characteristic of myxedema. As would be expected, the anemia did not respond to injections of iron, vitamin B₁₂, and liver extract. After the correct diagnosis was made, the symptoms and objective signs of the disease disappeared gradually over a period of six months, but the peripheral blood did not return to the normal range until nine months after treatment was started. This slow response to specific treatment is characteristic of the anemia of myxedema.

APLASTIC ANEMIA

Synonyms: Refractory Anemia, Chronic Bone Marrow

Failure, Hypoplastic Anemia, Adynamic Anemia

Aregenerative Anemia, Panmyelophthisis, Aleukia

Hemorrhagica, Toxic Paralytic Anemia, Hypoplastic

Normocytic or Macrocytic Anemia due to Unknown Cause

Ehrlich described the first case of aplastic anemia in 1888.⁸⁰ This patient was a 21 year old white woman who died about one month after the onset

is the occurrence of a hereditary defect in the bone marrow that renders it more susceptible to either exogenous or endogenous toxins in later life.¹ In some patients who present mainly or solely with chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia the presence of a thymoma has been considered to be a possible causative factor but at most tumors of this type can explain only a small proportion of the cases.^{81 106 112}

Hemolytic Aspects Although the main feature of this syndrome is deficient erythropoiesis a hemolytic element is also present in some patients who are usually included in this category. This is shown by the demonstration of increased fecal urobilinogen excretion. A decreased survival time of the erythrocytes has also been reported.¹¹⁴ When increased hemolysis is present in patients who have not been transfused the hemolytic element is of such minor degree that it would not result in anemia if the bone marrow were able to function in the normal manner. Not infrequently increased hemolysis becomes a more important feature in patients who have been treated with numerous transfusions. In this circumstance splenomegaly is often present.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Aplastic anemia may occur at any age. In one series about half of the patients developed the disorder after the age of 50 years.¹¹ Men were affected more often than women possibly as a result of a higher incidence of exposure to chemicals in occupations. Aplastic anemia is rare in the Negro as compared to the white and thus is especially true of the "idiopathic" type.¹⁰

The onset of the disorder is generally gradual and is characterized by increasing weakness and other evidences of anemia such as exertional dyspnea, palpitation and pallor. Weight loss is infrequent. In about one third of the patients abnormal bleeding is the initial complaint. Although the onset is usually insidious in some patients the disorder begins abruptly with marked weakness, fever, other evidence of infection and hemorrhagic manifestations.

On physical examination the most striking abnormality is the pallor of the skin and mucous membranes. There is no yellowish tinge of the skin or sclerae. Grayish brown pigmentation of the skin and testicular atrophy occur in an appreciable percentage of patients with this disease; these abnormalities are found particularly in those who have been transfused and it seems likely that they are due at least in part to transfusion hemosiderosis. In about one half of the patients there is evidence of abnormal bleeding in the skin, mucous membranes or retinæ at the time of the initial examination. Although enlargement of the spleen, liver and lymph nodes is unusual in the untreated patients these organs have been found to be enlarged in about one third of one group of patients who had been under observation and treatment for some time.¹⁰²

various forms of injury to the blood forming tissue. In some patients the failure of erythropoiesis is clearly due to the effect on the bone marrow tissue of agents that are known to produce cellular damage if given in sufficient quantity. Included in this category are x-rays, chemicals such as benzene and drugs such as nitrogen mustard, TEM (triethylene melamine), urethane and the antimetabolites (antifolate compounds 6-mercaptopurine). Prolonged nitrous oxide anesthesia (five or six days) may also belong in this category.⁸⁷⁻⁸⁹ In other circumstances the damage to the bone marrow occurs as a result of some individual idiosyncrasy to drugs or chemicals that are ordinarily innocuous. Although it is possible that almost any drug or chemical may produce this reaction in a susceptible patient, some drugs are more likely than others to be offenders. In one review of 349 cases of aplastic anemia, 137 were classed as idiopathic, 80 were associated with the use of chloramphenicol alone or in association with other drugs, and 132 followed exposure to other drugs, chemicals or therapeutic irradiation.⁹¹ The following exposures to drugs or chemicals were found in these 132 patients: (1) antibiotics (oxytetracycline, chlortetracycline, streptomycin) 27 cases; (2) coal tar products (analgesics, antipyretics, salicylates) 22 cases; (3) anticonvulsants 10 cases; (4) antihistaminics 6 cases; (5) barbiturates 16 cases; (6) heavy metals (gold, mercury, bismuth) 4 cases; (7) insecticides or weed killers 9 cases; (8) organic solvents 15 cases, 10 of which were exposed to benzol; (9) sulfonamides 26 cases; (10) miscellaneous associations (including nitroglycerin, hair dye or rinse, chemicals, furniture wax or lacquer) 32 cases. The authors emphasized that it cannot be stated categorically that any of the drugs actually caused the aplastic anemia that followed their use, because of the possibility that the patients may have represented idiopathic cases of aplastic anemia in whom the association of the drugs was merely coincidental.

Idiopathic Cases. In a large percentage of patients with this syndrome no acceptable cause for the marrow failure can be found. These cases are classified as "idiopathic." Although the mechanism of the anemia in this group is obscure, various possible explanations have been advanced. Bonford and Rhoads suggested that erythropoiesis might be damaged as a result of the failure of the liver to inactivate completely hormones and other chemicals in the body, with the result that a chemical compound toxic to the bone marrow might be produced by the abnormal metabolism of normal or innocuous compounds.⁹² Another possibility, damage to the bone marrow by an autoimmune process, has been suggested as a result of the recognition of the role of antibodies in the production of hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenic purpura.⁹⁶⁻⁹⁸ Auto-antibodies against erythrocytes, leukocytes and platelets have been reported in a patient with aplastic anemia who had never been transfused.⁹⁹ A possible etiologic relationship between leukemia and aplastic anemia must also be considered, because leukemia sometimes develops in patients with aplastic anemia and both diseases have been reported to occur after exposure to benzol⁸¹ or irradiation.⁹³ Still another possibility which is suggested by the racial incidence and reports of a familial tendency

even though a definite diagnosis cannot be made. If what is considered a satisfactory marrow sample is not obtained after needle aspiration at several different sites, surgical trephining should be done to obtain a sample. Although leukemia sometimes becomes manifest only months or years after the appearance of anemia, the distinction can be made in most patients after a relatively short period of observation. In the 14 autopsied patients in one series the diagnosis of aplastic anemia was confirmed in all but one patient.¹⁶ In this patient, who had aplastic anemia while under observation for five years, the presence of acute myeloblastic leukemia became manifest six weeks before death. When leukemia appears some years after the onset of the anemia in a patient diagnosed as having aplastic anemia, a question as to the relationship of the two diagnoses arises. The question is whether or not the patient has both aplastic anemia and leukemia, possibly from the same or related causative factors, or only leukemia that has masqueraded as aplastic anemia.

Aplastic anemia must be distinguished from pernicious anemia, but this is usually not difficult because of the differences in appearance of the skin and the tongue and the absence of central nervous system involvement in aplastic anemia. Most patients with aplastic anemia retain the ability to secrete hydrochloric acid and this finding is sufficient to practically exclude pernicious anemia from consideration. Examination of the bone marrow, even though hypocellular, generally permits the identification of erythropoiesis as the normoblastic type rather than the megaloblastic type seen in untreated pernicious anemia. Examination of the smear of peripheral blood also helps to distinguish between the two diseases, even when the anemia is severe and macrocytic in aplastic anemia; a smear of the peripheral blood usually shows but little poikilocytosis and anisocytosis.

At times the problem of the differential diagnosis between the idiopathic aplastic anemia and anemia due to generalized carcinomatosis may arise. The finding of young leukocytes and nucleated red cells in the peripheral blood suggests the possibility of carcinomatosis of the bone marrow. The presence of metastases can be established sometimes by a bone marrow aspiration which reveals the malignant cells and at other times by radiographic study of the skeleton which discloses evidence of osseous involvement.

TREATMENT

The treatment of this disorder is unsatisfactory in general, but nevertheless the patient is treated as effectively as possible in the hope that recovery or remission will occur. The most effective form of treatment is the removal of the cause. For this reason patients should be questioned carefully about exposure to drugs or chemicals and should be removed from contact with any suspicious offenders.

In most patients, particularly with disease of the idiopathic type, the most important treatment is blood transfusion. Although the decision re-

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

In a series of 50 patients studied at the University of Virginia Hospital the following peripheral blood conditions were noted: pancytopenia 37, anemia alone 7, anemia with leukopenia 4, anemia and thrombocytopenia 2.¹⁰ The anemia was macrocytic ($MCV > 94$ cu microns) in 60 per cent and normocytic in the remainder. A mild reticulocytosis of 2 to 5 per cent occurred at some time during the course of the disease in 21 patients, but an absolute increase in reticulocytes was rarely seen. Only 9 patients had reticulocyte counts that were persistently 0.1 per cent or less. In the same series of 50 patients 41 had leukopenia. There was a relative lymphocytosis in 37 and an absolute lymphocytosis (over 3000 per cu mm) in 6. Only 5 had an absolute decrease in lymphocytes (less than 1500 per cu mm). The platelet counts varied from practically zero to normal levels but were markedly reduced in the majority of the patients.

The marrow specimen obtained by aspiration or surgical biopsy usually shows decreased cellularity. In the authors' series the marrow was hypocellular in 74 per cent, normal in 16 per cent, and hypercellular in 10 per cent.¹⁰ Similar discrepancies between the cellularity and function of the bone marrow have been reported by others.^{8, 10, 11} In the bone marrow of many patients with this disease there is an increase in mononuclear cells that generally are classed as lymphocytes although their identity and origin are uncertain. The differential count of the cells in the bone marrow often reveals increased percentages of plasma cells and reticulum cells.

The results of other laboratory procedures are often interesting and sometimes are helpful in diagnosis. The level of the serum iron may be increased and the latent iron binding capacity may be saturated even before the patient has received any blood transfusions.^{10, 107} The serum bilirubin level is usually normal but increased fecal urobilinogen excretion has been observed in some patients.^{8, 10} Liver function tests are usually normal unless the patient has received a large number of transfusions which lead to increased iron deposition in the liver.¹⁰

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF APLASTIC ANEMIA

The disease which causes the most difficulty in differential diagnosis is leukemia. Even though careful studies of the blood and bone marrow do not reveal leukemia when the patient is first seen, the possibility that the patient may still develop evidence of leukemia at a later date continues to be a source of concern. The detection of significant enlargement of the spleen before the patient has been transfused should always raise the suspicion that the patient has leukemia or some other disease of the lymphoma group rather than aplastic anemia. The distinction between leukemia and aplastic anemia can usually be made as a result of the bone marrow examination and a careful study of the peripheral blood. Any significant increase in very young cells in the marrow or peripheral blood should raise the suspicion of leukemia.

of their effect on the capillaries even when they produce no change in the cellular elements. Prednisone is usually administered in a dose of 20 to 50 mg per day; a dose larger than 50 mg may be advisable in acute hemorrhagic episodes but the effects are of short duration.

Antibiotic drugs should be used when infection is present but their use as prophylactic agents appears inadvisable because of the emergence of resistant strains of bacteria and the development of fungus infections.

Both thymectomy and splenectomy have been employed in treatment. In some patients with thymoma and pure red cell anemia thymectomy has been followed by improvement in the anemia.^{91 106 113} Splenectomy has been effective in some patients with chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia and in some with pancytopenia. Although there are exceptions⁸ the experience of most clinics is that few patients respond well to splenectomy and for this reason the operation cannot be considered a standard method of treatment. Splenectomy is most likely to be helpful if there is an associated hemolytic component.^{11 108} Hyperhemolysis may be a feature of the disease initially but it is more likely to become prominent after the patient has received numerous transfusions. If the patient requires a 500 ml blood transfusion oftener than every ten days and is not bleeding excessive hemolysis is probably present.¹¹ Good results from splenectomy have also been reported in patients who respond to corticoid therapy with a reticulocytosis.¹⁰⁹

CLINICAL COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

Although aplastic anemia must be considered a serious and generally fatal disorder the outlook is not as poor as is often thought. Most of the earlier impressions were based on single case reports or on a series of 62 patients reported in 1919 in which only 3 patients survived more than a year.¹¹⁴ A more optimistic prognosis was indicated by another series of 66

Table 7 Prognosis in Aplastic Anemia

Survival in 56 Patients with Aplastic Anemia

Presenting Type of Peripheral Blood	No. of Patients	Alive Year Survival				No. of Patients	Dead Years Survival			
		1	3	5	10		1	3	5	10
Anemia	4	4	2	2	1	3	3	3	2	1
Anemia Leukopenia	0					4	4	3		
Anemia Thrombocytopenia	0					2	2	1	1	1
Pancytopenia	11	11	7	1		26	14	8	3	2
Total	15	15	9	3	1	35	23	15	6	4

The figures relate the survival time of patients with aplastic anemia to the abnormalities in the peripheral blood and demonstrate the more serious prognosis in pancytopenia. (From Moller and Leavell, *Ann Int Med*, vol. 49, 1958.)

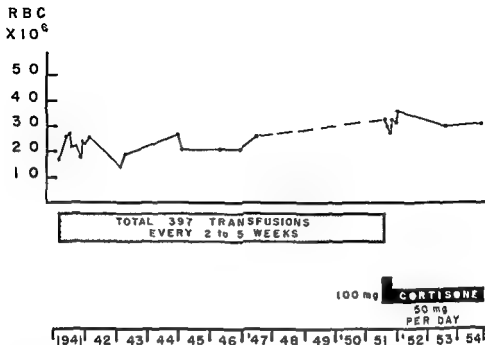


Figure 25 Chart showing response of a patient with chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia to treatment with cortisone. Although this patient required an average of 400 ml of blood per week for ten and a half years no further transfusions were necessary after the institution of treatment with cortisone (From Mohler and Leavell *Ann Int Med* vol 49 1958)

garding the number and frequency of transfusions must be an individual one for each patient the hematocrit seldom need be raised to levels higher than 33 or 34 per cent. If the blood is returned to the normal level whatever active erythropoiesis that is present may be depressed.^{69, 70} The vast majority of patients accommodate to a lower than normal level of hemoglobin without disagreeable symptoms. Moore has recommended that the patient be given a 500 ml transfusion of blood less than five days old on three successive days when the hemoglobin level falls below 90 gm per 100 ml.¹⁰³ Dangers of transfusion that restrict their usefulness are hemolytic transfusion reactions febrile reactions to the leukocytes in the transfusion,⁸⁴ the danger of infectious hepatitis and the long term danger of exogenous hemochromatosis.¹¹

Most of the patients with aplastic anemia deserve a therapeutic trial with corticosteroids because some patients appear to respond to one or the other of these preparations.^{101, 11} A good hematologic response is more likely to occur if erythrocytic hypoplasia alone is present.^{100, 10, 110} Cobaltous chloride in a dose of 100 to 180 mg per day has also been reported to be effective in a few patients.¹¹¹ Iron, vitamin B₁₂, folic acid and thyroid substances are of no value.

Hemorrhagic complications in aplastic anemia are usually due to thrombocytopenia. Corticosteroids may be helpful in controlling bleeding because

Laboratory Examination : Studies on admission disclosed the following
 hct 30 per cent hb 11 gm per 100 ml rbc 3.2 mil per cu mm wbc 3700
 per cu mm smear segmented cells 4 per cent lymphocytes 96 per cent
 platelet count 16 000 per cu mm On the second day the hematocrit was 29
 per cent wbc 1600 per cu mm (only 2 per cent segmented cells) the
 platelet count was 16 000 per cu mm The stool examination disclosed the
 presence of occult blood Several aspirations of the bone marrow revealed
 marked hypoplasia of all the marrow elements

Course A diagnosis of aplastic anemia was made and the patient was
 given prednisone 50 mg daily He continued asymptomatic for the first 48
 hours On the third day after admission the temperature rose to 105° F
 Despite hourly doses of one million units of penicillin 2.0 gm of strepto-
 mycin and blood transfusions the patient developed peripheral vascular
 collapse and died on the same day Blood cultures were positive for Staph-
 pyogenes and Staph aureus coagulase positive Death was attributed to
 septicemia

Post mortem : Post mortem examination revealed vascular congestion
 of nearly all organs Bone marrow sections from ribs vertebrae and femur
 showed marked hypoplasia of the myeloid and erythroid series The spleen
 was congested and the lungs were emphysematous Sections of the liver
 revealed diffuse periportal necrosis with focal hemorrhage and some areas
 of regeneration changes that suggested toxic necrosis

Comment : This patient with aplastic anemia had an acute illness mani-
 fested by pancytopenia and a hypocellular bone marrow Death was the
 result of a blood stream infection Idiosyncrasy to a drug chloramphenicol
 was suspected but as is usually the case the suspicion could not be con-
 firmed or disproved because the patient had received many other drugs
 Although it is difficult to be sure of the role of any particular drug in cases
 of this type drugs that are known to cause blood dyscrasias even rarely
 should be used with caution and only when a safer drug will not suffice

Case 2

A white government official who had been admitted to the hospital
 several times between 1920 and 1950 because of hemorrhages from a duo-
 denal ulcer was admitted in January 1956 at the age of 82 because of mild
 congestive heart failure and was found to have a normochromic normocytic
 type of anemia Admission blood studies showed the following hb 6.5 gm
 per 100 ml rbc 2.5 mil per cu mm hct 20 per cent wbc 5500 per cu mm
 retics 0.6 per cent differential count (per cent) segs 50 lymphs 37
 monocytes 10 basophils 2 The platelets were normal in number The serum
 iron was 127 µg per 100 ml and the unsaturated iron binding protein was
 185 µg per 100 ml Blood urea was normal The bone marrow obtained by
 aspiration appeared active and normoblastic No cause for the anemia was
 found and he was treated with blood transfusions

Treatment and Course : The anemia recurred and failed to respond to

patients reported by Bomford and Rhoads in 1941 many of the cases were due to toxic exposure and complete recovery occurred in 15%. In a group of 50 patients seen by the authors 10 per cent had a complete remission and an additional 10 per cent had a partial or temporary remission of sufficient degree that transfusions were not necessary¹⁰. Such temporary remissions lasted as long as twelve years. In a group of 35 patients who were followed until death the duration of the disease varied from five weeks to twenty years and averaged three years¹⁰ (See Table 7)

The prognosis is best when the offending agent can be recognized and eliminated because the marrow may recover if it is not too severely damaged. The outlook is better in patients with only erythrocytic hypoplasia than in those with pancytopenia because the complications of infection and hemorrhage are less common in the former group. Patients with pure erythrocytic hypoplasia generally survive for more than a year and often live ten years or more about one third of the patients with pancytopenia die in the first year and the five year survival is probably about 20 per cent¹⁰. In the authors' experience the outlook has been better for patients with hypercellular marrows than for those with hypoplastic marrows but individual exceptions occur.

The clinical course of the disease is extremely variable. Some patients have an acute illness with septicemia, fever, prostration and bleeding. The outlook in such patients is poor and death usually occurs within a matter of a few weeks or months. Fortunately most patients have a longer and more benign course extending over a period of years. When death occurs in patients with aplastic anemia it is usually the result of an infection such as septicemia or pneumonia that may be due at least in part to the leukopenia. The next most common cause of death is external or intracranial hemorrhage which is related to the thrombocytopenia. Other patients die from coexisting disorders such as vascular disease or from complications of therapy and a few develop leukemia as a terminal event.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Case 1

A 55 year old white laborer was treated for sixteen years for asthma, emphysema and bronchiectasis. During this time he had numerous acute respiratory infections with normal leukocyte responses and he received repeated courses of antibiotics. During the two months prior to admission he had received three courses of chloramphenicol and also tetracycline, penicillin and streptomycin for acute pulmonary infections. Because of a petechial rash of four or five days duration he was admitted to the hospital.

Physical examination disclosed that petechial hemorrhages were present on the trunk, extremities, palate and conjunctivae. The liver and spleen were not palpable. Except for the pulmonary changes due to emphysema and bronchiectasis the examination was otherwise essentially normal.

this type is usually given to Heuck who in 1879 reported two cases that were considered to show the chance association of myelogenous leukemia and osteosclerosis^{1 1 1 1 6} Ever since that time there has been considerable confusion and controversy concerning terminology classification and causation of the syndrome Several thoughtful and comprehensive reviews of the clinical or pathologic aspects of the problem that also contain extensive bibliographies have appeared in recent years^{1 0 1 1 1 1 8 138} Although some authors differ as to what should be classified as "primary and "secondary types of this syndrome some such grouping is desirable for a better understanding of the problem The clinical manifestations of this syndrome occur in patients known to have some primary disease such as carcinomatosis and also in patients in whom no primary disease can be demonstrated The latter group is usually diagnosed "myelofibrosis" or "agnogenic myeloid metaplasia"

SECONDARY OR SYMPTOMATIC MYELOID METAPLASIA

The clinical features of this syndrome splenomegaly anemia young cells in the peripheral blood and extramedullary hematopoiesis have been reported in a number of diseases that are sometimes classed as metaplasia myelophthustic anemia and space consuming lesions of the bone marrow The following diseases have been found to be associated with the syndrome carcinomatosis tuberculosis multiple myeloma Hodgkins disease septiemia Gauchers disease leukemia neurofibromatosis polycythemia vera^{110 113 130 133} The simple occurrence of nucleated red cells in the peripheral blood without other evidence of extramedullary hematopoiesis is not sufficient for the inclusion of a patient in this syndrome Nucleated red cells have been found in the circulating blood in a number of disorders They are seen most often in association with hemorrhage pernicious anemia hemolytic anemia leukemia and carcinoma but also occur in other disorders such as heart failure severe infection and cerebrovascular accidents¹³⁴

PRIMARY OR AGNOGENIC MYELOID METAPLASIA MYELOSCLEROSIS MYELOFIBROSIS

Most of the controversy regarding patients in this category has centered around the nature of the underlying process It has been considered to be (1) leukemic in nature (2) a proliferative or neoplastic disorder closely related to but different from myelocytic leukemia and polycythemia (3) a response of the marrow and reticuloendothelial tissue to injury of some sort According to one review 9 authors considered the disorder to be leukemic 29 believed it to be reactive but not neoplastic and 12 were undecided¹³⁶

The evidence for the leukemic nature of the process has been reviewed by Heller Lewison, and Palm^{1 1} These authors studied two autopsied cases and one splenectomized patient the bone marrow of both of the autopsied cases showed intense myeloid hyperplasia and only one showed small widely

oral iron folic acid vitamin B₁₂ or cobaltous chloride. In July 1956 examination of the bone marrow disclosed almost complete absence of erythropoiesis and slightly depressed myelopoiesis. During the period from January to July he received transfusions amounting to an average of 1500 ml of whole blood every month. In August 1956 when the rbc was 1.4 mil. per cu mm hb 3.9 gm per 100 ml hct 11 per cent retic 0 per cent prednisone was started in a dose of 20 mg daily. Striking improvement occurred in the anemia and the bone marrow reverted toward normal. On a maintenance dose of 10 to 15 mg of prednisone a day the hematocrit remained in the range of 38 to 41 per cent for six and one half months without transfusions.

Unfortunately an exacerbation of a previously mild diabetes occurred and the symptoms of peripheral neuritis became so severe that prednisone was discontinued in February 1957. The neurologic symptoms subsided but on April 9 1957 the hematocrit had fallen to 16 per cent. Subsequently the anemia failed to respond to prednisone testosterone or cobalt and transfusions have been required regularly during the past two years. The leukocyte and platelet counts remain normal while the reticulocyte count is usually zero. Extensive studies have failed to reveal any apparent cause for this anemia.

Comment. This elderly clerical worker has aplastic anemia of the chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia type. This syndrome is characterized by anemia with almost complete absence of reticulocytes and erythrocytic hypoplasia in the bone marrow; the levels of the leukocytes and platelets in the circulating blood are normal. Anemia of this type generally pursues a chronic course refractory to all therapy except transfusions but in some patients it responds to treatment with prednisone thymectomy or other measures. The symptoms generally are due to anemia; bleeding and infections are rarely serious problems.

MYELOID METAPLASIA

Synonyms. One review lists twenty-five different names that have been suggested for this syndrome.¹⁻³ Those that are used most commonly are agnogenic myeloid metaplasia myelofibrosis chronic non-leukemic myelosis aleukemic myelosis leukanemia leukoerythroblastic anemia myelofibrosis osteosclerosis.

This syndrome is characterized by splenomegaly; anemia; the presence of nucleated red blood cells and immature granulocytes in the circulating blood; and the occurrence of extramedullary hematopoiesis in the liver and spleen. There is considerable variation in the histological appearance of the bone marrow in the reported cases. Credit for the first report of a case of

The most significant feature of the physical examination is the splenomegaly. Palpable enlargement of the spleen is almost invariably present and is sometimes so extreme that the firm spleen fills the entire left side of the abdomen and extends into the right lower quadrant. Hepatomegaly generally occurs but is usually less prominent than the splenomegaly. Significant enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes is exceedingly rare. Not infrequently a bleeding tendency is manifested by ecchymoses and petechiae or retinal hemorrhages. Pallor of the skin and mucous membranes is usually evident and jaundice of mild degree is sometimes apparent in the skin and sclerae. The other abnormalities found on the physical examination are those that occur commonly in older persons with a chronic disease associated with anemia, such as evidence of loss of weight, cardiac enlargement and precordial systolic murmurs.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

The most significant hematologic feature of this disorder is an anemia that is characterized by marked anisocytosis and poikilocytosis associated with the occurrence of nucleated red cells and myelocytes or myeloblasts in the peripheral blood. The degree of anemia, the levels of leukocytes and platelets, and the numbers of immature erythrocytes and granulocytes vary within a wide range. Patients with normal or polycythemic blood levels sometimes are also included as examples of this syndrome if immature cells are present in the circulating blood.^{1, 134}

In Linman and Bethells series of 56 patients the hemoglobin ranged from 5.0 to 14.0 gm per 100 ml and was less than 9.0 gm per 100 ml in 21.^{1, 8} The mean corpuscular volume varied from 71 to 103 cu microns and was normal in 60 per cent of the subjects. The mean corpuscular hemoglobin was normal in 41 patients and low in 15. Examination of the blood smear often suggests the diagnosis because of the presence of a marked degree of poikilocytosis—particularly “teardrop forms” and elongated cells—anisocytosis and the presence of nucleated red cells. The nucleated red cells are usually few in number but occasionally they outnumber the leukocytes.^{1, 7} Most often these cells are late normoblasts but basophilic and polychromatophilic normoblasts and cells that resemble megaloblasts are sometimes seen. The reticulocyte count is often normal but mild or moderate reticulocytosis of 3 to 5 per cent is common. When hyperhemolysis is present the fecal urobilinogen excretion is increased and the level of the serum bilirubin is often elevated.

The leukocyte count is usually elevated^{116, 1, 8} but a range of 1200 to 45,800 per cu mm was found in one series. Myeloblasts, progranulocytes and myelocytes are usually found in the peripheral blood. It has been noted that the number and identity of the immature granulocytes in the peripheral blood represent a “shift to the left” rather than a leukemic hiatus.^{71, 3} Marked diminution and even the disappearance of the immature leukocytes has been observed to follow a series of transfusions in several patients with

scattered areas of fibrosis but the authors emphasized that they considered their comments applicable to cases reported in the literature under the twenty five other names as well as the term "aleukemic myelosis" which they used. The authors who concluded that the syndrome is a form of myelogenous leukemia considered that the presence of fibrosis in the marrow, osteosclerosis in the bones, the absence of leukemic invasion in the organs and the appearance of the spleen were not adequate grounds for excluding leukemia.

Wyatt and Sommers¹³⁶ studied 30 patients, 20 of whom were autopsied and concluded that the disorder was non leukemic in nature. It was thought that the primary lesion was a necrobiosis of the maturing hematopoietic cells which was followed by overgrowth of the marrow reticulum ossification and extramedullary hematopoiesis. The study of the histories and a retrospective analysis for possible causative agents in these cases revealed a list of possible factors similar to those that are considered important in aplastic anemia. This suggested that prolonged marrow exposure to certain substances might be an important factor. A similar conclusion is suggested by another report of 6 patients with "myelogenous myeloid metaplasia." It was noted that two patients gave histories of heavy exposure to benzol; two had daily exposure to paint removers; one worked with carbon tetrachloride and one washed auto parts with high test gasoline.¹³⁷

Another hypothesis that has been advanced to explain the disorder considers that it is one manifestation of a proliferative disorder that involves the multipotential primitive mesenchymal cells. According to this concept myelofibrosis, myelogenous leukemia, megakaryocytic myelosis and polycythemia vera are similar and related processes.^{118, 119, 138} Cases that show varying degrees of histologic evidence of these different disorders and cases that undergo transition from a typical example of one condition into a typical example of another are interpreted as evidence of the validity of this hypothesis.

Although it is probable that the controversy as to the nature and causation of this syndrome will continue, it appears that the concept of this syndrome as a proliferative disorder which does not exclude a reaction to toxic agents affords the best working hypothesis at the present time.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

This rather uncommon disorder occurs in either sex. Symptoms generally appear first after the age of 50 but sometimes begin before the age of 40.^{118, 138, 139} The onset is usually gradual and the patients complain of weakness and easy fatigue or of upper abdominal discomfort that is caused by the enlargement of the spleen and liver. Weight loss of 15 to 20 pounds is common. Aching in the extremities, leg cramps and peripheral edema sometimes occur. Cutaneous hemorrhages, either petechiae or ecchymoses, are not unusual and serious gastrointestinal hemorrhage is not rare. Night sweats and slight fever occur in an appreciable number of patients.

chemicals pancytopenia and hemorrhagic tendency may be similar to the findings in patients with the aplastic anemia syndrome the presence of the splenomegaly and the character of the cells in the peripheral blood suffice to distinguish between the two conditions

TREATMENT AND COURSE

There is no specific treatment for this disorder which is usually a chronic one that continues over a period of one to twenty years or more.^{1 2 3 4 5 6 7} Weakness recurrent anemia and complaints referable to the enlarged spleen are the most common symptoms but severe gastrointestinal hemorrhages occur occasionally. Blood transfusions which constitute the main form of therapy are usually given as often as indicated by the patient's symptoms. Neither iron nor vitamin B₁₂ is of any value in the uncomplicated case. Splenic irradiation has been recommended as a form of therapy for patients with discomfort from enlarged spleens accompanied by leukocytosis because of the results seen in seven patients.^{1 4} Such therapy has also been considered contraindicated because of potential damage to an area of extramedullary hematopoiesis.¹¹⁷ The effectiveness of this type of therapy could not be evaluated in one group of 14 patients.^{1 8}

For many years splenectomy was considered contraindicated because of the high operative mortality rate and because it appeared that the operation removed a needed area of hematopoiesis.^{1 3} A different opinion was expressed by Green Conley Ashburn and Peters^{1 9} who reported that in a series of 24 patients splenectomy was rarely harmful and sometimes produced beneficial effects. Splenectomy is most likely to be helpful in the patients with hemolytic anemia who require large numbers of transfusions and in those with associated thrombocytopenia.^{1 8} Since there is appreciable risk associated with the operation in patients with this disorder splenectomy is not indicated in the patients who can be managed adequately by other forms of treatment. In elderly patients and those with very high platelet counts splenectomy is contraindicated because of the risk of operation and the chance of postoperative complications such as thrombosis and hemorrhage secondary to thrombosis.

Corticosteroids are sometimes very effective in patients with a marked hemolytic element and in those with thrombocytopenia and bleeding.^{118 121 1 8} A favorable response to these drugs has been considered an indication that splenectomy will be beneficial.¹¹⁸ The effectiveness of androgens in 6 patients with agnogenic myeloid metaplasia has been reported recently.¹²¹ Increased erythropoiesis which was delayed four to eight weeks was manifested by increased utilization of radioactive iron and an increase in erythrocyte counts and red cell volume that made transfusions unnecessary while the patients were treated. Because of striking results that were noted in some of the patients this form of treatment merits further investigation and evaluation.

this disorder but such a change has not been found in patients with leukemia who have been treated similarly.¹⁷ Eosinophilia, monocytosis, and basophilia sometimes occur in myelofibrosis.^{13, 18}

The platelets are often large and the total count varies widely in different patients. In the series of 56 patients the count was decreased in 13 patients, normal in 13, and increased in 30.¹⁸ Neither a marked reduction to less than 20,000 per cu mm nor a marked increase to over a million per cu mm is unusual.

Specimens of bone marrow obtained by aspiration are usually very hypocellular,^{110, 17, 18} but occasionally the marrow appears normal or hypercellular. Bone marrow obtained by surgical biopsy and marrow specimens seen at autopsy usually are hypocellular and show increased fibrosis.^{110, 128, 13} However, some marrows appear normal and others are hyperplastic or contain areas of hyperplasia.^{111, 16, 136} Splenic aspiration^{110, 18} and hepatic puncture usually reveal extramedullary hematopoiesis in the form of nucleated red cells, young granulocytes, and megakaryocytes.

Röntgenograms of the bones, particularly of the long bones, may show a decreased density of the inner surface of the central area of bone and patchy irregular densities in the spongiosa.¹³ Increased bone density was demonstrated on roentgenograms in one fourth of the patients in one series.¹²⁸

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

When a patient presents with splenomegaly and anemia associated with nucleated red cells and immature granulocytes in the peripheral blood, the important differential diagnosis is between chronic myelocytic leukemia and the myeloid metaplasia syndrome. The appearance of marked poikilocytosis in the smear is suggestive of myeloid metaplasia. Failure to obtain a specimen that is consistent with leukemia by marrow aspiration strongly suggests that leukemia is not present; however, the diagnosis of leukemia cannot be discarded in this circumstance because hypocellular samples and dry taps are sometimes obtained in patients with leukemia even when the marrow is packed with cells. The distinction between the leukemia and myeloid metaplasia sometimes cannot be made until after a surgical biopsy of the bone marrow or a needle aspiration of the spleen or liver. Sometimes even after these studies the evidence is inconclusive and the distinction between these two disorders cannot be made with assurance until after a longer period of observation.

If leukemia appears to be excluded, further study for possible causes of the secondary type of extramedullary hematopoiesis, such as carcinomatosis, tuberculosis, and other disorders, is indicated. If these appear to be excluded and the appearance of the bone marrow biopsy is consistent, a diagnosis of myelofibrosis or agnogenic myeloid metaplasia is made. A history of previous exposure to toxic substances or of preceding polycythemia vera favors this diagnosis. Although the age of the patient, the history of exposure to

chemicals pancytopenia and hemorrhagic tendency may be similar to the findings in patients with the aplastic anemia syndrome the presence of the splenomegaly and the character of the cells in the peripheral blood suffice to distinguish between the two conditions

TREATMENT AND COURSE

There is no specific treatment for this disorder which is usually a chronic one that continues over a period of one to twenty years or more^{1 1 1 1 1 6 1 7} Weakness recurrent anemia and complaints referable to the enlarged spleen are the most common symptoms but severe gastrointestinal hemorrhages occur occasionally. Blood transfusions which constitute the main form of therapy are usually given as often as indicated by the patient's symptoms. Neither iron nor vitamin B₁₂ is of any value in the uncomplicated case. Splenic irradiation has been recommended as a form of therapy for patients with discomfort from enlarged spleens accompanied by leukocytosis because of the results seen in seven patients.^{1 4} Such therapy has also been considered contraindicated because of potential damage to an area of extramedullary hematopoiesis.¹¹ The effectiveness of this type of therapy could not be evaluated in one group of 14 patients.^{1 8}

For many years splenectomy was considered contraindicated because of the high operative mortality rate and because it appeared that the operation removed a needed area of hematopoiesis.^{1 2} A different opinion was expressed by Green Conley Ashburn and Peters^{1 9} who reported that in a series of 24 patients splenectomy was rarely harmful and sometimes produced beneficial effects. Splenectomy is most likely to be helpful in the patients with hemolytic anemia who require large numbers of transfusions and in those with associated thrombocytopenia.^{1 4} Since there is appreciable risk associated with the operation in patients with this disorder splenectomy is not indicated in the patients who can be managed adequately by other forms of treatment. In elderly patients and those with very high platelet counts splenectomy is contraindicated because of the risk of operation and the chance of postoperative complications such as thrombosis and hemorrhage secondary to thrombosis.

Corticosteroids are sometimes very effective in patients with a marked hemolytic element and in those with thrombocytopenia and bleeding.^{11 6 1 7}^{1 8} A favorable response to these drugs has been considered an indication that splenectomy will be beneficial.^{11 6} The effectiveness of androgens in 6 patients with agnogenic myeloid metaplasia has been reported recently.¹²¹ Increased erythropoiesis which was delayed four to eight weeks was manifested by increased utilization of radioactive iron and an increase in erythrocyte counts and red cell volume that made transfusions unnecessary while the patients were treated. Because of striking results that were noted in some of the patients this form of treatment merits further investigation and evaluation.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

A 40 year old white librarian was largely asymptomatic when an "abdominal tumor" was found on routine physical examination in October 1945. At that time the erythrocyte count was 6.6 mil per cu mm and the hematocrit 62 per cent. A diagnosis of polycythemia vera was made and during the next four years she received a total of 3,250 r of x radiation to the spleen and a total of 460 r over the long bones. Phlebotomies were performed at frequent intervals. Following treatment with radiophosphorus in 1950 she had a good symptomatic remission and in 1953 the blood values were: hct 49 per cent, hb 12.7 gm per 100 ml, rbc 6 mil per cu mm, wbc 13,000 per cu mm, platelets 516,000 per cu mm. During the late spring and summer of 1954 the patient noticed progressive weakness, easy fatigue, slight dyspnea on exertion, easy bruisability, and recurrent left upper quadrant pain. Because of these symptoms she was admitted to the hospital on August 2, 1954.

Physical Examination Loud systolic murmurs were heard in the aortic area and in the mitral region. The liver was palpable three fingerbreadths below the right costal margin, the spleen filled the entire left side of the abdomen. The remainder of the physical examination was non-contributory.

Laboratory Examination Admission blood studies disclosed: hct 48 per cent, rbc 2.8 mil per cu mm, hb 8.4 gm per 100 ml, retics 0.7 per cent, wbc 7,400 per cu mm, differential count (per cent): myelocytes 2, juveniles 2, bands 7, segs 68, lymphs 18, monocytes 1, eosinophils 1, basophils 1. There were 5 nucleated red cells per 100 white cells. The serum bilirubin was 0.54 mg per 100 ml. Bone marrow obtained by aspiration and also by surgical biopsy of the iliac crest revealed marked hypoplasia.

Treatment and Course The patient responded moderately well to steroid therapy but in the fall of 1955 her symptoms and anemia increased. A hemolytic factor was demonstrated by finding an average daily fecal urobilinogen excretion of 245 mg per day over a four day period at a time when the hemoglobin was 8.8 gm per 100 ml. Eight months later the anemia was more severe and the fecal urobilinogen excretion was measured at 380 mg per day. Because of the hemolytic element splenectomy was performed in September 1956. The spleen weighed 1975 grams. Microscopic study of the spleen revealed the presence of many islands of myeloid tissue associated with evidence of erythropoiesis and an increased number of megakaryocytes. The findings were considered to be characteristic of myeloid metaplasia. The patient did well symptomatically following splenectomy and six months later in April 1957 hemoglobin was 9.4 gm per 100 ml, red count 3 mil per cu mm, hematocrit 31 per cent, platelets 500,000 per cu mm, and reticulocyte count 5.1 per cent. Immature cells of the myelocytic series and eosinophilia were present in the peripheral blood. Daily fecal urobilinogen excretion (average of 4 day period) was found to be 125 mg.

In the fall of 1957 the patient's symptoms changed and from then on heart failure was a problem. In addition to the systolic murmurs at the base and apex which had been noted throughout her course, a low pitched rumbling

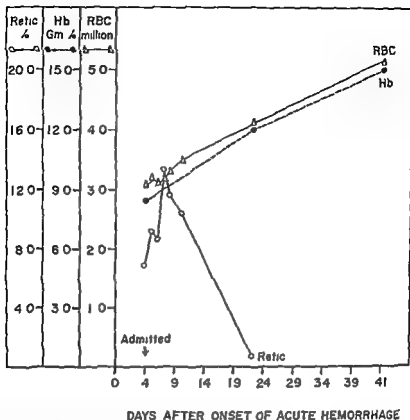
presystolic murmur was heard in the mitral area. She became increasingly refractory to treatment and in April 1958 she died after an episode of abdominal pain.

At autopsy the usual manifestations of congestive heart failure were present. In addition there was marked coronary arteriosclerosis as well as calcific aortic valvulitis and calcification of the annulus fibrosus of the mitral valve. Of particular interest was the presence of generalized fibrosis of the bone marrow associated with areas of hypercellularity and evidence of extramedullary hematopoiesis in the liver.

Comment. This patient's course is similar to that seen in many patients with myelofibrosis. At one time she had well developed polycythemia vera which was treated with phlebotomies, a radiation, and radiophosphorus. About eight years after the polycythemia was first recognized she developed anemia. This was associated with fibrosis in the bone marrow, marked splenomegaly, the presence of immature leukocytes and red cells in the peripheral blood, and evidence of hematopoiesis in the spleen. Splenectomy produced only moderate temporary benefit and the patient succumbed to recurrence of the anemia and heart failure several years later. The relationship of the myelofibrosis to the preceding polycythemia vera and to the irradiation therapy is interesting but difficult to interpret. The occurrence of both syndromes in the same patient has led some to consider that both these disorders are examples of myeloproliferative syndromes.

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH ACUTE BLOOD LOSS

Anemia that is due to the sudden loss of a large volume of blood may occur in a variety of circumstances. Among these are trauma, postoperative hemorrhage, ruptured ectopic pregnancy, ruptured aneurysm, ruptured esophageal varices, and ulcerative lesions of the gastrointestinal tract. Massive bleeding occurs spontaneously or after minor trauma in patients with the various hemorrhagic disorders. The clinical picture that the patient presents depends on the amount, location, and acuteness of the bleeding as well as the nature of the underlying disorder and the previous condition of the patient. The usual symptoms of an acute hemorrhage are sudden weakness, dizziness, pallor, and sweating. The marked variability in the manifestations is shown by the fact that in some patients syncope is the initial symptom while in others the passage of bloody or tarry stools may be the only indication that a hemorrhage has occurred.



DAYS AFTER ONSET OF ACUTE HEMORRHAGE

Figure 28 Chart showing hematologic response to acute hemorrhage. The peak reticulocyte response of 13 per cent occurred on the seventh day. The hemoglobin level and erythrocyte counts returned to normal during the fifth week.

The changes in the peripheral blood depend on the time that has elapsed since the hemorrhage, the size and location of the hemorrhage, and the nature of the underlying disease. The amount of blood that is lost can be measured better by a determination of the blood volume than by the hematocrit reading because the latter may not reach its lowest point until 48 or 72 hours after the hemorrhage.¹³⁷ Unless preceding iron deficiency or a brisk reticulocytosis is present, the anemia is usually of the normocytic type. Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis accompanied by an increase in the younger forms occurs after a few hours. Reticulocytosis begins in two or three days and reaches a peak in from four to seven days.¹³⁸ Reticulocyte counts as high as 12 or 14 per cent often follow an acute hemorrhage severe enough to reduce the red blood count to about 3.0 ml per cumm (Fig. 28). Hemorrhage into the tissues or body cavities may be followed by rises in both reticulocytes and serum bilirubin. If bleeding has ceased, an increase in the erythrocyte count becomes evident by the time the reticulocytosis reaches its maximum; the count continues to rise even without treatment, until the

normal level is reached usually in from four to six weeks. The erythrocyte count is reported to return to a level of 4.5 mil cu mm within about 33 days after an acute episode irrespective of the size of the hemorrhage.¹³⁹

There are two important aspects in the diagnosis of the patient with an acute hemorrhage. These are the recognition of acute blood loss as the cause of anemia and the determination of the cause of the bleeding. Recognition of the hemorrhage usually presents no difficulties but at times its severity may not be appreciated unless it is remembered that the hematocrit reading may give little or no indication of the amount of blood that has been lost. If the stool has not been examined for occult blood, an elevated reticulocyte count associated with a normocytic anemia or an elevation of the blood urea level may be the first clue to a recent hemorrhage. In order to determine the cause of the hemorrhage roentgenographic study of the gastrointestinal tract, liver function tests, special studies for blood dyscrasias, and even surgical exploration may be necessary.

Treatment of acute hemorrhage is often the treatment of shock by means of intravenous fluids, vasopressor agents, and blood transfusions. Other treatment is directed toward the underlying disease. Unless the patient's iron stores have become depleted because of previous bleeding or some other factor, the hemoglobin and red cell count will return to normal levels after a moderate sized hemorrhage without therapy with iron.

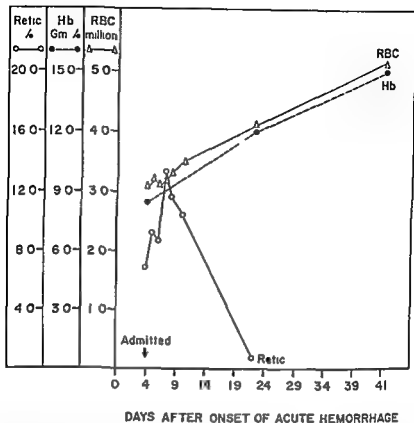
ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

This 41 year old carpenter enjoyed good health until eight months prior to admission when he developed symptoms of a duodenal ulcer which responded to diet and medication. After he had been asymptomatic for six months the symptoms of ulcer recurred before his admission to the hospital. Four days prior to admission the patient noticed marked weakness and sweating followed by the passage of tarry stools. Two days prior to admission he noticed palpitation and more pronounced weakness. Following this he consulted his physician who referred him to the hospital with a diagnosis of gastrointestinal hemorrhage.

Physical Examination. Blood pressure 128/80, pulse 60, weight 207, height 74 inches, temperature 99. There was moderate tenderness on pressure in the epigastric region. The remainder of the physical examination was normal.

Laboratory Examination. Initial blood studies showed hb 8.3 gm per 100 ml, hct 24 per cent, rbc 3.1 mil per cu mm, retics 6.7 per cent, wbc 21,000 per cu mm, platelets 760,000 per cu mm. Differential count (per cent): bands 1, segs 71, lymphocytes 23, monocytes 5; there were 2 nucleated red cells per 100 white cells. A stool specimen was almost black in color and gave a strongly positive benzidine reaction. A barium study of the gastrointestinal tract was performed without palpation and revealed considerable duodenal scarring with other changes that suggested active ulceration.

A diagnosis of duodenal ulcer with hemorrhage was made. The patient



DAYS AFTER ONSET OF ACUTE HEMORRHAGE

Figure 26 Chart showing hematologic response to acute hemorrhage. The peak reticulocyte response of 13 per cent occurred on the seventh day. The hemoglobin level and erythrocyte counts returned to normal during the fifth week.

The changes in the peripheral blood depend on the time that has elapsed since the hemorrhage, the size and location of the hemorrhage and the nature of the underlying disease. The amount of blood that is lost can be measured better by a determination of the blood volume than by the hematocrit reading because the latter may not reach its lowest point until 48 or 72 hours after the hemorrhage.¹²⁷ Unless preceding iron deficiency or a brisk reticulocytosis is present the anemia is usually of the normocytic type. Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis accompanied by an increase in the younger forms occurs after a few hours. Reticulocytosis begins in two or three days and reaches a peak in from four to seven days.¹²⁸ Reticulocyte counts as high as 12 or 14 per cent often follow an acute hemorrhage severe enough to reduce the red blood count to about 3.0 mil. per cu mm (Fig 26). Hemorrhage into the tissues or body cavities may be followed by rises in both reticulocytes and serum bilirubin. If bleeding has ceased an increase in the erythrocyte count becomes evident by the time the reticulocytosis reaches its maximum; the count continues to rise even without treatment, until the

poral vessels and the dyspnea on dancing and climbing stairs. Iron was first used in the treatment of the anemia of chlorosis in the seventeenth century by Thomas Sydenham, an English clinician. In 1889 Hayem recognized that the anemia of iron deficiency is characterized by erythrocytes that are smaller than normal and contain a smaller than normal amount of hemoglobin.¹⁻³ Most of the progress in understanding iron metabolism and the anemia of iron deficiency has been made in the past two decades since Widdowson and McCance showed that the body normally does not excrete significant amounts of iron.¹⁻⁶ Many of the advances have been possible only because radioactive iron has been available as an investigative tool.

MECHANISM OF DISEASE

Iron metabolism, which must be understood if the patient with iron deficiency anemia is to be managed properly, is discussed in Chapter II.

Iron deficiency occurs in a number of clinical conditions and various mechanisms may be involved. An improper diet is rarely the sole cause of iron deficiency except in infancy. However, an inadequate intake may be an important contributing factor in certain situations, particularly during the growth of children and in pregnancy, when there is an increased need for iron. The commonest cause of iron deficiency anemia in both men and women is chronic blood loss. In adult males hypochromic microcytic anemia is nearly always the result of chronic blood loss from the gastrointestinal tract. In women gastrointestinal bleeding, excessive vaginal bleeding and pregnancy are the commonest causes of iron depletion. Patients who have undergone partial gastrectomy form a special category that may develop iron deficiency, for it has been demonstrated that in such patients the absorption of dietary iron is markedly reduced and over a period of years the iron stores may become depleted.¹⁴⁻¹⁸ The state of iron stores is an important factor in the development of anemia. The loss of small quantities of blood, such as occurs in normal menstruation, may produce severe anemia in a patient whose iron stores are low, yet much more severe bleeding may produce only transient anemia in another patient whose reserves of iron are normal.

Abnormalities other than anemia occur at times in patients with iron deficiency. Most common among these are fissuring about the mouth, trophic changes in the fingernails and dysfunction of the esophagus. These abnormalities have been reported as manifestations of iron deficiency in the absence of anemia because these lesions have been found in non-anemic patients and improvement in the lesions has followed promptly after the administration of iron salts.¹⁻³ A similar response to treatment with iron has been reported in non-anemic patients who had normal levels of serum iron. Even the correction of achlorhydria, which is present in about 50 per cent of patients with iron deficiency anemia, has been reported after iron therapy.^{14,15} A different result was found in a more recent study of a group of patients with iron deficiency anemia.¹ No improvement in the histologic appear-

was treated with ulcer diet sedatives alkali and antispasmodics. No occult blood was demonstrated in the feces after the third day in the hospital. Transfusions and iron were not administered. When the patient was discharged on the eighth day the hematocrit was 28 per cent, red count 3.6 mil per cu mm, leukocytes 14,000 per cu mm, reticulocytes 8.3 per cent. The response of the peripheral blood to the acute hemorrhage while in the hospital and after discharge is shown in Figure 26. Six weeks after the hemorrhage the hematocrit, hemoglobin, and erythrocyte count were normal.

Comment. This middle-aged man who had previously had symptoms of a duodenal ulcer was admitted four days after the onset of an acute hemorrhage. At this time increases in reticulocytes, leukocytes, and platelets were already evident. The patient made a good spontaneous recovery without transfusions or other antianemic therapy. The reticulocytes reached a peak of 13 per cent (425,000 per cu mm) on the third day after admission, the seventh day after the onset of his acute hemorrhage. A rise in erythrocyte count was evident on the fifth day after admission (ninth day after the hemorrhage) and continued in an uninterrupted fashion until the count reached normal between five and six weeks after the initial hemorrhage. The level of 4.5 million red cells was reached by the thirty-second day after the hemorrhage.

ANEMIA OF IRON DEFICIENCY

Anemia that is due to iron deficiency has been described under various names. Many of the terms that at present appear to be no more than different names for iron deficiency in special circumstances were used to indicate the various syndromes before the nature of the mechanism responsible for the anemia was appreciated. The following terms have been used: secondary anemia, idiopathic hypochromic anemia, chlorosis, chlorotic anemia, hypochromic anemia of pregnancy, hypochromic anemia of prematurity and adolescence, iron deficiency anemia.

An interesting account of the history of iron in medicine has been published by Fowler.¹⁴ According to this account the presence of iron in the blood was first discovered by Lemery and Geoffroy in 1713. This discovery did not come until sometime after iron deficiency anemia had been described and iron had been used as a therapeutic agent. Iron deficiency anemia was first described by Johannes Lange of Basle in 1554 as "*De Morbo Virgineo*."¹⁵ In this description of the syndrome that was later called "chlorosis" Lange noted that the disease was peculiar to virgins and described the change from rosiness of the cheeks to pallor, the pulsation of the tem-

poral vessels and the dyspnea on dancing and climbing stairs. Iron was first used in the treatment of the anemia of chlorosis in the seventeenth century by Thomas Sydenham, an English clinician. In 1889 Hayem recognized that the anemia of iron deficiency is characterized by erythrocytes that are smaller than normal and contain a smaller than normal amount of hemoglobin.¹⁰ Most of the progress in understanding iron metabolism and the anemia of iron deficiency has been made in the past two decades since Widdowson and McCance showed that the body normally does not excrete significant amounts of iron.¹¹ Many of the advances have been possible only because radioactive iron has been available as an investigative tool.

MECHANISM OF DISEASE

Iron metabolism, which must be understood if the patient with iron deficiency anemia is to be managed properly, is discussed in Chapter II.

Iron deficiency occurs in a number of clinical conditions and various mechanisms may be involved. An improper diet is rarely the sole cause of iron deficiency except in infancy. However, an inadequate intake may be an important contributing factor in certain situations, particularly during the growth of children and in pregnancy, when there is an increased need for iron. The commonest cause of iron deficiency anemia in both men and women is chronic blood loss. In adult males hypochromic microcytic anemia is nearly always the result of chronic blood loss from the gastrointestinal tract. In women gastrointestinal bleeding, excessive vaginal bleeding and pregnancy are the commonest causes of iron depletion. Patients who have undergone partial gastrectomy form a special category that may develop iron deficiency, for it has been demonstrated that in such patients the absorption of dietary iron is markedly reduced and over a period of years the iron stores may become depleted.¹²⁻¹⁴ The state of iron stores is an important factor in the development of anemia. The loss of small quantities of blood, such as occurs in normal menstruation, may produce severe anemia in a patient whose iron stores are low, yet much more severe bleeding may produce only transient anemia in another patient whose reserves of iron are normal.

Abnormalities other than anemia occur at times in patients with iron deficiency. Most common among these are fissuring about the mouth, trophic changes in the fingernails and dysfunction of the esophagus. These abnormalities have been reported as manifestations of iron deficiency in the absence of anemia because these lesions have been found in non-anemic patients and improvement in the lesions has followed promptly after the administration of iron salts.¹⁵⁻¹⁷ A similar response to treatment with iron has been reported in non-anemic patients who had normal levels of serum iron. Even the correction of achlorhydria, which is present in about 50 per cent of patients with iron deficiency anemia, has been reported after iron therapy.¹⁸ A different result was found in a more recent study of a group of patients with iron deficiency anemia.¹ No improvement in the histologic appear-

ance of the gastric mucosa or in the acid secretion occurred after a year of treatment with iron. Further evidence of a discrepancy between the iron content of the blood and the iron content of the tissues particularly iron containing enzymes is afforded by the work of Beutler who found that in rats that were made iron deficient by bleeding and special diets the decrease in the cytochrome C of the liver and kidney greatly exceeded the decrease in hemoglobin.¹⁴¹ Other studies have shown that not all iron containing enzymes are so dependent on adequate supplies of iron. The concentration of catalase has been found to be normal in human red cells even under conditions of severe iron need.¹⁴⁰

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The symptoms that occur in the patient with iron deficiency anemia may be related to the primary disease or to anemia. Some patients consult a physician because they have noticed abnormal blood loss such as menorrhagia or rectal bleeding. Other patients who have not noted any abnormal blood loss visit a physician because of symptoms that are related to the anemia per se such as weakness, easy fatigability, dyspnea on exertion and palpitation. In addition to the usual symptoms of anemia patients with iron deficiency sometimes complain of dysphagia, sore tongue, sore mouth and brittle nails. Still other patients seek help because of symptoms that are caused by a lesion of the gastrointestinal tract such as a duodenal ulcer or carcinoma of the bowel and the presence of anemia is not suspected until a blood count is done.

Physical examination in some patients reveals no abnormality and in others simply pallor of the skin and mucous membranes. At times fissuring at the angles of the mouth, atrophy of the papillae of the tongue and glossitis are evident. In severe longstanding iron deficiency the nails may be "spoonshaped" and abnormally brittle. The spleen is often palpable in children and adults with iron deficiency but does not extend more than a few centimeters below the left costal margin in the uncomplicated case. Throbbing headaches sometimes occur when the hemoglobin is greatly reduced and disappear when the anemia is corrected. When the anemia is moderately severe an apical or precordial systolic murmur is usually present. Other cardiovascular abnormalities such as cardiac dilatation and congestive failure occur most often in younger children and in older persons with some coexisting heart disease.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

The anemia of severe iron deficiency is characteristically hypochromic and microcytic (MCV is less than 80 cu microns, MCH less than 30 micrograms and MCHC less than 30 per cent). Much lower values are often found. In the majority of patients with iron deficiency study of a stained smear of the peripheral blood reveals that most of the erythrocytes are

smaller than normal and show an increase in the central pallor that may be extreme (hypochromic microcytes) other erythrocytes appear normal in color and some show polychromatophilia if erythropoiesis is active. Poikilocytosis is often evident and elongated "cigar forms" are seen frequently. Occasionally nucleated red cells are present. The leukocyte count, platelet count and reticulocyte counts are usually normal. Erythropoiesis is normoblastic in type but the cellularity of the marrow may appear normal, reduced or increased.

In patients with less severe iron deficiency the anemia is not always hypochromic and microcytic; it may be hypochromic and normocytic or normochromic and normocytic. In such patients other laboratory procedures may be helpful in establishing a diagnosis of iron deficiency. The presence of iron deficiency usually is accompanied by a reduction in the level of the serum iron, generally to less than $40 \mu\text{g}$ per 100 ml (normal 50-150) and an increase in the latent iron binding capacity of the serum to two or three times the normal value (normal 200-300 μg per cent). Study of bone marrow that is obtained by aspiration and stained for iron may also provide a reliable index of the state of the iron stores, particularly if the stores are low.¹⁴ When anemia is due to iron deficiency the serum bilirubin is not elevated and the 24 hour fecal urobilinogen excretion is usually lower than normal because the mass of the circulating hemoglobin is reduced. Achlorhydria occurs commonly in patients with this disorder. The free erythrocyte protoporphyrin is increased in iron deficiency.¹⁴⁴

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The first step in making a diagnosis of this type of anemia is to establish the presence of iron deficiency and the next is to determine the cause. If the anemia is hypochromic and microcytic the commonly seen iron deficiency must be distinguished from the uncommon thalassemia and the rare pyridoxine deficiency. Thalassemia is characterized by a family history of anemia, the occurrence of many target cells on the stained smear and an elevated reticulocyte count; the spleen is usually enlarged and may extend below the level of the umbilicus. Determination of the serum iron level and examination of properly stained marrow preparations fail to reveal any iron deficiency. Fetal hemoglobin is usually found. Pyridoxine deficiency, which is rare in man, is characterized by a hypochromic microcytic anemia but even though the erythrocytes appear hypochromic the level of the serum iron is elevated and administration of iron produces no improvement in the anemia.¹⁴⁵ In the milder degrees of iron deficiency the anemia may be hypochromic, normochromic, normocytic or slightly microcytic rather than hypochromic microcytic. This is most likely to occur when severe deficiency has not developed or when the severe deficiency has been only partly corrected. In such circumstances the demonstration of a low serum iron level and/or an increase in the latent iron binding capacity or a histologic demonstration

of low iron stores in the tissue often establishes the presence of iron deficiency

If the presence of iron deficiency has been established an effort is made to find the cause of the deficiency. This aspect of the diagnosis is discussed in Chapter II. Faulty diet may be an acceptable explanation in infants and very young children but in adults a search must be made for the cause of the blood loss. The absence of occult blood from a single specimen of feces does not exclude chronic or recurrent gastrointestinal bleeding from consideration. Unless the cause of the iron deficiency is clear cut most patients particularly those who are middle aged or older will need a roentgenographic study of the upper and lower gastrointestinal tract. Almost any ulcerative lesion in the esophagus, stomach, small intestine or large bowel can be responsible for chronic bleeding and iron deficiency. If a lesion of the gastrointestinal tract is suspected but not demonstrated at the time of the initial examination the appropriate studies are often repeated because of the importance of demonstrating any lesion particularly a neoplasm that might require surgical correction. In women particularly those of child bearing age the decision must be made whether or not the history of vaginal bleeding and pregnancies gives an adequate explanation of the anemia. Roentgenographic investigation of the gastrointestinal tract is often indicated but the risk of irradiation to the ovaries or to an unsuspected early pregnancy should not be ignored.

TREATMENT COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

The most important aspect of the treatment of iron deficiency anemia is the correction of the cause. This is much more important than the correction of the anemia unless the patient is critically ill. The prognosis is related more to the underlying disease than to the severity of the anemia which may have little or no influence on the outcome.

In patients with anemia that is due to iron deficiency the administration of ferrous salts is followed by a reticulocytosis during the first week (Fig 27). The magnitude of reticulocyte response which is usually in the range of 4 to 10 per cent depends on the initial hemoglobin level and not on the level of the erythrocyte count. Unless complicating factors are present the reticulocytosis is followed by the return of the hemoglobin and red cells to normal levels within a period of six to ten weeks. If the therapy with iron is successful the hemoglobin level should increase 2.0 gm per 100 ml in the first three weeks of treatment.^{146, 154} The levels of iron and latent iron binding capacity which probably reflect the state of the stores of iron, return to normal much more slowly. Treatment probably should be continued until this occurs but such complete therapy may require small amounts of iron salts orally for a long period particularly if the patient is either a premenopausal woman or has had a partial gastrectomy. Prolonged treatment of this type is considered impractical by some.¹⁵⁵

The anemia of iron deficiency is usually corrected by the oral administra-

tion of 0.2 or 0.3 gm of ferrous sulfate or ferrous gluconate three times a day. If a small amount of the drug is given initially and the dosage is increased gradually gastrointestinal upsets rarely occur. Some patients tolerate one preparation better than another and if one preparation is causing undesirable griping, diarrhea, or other symptoms another compound should be substituted. Iron is less likely to cause gastrointestinal symptoms if it is given after meals. Although this is not an optimal time for iron absorption, adequate absorption usually occurs if the medication is given at this time. A single tablet of ferrous gluconate or ferrous sulfate at bedtime generally produces a satisfactory response and many patients find it simpler and more convenient to follow this schedule.

Although iron salts administered orally correct the anemia in most patients, the method of treatment is not an efficient means of correcting the iron stores because iron absorption decreases when the blood returns to normal. In order to replenish the iron stores by the oral route it is often necessary to continue treatment for months or years. For this reason parenteral preparations are sometimes employed. Saccharated iron oxide given intravenously in an initial dose of 20 to 50 mg and in subsequent daily doses of 100 to 200 mg produces excellent therapeutic results.¹⁴³ More recently the intramuscular therapy with iron dextran, which has been found to be

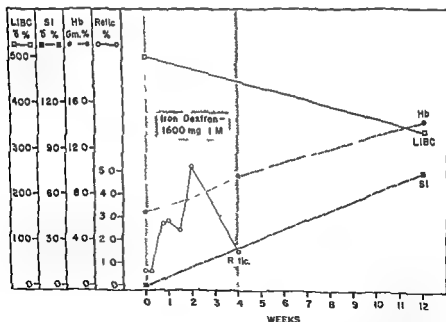


Figure 27 Chart showing hematologic response of a patient with iron deficiency anemia to treatment with iron. The reticulocyte peak, which is not as great as that seen after specific treatment in pernicious anemia, occurs before there is an increase in the levels of hemoglobin and serum iron and a decrease in the latent iron binding capacity.

largely free from local reactions has gained in favor.¹⁻⁴ Injections of 100 to 500 mg may be given weekly or several times a week. The total amount given in a course of intramuscular treatment is usually between 1500 and 5000 mg in amount sufficient to correct the anemia and replenish the iron stores.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Case 1

A 74 year old white housewife was referred in April 1956 for evaluation of anemia and weight loss of 20 pounds during the preceding year. About one and a half years prior to admission she had an episode of constipation cramping midabdominal pain and vomiting. Roentgenographic examinations of the gallbladder and upper gastrointestinal tract were negative. Her attacks recurred with increasing frequency and about six weeks before admission were occurring once or twice a week. At this time the patient was found to be anemic and was treated with iron.

Physical Examination The skin and mucous membranes were pale. The right side of the abdomen was moderately tender and a firm movable 6 by 10 cm mass was felt in the right lower quadrant. The liver edge was palpable 2 cm below the right costal margin.

Laboratory Studies Admission blood studies disclosed the following: hct 26 per cent, hb 67 gm per 100 ml, rbc 3.4 mil per cu mm, wbc 4900 per cu mm, serum iron 115 μ g per 100 ml, unsaturated iron binding protein 455 μ g per 100 ml. The feces gave a strongly positive benzidine reaction.

Barium enema examination revealed a 5 or 6 cm constricted area in the ascending colon and another filling defect in the sigmoid colon. After blood transfusions operation was performed. A carcinoma of the ascending colon and a carcinomatous polyp in the descending colon were found. Both lesions were resected and convalescence was uneventful.

Three months later the hct was 43 per cent, hb 126 gm per 100 ml, rbc 4.4 mil per cu mm, plasma iron 99 μ g per 100 ml, and unsaturated iron binding protein 270 μ g per 100 ml.

Comment At the time of admission this patient had evidence of severe iron deficiency in the form of hypochromic microcytic anemia associated with a decrease in the level of serum iron and an increase in the unsaturated iron binding capacity. The most important aspect of the diagnosis in a patient with anemia of this type is the demonstration of the cause of the anemia. Usually as was the case in this patient the iron deficiency is the result of chronic blood loss. In adult males and elderly women chronic unrecognized blood loss is nearly always the result of a lesion in the gastrointestinal tract. This patient had two primary malignant lesions in the colon. It appears likely that the lesion in the ascending colon was responsible for the blood loss while the tumor in the sigmoid colon was responsible for the symptoms of partial intestinal obstruction. In all probability a more thorough examina-

tion at the time her symptoms began a year and a half before admission would have revealed a lesion in the colon. Fortunately this patient appeared to have no metastases when her bowel resections were performed despite a delay in diagnosis that might well have been fatal.

Case 2

This 69 year old white housewife was admitted with the chief complaint of "anemia of two years duration. She related that for two years she had felt weak, nervous and slightly dizzy. She had been treated irregularly for two years with liver extract and iron. Despite this therapy some degree of anemia persisted and she was referred for further study. Careful questioning elicited no history of weight loss, gastrointestinal symptoms or abnormal bleeding.

Physical Examination The patient was well developed, well nourished and somewhat obese. General examination revealed no specific abnormalities but the pelvic examination revealed an erosion of the cervix.

Laboratory Examination Admission blood studies: hb 91 gm per 100 ml, rbc 3.8 mil per cu mm, hct 31 per cent, retics 1.9 per cent. The leukocyte count, platelet count and differential count were normal. Bone marrow examination disclosed a hypercellular marrow with a normoblastic type of erythropoiesis. Repeated stool examinations were consistently positive for occult blood.

Gastrointestinal x-ray study revealed a hiatus hernia that was about 10 cm in the greatest diameter. Barium enema examination revealed a lesion at the hepatic flexure which was associated with some narrowing over an area of 2 or 3 cm. Proctoscopic examination disclosed no lesion. Biopsy of the cervix was reported as showing an epidermoid carcinoma.

Treatment and Course The patient was transfused with three units of blood and was operated upon nine days after admission. A right colectomy was performed and the patient stood the procedure well. At the time of operation there was no evidence of metastases from the lesions in bowel or cervix. Histologic study of the bowel tumor revealed mucinous adenocarcinoma grade III extending through the thickness of the wall. The regional lymph nodes were free of tumor. The patient's convalescence from the laparotomy was uneventful and sixteen days after her right colectomy radium was applied to the cervix. She received 6000 mg hours using six sources and the following month she received 6000 r of external radiation.

Comment This patient illustrates many instructive points. She was treated for two years for anemia with iron and liver extract without any effort being made to discover the cause of the anemia. This treatment altered the morphologic characteristics of the red blood cells without correcting the anemia. This case illustrates the importance of determining the cause of the anemia before treatment. When the gastrointestinal tract was investigated two possible bleeding sites were found. The hiatus hernia was found first but this lesion occurs so frequently in this age group that it was thought

important to study the lower gastrointestinal tract. This was done and the carcinoma of the colon was discovered. Fortunately the lesion was operable despite the duration of the illness. The finding of a carcinoma of the cervix on the routine examination emphasizes the importance of a complete examination in all patients.

HEREDITARY SPHEROCYTOSIS

Synonyms: Congenital Hemolytic Icterus, Acholuric Jaundice, Congenital Hemolytic Anemia, Familial Spherocytosis, Spherocytic Anemia

HISTORY

The history of this disorder has been reviewed recently by Dreyfus.¹⁶⁸ Formerly credit for the first detailed clinical description of "congenital hemolytic icterus" was usually given to Minkowski's report in 1900.^{1,2} Because of Chiuffridi's discovery of two of the characteristic features of the disease, namely reticulocytosis and the increased hypotonic saline fragility of the red cells,^{161,16,17} the disorder was sometimes referred to as the hemolytic anemia of the Chiuffridi and Minkowski type. Vanlair and Miasius' report in 1871, in which spherocytes were described, has been rediscovered only recently¹⁸⁴ and as a result credit for the first clear description of this disease has been given to these authors.^{164,17,18}

MECHANISM OF DISEASE

Hereditary spherocytosis is believed to be inherited as a Mendelian dominant.^{168,186} According to this concept at least one parent and one half the offspring of the patient should be affected. However, apparent exceptions have been observed in families that were studied carefully.^{1,17,18} Consideration of these apparent exceptions has led to the suggestion that they may be explained in one of the following ways: (1) the testing method may be inadequate to detect the anomaly in the parents and siblings, possibly because of factors of gene penetrance or expressivity; (2) some patients may develop the spherocytosis as a result of gene mutation; (3) the disease in the exceptional cases that appears to be hereditary spherocytosis is in reality similar to it but is not identical with it; (4) the legal parents are not the biological parents.^{16,186} The first and third possibilities are considered most likely.^{1,17,18,186}

Patients with hereditary spherocytosis manifest the evidences of a hemolytic process such as increased fecal urobilinogen excretion, elevation of the indirect reacting serum bilirubin in the plasma, splenomegaly, reticulocytosis and normoblastic hyperplasia in the bone marrow. Although the anemia is cured by splenectomy, an intracorpuseular defect has been shown by Dacie and Mollison¹⁶⁵ to be the primary factor in the increased hemolysis. They demonstrated that erythrocytes from normal donors survived from 100 to 130 days when transfused into patients with hereditary spherocytosis; in contrast erythrocytes that were obtained from a patient with hereditary spherocytosis four days prior to splenectomy and one year after splenectomy disappeared from the circulation in 14 days and 19 days respectively when transfused into normal recipients.

Ever since the increased osmotic fragility of the erythrocytes in hereditary spherocytosis was first described, efforts have been made to find some link between this peculiarity and the increased destruction of the erythrocytes *in vivo*. Haden demonstrated that the increased susceptibility of the erythrocytes in the disease to hypotonic saline is related to their increased thickness and "microspherocytic" shape.¹⁷¹ The observation that microspherocytosis and increased osmotic fragility persisted after splenectomy suggested that the defects in the red cell were the result of an inherited abnormality of erythropoiesis.^{1, 1, 174} Ham and Castle found that sterile incubation caused an increase in the spheroidicity and osmotic fragility of human erythrocytes and postulated that abnormally susceptible erythrocytes would be hemolyzed more easily than normal cells by erythrostatics in the spleen which might be compared to incubation *in vitro*.¹ This concept implies selective sequestration of the abnormal "spherocytes" in the spleen because normal erythrocytes survive normally in patients with hereditary spherocytosis.^{165, 169, 173} Such selective sequestration has been demonstrated in experiments that utilized mixtures of different types of cells that could be identified by differential agglutination. Identifiable normal erythrocytes were transfused into patients with hereditary spherocytosis prior to splenectomy; when the spleen was studied after its removal it was found that the patient's cells had been selectively retained by the spleen. In another experiment spleens that had been removed from patients with hereditary spherocytosis were perfused with mixtures of normal erythrocytes and spherocytes from patients with hereditary spherocytosis;^{169, 187} again it was found that a disproportionately higher number of spherocytes were retained by the spleen. Thus it appears that the increased thickness of the erythrocytes, which is an inherited abnormality, is responsible not only for their increased osmotic fragility but also for their sequestration in the spleen where they are destroyed at an excessive rate.

The inherited defect in the spherocytes of this disease is a complex. Abnormalities in the glycolytic cycle of the cell have been demonstrated by Prankerd, Altman and Young who found a smaller flux of P^3 into ATP and 2,3 DPG associated with an increase in the flux into orthophosphate.¹⁷⁸ These authors postulated that the susceptibility of such cells to hemolysis

may be a consequence of a deficiency of high energy phosphate bonds. An increased rate of the transport of sodium across the cell membrane has also been demonstrated in the erythrocytes in this disease.¹⁹ Whether or not the abnormal rates of sodium transport are due to the defective glycolysis of the cells is uncertain. The fact that quantitative differences were found in different patients with hereditary spherocytosis as well as in asymptomatic kindred has led to the suspicion that patients with hereditary spherocytosis may not form a homogeneous group but may vary in the number of genetically determined biochemical abnormalities that are present.¹⁸

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Hereditary spherocytosis occurs in both sexes, but it is rare in Negroes.¹⁶⁰ Clinical evidence of the disease may appear soon after birth or not until after middle age.^{160, 166}

The severity of the disease varies greatly in different patients. In some the clinical manifestations are so mild that the disease is asymptomatic and the patients lead an active normal life. In such individuals the diagnosis can be established only after a careful study of the blood because the anemia may be mild or even absent if the bone marrow is able to compensate for the hyperhemolysis. More often the patient has the symptoms of a mild chronic illness. Some patients do not realize that they have been feeling subnormal until after splenectomy produces an increased sense of well being.

In many patients the course of the disease is associated with episodes of severe illness, the so called "crisis." These attacks are characterized by the sudden onset of fever, abdominal discomfort, nausea, vomiting, and rapidly increasing weakness and pallor. Tachycardia and low blood pressure are usually present and shock may develop. Some patients appear severely ill and lethargic and lapse into unconsciousness.¹⁶⁶ It was formerly thought that the episode of crisis was caused by a marked increase in the severity of hemolysis, but the recent studies of such episodes indicate that at least the majority are the result of a combination of decreased erythropoiesis and a continuation of the usual degree of hemolysis.^{18, 166, 167} Owren described the occurrence of an "aplastic crisis" characterized by rapidly increasing anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia that accompanied a fall in the reticulocyte count and a decrease in the plasma bilirubin and the development of an aplastic picture in the bone marrow.¹⁷ The occurrence of episodes of this type in several members of a family at the same time suggests that some intercurrent infection is the causative factor.^{18, 166, 167} Other attacks labeled as crisis that are associated with increasing jaundice may be in reality attacks of biliary colic and infection. In these circumstances the features of obstructive jaundice and infection are superimposed on those of hyperhemolysis. Cholelithiasis occurs in over half the patients over the age of 10 and in only about 5 per cent of those under 10 years of age.¹⁷ In one

group of 14 patients over 11 years of age cholelithiasis occurred in 12¹⁵⁸

The most constant abnormality found on physical examination is splenomegaly of mild or moderate degree. In most patients the spleen is firm and does not extend below the level of the umbilicus but in some patients it fills the entire left half of the abdominal cavity.¹⁶⁷⁻¹⁸⁴ The liver is often palpable but is rarely significantly enlarged. The patient with hereditary spherocytosis has been described as "more jaundiced than sick" but the degree of clinical jaundice is usually mild unless there is associated dysfunction of the biliary tract. Both the pallor and the jaundice may be so mild as to be overlooked on the physical examination. Chronic leg ulcers in the region of the malleoli are reported to occur in 6 per cent of patients¹⁻⁹ but are also said to be rare.^{1-9, 164, 186} The ulcers are usually several centimeters in diameter and are surrounded by an area of hyperpigmentation. In patients with hereditary spherocytosis growth and development are usually normal. Abnormalities such as tower skull, polydactyly, skeletal defects and infantism have been reported in this disease but appear to be uncommon.¹⁶

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

The anemia is usually moderate and erythrocyte counts of 3.0 to 3.5 mil per cu mm are common. The erythrocyte count may be normal if the hemolytic process is fully compensated or markedly reduced if there is an episode of crisis. In one series the erythrocyte counts ranged from 1.5 to 5.0 mil per cu mm.¹⁶ The MCV is nearly always normal or slightly reduced and the MCH and MCHC are generally normal because the erythrocytes have an increased thickness as well as a reduced cell diameter. On a stained blood smear many of the erythrocytes appear small and heavily stained because of a marked diminution or absence of the central pallor that is seen in normal cells. Macrocytes which are probably the younger cells are also present as a rule. A reticulocytosis of from 10 to 20 per cent or more is found regularly unless erythropoiesis is depressed because of an aplastic crisis or for some other reason. In one series of patients the reticulocyte count ranged from 6 per cent to 78.6 per cent.¹ During an aplastic crisis reticulocytes may disappear from the peripheral blood.¹⁶⁸⁻¹⁷¹ In the usual patient the bone marrow undergoes hyperplasia of the normoblastic type. During an aplastic crisis the marrow may be either aplastic or unusually cellular; the appearance depends on whether the specimen is obtained near the onset of crisis or during the recovery phase.¹

Study of the patient discloses other features common to hemolytic anemias of all types such as an elevation of the level of serum bilirubin, an increase in the excretion of fecal urobilinogen and urinary urobilinogen, and normal or elevated levels of the serum iron. In one series the serum bilirubin level ranged from 0.4 to 5.7 mg. per 100 ml. but in 80 per cent it was below 3.0 mg.¹⁶⁰ Levels higher than 4.0 mg. per 100 ml. are unusual unless complications are present.¹⁶⁰

Increased fragility of erythrocytes in hypotonic saline solutions has been recognized as a characteristic feature of hereditary spherocytosis. When normal erythrocytes are tested in saline solutions hemolysis begins in concentrations of about 0.45 per cent and is complete at 0.30 per cent. In most patients with hereditary spherocytosis hemolysis begins at concentrations of from 0.50 per cent to 0.75 per cent and is complete at 0.40 per cent. The test has been modified so that results may be expressed quantitatively.^{174, 180} When incubated for 24 hours at 37° C erythrocytes from patients with hereditary spherocytosis show a greater increase in osmotic fragility than do normal cells.¹⁸⁰ In mildly affected cases the abnormal osmotic fragility may not be evident until after incubation. Microspherocytes have not only an increased hypotonic saline fragility but also an increased mechanical fragility.^{169, 181} The Coombs antiglobulin test is usually negative even during episodes of crisis.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis may be difficult if the patient is seen for the first time during an episode of aplastic crisis or during an attack of biliary colic when the hemolytic nature of the underlying disorder may not be suspected. As a rule the presence of mild anemia, splenomegaly, and slight icterus suggests the diagnosis. The presence of hyperhemolysis is confirmed by finding reticulocytosis, increased urobilinogen excretion, and elevation of the indirect reacting bilirubin in the blood.

Hereditary spherocytosis is generally distinguished from other types of hemolytic anemia by the family history and the hypotonic fragility test. If the results of this test are not clear cut, incubation at 37° C for 24 hours may be helpful.¹⁸¹ However, the presence of microspherocytes and increased osmotic fragility do not establish the disorder as hereditary spherocytosis, for these sometimes occur in other types of hemolytic anemia. Increased osmotic fragility has been found in acute hemolytic anemia, myelosclerosis, leukemia, erythroblastosis fetalis, lymphadenoma, ovarian dermoid cyst, lymphosarcoma, pneumonia, and after the administration of hemolytic poisons such as acetylphenylhydrazine, sulfonilamide, and arsenic.¹⁸² At times study of the blood of siblings and parents is necessary to establish the diagnosis of hereditary spherocytosis in an individual patient. In such a study the incubation procedure is particularly useful. The Coombs antiglobulin test, hemoglobin electrophoresis, and the alkali denaturation test are often helpful in distinguishing hereditary spherocytosis from other hemolytic anemias such as the hemoglobinopathies and autoimmune hemolytic disease. Hereditary spherocytosis must be differentiated from the unusual congenital non-spherocytic hemolytic anemia which is not benefited by splenectomy. In the latter condition spherocytes and abnormal hypotonic saline fragility do not

TREATMENT

Splenectomy was first performed on a patient with this disease by Wells in 1887 some years before the disease was recognized.¹⁶⁷ It has been established since then that the procedure almost invariably relieves the anemia and jaundice.^{164, 165, 168} The serum bilirubin level returns to normal promptly and the erythrocyte count generally becomes normal in from two to four weeks (Fig 28). Although spherocytosis is less marked after splenectomy both the spherocytosis and increased osmotic fragility persist after operation.^{10, 168} Operation appears justified in virtually all patients with this disease except those with the mildest form of the disorder unless there are other contraindications to surgery. Splenectomy may be done in infancy if the anemia is severe but postponement to late childhood if possible is recommended by Dacie.^{161, 164} If the patient has cholelithiasis cholecystectomy may be performed at the time of splenectomy but at times it may be more prudent to perform the operations separately.

Folic acid, iron, and vitamin B₁₂ are without value in the uncomplicated case of hereditary spherocytosis. Transfusions may be necessary during

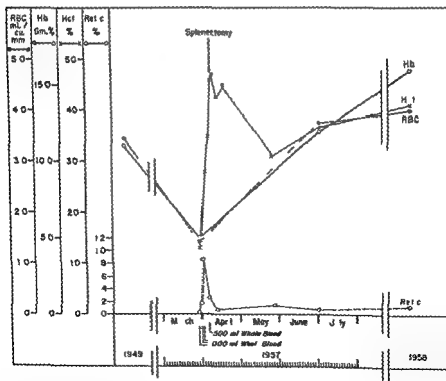


Figure 9 Hereditary spherocytosis showing results of splenectomy. The patient was admitted during an aplastic crisis when the reticulocytes were nearly zero despite transfusions the reticulocytes rose within a few days.

episodes of crisis particularly if splenectomy must be done at such a time, but do not constitute a regular form of treatment

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

This patient was first seen at the University Hospital in 1947 at the age of 23 because of acute intoxication with isopropyl alcohol. At that time the following abnormalities were noted: splenomegaly, icterus index 18 units, hemoglobin 7.0 gm per 100 ml, reticulocyte count 17 per cent, generalized hyperplasia of the bone marrow. He refused further investigation and treatment until 1949 when he returned for more complete studies. At that time the liver was palpable 2 cm below the right costal margin and the lower border of the spleen was at the level of the umbilicus.

Laboratory Examination. Admission blood studies: hb 10 gm per 100 ml, rbc 3.6 mil per cu mm, wbc 6600 per cu mm, serum bilirubin 1.5 mg per 100 ml, retics 4.9 per cent. Numerous microspherocytes were seen on a smear of the peripheral blood. A specimen of bone marrow obtained by aspiration was normoblastic and hyperplastic. The daily fecal urobilinogen excretion was 1600 mg. Hypotonic saline fragility test: beginning hemolysis at 0.48 per cent, complete at 0.40 per cent, normal control beginning 0.44 per cent, complete 0.34 per cent. The antiglobulin (Coombs) test was negative.

The family history revealed that the patient's father and grandfather suffered from episodes of jaundice. The father of the patient, age 75, was studied and the characteristic hematologic abnormalities of hereditary spherocytosis were demonstrated.

The patient underwent splenectomy and had an uneventful postoperative course. He was discharged on the seventh postoperative day when the hematocrit was 39 per cent; two months later it was 50 per cent. Two years later the serum bilirubin level and hematocrit were normal.

Comment. This patient demonstrates many characteristic features of hereditary spherocytosis: anemia, splenomegaly, reticulocytosis, bone marrow hyperplasia, increased fecal urobilinogen excretion, and slight elevation of the serum bilirubin such as this patient had are found in all types of hemolytic anemia. The presence of the microspherocytes and the occurrence of a similar disorder in other members of the family indicated that the diagnosis was probably hereditary spherocytosis. The diagnosis was confirmed by the hypotonic saline fragility test. In many patients with hereditary spherocytosis the results of the test are more abnormal than was the case in this patient, but in other patients with the disease incubation is necessary to demonstrate a definite abnormality. As illustrated by this patient's subsequent course, splenectomy cures the anemia and hyperhemolysis in hereditary spherocytosis. Patients with the disease not infrequently need cholecystectomy because the hyperhemolysis if not corrected by splenectomy leads to an increased incidence of cholelithiasis. Attacks of biliary colic and obstructive jaundice are not unusual.

SICKLE CELL ANEMIA

Synonyms Meniscocytosis, Drepanocytic Anemia,
Homozygous Hb S Disease

HISTORY

The first case of sickle cell anemia was described by Herrick in 1910¹⁰. This patient, a 20 year old male Negro from the West Indies, had most of the classic clinical and hematologic features of the disease. In addition to the sickle cells this patient had cardiac enlargement, icterus, anemia, normoblasts in the peripheral blood, and leukocytosis. Huck established the fact that the sickling property resides in the cell and not in the plasma¹⁰ and Ponder showed that red cells washed free of hemoglobin do not sickle. Hahn and Gillespie demonstrated that sickling is a reversible reaction related to the degree of oxygenation of the hemoglobin in the erythrocyte¹¹. A most important contribution was made by Pauling, Itano, Singer, and Wells in 1949 when they established that sickle cell anemia is a molecular disease¹². They demonstrated that hemoglobin obtained from patients with sickle cell anemia differed electrophoretically from that present in erythrocytes of normal individuals and concluded that the abnormality resided in the protein portion of the molecule. The nature of the defect has been further characterized by Ingram, who has shown that the molecule of sickle cell hemoglobin differs from a molecule of normal hemoglobin only by having glutamic acid replaced by valine¹³. The studies of Neel and others have shown that the molecular abnormality of hemoglobin is genetically controlled^{14, 15, 16}.

MECHANISM OF ANEMIA

The sickling property is a gene transmitted abnormality that is heterozygous in persons with the asymptomatic sickle cell trait and homozygous in individuals with sickle cell anemia^{17, 18, 19}. This inherited defect is found in the globin portion of the hemoglobin molecule and not in the heme portion²⁰. Recently it has been shown that sickle cell hemoglobin and normal hemoglobin differ in that the peptide chain in each half of the sickle cell hemoglobin molecule contains valine in a situation where glutamic acid is found in normal hemoglobin¹⁶. Thus it appears that of almost three hundred amino acids present in each half of the hemoglobin molecule, hemoglobin S and hemoglobin A differ in only one amino acid. This molecu-

lar difference the presence of two carboxyl groups in glutamic acid that are absent in valine appears to be adequate to explain the electrophoretic differences in these two hemoglobins. In addition efforts have been made to explain the unusual chemical and clinical manifestations of the disease by this molecular peculiarity.

The sickle cell hemoglobin tends to crystallize under conditions of lowered oxygen tension¹⁴ and both lowering of the pH and deoxygenation of solutions of sickle cell hemoglobin lead to the formation of crescent shaped tactoids.¹⁴ Sickling of erythrocytes which is reversible is thought to be the result of realignment of the hemoglobin molecules in the cell envelope rather than the actual crystallization of the hemoglobin molecules.¹⁴ Erythrocytes from patients with sickle cell anemia assume the sickle shape at oxygen tensions that are found in the circulation in vivo but a more marked lowering of the oxygen tension is necessary to produce sickling in individuals with the sickle cell trait. It has been assumed that this difference in behavior between the erythrocytes that contain only sickle hemoglobin and those that contain both normal and sickle hemoglobin forms the basis for the different clinical manifestations of sickle cell anemia and the sickle cell trait condition. Individuals who have the sickle cell trait are essentially asymptomatic and remain so unless the oxygen saturation of the blood is reduced to an abnormal degree. Patients who are homozygous for hemoglobin S have sickle cell anemia a chronic illness characterized by anemia and the occurrence of infarctions in various organs of the body.

The anemia which is hemolytic in type is the result of an intracorpuscular defect.^{188 193 194} Erythrocytes from normal individuals survive for about 120 days when transfused into patients with sickle cell anemia while erythrocytes from patients with sickle cell anemia have a much shorter survival time when transfused into normal recipients. Studies that utilized the analysis of N¹⁵ disappearance and fecal stercobilin N¹⁵ appearance indicate complete random destruction of the red cells a shortened survival time of the erythrocytes (16 days in one patient) and no evidence of more than one population of cells.¹¹ It has been suggested that the excessive destruction of the erythrocytes is the result of the increase in mechanical fragility that has been demonstrated when the erythrocytes assume the sickle cell form.¹⁴ According to this explanation the erythrocytes become sickled under the oxygen tensions that occur in the body normally and in this form both the mechanical fragility of the cells and the amount of trauma that they encounter in the circulation are increased. The occurrence of transient marrow aplasia is also responsible for a sudden increase in the severity of the anemia in some circumstances.³⁰

The development of the lesions that occur in the various organs of the body is usually attributed to thrombosis and infarction or to ischemic necrosis and hemorrhage.^{198 213} either ischemia or thrombosis would be favored by the packing and stasis of the sickle shaped erythrocytes in the capillaries under conditions of lowered oxygen tension.¹⁹⁰ It has been suggested that the assumption of the sickle form is associated with an increase

in viscosity which leads to a vicious cycle of increased deoxygenation, increased sickling, and increased stasis."

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Sickle cell trait and sickle cell anemia have been found almost entirely in the Negro race. The incidence of the sickling trait varies in different parts of the world and is about 9 per cent in American Negroes. Sickle cell anemia has a frequency of about one fortieth that of the trait.¹⁹

Sickle cell anemia is characterized by the occurrence of symptoms in virtually any part of the body. These symptoms are sometimes bizarre and vary greatly from patient to patient and from time to time in the same patient. Most patients with sickle cell anemia, both children and adults, continue in a mild state of chronic illness with stable levels of erythrocytes and



Figure 29 Typical leg ulcer in sickle cell anemia

serum bilirubin but nearly all patients at one time or another experience episodes of more severe symptoms the attacks of so called crisis At such times the patient may become suddenly ill with severe pain fever and clinical features that suggest a localized lesion in some part of the body Severe disease of the central nervous system or some complication in the skeleton or intra abdominal organs that requires surgical treatment may be suspected More often the onset of these episodes is mild and is characterized by slight fever mild abdominal pain and arthralgia However some patients develop the striking changes in the symptoms that occur during a crisis without any accompanying hematologic changes of significant degree The factors which precipitate these attacks are not known but infection is often a preceding event The anemia and jaundice often increase temporarily during these episodes but return to their previous levels afterward

The most common cutaneous manifestations of the disease are indolent ulcers or scars on the lower legs which can be found on about 75 per cent of the older children or adults with the disease Ulceration is rare in very young children¹⁰⁸ The ulcers which have sharply defined edges are usually single but may be multiple and bilateral (Fig 29)

Various types of cardiac abnormalities have been reported in from 50 to 91 per cent of the patients¹⁰⁹⁻¹¹⁴ The commonest of these is an apical systolic murmur which occurs in the majority Although rare mitral aortic and pulmonic diastolic murmurs have been reported¹¹⁴ Cardiac enlargement which often involves both ventricles is a common finding and has been attributed to the chronic anemia¹¹⁵ Cor pulmonale occurs in some patients possibly as a result of pulmonary infarction and pulmonary hypertension¹¹⁶⁻¹¹⁸ Electrocardiographic abnormalities such as a prolonged PR interval and minor changes in the ST segment and T wave occur but are non specific

Symptoms referable to the genitourinary tract are not common but the complications may be dramatic and serious The most frequent of these is hematuria The cause of the hematuria which occurs in both sickle cell anemia and sickle cell trait even in the absence of infarction is poorly understood The bleeding is usually unilateral recurrent and may be severe Some patients have had operations for suspected tumor because of unilateral hematuria associated with an abnormal intravenous pyelogram Priapism has been reported in a number of patients it sometimes persists from 10 to 36 days and is often followed by complete impotence¹¹⁹

Nearly all patients with sickle cell anemia at one time or another complain of gastrointestinal symptoms such as anorexia nausea vomiting or jaundice Severe pain may occur in any part of the abdomen and at times it is difficult to decide whether or not surgical intervention is indicated Such pains which generally occur in episodes of "crisis" may be due to infarction of the spleen or some other organ or may be related to cholelithiasis which has been reported to have an incidence of 25 per cent The abdominal pain is sometimes extremely severe At times it persists over a period of several days despite narcotics and other measures usually

employed in the relief of pain and then disappears completely without apparent residual damage. Severe abdominal pains have been attributed to development of infarcts in the vertebrae which may not become apparent on a roentgenogram until several weeks after the pain has subsided.¹⁷

A wide variety of central nervous system manifestations has been reported in patients of all ages.¹⁸ These include hemiplegia, aphasia, dysphagia, nystagmus, drowsiness, coma, headache, convulsions, and stiff neck. Electroencephalographic abnormalities are common in children.¹⁹ Evidence of the neurologic involvement may subside completely but some patients die during these episodes and others develop a spastic paralysis that persists. The lesions in the central nervous system are presumed to be the result of vascular accidents or circulatory disturbances of a transient nature.

Sickle cell anemia is often accompanied by symptoms or signs referable to the joints and skeleton. Pain in the joints is common and when there is an associated heart murmur, rheumatic fever may be suggested. However, in sickle cell anemia the pain is not usually severe and actual swelling of the joints is rare. Skeletal abnormalities are usually demonstrable only by roent



Figure 50. Roentgenogram of the skull of a patient with sickle cell anemia showing the hair on end appearance.

genograms the commonest manifestations are "fish tailing" of the vertebral bodies and radiolucent areas of necrosis in these or other bones^{1,29, 218} The hair on end appearance of the skull sometimes occurs but is not common (Fig 30) Other abnormalities that can be demonstrated radiologically in some patients are gallstones pulmonary infarcts and cardiac enlargement

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

In the usual patient with sickle cell anemia the hemoglobin and erythrocyte count are reduced to about half the normal values The anemia is normocytic and normochromic unless complicating factors are present On the stained smear of peripheral blood a few sickled forms may be seen but the most prominent features are marked anisocytosis poikilocytosis and the presence of target cells nucleated red cells are often present (Fig 31) The leukocyte count is usually between 12 000 and 16 000 per cu mm the reported counts have ranged from 4000 to 69 000 per cu mm²¹⁹⁻²²⁴ The platelet count is usually normal but counts over 1 000 000 per cu mm sometimes occur

The laboratory evidences of a hemolytic process are found unless an



Figure 31 Erythrocytes in sickle cell anemia Wright's stain
(Courtesy of Dr B E Washburn and the Virginia Medical Monthly vol 15 1911)

aplastic phase is present. The reticulocyte count is often over 20 per cent unless it is depressed by some associated disease. The level of the indirect reacting bilirubin in the serum is increased but it usually does not exceed 3.0 mg per 100 ml unless there is some associated hepatic or biliary complication. Fecal urobilinogen excretion is increased and average daily excretions between 200 and 750 mg have been reported.^{6, 7} The daily fecal urobilinogen excretion varies spontaneously and decreases after transfusions of whole blood. The plasma iron level is normal or elevated and the latent iron binding capacity is normal.¹ The free erythrocyte protoporphyrin is usually elevated in a group of patients studied by the authors; serial determinations disclosed unexplained variations that appeared to be independent of the reticulocyte count, the degree of anemia, or the presence of infection.¹⁰

Examination of the bone marrow usually reveals erythrocytic hyperplasia of the normoblastic type associated with hyperplasia of the myeloid cells. Acute transient marrow aplasia has been reported during an attack of pneumonia.⁴⁰ Sickling of the adult erythrocytes and of the nucleated red cells may be observed in material obtained from the marrow. Long filamentous erythrocytes are observed more often in the marrow preparations than in preparations made from the peripheral blood.

The sedimentation rate in patients whose red cells sickle is not increased as much as is usually the case in patients with a comparable degree of anemia. Prolonged stasis of venous blood causes an increased retardation of the sedimentation rate.¹ Exposure of a sample of blood to carbon dioxide gas will reduce the sedimentation rate to less than 1 mm per hour while oxygenation of the blood will cause an increase in the sedimentation rate that amounts to from 23 to 70 mm per hour.³⁶

The erythrocytes of sickle cell anemia are abnormally resistant to hypotonic saline. In one series the average figure for beginning hemolysis was 0.35 per cent and for completion was 0.22 per cent.¹⁴⁴ Some of the cells are not hemolyzed in distilled water.¹⁰⁷ The mechanical fragility of the cells is normal when they are in the discoid form but becomes increased if sickling is produced by exposure to carbon dioxide.¹⁶

The characteristic sickling phenomenon can be demonstrated in moist sealed cover slip preparations that were first introduced by Emmel.⁹¹ The undesirable features of the cover slip method are the time required for the sickling to take place even in patients with sickle cell anemia, and the occurrence of false negative results. At least fourteen other tests that produce sickling have been described.¹ The sodium bisulfite method has proved to be satisfactory in our experience.²²¹ The use of hemoglobin electrophoresis as performed by Smith and Conley²¹ has proved to be helpful in diagnosing many patients with sickle cell anemia. It is particularly helpful in distinguishing patients with sickle cell anemia from those who have the sickle cell trait combined with some unrelated anemia, and from those patients who are heterozygous for two abnormal hemoglobins.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

There is usually no difficulty in establishing the diagnosis of sickle cell anemia if the possibility is considered. A positive test for sickling indicates that the individual has either the heterozygous sickling trait or sickle cell anemia. The demonstration of the sickling phenomenon in a patient who has anemia does not establish the diagnosis of sickle cell anemia because the sickle cell trait is common in Negroes who may have anemia from almost any cause. An incorrect diagnosis of sickle cell anemia may be made in patients with sickle cell trait who have chronic blood loss or pernicious anemia unless proper studies are carried out. Unless the patient has been transfused recently the diagnosis of sickle cell anemia can nearly always be established or excluded by hemoglobin electrophoresis. The discovery of a relatively mild degree of anemia associated with a positive sickling test in a patient who has significant splenomegaly should arouse the suspicion that the patient has a combination of sickle cell trait plus some other hemoglobin abnormality such as hemoglobin C rather than sickle cell anemia. Hemoglobin electrophoresis is the most valuable method of distinguishing sickle cell anemia from sickle cell hemoglobin C disease and other disorders that are due to the occurrence of sickle cell hemoglobin with some other abnormal hemoglobin.

If the diagnosis of sickle cell anemia is not considered the disease may be mistaken for acute rheumatic fever when the patient presents with anemia, joint complaints, fever, cardiac enlargement and cardiac murmurs. The absence of the severe pains, swelling and tenderness of the joints that are usually seen in rheumatic fever may help to distinguish between these two diseases. In other patients with signs of acute intra abdominal disease it may be difficult to make the correct diagnosis because patients with sickle cell anemia sometimes develop acute surgical emergencies just as any other patients do but also they develop signs of acute intra abdominal disease as the result of sickle cell anemia alone. Both possibilities must be considered when the patient is seen and the decision must be made on the basis of the evidence available at that time. Sickle cell anemia must be differentiated from other diseases that cause ulcers of the extremities and from those that produce symptoms or signs of involvement of the central nervous system. Sickle cell anemia which has been called the great masquerader³⁶ has been confused at times with rheumatoid arthritis, osteomyelitis, poliomyelitis, meningitis, cerebrovascular accident, infectious hepatitis and other diseases.¹

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

Sickle cell anemia is a serious disorder and few patients survive the third decade. Many patients die during childhood. Death comes most often from infections such as pneumonia and chronic pyelonephritis with renal failure.

Other causes of death are heart failure shock with abdominal crisis complications in the central nervous system tuberculosis and sarcoidosis

The occurrence of pregnancy has been considered a serious matter in the patients with sickle cell anemia who reach the childbearing age In one review of the subject it was found that spontaneous abortion occurred in 13 per cent stillbirths occurred in 17 per cent and another 12 per cent of the children died soon after delivery ¹⁵ The maternal mortality rate seems to be between 10 and 20 per cent because of the occurrence of infection heart failure pulmonary embolism uremia shock and cerebral vascular accidents The occurrence of toxemia of pregnancy is common More recently it has been suggested that pregnancy is a more serious problem in sickle cell anemia-hemoglobin C disease than it is in sickle cell anemia ¹⁶

In some patients with sickle cell anemia physical development is greatly retarded and hypogonadism occurs (Fig 32) In other patients the growth and development seem to follow a normal pattern The reason for these differences in patients with sickle cell anemia is not apparent but the differences in development are not due solely to differences in the severity of the anemia ¹⁶



Figure 32 Body habitus of the type seen frequently in sickle cell anemia

TREATMENT OF SICKLE CELL ANEMIA

The treatment of sickle cell anemia is generally unsatisfactory. Transfusions are the only means of returning the blood to normal levels that are available at present. Transfusions are not used to maintain the blood in the normal range because patients with this disease adjust very well to their

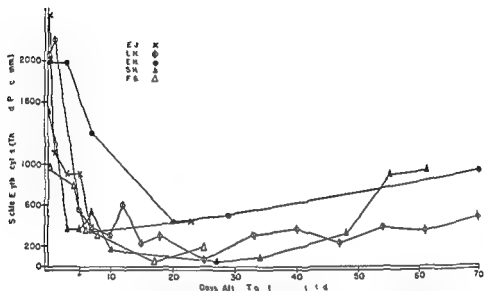


Figure 33 The effect of transfusion on the number of circulating sickle cells in sickle cell anemia (From Donegan MacIlwaine and Leavell *Am J Med* vol 17 1954)

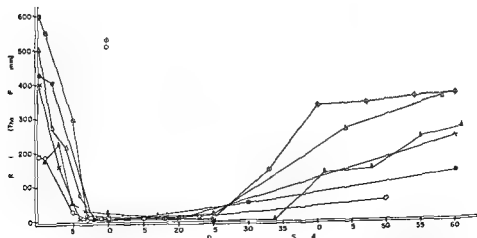


Figure 34 The effect of transfusion on the reticulocyte count in sickle cell anemia (From Donegan MacIlwaine and Leavell *Am J Med* vol 17 1954)

lowered hemoglobin levels. Transfusions are valuable during periods of aplastic crisis, abdominal crisis, and at any other time when the patient is severely ill. It is possible that they also may be advantageous in carrying patients through pregnancy or operations because multiple transfusions depress erythropoiesis and reduce the number and percentage of sickle cells in the peripheral circulation (Figs 33 and 34).⁴⁰

Splenectomy is sometimes beneficial in children. The beneficial effect seems to be related to the size of the spleen.⁴¹ In most adults with the disease the spleen is markedly reduced in size, probably because of repeated infarctions, and splenectomy has little place in the treatment.

Various measures have been used in an effort to reduce the sickling and thereby relieve or reduce the severity of the clinical symptoms in these patients. In this category are cortisone, ACTH, benzazoline (Priscoline), sodium bicarbonate, and acetazolamide (Diamox). None of these agents can be considered to be of proven value at the present time.

Patients may appear critically ill during episodes of "crisis." At such times blood transfusions, antibiotics, and measures to relieve pain are necessary. The short term use of antibiotics appears justified even though the presence of an infection cannot be established because these episodes are so often preceded by an infection.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

This patient, a male Negro, was first admitted to the hospital in July 1946 at the age of 12 because of fever, cough, and pleuritic pain of one week's duration. For some years he had been troubled with recurring chronic ulcers in the lower tibial region. A brother 10 years of age had a similar illness characterized by recurring attacks of fever and chronic ulceration of the legs. One sister had died ten days previously of unknown cause. The patient's father, mother, and four siblings were alive and well.

Physical Examination. Temperature 105, pulse 120, respirations 26, and blood pressure 105/55. The patient was alert, thin, and appeared acutely ill. The veins in both fundi were extremely tortuous. Rhonchi were heard throughout both lungs and moist rales were present in the lower portion of both lungs. The heart did not appear enlarged but a systolic murmur was heard over the entire precordium. Above the left internal malleolus there was an ulcer 4 cm. in diameter.

Laboratory Examination. Admission blood studies: hb 4.0 gm per 100 ml, rbc 1.4 mil per cu mm, wbc 22,000 per cu mm, retics 0.1 per cent. The leukocyte differential count was normal but a few sickled erythrocytes and many target cells were present on the fixed stained smear. A moist coverslip preparation was positive for sickling. The uterus index was 6 units. The urine had a specific gravity of 1.010 and was otherwise normal. A chest roentgenogram showed increased bronchial markings and an infiltrate in the left lower lobe.

Treatment and Course. A diagnosis of sickle cell anemia with pneu-

monia was made. The patient was given blood transfusions and penicillin and made an uneventful recovery. Before discharge from the hospital on the sixteenth day the leukocyte count had fallen to 11 000 per cu mm and the reticulocyte count had risen to 5.4 per cent despite numerous transfusions.

This patient was observed for eight years during which time his course was characterized by chronic ill health and exacerbations of acute illnesses. The erythrocyte count was usually in the range of 1.5 to 2.0 mil per cu mm and the reticulocyte count was usually 25 or 30 per cent. On several occasions the fecal urobilinogen excretion was more than 1000 mg in 24 hours. The growth and development were subnormal. The extremities were long and thin, the trunk was short and no secondary sex characteristics developed. At the age of 20 he weighed but 60 pounds and appeared to be about 10 years of age. He developed repeated respiratory infections and was hospitalized on four occasions because of pneumonia. In some of these attacks the reticulocyte count was 0.1 per cent and the serum bilirubin was less than 1.0 mg per 100 ml; in others the reticulocyte count was 18 per cent and the serum bilirubin was 3.0 mg per 100 ml. During this time repeated roentgenograms revealed progressive enlargement of the heart. In December 1954 when he was 21 years old this patient was hospitalized with congestive heart failure and severe anemia. He failed to respond to the usual measures and died in acute heart failure.

Postmortem. Postmortem examination revealed malnutrition and generalized underdeveloped musculature. The over-all length of the body was 169 cm, 89 cm of which was formed by the lower extremities. The testes appeared to be prepubertal and a section through the prostate gland disclosed only a few glands that appeared immature. The heart was moderately hypertrophied and weighed 370 grams. The right atrium and ventricle were markedly dilated. The pulmonary artery was greatly dilated from its point of origin but no thrombi were demonstrated in the larger branches. Microscopic examination of the lungs disclosed emphysema, thickening of the walls of the smaller pulmonary arteries that produced complete obliteration of the lumen in some areas and multiple small granulomatous lesions. The lymph nodes from various parts of the body were enlarged and contained innumerable discrete epithelioid cell granulomas. These granulomatous lesions were diagnosed as Bock's sarcoid. The liver was enlarged, weighed 2250 grams and contained large amounts of hemosiderin. The spleen was scarred and contracted and weighed only 28 grams. The bone marrow was hyperplastic.

Comment. Many of the commonest features of sickle cell anemia were evident in this patient. This young Negro had a severe hemolytic anemia, chronic ill health and retarded physical development. The most striking abnormalities in the physical examinations were the disproportion between the size of the trunk and the length of the extremities, the long tapering fingers, hypogonadism, pallor of the mucous membranes, evidence of ulceration in the lower legs, the systolic murmur over the precordium and the tortuous "corkscrew" appearance of the retinal veins. At various times the

patient suffered from leg ulcers abdominal pains and attacks of pneumonia. During his first admission he apparently had an episode of "aplastic crisis" although it was not recognized as such at that time. Other attacks of pneumonia of equal severity did not produce such depression of the bone marrow. He died at the age of 21 of heart failure associated with cor pulmonale. Autopsy disclosed obstruction in the pulmonary circulation and cardiac hypertrophy but no evidence of valvular disease. The cardiac hypertrophy involved both sides of the heart and may have been due partly to the chronic severe anemia. As is often the case the spleen was scarred and smaller than normal. The presence of Bock's sarcoid that was demonstrated at the post mortem examination was not suspected ante mortem.

Electrophoresis of blood from this patient and his brother who had a strikingly similar physical habitus revealed the presence of only hemoglobin S (homozygous SS). Study of the parents both of whom had positive tests for sickling without anemia showed the presence of both hemoglobin A and hemoglobin S in each (heterozygous AS).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES (OTHER THAN SICKLE CELL ANEMIA AND THALASSEMIA) ASSOCIATED WITH ABNORMAL HEMOGLOBINS

HOMOZYGOUS HEMOGLOBIN C DISEASE

Hemoglobin C was first described by Itano and Neel.⁴⁷ Instances of homozygous hemoglobin C disease have been reported by a number of observers.^{42, 23, 48, 49, 50} The disease occurs almost exclusively in Negroes where the incidence of hemoglobin C trait has been found to be about 2 or 3 per cent. The patients that have been reported have presented a fairly uniform clinical picture characterized by splenomegaly mild or moderately severe hemolytic anemia and recurrent jaundice. A report of the disease in one patient who was 74 years of age indicates that the disorder is consistent with a normal life span.⁵¹

The hemoglobin values in the reported cases have varied from 8.7 to 12.5 gm per 100 ml.⁵⁰ The most prominent feature of the stained smear is the presence of numerous target cells that often constitute from 50 to 100 per cent of the erythrocytes. The osmotic fragility of the red cells is decreased. Hemoglobin electrophoresis discloses the presence of only hemoglobin C. Mild reticulocytosis is usually present. The erythrocytes have a decreased



Figure 35 Target cells and hemoglobin crystals in an isotonic saline suspension of erythrocytes from the peripheral blood of a patient with homozygous hemoglobin C disease after splenectomy. Note persistence of the cellular membrane about the hemoglobin crystal in the center of the picture

life span and the fecal urobilinogen excretion is increased.⁴⁰ Intracrythrocytic hemoglobin crystals have been observed in patients who have undergone splenectomy (Fig. 35).⁴³⁻⁶¹

SICKLE CELL-HEMOGLOBIN C DISEASE

Hemoglobin C was first recognized as a new hemoglobin in a study of patients who were diagnosed as atypical sickle cell anemia but instead proved to have sickle cell-hemoglobin C disease.⁴ The presence of both hemoglobin C and hemoglobin S was demonstrated by electrophoresis. In the reported patients the major portion of the hemoglobin has been of the C type.⁴³

The clinical features of this disease have been described by several authors.⁴⁴⁻⁶ The disease is much milder than sickle cell anemia but severe episodes of crisis occur in some patients; pregnancy may be associated with serious complications.⁶ In adults the spleen is usually considerably enlarged in contrast to sickle cell anemia where a small spleen is an almost constant feature. The anemia is usually mild or moderate in degree and the hematocrit and hemoglobin values range from 70 to 100 per cent of normal except during episodes of crisis. The reticulocyte count is normal or slightly increased.⁶ On fixed stained smears of the peripheral blood from 50 to 100 per cent of the erythrocytes appear as target cells.⁶ Sickling can be demonstrated in most preparations. The osmotic fragility of the erythrocytes is

decreased.⁶³ The diagnosis is established by electrophoresis which reveals the presence of both hemoglobin S and hemoglobin C. As in other hemolytic anemias the survival time of the erythrocytes is decreased, fecal urobilinogen excretion is increased, and the erythropoietic tissue in the marrow undergoes the normoblastic type of hyperplasia.⁶³

THALASSEMIA-SICKLE CELL DISEASE

Thalassemia-sickle cell disease probably was first described by Silvestroni and Bianco in 1946 before electrophoretic studies of hemoglobin were made. The vast majority of the patients with this disease are Caucasians of Greek or Italian stock.⁶⁴ It has been possible to demonstrate that the patient with this disease is a double heterozygote for the two abnormal genes present in the parents.⁶⁵

The disease resembles sickle cell anemia but the severity of the clinical manifestations varies greatly from one patient to another. The hematologic characteristics are microcytic hypochromic anemia, erythrocytic sickling in moist preparations, and the presence of numerous target cells on the fixed smear. ■ Reticulocytosis ■ usually present. Patients differ in the severity of the anemia and in the degree of the splenomegaly.

SICKLE CELL-HEMOGLOBIN D DISEASE

Hemoglobin D was described first by Itano.⁴ It has been found to be more common among non Negroes in some parts of the world but ■ more common in Negroes than in Caucasians in the United States.⁶⁷ The incidence in Negroes in the United States has been reported to be 1/1000⁶⁸ and 4/1000.⁶⁹

Sickle cell-hemoglobin D disease has been the subject of several reports.⁷⁰⁻⁷⁴ The patients who have this disorder are normally developed, often remain asymptomatic for long periods, and may have little or no anemia.⁷ Attacks that resemble mild episodes of sickle cell crisis occur. Differentiation of this disorder from sickle cell anemia may be difficult because in both diseases sickling occurs in preparations of fresh blood, and filter paper electrophoresis at pH 8.0 shows only a single concentration peak that has the mobility of S hemoglobin. In some instances the differentiation can be made by comparing the solubilities of the reduced forms of the hemoglobin because the solubility of reduced hemoglobin D is normal while that of reduced hemoglobin S is decreased.⁴ Differential solubility studies may not be conclusive and in such circumstances electrophoresis on agar at pH 6.2 may be utilized to differentiate the two hemoglobins.

HEMOGLOBIN H DISEASE

Hemoglobin H was described first by Rigas, Koler, and Osgood.⁷⁵ The proportion of the abnormal hemoglobin varies from 10 to 35 per cent in

patients with hemoglobin H disease.³⁸ The disorder is characterized by mild hemolytic anemia (hb 10.0-11.0 gm per 100 ml.) mild reticulocytosis slight reduction in the survival time of the erythrocytes slight increase in resistance to hypotonic saline and normal or slightly increased levels of serum bilirubin. Although hemoglobin H disease resembles thalassemia minor clinically in hemoglobin H disease target cells are absent and Hb A₂ is not increased.³⁸ It has been suggested that the gene for hemoglobin H does not find expression in the phenotype unless it is associated with a thalassemia gene.⁴⁰ However the absence of hemoglobin A in the families of patients with hemoglobin H disease has been reported.⁴⁴

LESS COMMON SYNDROMES

Thalassemia C disease and thalassemia E disease are similar clinically and hematologically. Splenomegaly mild hypochromic anemia target cells and increased resistance to hypotonic saline occur in both diseases.⁴¹⁻⁴³

Hemoglobin E was described independently in 1954 by Itano, Bergren and Sturgeon in the United States⁴⁶ and by Chernoff, A. Minnich, Nana-korn and Chernoff, R. in Thailand where it appears to be much more common.⁴⁰ Hemoglobin E migrates slightly faster than hemoglobin C on paper at pH 8.6. The clinical features of homozygous hemoglobin E disease which has been found in patients in Thailand are similar to those seen in hemoglobin C disease. Both are characterized by mild hemolytic anemia splenomegaly arthralgia and large numbers of normochromic target cells.⁴¹⁻⁴³ The occurrence of hemoglobin E trait is associated with no disability.⁴⁰

Homozygous hemoglobin D disease has been reported in a 40 year old Negro. This patient had erythrocyte counts that varied from 5.5 to 6.5 mil per cu mm and hemoglobin values that ranged from 12.5 to 13.5 gm per 100 ml. The MCV was 67 cu microns from 60 to 70 per cent of the erythrocytes were target cells. A slight decrease in survival time of the erythrocytes was demonstrated.⁴

THALASSEMIA

Synonyms: Mediterranean Anemia, Cooley's Anemia

Hereditary Leptocytosis, Erythroblastic Anemia

Thalassemia or "Cooley's anemia" was first recognized as a clinical entity by Cooley and Lee who described five cases of this disorder in 1925.⁴⁷ A

similar but much less severe disease found in adolescents and adults was reported in 1940 by Wintrobe, Matthews, Pollack, and Dobyns.⁸ As a result of studies on the genetics of the disease, Valentine and Neel concluded that these disorders were related and suggested that the term "thalassemia major" be used to denote the severe form of the disease which appeared to be the homozygous condition and the name "thalassemia minor" be given to the milder form which appeared to be the heterozygous state.⁷

The numerous hematologic and genetic studies that have been carried out in recent years in families with thalassemia, with and without other hemoglobinopathies, indicate that the problem is a complex one. The difficulties that are encountered in classifying and recognizing all the varieties of thalassemia have been discussed.^{6, 7} Although thalassemia is associated with three abnormalities of hemoglobin synthesis—the presence of hemoglobin F, the suppression of hemoglobin A₁ production, and an increase in the proportion of hemoglobin A—none of these abnormalities is invariably present. Hemoglobin F occurs regularly in patients with thalassemia major and it occurs often but not invariably in heterozygotes.¹ The occurrence of the suppression of hemoglobin A₁ production without the presence of any associated morphologic features of thalassemia has been reported. Such cases have been recognized by examination of other members of the family. Hemoglobin A₁ has been found in nearly all heterozygotes and is valuable as confirmatory evidence in the diagnosis, but the failure to find any increase in hemoglobin A₁ does not exclude thalassemia.^{4, 6} It is also recognized that all patients with thalassemia do not conform to the pattern of a severe disease in the homozygous state or a mild disorder in the heterozygous condition; intermediate forms occur. For these reasons it appears that there is more than one kind of thalassemia and probably more than one kind of thalassemia or thalassemia-like gene.^{4, 6}

MECHANISM OF ANEMIA

The anemia in thalassemia is classified as the intracorporeal type of hemolytic anemia because erythrocytes from patients with the severe form of the disorder have a shortened survival time when transfused into normal recipients while normal erythrocytes survive for the normal span when transfused into patients with the disease.^{4, 7} Transfusion studies have also shown that the life span of the erythrocytes of patients with the milder or trait forms of the disorder have a normal survival time. The presence of an additional extracorporeal mechanism has been demonstrated in some patients who have marked splenomegaly and have received numerous transfusions.³ The nature of the mechanism that is actually responsible for the increased hemolysis is unknown. The shortened life span of the cells apparently is not due solely to the morphology of the erythrocytes, because normal survival of the red cells has been demonstrated in some patients who have similar morphologic abnormalities, such as leptocytic erythrocytes and hypochromic microcytes.^{4, 6} It is not clear that the presence of hemoglobin

F is of any importance in the pathogenesis of the disease because there appears to be no correlation in the individual patient between the amount of this hemoglobin and the severity of the clinical manifestations.

The shortened survival time of the erythrocytes in thalassemia slightly less than half that of normal cells^{14, 15} is nearer normal than the survival time of the erythrocytes of patients with hereditary spherocytosis and sickle cell anemia. The association of a moderate reduction in the survival time of the cells with a severe degree of anemia in some patients strongly suggests that erythropoiesis is defective.¹⁶ Other observations have been presented as evidence of such a defect. These include the failure to find any correlation between the degree of hyperbilirubinemia and the life span of the erythrocytes and the variation in the reticulocyte counts. The latter suggests that the severe form of the anemia is related primarily to the state of the bone marrow function which has been reported to undergo periodic depression and acceleration of erythropoiesis. In addition histologic study of the bone marrow has been interpreted as indicating defective maturation because the maturation of the nuclei appeared to be normal while the cytoplasm remained basophilic. The occurrence of a hypochromic type of anemia despite normal iron stores indicates that erythropoiesis is also associated with some defect in iron metabolism.¹⁷

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Thalassemia occurs mainly in families of Mediterranean origin particularly those from Italy, Crete, Sicily, and Syria, but it also is seen in Negroes and in Southeast Asia.¹⁸ In a large Italian population in Rochester, N. Y., the incidence of thalassemia minor has been estimated at one in 25 persons and of thalassemia major as one in 2368 births.⁴

Thalassemia minor, the heterozygous form of the disease, is largely asymptomatic. It is the type seen most often in adults. In its mildest form which may be found by chance or in the study of the family of a patient with the major form of the disease, the only apparent abnormality in the routine laboratory tests may be the presence of leptocytosis. Other patients with this mild form of the disease have more pronounced hypochromic microcytosis and mild reductions in hemoglobin and hematocrit associated with an elevated red cell count. In patients with thalassemia minor appropriate studies often demonstrate an increased osmotic resistance of the red cells associated with increases in the hemoglobin F and hemoglobin A₂. Splenomegaly, slight reticulocytosis, and mild icterus are sometimes present. The occurrence of "intermediate" forms of thalassemia with moderately severe anemia is not well understood. It appears likely that many instances of the intermediate form are in reality patients in whom the heterozygous thalassemia gene is associated with some other unrecognized hemoglobin abnormality.

Thalassemia major, the homozygous form of the disease, is a severe disorder that generally becomes manifest early in childhood, nearly always in the first decade. Pallor and easy fatigue often appear in the first few years

of life. As the disease progresses the diagnosis may be suggested by the patient's appearance. The head often appears unduly large. The prominence of the malar eminences associated with depression of the bridge of the nose and the muddy yellowish color of the skin was termed "Mongolian" by Cooley and Lee.⁶ Marked splenomegaly and hepatomegaly are usually present. The abdomen often protrudes because the spleen may fill the left half of the abdominal cavity. Chronic leg ulcers sometimes occur but are not common.⁷ Evidence of abnormalities of the cardiovascular system in the form of cardiac enlargement, edema, pleural effusions, and ascites is not unusual. Skeletal defects may be prominent but they are not pathognomonic of thalassemia. The changes in the skull consist of a thinning of the inner and outer table associated with a widening of the diploe which may contain prominent vertical striations that produce the "hair on end" appearance of the skull. Alterations in the long bones which are less striking consist of widening of the medullary canals, thinning of the cortices, osteoporosis, and heavy trabeculations near the ends of the shaft.

Thalassemia major must be considered a fatal disease at present because the majority of patients do not survive to adult life. The prognosis appears worse if the disease becomes manifest early in life. Death is usually caused by an intercurrent infection.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Thalassemia major is characterized by a microcytic hypochromic type of anemia.⁸ The anemia is usually severe but the erythrocyte count may range from 1.1 mil per cu mm to 4.0 mil per cu mm. The MCV is often less than 60 to 70 cu microns.⁹ The reduction in the MCHC is not as pronounced as the decrease in the MCH. Stained films of the peripheral blood show a severe degree of poikilocytosis, anisocytosis, and polychromatophilia. The erythrocytes appear small and hypochromic. Many stippled cells and "target" cells are present. Nucleated red cells which are almost invariably present are often numerous and sometimes outnumber the leukocytes. Reticulocytosis is usually present and is accompanied by normoblastic hyperplasia in the bone marrow. Leukocyte counts in the range of 10,000 to 25,000 per cu mm are common and immature forms sometimes appear in the peripheral blood. The platelet count is generally normal.

In thalassemia minor the erythrocyte count is often normal or increased even though the hemoglobin and hematocrit are reduced. In some such cases there may be a mild reticulocytosis and slight hyperbilirubinemia. Target cells, anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, polychromatophilia, and stippling are evident on the blood smear and are much more prominent than one would expect from the degree of anemia that is present.

Other features common to most hemolytic anemias are usually present in thalassemia major. These are elevation of the indirect reacting bilirubin in the serum, increased excretion of urobilinogen in the feces and urine, elevation of the serum iron, and decrease in the latent iron binding capacity.

It is of any importance in the pathogenesis of the disease because there appears to be no correlation in the individual patient between the amount of this hemoglobin and the severity of the clinical manifestations.

The shortened survival time of the erythrocytes in thalassemia slightly less than half that of normal cells^{1,2} is nearer normal than the survival time of the erythrocytes of patients with hereditary spherocytosis and sickle cell anemia. The association of a moderate reduction in the survival time of the cells with a severe degree of anemia in some patients strongly suggests that erythropoiesis is defective.^{3,4} Other observations have been presented as evidence of such a defect. These include the failure to find any correlation between the degree of hyperbilirubinemia and the life span of the erythrocytes and the variation in the reticulocyte counts. The latter suggests that the severe form of the anemia is related primarily to the state of the bone marrow function which has been reported to undergo periodic depression and acceleration of erythropoiesis. In addition histologic study of the bone marrow has been interpreted as indicating defective maturation because the maturation of the nuclei appeared to be normal while the cytoplasm remained basophilic. The occurrence of a hypochromic type of anemia despite normal iron stores indicates that erythropoiesis is also associated with some defect in iron metabolism.^{5,6}

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Thalassemia occurs mainly in families of Mediterranean origin particularly those from Italy, Greece, Sicily, and Syria, but it also is seen in Negroes and in Southeast Asia.⁷ In a large Italian population in Rochester, N. Y., the incidence of thalassemia minor has been estimated at one in 25 persons and of thalassemia major as one in 2368 births.⁸

Thalassemia minor, the heterozygous form of the disease, is largely asymptomatic. It is the type seen most often in adults. In its mildest form which may be found by chance or in the study of the family of a patient with the major form of the disease, the only apparent abnormality in the routine laboratory tests may be the presence of leptocytosis. Other patients with this mild form of the disease have more pronounced hypochromic microcytosis and mild reductions in hemoglobin and hematocrit associated with an elevated red cell count. In patients with thalassemia minor, appropriate studies often demonstrate an increased osmotic resistance of the red cells associated with increases in the hemoglobin F and hemoglobin A. Splenomegaly, slight reticulocytosis, and mild icterus are sometimes present. The occurrence of intermediate forms of thalassemia with moderately severe anemia is not well understood. It appears likely that many instances of the intermediate form are in reality patients in whom the heterozygous thalassemia gene is associated with some other unrecognized hemoglobin abnormality.

Thalassemia major, the homozygous form of the disease, is a severe disorder that generally becomes manifest early in childhood, nearly always in the first decade. Pallor and easy fatigue often appear in the first few years

anemia but this form of therapy is considered as a symptomatic measure. Transfusions are given when the symptoms warrant but are not used to maintain the hemoglobin in the normal range. Many patients adjust fairly well to their low hemoglobin levels for considerable periods and unnecessary transfusions increase the danger of hemosiderosis. The administration of iron, pyridoxine, folic acid, vitamin B₁₂ and crude liver extract produces no improvement in the anemia and the needless administration of iron may promote the development of hemosiderosis. When the spleen is greatly enlarged and associated with an extracorporeal hemolytic mechanism, splenectomy may be beneficial even though it does not completely correct the anemia.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

A 60 year old white housewife who was largely asymptomatic was admitted for evaluation of anemia. She stated that her hematocrit had been about 35 per cent for a number of years and previous examinations had disclosed no cause for her anemia. The physical examination was considered to be within the limits of normal for a person of her age.

Laboratory Examinations Hct 36 per cent rbc 5.0 mil per cu mm hb 10.6 gm per 100 ml (MCV 72 cubic microns MCH 21 μ g MCHC 28 per cent) reticulocyte count 2.4 per cent leukocyte 6100 per cu mm. Differential count of the leukocytes was normal. Study of the stained smear disclosed hypochromic microcytosis, anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. A moderate number of target cells and a few stippled cells were present. Total serum bilirubin was 0.4 mg per 100 ml. Osmotic fragility test: patient's cells initial 0.42 per cent complete 0.30 per cent control initial 0.45 per cent complete 0.30 per cent. Examination of the bone marrow disclosed a hypercellular marrow with erythroid hyperplasia of the normoblastic type. The granulocytic series and megakaryocytic series appeared normal and the M:E ratio was 1:1. Hemoglobin electrophoresis on filter paper showed only hemoglobin A. The alkali denaturation test disclosed 10 per cent of the hemoglobin to be alkali resistant, presumably hemoglobin F. The serum iron level and the level of the unsaturated iron binding capacity were within limits of normal.

Familial Incidence A diagnosis of thalassemia minor was made. The patient's 28 year old daughter who also gave a history of unexplained anemia, was studied and the laboratory findings were almost identical with those found in the mother's blood. The hemoglobin was 10.3 grams per 100 ml rbc 5.1 mil per cu mm hct 38 per cent. The reticulocyte count was 1.5 per cent. Leukocyte count and differential leukocyte counts were normal. Study of the stained smear disclosed anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, target cells and stippled cells. The serum iron level was 112 μ g per 100 ml. The osmotic fragility test: patient's cells initial hemolysis 0.39 per cent, completed 0.21 per cent control beginning hemolysis 0.46 per cent, complete 0.32 per cent. This patient (the daughter) was followed for several months during which

In addition the erythrocytes are abnormally resistant to hemolysis in hypotonic saline hemolysis may not be complete at 0.2 per cent saline or even in distilled water.⁶⁴

One of the characteristic hematologic features of thalassemia is the presence of large amounts of hemoglobin I. Hemoglobin of this type constitutes from 50 to more than 90 per cent of the hemoglobin in some patients with thalassemia major.⁶⁵ It may or may not be demonstrable in the milder syndromes but often amounts to 20 to 40 per cent of the hemoglobin in the intermediate forms. The alkali resistant hemoglobin can be demonstrated by the alkali denaturation technique. The presence of hemoglobin A usually in increased amounts is found in nearly all patients with thalassemia minor when hemoglobin electrophoresis is performed on starch slabs.⁷¹

DIAGNOSIS

The appearance of the typical patient with thalassemia major may suggest the diagnosis. In thalassemia major the diagnosis usually is not difficult because of the evident hepatosplenomegaly, the presence of anisopoikilocytosis, target cells and normoblasts on the blood smear, evidence of hemolysis and the presence of increased amounts of hemoglobin I.

Although the diagnosis of thalassemia major is rarely difficult the distinction between the milder forms of thalassemia and other types of hemolytic anemia and hemoglobinopathies is not always easy. The occurrence of hypochromic microcytosis—with or without anemia—target cells, nucleated red cells and stippled cells in the peripheral blood of a young person with hepatosplenomegaly suggests the diagnosis. At other times the presenting problem may be a hypochromic microcytic anemia that must be distinguished from iron deficiency. In doubtful cases either the determination of the plasma iron level which is low in iron deficiency and normal or high in thalassemia or an evaluation of iron stores in the bone marrow is helpful. The finding of microcytic polycythemia in a patient is sometimes the first indication that the patient has thalassemia. The demonstration of increased resistance of the erythrocytes in the hypotonic saline test supports the diagnosis. The demonstration of an increase of hemoglobin A₂ by electrophoresis and the demonstration of increased amounts of hemoglobin F can be considered as establishing the diagnosis. The recognition of the presence of a thalassemia gene in patients who have some other inherited hemoglobinopathy may be very difficult. For example a person who is heterozygous for hemoglobin S and the thalassemia gene may appear to have sickle cell anemia clinically and show only hemoglobins S and F on electrophoresis because of the suppression of hemoglobin A.⁶⁶ Studies of other members of the family may be necessary to establish the true nature of the disorder.

THERAPY

Patients with thalassemia minor rarely need treatment. In thalassemia major blood transfusions are the only effective means of correcting the

studied the incidence of the Rh factor in mothers and fathers of patients with erythroblastosis. They concluded that isoimmunization with Rh explained 91 per cent of the cases and thought that other factors were responsible for 9 per cent. They also concluded that the Rh factor was limited to the red cells and was not present in the saliva and other tissues.⁹⁴⁻⁹⁶ In 1943 Mollison demonstrated that Rh positive red cells were eliminated rapidly after transfusion into infants with erythroblastosis during the first fourteen days of life while Rh negative cells were eliminated at the normal rate.⁹⁹ The value of exchange transfusion with Rh negative blood was demonstrated by Wallerstein in 1946.⁴¹³ The value of this form of treatment in preventing the most serious aspect of the disease kernicterus was shown in 1950 by Allen, Diamond and Vaughan⁴¹² who have made numerous other contributions to the understanding and management of the disease.

MECHANISM OF DISEASE

The anemia in erythroblastosis fetalis is hemolytic in type.^{88-95, 99} The destruction of the fetal red cells is caused by the presence in the fetal circulation of isoantibodies that are formed in the mother in response to a blood group antigen that the mother lacks. Agglutinogens A, B, and D are strongly antigenic and the others are less so.⁸⁰ Allen and Diamond list 49 blood group factors that were known in July 1957 to be inherited characteristics. They state that A and B incompatibilities are responsible for about two thirds of the cases of erythroblastosis fetalis, D (Rh) for about one third and other blood factors for 2 or 3 per cent.⁸⁰ The occurrence of ABO hemolytic disease is virtually limited to group A or B offspring of group O mothers.⁴⁰⁴ There is considerable individual difference in the ability to form antibodies and less than 10 per cent of the Rh negative mothers who have Rh positive husbands become sensitized even if the husband is homozygous Rh positive (DD); the wife may have many children without becoming sensitized.⁸⁰

The method of sensitization of the mother to the fetal red cells in the cases of Rh (D) incompatibilities is an intriguing problem. Although the administration of incompatible blood by transfusion or by intramuscular injection may be responsible for sensitization in women prior to pregnancy, the isoantibody formation in mothers is usually the result of pregnancy. Fetal red cells may gain entrance to the mother's circulation during delivery. Allen and Diamond report that quantities of blood as small as 0.1 to 1.0 ml may be sufficient to produce sensitization and suggest that just as the normal kidney allows the passage of red cells into the urine so the placenta may allow slow leakage of red cells into the mother's circulation.⁸⁰ As evidence to support this hypothesis they cite the observation that ABO incompatible fetuses almost never sensitize the mother to Rh, presumably because the fetal cells are destroyed too rapidly to act as efficient antigens. Also compatible with the hypothesis is the fact that the anti Rh titer of the mother's blood falls after pregnancy and rises again during subsequent pregnancies with Rh positive fetuses.

tune the erythrocyte count varied from 49 mil per cu mm to 61 mil per cu mm. The fecal urobilinogen excretion was measured on several 4 day periods and was found to be normal each time. An Ashby survival time study patient to normal recipient revealed that the patient's cells survived for a normal time 120 days.

Comment: These patients demonstrated the occurrence of thalassemia minor or the intermediate form in two generations of the same family. The mild hypochromic microcytic type of anemia associated with erythrocyte counts that reached polycythemic levels at times, the appearance of target cells and other abnormal forms in the peripheral blood, the normal values for the serum iron, the increased resistance of the erythrocytes to hypotonic saline, the presence of fetal hemoglobin are common findings in such patients. The homozygous type of disease, thalassemia major, becomes evident early in life and is manifested by a severe hypochromic microcytic hemolytic anemia associated with a marked diminution in the survival time of the erythrocytes. In thalassemia minor hypochromic microcytes occur but anemia is mild or absent and the survival time of the erythrocytes is normal. The anemia can be distinguished from iron deficiency by the normal values of the serum iron and latent iron binding capacity.

ERYTHROBLASTOSIS FETALIS

Synonyms: Hydrops Fetalis, Icterus Gravis Neonatorum, Anemia of the Newborn, Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn Caused by Rh and ABO Incompatibility

HISTORY

The term erythroblastosis was first used by Rautman in 1912.³⁰ In 1932 Diamond, Blackfan, and Baty reviewed 2 cases with universal edema, 12 with icterus gravis neonatorum, and 6 with anemia of the newborn and concluded that these three disorders were closely related and dependent on the same underlying process.³¹ In 1939 Levine and Stetson reported the case of a group "O" 25 year old secundipara who delivered a macerated stillborn fetus and suffered a severe hemolytic reaction when transfused with her husband's group O blood. The mother was shown to have an isoagglutinin independent of M, N, and P blood factors that reacted with the blood of 45 of 50 group O donors.³² In 1941 Landsteiner and Wiener reported their studies of the Rh agglutinin in human blood; these indicated that the factor is inherited as a Mendelian dominant independent of the blood groups and factors M and N.³³ In the same year Levine and coworkers

studied the incidence of the Rh factor in mothers and fathers of patients with erythroblastosis. They concluded that isoimmunization with Rh explained 91 per cent of the cases and thought that other factors were responsible for 9 per cent. They also concluded that the Rh factor was limited to the red cells and was not present in the saliva and other tissues.^{34, 35} In 1943 Mollison demonstrated that Rh positive red cells were eliminated rapidly after transfusion into infants with erythroblastosis during the first fourteen days of life while Rh negative cells were eliminated at the normal rate.³⁶ The value of exchange transfusion with Rh negative blood was demonstrated by Wallerstein in 1946.³⁷ The value of this form of treatment in preventing the most serious aspect of the disease kernicterus was shown in 1950 by Allen, Diamond and Vaughan,³⁸ who have made numerous other contributions to the understanding and management of the disease.

MECHANISM OF DISEASE

The anemia in erythroblastosis fetalis is hemolytic in type.^{35, 36, 39} The destruction of the fetal red cells is caused by the presence in the fetal circulation of isoantibodies that are formed in the mother in response to a blood group antigen that the mother lacks. Agglutinogens A, B and D are strongly antigenic and the others are less so.³⁰ Allen and Diamond list 49 blood group factors that were known in July 1957 to be inherited characteristics. They state that A and B incompatibilities are responsible for about two thirds of the cases of erythroblastosis fetalis, D (Rh) for about one third, and other blood factors for 2 or 3 per cent.³⁸ The occurrence of ABO hemolytic disease is virtually limited to group A or B offspring of group O mothers.^{3, 4} There is considerable individual difference in the ability to form antibodies and less than 10 per cent of the Rh negative mothers who have Rh positive husbands become sensitized even if the husband is homozygous Rh positive (DD); the wife may have many children without becoming sensitized.³⁰

The method of sensitization of the mother to the fetal red cells in the cases of Rh (D) incompatibilities is an intriguing problem. Although the administration of incompatible blood by transfusion or by intramuscular injection may be responsible for sensitization in women prior to pregnancy, the iso-antibody formation in mothers is usually the result of pregnancy. Fetal red cells may gain entrance to the mother's circulation during delivery. Allen and Diamond report that quantities of blood as small as 0.1 to 1.0 ml may be sufficient to produce sensitization and suggest that just as the normal kidney allows the passage of red cells into the urine so the placenta may allow slow leakage of red cells into the mother's circulation.³⁹ As evidence to support this hypothesis they cite the observation that ABO incompatible fetuses almost never sensitize the mother to Rh, presumably because the fetal cells are destroyed too rapidly to act as efficient antigens. Also compatible with the hypothesis is the fact that the anti Rh titer of the mother's blood falls after pregnancy and rises again during subsequent pregnancies with Rh positive fetuses.

Edema which may be severe in babies with erythroblastosis is associated with an elevated venous pressure and is considered to be a manifestation of heart failure that is secondary to anemia.^{90 98}

Kernicterus circumscribed areas of yellow coloring in the brain that involve the nuclear areas particularly is one of the most serious manifestations of erythroblastosis fetalis. It causes death within seven days in 70 per cent of the babies who have this complication.⁹¹ The brain damage which is not present at birth has been shown to be related to the level of the serum bilirubin since kernicterus occurs in 50 per cent of babies whose level of the serum bilirubin is over 30 mg per 100 ml. In newborn babies the ability of the liver to convert indirect reacting bilirubin (unconjugated bilirubin) to the direct reacting form (bilirubin glucuronide) for excretion is poorly developed; the deficiency is even more marked in premature infants.⁹³ Defects in the glucuronyl transferase and uridyldiphosphoglucose dehydrogenase activity that is necessary for the synthesis of bilirubin glucuronide have been demonstrated in the livers of fetal and newborn guinea pigs and support the hypothesis that the glucuronide conjugating mechanism is inadequately developed in human newborns and prematures. When this mechanism is defective even though the level of serum bilirubin may not be greatly elevated at birth probably because the placenta in some way aids in the excretion in utero the level of the serum bilirubin rises rapidly after birth if hemolytic anemia is present. Unconjugated bilirubin has been identified as the pigment present in the brain in infants dying with kernicterus. That bilirubin is toxic to cells is supported by the findings that this pigment inhibits oxidative phosphorylation, depresses respiration of liver and brain tissue and in vitro is an inhibitor of heme synthesis.⁹⁹ Inhibition of heme synthesis in vivo might interfere with the formation of heme containing enzymes.

It is also possible that other pigments may be important in kernicterus. Fatalities from kernicterus have occurred in patients with serum bilirubin levels of from 1 to 6 mg per 100 ml; in such patients the plasma has been shown to have increased levels of heme pigments with an absorption maximum in the range of 405 to 415 $m\mu$ which is different from the absorption maximum for bilirubin 460 $m\mu$.⁹ It has been suggested that in patients with early kernicterus and relatively low serum bilirubin levels methemalbumin may interfere with the ability of the bilirubin to concentrate on the serum proteins.^{4 1} Brown, Zuelzer and Robinson have demonstrated that the serum bilirubin concentration is not always a gauge of the diffusible or total body bilirubin.⁴ If the bilirubin cannot bind with the protein in the vascular spaces the plasma level may be low even though bilirubin has diffused into the cells in appreciable quantities. This shift may be of special importance in premature infants who have lower serum albumin levels than full term infants.⁵⁷ Odell has also demonstrated that organic anions, salicylate and sulfisoxazole can uncouple protein bound bilirubin and allow its passage through semipermeable membranes.⁹¹

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Erythroblastosis is reported to occur in about one per cent of pregnancies. About one fifth of the affected infants die in utero or are born critically ill with anemia at the time of birth.

Many erythroblastic infants appear normal at birth. Jaundice is said to be invariably absent at birth but it may appear within two or three hours and may increase rapidly thereafter unless treatment is instituted. Petechial hemorrhages sometimes develop soon after birth. Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly occur almost invariably in Rh disease. When erythroblastosis is due to A or B incompatibility the spleen is often enlarged but to a lesser degree than in Rh disease. Pulmonary edema, pleural effusions, ascites and edema may be manifestations of heart failure. Kernicterus which usually becomes manifest late in the second day of life is rare in the absence of considerable jaundice. Any infant with erythroblastosis should have frequent and careful neurologic examinations. In the early stages kernicterus may be accompanied by no more than minimal neurologic signs that are easily missed. When the kernicterus is more pronounced, the affected infant has a high pitched cry, irritability, tremor and an overactive but incomplete Moro reflex, opisthotonos, twitching convulsions and respiratory distress may also occur. If the child has kernicterus and survives sequelae such as deafness, mental retardation, athetoid movements and spastic ataxia develop.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Anemia is considered to be present if the hemoglobin level of the cord blood is less than 13.0 gm per 100 ml, if the hemoglobin level of the venous blood is less than 15 gm per 100 ml, or if the hemoglobin level of capillary blood is less than 16.0 gm per 100 ml on the first day. A hemoglobin level of less than 9.0 gm per 100 ml at birth indicates anemia of severe degree. Reticulocytosis is usually present. A high percentage of reticulocytes indicates a severe hemolytic process even if associated with a normal level of hemoglobin. Nucleated red cells are commonly present in the peripheral blood but may be absent in one third of the cases on the first day. Elevated leukocyte counts are the rule and have little prognostic value. Thrombocytopenia often occurs in severe cases.

The normal level of serum bilirubin on cord blood is considered to be from 0.8 to 2.6 mg per 100 ml. The level of indirect reacting serum bilirubin in newborn babies at 48 hours rarely exceeds 13 mg per 100 ml. In erythroblastosis the level of the serum bilirubin may be normal at birth and rise rapidly thereafter. For this reason frequent determinations are most important in the management of these patients.

DIAGNOSIS

Erythroblastosis fetalis must be distinguished from other causes of anemia such as hereditary spherocytosis and hemorrhage and from other causes

of jaundice such as infectious hepatitis bacterial infections syphilis cytomegalic inclusion disease and fungus infection that occur during the first days of life ⁴⁰ Nucleated red cells occur in the peripheral blood in a number of disorders but the occurrence of large numbers of normoblasts or reticulocytes usually indicates that the presence of hemolytic disease of some type is probable

The possibility of erythroblastosis particularly Rh disease should be suspected in pregnant women who give a history of a normal pregnancy followed by pregnancies that ended with jaundiced infants abortion or still birth. In about 40 to 50 per cent of the cases of ABO hemolytic disease the firstborn child is affected ³⁰¹ The presence of marked edema or pallor at birth or the appearance of jaundice during the first 24 hours may be the first indication of the disease in the infant. However all the abnormal clinical findings characteristic of the disease are sometimes absent at birth and for this reason the laboratory examinations are often of greater importance than the clinical features

Every effort is made to make an antenatal diagnosis of erythroblastosis by the use of appropriate laboratory procedures whenever possible. All pregnant women should be typed to determine the ABO group and tested for the Rh factor routinely. If the prospective mother is Rh negative the father should be tested for Rh factor and the mother should be tested for possible Rh sensitization at seven months and within two or three weeks of delivery ⁴⁰ If anti Rh antibodies are not detected at that time erythroblastosis is unlikely. If antibodies are present regardless of the titer the physician is alerted for the possibility of the disease. A positive Coombs (antiglobulin) test on the fetal red cells (cord blood or infant's blood) definitely establishes the diagnosis. If the husband is Rh positive the wife should be checked carefully for sensitization in each pregnancy because a normal course in preceding pregnancies is no guarantee that isoimmune disease will not develop in subsequent pregnancies

Agglutinogens A and B were formerly considered to be responsible for from 5 to 9 per cent of the cases of erythroblastosis ^{40 46} but more recent studies place the incidence at about 66 per cent ⁴⁰ Erythroblastosis due to ABO incompatibility is usually much milder than that due to Rh incompatibility. ABO incompatibility between mother and fetus exists in 20 per cent of pregnancies but erythroblastosis fetalis occurs in only 5 per cent of these (one per cent of the total). A possible explanation for the lower incidence and milder nature of ABO disease as compared to anti Rh disease is that the agglutinogens A and B occur on other tissue cells of the fetus as well as on the erythrocytes. In such a circumstance the other tissue cells may take up the antibodies and spare the erythrocytes. Rh agglutinin apparently is largely or exclusively confined to the erythrocytes and consequently in this situation the red cells alone suffer from the reaction with antibodies ^{40 46} Erythroblastosis due to ABO incompatibility is rarely associated with severe anemia. Marked hepatomegaly or splenomegaly is unusual. The most significant clinical feature is the occurrence of jaundice during the first 24 hours. When erythroblastosis is suspected an antiglobulin (Coombs) test should

be done on the baby's blood and tests for ABO and Rh factors should be done on the blood of the mother and the baby. The occurrence of A or B incompatibility between mother and child accompanied by reticulocytosis and elevated serum bilirubin in the child is strong presumptive evidence of erythroblastosis.²⁹⁰ The indirect antiglobulin (Coombs) test performed on the infant's serum is nearly always positive in disease of this type.³⁰⁴

TREATMENT

Infants with erythroblastosis should be treated in a hospital that is properly equipped and staffed to follow the course of the disease and carry out exchange transfusion at any time of day or night. Once the diagnosis of hemolytic disease of the newborn has been established the treatment will depend on the severity of the disease. Mild forms of the disease may need no treatment other than careful observation. Therapy is directed toward preventing kernicterus that is due to the toxic action of the unconjugated bilirubin on cells in the brain. The indications for exchange transfusions in erythroblastosis fetalis listed by Allen and Diamond are:³⁰

- 1 Anemia: hemoglobin of less than 13.0 gm per 100 ml on venous blood or less than 15 gm per 100 ml in capillary blood
- 2 Increased serum bilirubin (indirect reacting type) over 7.0 mg per 100 ml on cord blood: a rapidly rising serum level: exchange transfusion is performed as often as necessary to keep the serum level less than 20 mg per 100 ml
- 3 Prematurity: except in the mildest cases
- 4 History of a previous baby with kernicterus
- 5 Reticulocyte count above 15 per cent
- 6 Maternal anti Rh titer of 1:64 or higher

Zuelzer and Cohen state that as a general rule exchange transfusion is performed if the serum bilirubin level in full term infants exceeds the following: 10 mg per 100 ml in the first 24 hours; 14 mg per 100 ml in the second 24 hours; 17 mg in the third or fourth day.³⁰¹

The exchange transfusion performs several important functions. In addition to lowering the level of serum bilirubin in the infant's blood it removes cells that are susceptible to hemolysis, lowers the antibody content of the blood, and supplies albumin that enables the infant's blood to bind a larger amount of bilirubin. Repeated exchange transfusions may be required to keep the serum bilirubin level below 20 mg per 100 ml. Following an exchange transfusion the infant is observed carefully and the serum bilirubin level is measured as often as is considered necessary.

Fresh blood is used for transfusion whenever possible. It is preferable to obtain the blood for transfusion prior to the birth of the infant. In cross matching for transfusion the prospective donor cells should be tested against the mother's serum.³⁰ Prospective donors should be of the same Rh and ABO groups as the mother. Rh negative blood of the mother's group is used if it is fairly certain that the disease is due to anti Rh agglutinins. Group O blood is used when the destruction is thought to be due to anti A

or anti B agglutinins ⁹⁰ ABO agglutinins in the donor blood incompatible with the baby's cells should be of low titer and should be neutralized with A and/or B specific substances. If no compatible donor can be found the mother's red cells separated from her plasma that contains the antibodies may be used. ⁹⁰ When the mother's blood is not available for cross matching it is probably best to select a group O Rh negative donor to cross match with the baby's blood.

If edema of congestive heart failure secondary to anemia is present phlebotomy is often necessary in order to lower the venous pressure. The oxygen carrying capacity of the blood can be increased by means of transfusion with packed red cells which only partially replaces the blood volume.

Induction of labor at 37 weeks or later has been recommended in an effort to prevent stillbirth. ²⁴⁰ Before advising this course the dangers of prematurity must be considered. In one study the fetal mortality rate was higher in the group with induced labor than in the group with spontaneous labor. ²⁴⁰

PROGNOSIS

The high mortality rate of erythroblastosis fetalis has been reduced by modern treatment and may be about 5 per cent. ⁶⁰ Proper treatment of heart failure in the infant and judicious induction of labor have improved the prognosis in this disease. The most serious complication kernicterus is largely preventable by the use of exchange transfusions that keep the serum bilirubin level lower than 20 mg per 100 ml. ^{81 78 98}

The factors entering into the prognosis for future babies have been reviewed. ¹⁰⁰ The prognosis for subsequent babies after an instance of erythroblastosis that is due to ABO incompatibility is excellent because still birth is rare and kernicterus can usually be prevented. In Rh incompatibilities if the husband is heterozygous 50 per cent of the offspring will be Rh negative and compatible with the mother. If the husband is homozygous all babies will be Rh positive and the prognosis depends a great deal on the titer of the antibodies in the mother's blood. If there is no history of previous stillbirth the prognosis even in heavily immunized mothers is generally good if the baby can be treated promptly.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

The patient was the product of the seventh pregnancy of a 38 year old white female. The mother was type A Rh negative and father was type A Rh positive. There had been two previous neonatal deaths due to erythroblastosis. Saline antibodies were positive in 1:4 dilution and indirect Coombs test was positive in dilution of 1:64. Pregnancy was uneventful. Labor lasted 6 hours and 21 minutes and terminated in a normal spontaneous delivery.

The baby appeared to be in good condition in the delivery room. He was well developed and weighed 2700 gm. The skin was grayish in color and was covered with multiple small ecchymoses. The umbilical cord was

icteric. The baby was active when stimulated and cried vigorously. The spleen edge extended 5 cm. over the left costal margin and the liver 7 cm. below the right costal margin.

Laboratory Examination and Treatment. Initial blood examination: total bilirubin 4 mg. pct 25 per cent hb 7.0 gm. per 100 ml. wbc 13,000 per cu mm. nucleated red cells 150 per 100 leukocytes.

A diagnosis of erythroblastosis was made and an exchange transfusion was performed. After exchange transfusion the serum bilirubin level was 2.4 mg. per 100 ml. and the hematocrit 29 per cent. The leukocyte count was 4800 per cu mm. Five hours later another exchange transfusion was performed at a time when the serum bilirubin had risen to 3 mg. per 100 ml. and the nucleated red cell count had reached 337 per 100 leukocytes. After the second exchange transfusion serum bilirubin level was 2.7 mg. per 100 ml. and the hematocrit was 36 per cent. No further exchange transfusions were necessary and the patient was discharged on the thirteenth day at which time he was eating well and appeared healthy. At this time the hematocrit was 46 per cent, the white count was 12,000 per cu mm. and the blood smear contained 5 nucleated red cells per 100 white cells.

Comment. This patient illustrates many of the common features of erythroblastosis. The father was Rh positive, the mother was Rh negative. Two siblings had died previously in the neonatal period because of erythroblastosis. The disease was anticipated in this patient. At birth pallor, ecchymoses, splenomegaly and hepatomegaly were present, the antiglobulin test was positive. Because of the previous history in the family and the severe anemia, exchange transfusion was performed even though the serum bilirubin level was only slightly elevated at the time of birth. The necessity of the second exchange is debatable. Although the level of the serum bilirubin level was not greatly elevated, exchange transfusion was considered to be the safest course, mainly because of the rate of increase in the bilirubin level. The patient made an uneventful recovery.

ACQUIRED HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

Synonyms. Autoimmune Hemolytic Disease, Acquired Hemolytic Icterus, Subacute or Chronic Idiopathic Hemolytic Anemia, Lederer's Anemia.

HISTORY

The history of "acquired" hemolytic anemia has been reviewed by Damshek and Schwartz.³¹¹ The first recognizable description of this type of

anemia has been credited to Hayem^{310 313} The "non congenital type of hemolytic icterus" which appeared either during the course of other illnesses or without known cause was also described by Widal, Abram, and Brule in 1908.^{3 3-3} The name "acquired" hemolytic icterus was given to these cases. The occurrence of reticulocytosis and auto agglutination, the absence of apparent hereditary influences, and the absence of significant abnormalities in the hypotonic saline test were noted. As a result of these observations the "acquired type" of hemolytic icterus of Hayem and Widal was distinguished from the congenital type of Chauffard and Minkowski. Acute, subacute, and chronic cases were recognized and hemolysins were sometimes demonstrated in the acute cases. "Lederer's anemia," an acute hemolytic anemia of short duration³¹⁷ appears to be an example of the acute type of this disorder rather than a separate disease.^{310 311}

The redemonstration of spherocytes and hemolysins in acute cases of the acquired type by Dameshek and Schwartz in 1940³¹¹ and the discovery of the antiglobulin or Coombs test in 1945 by Coombs, Mourant, and Race³⁰⁷ were followed by a marked increase in interest in this syndrome. This has led to numerous studies on the demonstration, production, action, and nature of "auto antibodies." Most of these studies have been reviewed by Dacie.³¹⁰ At the present time this type of anemia is often spoken of as "auto immune hemolytic disease."

PATHOGENESIS

Neither the cause nor the mechanism of hemolysis in this disorder is known, but several possibilities have been considered. The occurrence of abnormal agglutination tests, such as the Coombs antiglobulin test, has been interpreted as an indication that "auto antibodies" are produced as a response to an antigen that consists of the patient's own cells or parts of cells that have been altered in some way. While it appears possible that drugs, viruses, or metabolic products might alter an individual's erythrocytes sufficiently to make them antigenic and lead to the production of "auto antibodies," the action of these antibodies against normal erythrocytes as well as those of the patient makes this thesis appear somewhat doubtful.³¹⁰ Another possibility is that the "auto antibody" reaction is an incidental property of a globulin produced by the reticuloendothelial system that is involved in some disease, such as lymphosarcoma or infection.^{30 309} The abnormal proliferation and destruction of the cells in the protein-forming tissue might conceivably lead to the production of protein that is abnormal qualitatively as well as quantitatively. The report that chromic and ferric ions in the presence of globulin or serum, whether autologous, homologous, or heterologous, could bind globulin to the erythrocyte and produce a positive antiglobulin (Coombs) test appears to support the second possibility.³¹⁴ The balance of the evidence at the present time appears to be against the concept that the antibodies are produced in response to an antigen derived from the patient's own cells, but the possibility that antibodies of low specificity are formed in

response to mutant erythrocytes or against abnormal or damaged lymphocytes or against material derived from both lymphocytes and erythrocytes cannot be dismissed entirely ³¹⁸

Although the mechanism of the actual destruction of the erythrocytes *in vivo* is not entirely understood the ability of antibodies to cause auto agglutination spherocytosis and erythrophagocytosis appears to be important ³¹² Auto agglutination may play a role by causing stasis of blood in the spleen that leads to destruction of the erythrocytes by lysis or phagocytosis ^{306 307} It has been established that the spleen liver lymph nodes bone marrow and lungs are the organs that are most concerned in the actual destruction of the erythrocytes ^{319 324} The results of splenectomy in this disorder probably depend on the relative importance of two functions of the spleen which may act as an organ of cellular destruction and as a site of antibody production

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Auto immune hemolytic anemia may arise in association with some other disease when it is termed "secondary" or "symptomatic" It may also occur when no other disease is demonstrable in which circumstance it is classified as "primary" or "idiopathic" In one group of 57 patients 34 were classified as idiopathic and 23 were classified as symptomatic 16 of the 23 symptomatic cases had some form of malignant disease ³⁰⁸ In a series of 49 patients most of whom were ambulatory 39 were of the idiopathic type and 10 were secondary 7 of the 10 secondary cases followed virus pneumonia ³¹⁰ In another report of 166 patients the anemia was considered to be "secondary" to other diseases in 85 ³⁰⁹ The symptomatic or secondary cases have occurred most often in association with primary atypical pneumonia chronic lymphocytic leukemia, lymphosarcoma Hodgkin's disease disseminated lupus and infectious mononucleosis ^{309 310 311} Less common associated diseases are sarcoidosis tuberculosis ³¹⁰ Felty's syndrome³¹² and carcinoma ³¹¹

The idiopathic disorder occurs at any age in either sex but females are affected more often than males ^{306 310} The severity and duration of the disease may vary greatly At times the onset of the disease is sudden and the course is rapid and fulminating In such patients the course is characterized by high temperature rapidly progressing weakness and dyspnea Anemia becomes more severe icterus is usually apparent and hemoglobinuria sometimes occurs It is in this type of patient that hemolysins are more likely to be demonstrated More often the course of the disorder is a chronic one that persists with varying degrees of severity over a period of months or years Spontaneous remissions sometimes occur ^{308 311} Exacerbations of the disease are said to occur more often in the winter months ³¹² When the disorder is associated with the cold type of auto antibodies Raynaud's phenomena and hemoglobinuria may appear on exposure to cold ³¹⁰ A subacute form that is intermediate in severity between the acute and chronic form also occurs

In symptomatic auto-immune hemolytic disease the clinical features are

anemia has been credited to Hayem.³¹⁰⁻³¹² The "non congenital" type of hemolytic icterus which appeared either during the course of other illnesses or without known cause was also described by Vidal, Abram, and Brule in 1908.³¹³⁻³¹⁵ The name "acquired hemolytic icterus" was given to these cases. The occurrence of reticulocytosis and auto agglutination, the absence of apparent hereditary influences, and the absence of significant abnormalities in the hypotonic saline test were noted. As a result of these observations the "acquired type" of hemolytic icterus of Hayem and Vidal was distinguished from the "congenital type" of Chauffard and Minkowski. Acute subacute, and chronic cases were recognized, and hemolysins were sometimes demonstrated in the acute cases. "Fiedler's anemia" in acute hemolytic anemia of short duration³¹⁷ appears to be an example of the acute type of this disorder rather than a separate disease.³¹⁰⁻³¹¹

The redemonstration of spherocytes and hemolysins in acute cases of the acquired type by Dameshek and Schwartz in 1940³¹¹ and the discovery of the antiglobulin or Coombs test in 1945 by Coombs, Mourant, and Race³¹¹ were followed by a marked increase in interest in this syndrome. This has led to numerous studies on the demonstration, production, action, and nature of "auto-antibodies." Most of these studies have been reviewed by Dacie.³¹ At the present time this type of anemia is often spoken of as "auto-immune hemolytic disease."

PATHOGENESIS

Neither the cause nor the mechanism of hemolysis in this disorder is known, but several possibilities have been considered. The occurrence of abnormal agglutination tests such as the Coombs antiglobulin test has been interpreted as an indication that "auto-antibodies" are produced as a response to an antigen that consists of the patient's own cells or parts of cells that have been altered in some way. While it appears possible that drugs, viruses, or metabolic products might alter in individuals erythrocytes sufficiently to make them antigenic and lead to the production of "auto-antibodies," the action of these antibodies against normal erythrocytes as well as those of the patient makes this thesis appear somewhat doubtful.³¹⁰ Another possibility is that the "auto-antibody" reaction is an incidental property of a globulin produced by the reticuloendothelial system that is involved in some disease such as lymphosarcoma or infection.³¹⁻³⁰² The abnormal proliferation and destruction of the cells in the protein-forming tissue might conceivably lead to the production of protein that is abnormal qualitatively as well as quantitatively. The report that chromic and ferric ions in the presence of globulin or serum, whether autologous, homologous, or heterologous, could bind globulin to the erythrocyte and produce a positive antiglobulin (Coombs) test appears to support the second possibility.³¹⁴ The balance of the evidence at the present time appears to be against the concept that the antibodies are produced in response to an antigen derived from the patient's own cells, but the possibility that antibodies of low specificity are formed in

inadequately diluted serum because of the prozone phenomenon from the use of insufficiently washed red cells^{3, 4} and probably from other causes. The Coombs test may be positive for as long as one year before the anemia becomes evident in patients with lymphosarcoma.^{41a} The indirect antiglobulin test is usually positive during active hemolysis and usually negative during clinical remissions.^{3, 9} It has been recommended that tests for free auto antibodies as well as the Coombs test be carried out, particularly on patients who have received corticosteroids.³¹² Cold agglutinins are usually demonstrated without difficulty if they are responsible for the anemia since the titer is usually high in this circumstance.³¹⁰ The clinical significance of the cold agglutinins may be related more to their ability to agglutinate or sensitize the patient's erythrocytes at relatively higher temperatures (37° C) than to the height of the agglutinin titer at low temperatures (2° C).³¹⁰

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of autoimmune hemolytic anemia must be considered in previously well patients who present because of anemia and also in patients who develop anemia while they are under treatment for some previously diagnosed primary disease.

The anemia is first identified as the hemolytic type by the appropriate tests such as the reticulocyte count, the serum bilirubin determination, the bone marrow examination and the measurement of the urobilinogen excretion. Additional more specific tests such as the antiglobulin (Coombs) test, hemoglobin electrophoresis and the osmotic fragility test are performed in order to categorize the anemia more accurately. If the Coombs test is positive, the diagnosis of autoimmune hemolytic disease can be considered as virtually established; if this test is negative and the other special procedures do not indicate any other diagnosis, autoimmune hemolytic disease is not excluded. In either circumstance if it is decided that the patient has autoimmune hemolytic disease, a thorough investigation is made for some primary disease such as malignant lymphoma, carcinoma, and the other acute and chronic disorders known to be sometimes associated with this type of anemia. If no primary disease is demonstrated, a tentative diagnosis of primary or idiopathic autoimmune hemolytic disease is made with the realization that some underlying disease may be present but may remain unrecognized for months and even years. Because of this possibility, periodic follow up examinations are desirable.

When autoimmune hemolytic anemia appears in patients who are under treatment for some known disease, the onset may be abrupt, almost crisis like, or insidious. When the hemolytic process is severe, the diagnosis is usually established by the evidence of hyperhemolysis associated with a positive antiglobulin test. When the process is less severe and the evidences of hemolysis and blood regeneration are not so apparent, the presence of a hemolytic process may not be suspected. If the antiglobulin test is negative it may be difficult to determine whether the anemia is the result of auto

those of the underlying disorder plus those associated with the hemolytic anemia. At times the hemolytic element may be so severe that it dominates the clinical picture and at other times it may be merely an incidental finding. When hemolytic anemia follows virus pneumonia the anemia, which may be severe, usually appears suddenly at the end of the second or third week of illness and disappears spontaneously in one or two weeks.³¹⁴ In diseases such as lymphosarcoma the hemolytic anemia may precede other evidence of the primary disease by months or it may not appear until after the underlying disease has been under observation and treatment for several years.³¹⁵ The development of autoimmune hemolytic disease may be the first manifestation of a recurrence of carcinoma of the bowel.³¹⁶

The main abnormalities on physical examination in the idiopathic cases are pallor and splenomegaly. In addition patients with the symptomatic type may manifest evidence of the underlying disease such as lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, or evidence of disease in the skin, lungs, and gastrointestinal tract.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Any degree of anemia may occur in either the idiopathic or symptomatic forms of disease. In one series of 57 cases the hemoglobin varied from 2.5 gm to 12.5 gm per 100 ml.³ The anemia is usually microcytic (MCV > 94 cu microns) but a stained smear of the peripheral blood often reveals many microcytes, polychromatophils, poikilocytosis, and the presence of normoblasts. Spherocytosis is often present during periods of crisis and is usually absent during quiescence.^{1,4} Reticulocytosis is usually present but reticulocytopenia occurs in some patients.³¹⁴ Leukocytosis is common during periods of active hemolysis and the count may exceed 30,000 per cu mm; the increase is mainly in the granulocytic series and myelocytes may be found in the peripheral blood.^{1,9} Neutropenia sometimes occurs in chronic cases^{1,9} but is unusual during episodes of crisis.¹⁰⁵ Erythrophagocytosis by monocytes is sometimes evident on plain smears or on smears made from the buffy coat and may suggest the diagnosis.^{1,8,106} The platelet count is usually normal or moderately reduced but severe thrombocytopenia is found in some patients.

The other evidences of a hemolytic process such as increased plasma bilirubin, increased fecal urobilinogen excretion, and normoblastic erythroid hyperplasia of the bone marrow can usually be demonstrated. Osmotic fragility and mechanical fragility are irregularly increased during crisis but are usually normal during periods of quiescence.^{3,4} Hemoglobin electrophoresis reveals the normal A type of hemoglobin.

One of the most important examinations is the direct antiglobulin or Coombs test.¹⁰⁷ In some laboratories it is positive with but very rare exceptions in autoimmune hemolytic anemia of both the warm and cold antibody types.^{3,9} However, the percentage of positive tests on patients who appear to have this syndrome varies greatly from one laboratory to another. False negative tests may result from the use of a weak serum, from the use of

nosis could be established. Accordingly the patient was given prednisone 20 mg every 8 hours beginning on June 24. On June 26 this was reduced to 10 mg four times a day and at discharge on July 3 the dose was reduced to 5 mg three times a day. There was a striking improvement in her blood count and on September 16 her hematocrit was 42 per cent and the reticulocyte count had fallen to 1.5 per cent. On November 4 one month after her prednisone dosage had been reduced to 2.5 mg three times a week the patient was asymptomatic and the hematocrit was 39 per cent.

Comment: This patient had evidence of a hemolytic anemia and the positive direct Coombs test indicated that the anemia was of the extra corpuscular or auto immune type. No primary diagnosis was established and the case might be considered to be "idiopathic." However various features strongly suggest the presence of some underlying disease and in this circumstance the patient must be examined periodically for additional evidence of some primary disorder. The anemia has responded well to treatment with prednisone for two years although the Coombs test remains positive.

HEMOGLOBINURIA

Hemoglobinuria is an abnormal clinical sign that is found in a number of different diseases. Excellent reviews have been published by Ross^{22a} and Ham.¹² Ham has classified the clinical conditions in which hemoglobinuria occurs as follows:

- 1 strenuous exercise such as running from two to twenty six miles
- 2 march hemoglobinuria where a lordotic posture appears to be of some importance
- 3 infusion of hypotonic solutions by intravenous injection or in performing transurethral resection
- 4 intravascular hemolysis in transfusion reactions and severe erythroblastosis fetalis
- 5 thermal injury
- 6 injury from chemicals such as arsine (arsenuretted hydrogen)
- 7 action of hemolytic drugs such as acetylphenylhydrazine, beta naphthol and sulfonamides
- 8 favism
- 9 infested red cells (malaria, Oroya fever)
- 10 paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria
- 11 paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria

The prognosis of patients with the symptomatic type of anemia is mainly that of the underlying disease. The prognosis is generally favorable when the disorder follows a virus infection and is poor when it is associated with malignancy or one of the collagen diseases. In the idiopathic types spontaneous recovery is rare except in acute cases of the "Lederer" type; in the chronic cases complete recovery rarely occurs but the prognosis is better than in patients with malignant disease. The occurrence of severe anemia, reticulocytopenia, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia appears to be associated with a poor prognosis.^{2,14} The commonest causes of death in one group of 18 patients with idiopathic autoimmune hemolytic disease were cardiac failure caused by anemia, acute renal failure, and septicemia.²⁰⁸ Cardiac failure, infections, and hemorrhages were the commonest causes of 14 deaths in the symptomatic cases.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASE

This 53-year-old white housewife had been under observation for five years as a tuberculous suspect but the diagnosis was never established. On a periodic chest roentgenogram it was noted that hilar adenopathy had developed and the patient was admitted to the hospital for investigation. The patient admitted vague chest pains and irregular cough on occasions. She denied weight loss, pruritus, or other symptoms.

Physical Examination The posterior cervical and axillary lymph nodes were enlarged and measured 0.5 to 1 cm in diameter. The spleen was felt two fingerbreadths below the left costal margin. Physical examination was otherwise within normal limits.

Laboratory Examination Admission blood studies: hb 7.1 gm per cent, hematocrit 27 per cent, rbc 1.9 mil per cu mm, retics 22.3 per cent, wbc 18,000 per cu mm. Differential count (per cent): bands 4, segmented 50, lymphocytes 40, monocytes 1, eosinophils 4, basophils 1. The serum protein was 8.9 gm per 100 ml, albumin 3.5 gm per 100 ml, globulin 5.4 gm per 100 ml. The direct antiglobulin (Coombs) test was positive and the Wassermann test was anticomplementary. Blood cultures, tuberculin skin test, platelet counts, and examination for LE cells were normal. Plasma electrophoresis indicated increased total protein, increased gamma globulin, decreased albumin and beta globulin with two peaks; the pattern was considered suggestive of Boeck's sarcoid. Bone marrow aspiration revealed marked normoblastic hyperplasia; plasma cells and eosinophils appeared to be slightly increased.

Regular roentgenograms and laminograms of the chest suggested a slight enlargement in the right hilus area. On bronchoscopy no mass was visualized. Biopsies of the right prescalene node and right axillary node were interpreted as "hyperplastic lymphadenitis."

Treatment and Course The patient was thought to have a hemolytic anemia of the autoimmune type. Although sarcoid, lymphosarcoma, and disseminated lupus were suspected as underlying primary diseases, no diag-

test can be demonstrated during an attack. More specific tests establish the diagnosis. In the Rosenbach test an attack is reproduced by immersing the hands or feet in ice water for ten to twenty minutes^{33, 337}. In various modifications of the Donath Landsteiner test hemolysis is demonstrated after the blood has been chilled *in vitro*³³⁷.

PAROXYSMAL NOCTURNAL HEMOGLOBINURIA

Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria is a rare disorder of unknown cause that occurs in both sexes^{6, 3, 7, 33, 338}. Although the disease has been reported in patients 5½ and 52 years of age it usually appears during the third or fourth decade³¹⁸. The disease is characterized by chronicity, spontaneous remissions and exacerbations and refractoriness to therapy. The factors that are concerned in the excessive hemolysis found in this disease—the defect in the erythrocyte, the essential plasma factors and the influence of pH—are discussed in Chapter III. It has been reported recently that a marked reduction of the acetylcholinesterase activity in the erythrocytes is a consistent finding in this disease^{3, 5}. This defect is located in the stroma of the cell.

Macrocytic hemolytic anemia of moderate or severe degree occurs. The erythrocyte count is usually from 20 to 30 mil per cu mm. Leukopenia and thrombocytopenia of moderate degree are characteristic. The usual evidences of hemolytic anemia such as reticulocytosis (20 or 30 per cent), elevated level serum bilirubin (5 to 6 mg per 100 ml) and normoblastic hyperplasia of the bone marrow are found¹³⁸. The osmotic fragility and the antiglobulin (Coombs) tests are normal. Hemosiderinuria and increased amounts of plasma hemoglobin are found constantly. Hemoglobinuria is absent if the renal threshold is not exceeded¹³⁸. The diagnosis is established by demonstrating the erythrocyte abnormality in the acid serum test devised by Ham^{33, 334} or by the hemolysis test that utilizes thrombin devised by Crosby^{3, 9}. Another test is performed by adding 10 per cent by volume N/5 HCl and 10 per cent by volume of a 50 per cent suspension of the patient's washed corpuscles to serum obtained from blood that was defibrinated in an open flask. If the test is positive frank hemolysis is present¹³⁷.

The course of the disease is a chronic one that continues for many years in some patients. In the fatal cases death is caused not only by anemia and infections during acute episodes but also by thromboses of the cerebral, coronary, portal, hepatic and pulmonary vessels. When severe anemia is a problem transfusion of red cells rather than whole blood is recommended because the administration of plasma increases the likelihood of a hemolytic reaction and increased destruction of the patient's erythrocytes^{3, 7, 33}. Splenectomy, the administration of alkali and the adrenocorticosteroids do not produce significant benefit³³⁷. The value of anticoagulants in preventing thrombosis has not been established²³.

Detectible degrees of hemoglobinuria are found in normal persons but the level does not exceed 5 mg. per 100 ml. and is usually in the range of 2 or 3 mg. per 100 ml. of plasma.^{2, 4, 336} Increased amounts usually from 20 to 60 mg. per 100 ml. were found in a number of patients with acquired hemolytic anemia, thalassemia major and sickle cell anemia.^{2, 8} Hemosiderinuria is found in every patient with hemoglobinemia and in general the amount of iron staining pigment varied with the concentration of the plasma hemoglobin. The normal renal threshold for hemoglobin is reported to be around 90 to 130 mg. per 100 ml.^{2, 7, 3, 9, 331, 33} Hemoglobinuria occurs only after rather severe intravascular hemolysis and is rarely seen in sickle cell anemia, thalassemia or acquired hemolytic anemia.^{2, 8, 33} Although the conditions are rare, hemoglobinuria occurs frequently in transfusion reactions, fivism, blackwater fever and in the paroxysmal hemoglobinurias.

PAROXYSMAL COLD HEMOGLOBINURIA

Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is a rare disorder. The sudden attacks of intravascular hemolysis and hemoglobinuria that occur on exposure to cold are due to the presence of an autohemolysin in the serum. The mechanism of the production of the attacks is discussed in Chapter III. The Wassermann reaction is reported to be positive in over 90 per cent of patients with the disorder and unquestionable clinical evidence of syphilis is found in about 30 per cent.³³⁵

The attacks are precipitated by exposure to cold but there is a wide range of variability in the amount of chilling that is necessary; no more than the opening of a door from an unheated room may be required.³³ The interval between the chilling and the onset of symptoms may vary from a few minutes to seven or eight hours. The prodromal period is apt to be associated with malaise, headache, abdominal cramps and pains in the back and legs. The actual paroxysm is usually manifested by a shaking chill followed by a temperature rise of 102° or 104° F that lasts for several hours. After the chill the voided urine usually appears dark red or brown; urine of this character may be passed in only the first or first few specimens after the chill or over a period of two or three days. During the episode mild jaundice, splenomegaly and hepatomegaly are often demonstrable.^{33, 336} Severe leukopenia that is the result of the virtual disappearance of the granulocytes from the peripheral blood also occurs.³³⁶

Treatment during an attack consists of keeping the patient in a warm environment and administering transfusions when necessary. Between episodes exposure to cold is avoided and any underlying disease is treated. Many patients remain asymptomatic during these intervals.³³

The diagnosis is made by the history and by abnormalities that can be demonstrated in the laboratory tests. The degree of the anemia and the evidence of blood regeneration depend on the severity of the hemolysis. Hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria and a positive antiglobulin (Coombs)

spleen was the major site of destruction. A correlation was found between the rate of red cell destruction and the degree of anemia. The presence of hemolytic anemia in liver disease was also indicated by the animal experiments of Higgins and Stasney³⁴¹. They exposed rats to carbon tetrachloride by inhalation for short periods each day for twelve weeks. At the end of this time the rats developed "typical" atrophic cirrhosis of the liver and microcytic anemia. In addition there was associated evidence of increased hemolysis in the form of icterus, increased hemosiderin in the organs, erythroid hyperplasia in the bone marrow and an increase in reticulocytes.

The demonstration of the hemolytic nature of the anemia in cirrhosis of the liver affords the best explanation of the anemia in the majority of patients who have a microcytic anemia associated with a normoblastic marrow that does not respond to treatment with folic acid, vitamin B₁₂ or liver extract. Factors other than hyperhemolysis are important in the small percentage of patients with the megaloblastic type of bone marrow who have responded to specific treatment^{341, 343, 344}. The anemia in most of these patients has been more severe than that usually seen in cirrhosis. The erythrocyte count has been in the neighborhood of 1.0 mil per cu mm in most patients and less than 2.0 mil per cu mm in nearly all. The mean corpuscular volume usually has been over 130 cu microns. In such patients hematologic recovery has followed the administration of folic acid³⁴¹, vitamin B₁₂³⁴⁴, liver extract^{339, 344} and ascorbic acid.³³⁸ The possibility of a coexisting pernicious anemia was excluded by gastric analysis³⁴⁴ or determinations of the serum vitamin B₁₂ level.^{338, 341} It appeared that deficient intake of folic acid, vitamin B₁₂ or ascorbic acid was an important factor in the defective erythropoiesis in these patients because they gave histories of grossly deficient diets for long periods. The recognition of at least two types of macrocytic anemia in cirrhosis of the liver probably explains the conflicting reports of the presence³⁴⁵ and absence³³⁹ of the antipernicious anemia factor in livers of patients who died with cirrhosis. Still another possibility to be considered is that alcohol may directly depress marrow activity. This was suggested by the observation that a reticulocytosis occurred in patients with cirrhosis even though they were kept on a diet deficient in erythropoietic factors if the ingestion of alcohol was prevented.³⁴¹

HYPERSPLENISM

Hypersplenism is the term used to denote a syndrome characterized by the following: (1) splenomegaly, (2) anemia, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia singly or in combination, (3) a marrow that has normal or increased cellularity, (4) correction of the blood picture by splenectomy.^{346, 347}

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH CHRONIC LIVER DISEASE

Anemia occurs often in patients with chronic liver disease and some times undergoes spontaneous remission^{341 347} In one series of 132 patients with different types of liver disease anemia was found in 78 per cent³⁴⁷ The incidence is even higher in patients with atrophic cirrhosis^{341 34 347} The degree of anemia which is rarely severe cannot be correlated with the duration of the liver disease or with the clinical outcome^{341 347} The morphologic characteristics of the anemia which may be macrocytic normocytic or hypochromic microcytic depend on what mechanisms are responsible for the anemia Either blood loss increased hemolysis or deficient erythropoiesis may be the most important factor in a particular individual

The hypochromic microcytic type of anemia was found in only 12 per cent of one series³⁴ Its occurrence indicates iron deficiency which is usually the result of chronic blood loss from the gastrointestinal tract Iron deficiency may occur as the result of repeated severe hemorrhages from ruptured esophageal varices or mild chronic blood loss from irritation of the gastrointestinal tract Increased pressure in the portal circulation and a defect in blood coagulation may be contributing factors

In chronic liver disease the anemia is usually macrocytic but is sometimes normocytic^{341 34 347} The mean corpuscular volume has been found to range from 95 to 160 cu microns but is usually between 100 and 120^{341 34} The marked anisocytosis and poikilocytosis which are usually seen in pernicious anemia are absent in chronic liver disease and nucleated red cells rarely appear in the peripheral circulation Erythropoiesis is usually normoblastic in type³⁴¹ The reticulocytes are often slightly increased and the leukocyte and platelet counts are normal or slightly reduced

The mechanism responsible for the macrocytic anemia of cirrhosis of the liver has been clarified by the studies of Jundt³⁴¹ Sixteen of 20 patients with cirrhosis and anemia who were studied were found to have a definite hemolytic anemia evidenced by the triad of elevated excretion of fecal urobilinogen persistent reticulocytosis and increased concentration of the erythrocyte precursors in the bone marrow The extracorporeal nature of the hemolytic process was shown by the survival times of transfused normal cells that were determined by the Ashby differential agglutination method The exponential type of survival curve that was found suggested a random destruction of the red cells in a local site such as the liver or spleen Additional studies that utilized erythrocytes tagged with Cr^{51} indicated that the

tinues even though a partial hematologic relapse not infrequently develops some months after splenectomy

REFERENCES

PERNICIOUS ANEMIA

- 1 Berk, L. et al. Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia. V Activity of vitamin B₁₂ as food (extrinsic) factor. New England J Med 239 911 1948
- II Bethell, F H and Sturges C C The relation of therapy in pernicious anemia to changes in the nervous system. Early and late results in a series of cases observed for periods of not less than ten years and early results of treatment with folic acid. Blood 3 57 1948
- 3 Bjorkenheim G Neurological Changes in Pernicious Tapeworm Anemia. Acta med. scandinav. Suppl. 60 1951
- 4 Castle W B Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia. I The effect of the administration to patients with pernicious anemia of the contents of the normal human stomach recovered after the ingestion of beef muscle. Am J M Sc 178 748 1929
- 5 Castle W B and Townsend W C Observations on the etiologic relationship of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia. II Effect of the administration to patients with pernicious anemia of beef muscle after incubation with normal human gastric juice. Am J M Sc 178 764 1929
- 5a. Castle W B Heath C W and Strauss M B Observations on the etiologic relationships of achylia gastrica to pernicious anemia. IV A biologic assay of gastric secretion of patients with pernicious anemia having free hydrochloric acid and that of patients without anemia or with hypochromic anemia having no free hydrochloric acid and of the role of intestinal impermeability to hematopoietic substances in pernicious anemia. Am J M Sc 182 741 1931
- II Davidson C S., Murphy J C Watson R. J and Castle W B Comparison of the effects of massive blood transfusions and of liver extract in pernicious anemia. J Clin Invest 25 608 1946
- 7 Davidson, L S P Refractory megaloblastic anemia. Blood, 3 107 1948
- 8 Ehrlich P and Lazarus A. Anemia. Reiman, Ltd. London 1910 II 69
- 8a Glass G H J The role of the gastro-intestinal tract in the pathogenesis and management of pernicious anemia. Bull N Y Med Coll., 16 1 1953
- 8b Halen R L Pernicious anemia from Addison to folic acid. Blood 3 1948
- 9 Halsted, J A Lewis P M and Gasster M Absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in the syndrome of megaloblastic anemia associated with intestinal stricture or anastomosis. Am J Med 20 41, 1956
- 9a Havkins C F and Meynell M J Macrocytosis and macrocytic anemia caused by anticonvulsant drugs. Quart J Med 27 45 1958
- 10 Hicks M and Leavell B S Pernicious anemia in the American Negro. Ann Int Med 33 1458 1950
- 11 Isaacs R and Friedman A Standards for maximum reticulocyte percentage after intramuscular lithium therapy in pernicious anemia. Am J M Sc 126 718 1938
- 12 Israels M C G., and Wilkinson J F Achrestic anaemia. Quart. J Med 69 1956
- 13 Israels M C G and Wilkinson J F New observations on the aetiology and prognosis of achrestic anaemia. Quart J Med 9 163 1940
- 14 Kaplan H S and Hgler L G Pernicious anemia and carcinoma of the stomach—autopsy studies concerning their interrelationship. Am. J M Sc., 109 359 1945
- 15 Major R H Classic Descriptions of Disease 3d Ed. Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1955 p 291
- 16 Mason J H and Leavell B S The effect of transfusions of erythrocytes on untreated pernicious anemia. Blood, 11 63., 1956

This syndrome occurs in a variety of disorders that are associated with splenomegaly. Among these are congestive splenomegaly associated with portal hypertension of either the intrahepatic or extrahepatic variety; chronic infections such as tuberculosis, kala-azar, malaria, subacute bacterial endocarditis, syphilis, brucellosis, fungus diseases, diseases of the lymphoma group, particularly lymphosarcoma, giant follicle lymphoma, and Hodgkin's disease; diseases of lipid metabolism (Gaucher's disease); diseases of uncertain etiology such as rheumatoid arthritis, sarcoidosis, and collagen diseases, particularly disseminated lupus erythematosus; splenomegaly of undetermined origin. Usually hypersplenism is simply one aspect of an underlying disease that is not confined to the spleen. In the vast majority of patients the diagnosis is established before splenectomy or at the time of operation. However, in a small percentage of patients the cause of the splenomegaly remains obscure even after histologic study of the spleen and other biopsy material removed at operation. Such cases are termed "idiopathic" or "primary."^{319, 321}

Various mechanisms have been suggested to explain the changes that occur in the peripheral blood in hypersplenism. Down and his group largely as the result of supravital staining of splenic material have considered that sequestration and destruction of the cellular elements by the abnormal spleen are the important factors.³²⁰ A different concept is offered by Dame and Sick, namely that the enlarged spleen exerts an inhibiting effect on the bone marrow by means of an unidentified humoral factor.³¹⁹ Others consider that leukocyte antibodies are important in many splenic neutropenia syndromes,³²⁰ although diseases characterized by altered antibody production such as idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura and autoimmune acquired hemolytic anemia, are excluded from the "hypersplenic" group by some.³¹⁹ At the present time the mechanism involved in "hypersplenism" cannot be considered as definitely established and it is not certain that the same mechanism is the responsible one in every patient with the syndrome.

The decision regarding the advisability of splenectomy can be made only after careful consideration of the individual patient. When the presence of hypersplenism is suggested because of the occurrence of splenomegaly, cytopenia, and an apparently active cellular marrow, efforts are made to establish the identity of the underlying disease. Splenectomy relieves only one aspect of the underlying disorder and rarely if ever effects a cure of the primary disease. If the underlying disease is amenable to more definitive treatment, splenectomy may not be necessary because the hypersplenism syndrome may disappear after such therapy. When the nature and course of the underlying disease are such that an early fatal outcome is expected, splenectomy is rarely a justifiable procedure. If the nature of the underlying process cannot be diagnosed, or if it is identified as one for which no satisfactory therapy is available, splenectomy is a justifiable form of treatment if the presence of anemia, neutropenia, or thrombocytopenia is disabling or hazardous to the patient. In such circumstances gratifying results occur often but not invariably. Clinical improvement in the patient often con-

- 41 Suarez R M Spies T D Hernandez Morales F and Perez, E A note on the effectiveness of vitamin B₁ in the treatment of tropical sprue in relapse Blood 4 1124 1949
- 42 Tuck, I M and Whittaker N Vitamin B₁ in idiopathic steatorrhea Lancet 1 757 1950

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH PREGNANCY

- 43 Berlin N I Goetsch C Hyde G M and Parsons R J The blood volume in pregnancy as determined by P-32 labelled red blood cells Surg Gynec & Obst 97 173 1953
- 44 Bethell F H The blood changes in normal pregnancy and their relation to the iron and protein supplied by the diet JAMA 107 564 1936
- 45 Bethell F H and Blecha E Diet in pregnancy Clinics 1 346 1942
- 46 Fay J Cartwright G E and Wintrobe M M Studies on free erythrocyte protoporphyrin serum iron serum iron binding capacity and plasma copper during normal pregnancy J Clin Invest 28 487 1949
- 47 Holly R G Anemia in pregnancy Obst & Gynec 5 562 1955
- 48 Holly R G Hypoplastic anemia in pregnancy Obst & Gynec 1 535 1955
- 49 Holly R G Megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy Remission following combined therapy with ascorbic acid and vitamin B₁ Proc Soc Exptl Biol & Med 78 238 1951
- 50 Holly R G The iron and iron binding capacity of serum and the erythrocyte protoporphyrin in pregnancy Obst & Gynec 2 119 1953
- 51 Holly R G The value of iron therapy in pregnancy Journal Lancet 74 211 1954
- 52 Sturgis C C Hematology Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1948 pp 74 90
- 53 Thompson R B and Ungley C C Megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy and the puerperium A review of forty five cases with special reference to their response to treatment Quart J Med 20 187 1951

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH CHRONIC RENAL DISEASE

- 54 Brown G E and Roth G M The anemia of chronic nephritis Arch Int Med 30 817 1922
- 55 Callen I R and Lamarca L H Blood and bone marrow studies in renal disease Am J Clin Path 20 3 1950
- 56 Chaplin H and Mollison P L Red cell life span in nephritis and in hepatic cirrhosis Clin Sc 12 351 1953
- 57 Emerson C H Jr and Burroughs B A The mechanism of anemia and its influence on renal function in chronic uremia J Clin Invest 23 779 1949
- 58 Erslev A J Erythropoietic function in uremic rabbits Clin Res Proc 5 141 1957
- 59 Finch C A Gibson J G H Peacock W C and Fluharty R G Iron metabolism utilization of intravenous radioactive iron Blood 4 905 1949
- 60 Jacobson L O Goldwasser H Fried W and Flzak I Role of the kidney in erythropoiesis Nature 179 633 1957
- 61 Kaye M The anemia associated with renal disease J Lab & Clin Med 52 83 1957
- 62 Log J P Lange R D and Moore C V Characterization of the anemia of chronic renal insufficiency J Clin Invest 29 830 1950
- 63 Loge J P Lange R D and Moore C V Characterization of the anemia associated with chronic renal insufficiency Am J Med 24 4 1958
- 64 Markson J L and Rennie J B The anaemia of chronic renal insufficiency Scottish M J 1 30 1956
- 65 Rees S B et al Effect of dialysis and purine ribosides upon the anemia of uremia J Clin Invest 36 923 1957
- 66 Thorup O A Jr Strole W E and Leavell B S The rate of removal of iron from culture medium by human bone marrow suspension J Lab & Clin Med 52 466 1958

- 17 Massey B W and Rubin G L The stomach in pernicious anemia A cytologic study *Am J M Sc* 227 481 1954
- 18 Minot G R and Murphy W P Treatment of pernicious anemia by special diet *JAMA* 87 470 1926
- 19 Newek H O Laker J C deVries J A and Kroese W F S The relationship of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid in megaloblastic anemias *J Lab & Clin Med* 44 118 1954
- 20 Norcross J W Mounie S I and Griffin H G The development of gastric carcinoma in pernicious anemia *Ann Int Med* 37 338 1952
- 21 Ricker L I Brink N C Komusz T R Wood T R and Folkers K Crystal line vitamin B₁₂ *Science* 107 396 1948
- 22 Rigler I G Kaplan H S and Fink D L Pernicious anemia and the early diagnosis of tumors of the stomach *JAMA* 128 426 1945
- 23 Ross J F Belding H and Laegel H L The development and progression of subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord in patients with pernicious anemia treated with synthetic pteroylglutamic (folic) acid *Blood* 3 68 1948
- 24 Rundles R W Prognosis in neurologic manifestations of pernicious anemia *Blood* 1 209 1946
- 25 Schilling R F Intrinsic factor studies II The effect of gastric juice on the urinary excretion of radioactivity after the oral administration of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ *J Lab & Clin Med* 42 800 1953
- 26 Schwartz S O Friedman I A and Gunt H L Long term evaluation of vitamin B₁₂ in treatment of pernicious anemia *JAMA* 157 229 1955
- 27 Sturgis C C Hematology Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1948
- 28 Ungley C C and Thompson R B Gastric Intrinsic Factor and Vitamin B₁₂ Interrelationships In Tocantins L M Progress in Hematology Vol 1 Grune and Stratton New York 1956
- 29 Whipple C N and Robscheit Robbins I S Favorable influence of liver heart and skeletal muscle in diet on blood regeneration in anemia *Am J Physiol* 72 408 1925
- 30 Whitby L L H and Britton C J C Disorders of the Blood 5th Ed The Blakiston Co Philadelphia 1946
- 31 Zimcheck N Grable L Ley A B and Norman L Occurrence of gastric cancer among patients with pernicious anemia at the Boston City Hospital *New England J Med* 252 1103 1955

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH DEFICIENT ABSORPTION FROM THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT (SIRUE AND OTHER SYNDROMES)

- 32 Cattle W B Rhoads C P Lawson H A and Payne G C Etiology and treatment of sprue—observations on patients in Puerto Rico and subsequent experiments on animal *Arch Int Med* 56 627 1935
- 33 Darby W J Jones L and Johnson H C Effect of synthetic lactobacillus casei factor in treatment of sprue *JAMA* 130 760 1946
- 34 Cirdwood R H A folic acid excretion test in the investigation of intestinal absorption *Lancet* 1 53 1953
- 35 Class G H J Intestinal absorption and hepatic uptake of vitamin B₁₂ in diseases of the gastrointestinal tract *Gastroenterology* 30 37 1958
- 36 Halsted J A Lewis P M and Caster M Absorption of radioactive vitamin B₁₂ in the syndrome of megaloblastic anemia associated with intestinal stricture of anastomosis *Am J Med* 20 42 1956
- 37 Israels M C G and Sharp J Idiopathic steatorrhea (non tropical sprue) with megaloblastic anemia *Lancet* 1 752 1950
- 38 Loewenstein F Absorption of cobalt 60 labeled vitamin B₁₂ after subtotal gastrectomy *Blood* 13 339 1958
- 39 Mollin D L and Ross C I M Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in the megaloblastic anaemias *Proc Royal Soc Med* 47 428 1954
- 40 Oxenhorn S Estren S Wasserman L R and Adelsberg D Malabsorption syndrome Intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂ *Ann Int Med* 48 30 1958

- 41 Suarez H M Spies T D Hernandez Morales F and Perez, E A note on the effectiveness of vitamin B₁₂ in the treatment of tropical sprue in relapse *Blood* 4 1124 1949
- 42 Tuck, I M and Whittaker N Vitamin B₁ in idiopathic steatorrhea *Lancet* 1 757 1950

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH PREGNANCY

- 43 Berlin N I Goetsch C Hyde G M and Parsons R J The blood volume in pregnancy as determined by P 32 labelled red blood cells *Surg Gynec & Obst* 97 173 1953
- 44 Bethell F H The blood changes in normal pregnancy and their relation to the iron and protein supplied by the diet *JAMA* 107 564 1936
- 45 Bethell F H and Blecha C Diet in pregnancy *Clinics* 1 346 1942
- 46 Fay J Cartwright G E and Wintrobe M M Studies on free erythrocyte protoporphyrin serum iron serum iron binding capacity and plasma copper during normal pregnancy *J Clin Invest* 28 487 1949
- 47 Holly R G Anemia in pregnancy *Obst & Gynec* 5 562 1953
- 48 Holly R G Hypoplastic anemia in pregnancy *Obst & Gynec* 1 535 1953
- 49 Holly R G Megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy Remission following combined therapy with ascorbic acid and vitamin B₁₂ *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 78 238 1951
- 50 Holly R G The iron and iron binding capacity of serum and the erythrocyte protoporphyrin in pregnancy *Obst & Gynec* 1 119 1953
- 51 Holly R G The value of iron therapy in pregnancy *Journal Lancet* 74 211 1954
- 52 Sturgis C C Hematology Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1948 pp 74 90
- 53 Thomson R B and Ungley C C Megaloblastic anaemia of pregnancy and the puerperium A review of forty five cases with special reference to their response to treatment *Quart J Med* 20 187 1951

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH CHRONIC RENAL DISEASE

- 54 Brown G E and Roth G M The anemia of chronic nephritis *Arch Int Med* 30 817 1922
- 55 Callen I R and Linmarz L R Blood and bone marrow studies in renal disease *Am J Clin Path* 20 3 1950
- 56 Chaplin H and Morrison P L Red cell life span in nephritis and in hepatic cirrhosis *Clin Sci* 12 361 1953
- 57 Emerson C P Jr and Burroughs B A The mechanism of anemia and its influence on renal function in chronic uremia *J Clin Invest* 28 779 1949
- 58 Erslev A J Erythropoietic function in uremic rabbits *Clin Res Proc* 5 141 1957
- 59 Finch C A Gibson J G H Peacock, W C and Fluharty H G Iron metabolism utilization of intravenous radioactive iron *Blood* 4 905 1949
- 60 Jacobson L O Goldwasser E Fried W and Plzak L Role of the kidney in erythropoiesis *Nature* 179 833 1957
- 61 Kaye M The anemia associated with renal disease *J Lab & Clin Med* 52 83 1957
- 62 Loge J P Lange H D and Moore C V Characterization of the anemia of chronic renal insufficiency *J Clin Invest* 29 830 1950
- 63 Loge J P Lange H D and Moore C V Characterization of the anemia associated with chronic renal insufficiency *Am J Med* 24 4 1958
- 64 Markson J L and Rennie, J B The anaemia of chronic renal insufficiency *Scottish Med J* 13 10 1956
- 65 Rees S M et al Effect of dialysis and purine bound upon the anemia of uremia *J Clin Invest* 36 923 1957
- 66 Thorup O A Jr Strole W M and Leachell B S The rate of removal of iron from culture medium by human bone marrow suspension *J Lab & Clin Med* 52 266 1958

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH MYXEDEMA

- 67 Axelrod A R and Berman I The bone marrow in hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism *Blood* 6 436 1951
- 68 Bomford R Anemia in myxedema and the role of the thyroid gland in erythropoiesis *Quart J Med* 7 495 1938
- 69 Charcot M Myxodeme cachectique pachydermique en état cretinoïde *La Lancette française Gazette des Hôpitaux* January 25 1881
- 70 Daughaday W H Williams H H and Daland G A The effect of endocrinopathies on the blood *Blood* 7 1342 1948
- 71 Gordan A S Kidow I C Finkelstein C and Chippper H A The thyroid and blood regeneration in the rat *Am J M Sc* 212 385 1946
- 72 Grant W C and Root W S Fundamental stimulus for erythropoiesis *Physiol Review* 32 449 1952
- 73 Kocher T Ueber Asept. Exstirpation und ihre Folgen *Arch fur Chir* 29 254 1883
- 74 Leavell B S Thorup O A and McClellan J E Observations on the anemia in myxedema *Tr Am Clin & Clin Assoc* 68 137 1956
- 75 Leavell B S and Thorup O A Myxedema Personal observations
- 76 Luthold S I David D and Best W R Hypothyroidism with anemia demonstrating abnormal vitamin B₁₂ absorption *Am J Med* 24 535 1958
- 77 Lerman J and Means J H Treatment of the anemia of myxedema *Endocrinology* 16 553 1932
- 78 McClellan J E Donegan C Thorup O A and Leavell B S Survival time of the erythrocyte in myxedema and hyperthyroidism *J Lab & Clin Med* 51 91 1958
- 79 Myer O O Thewlis E W and Rusch H I The hypophysis and hemopoiesis *Endocrinology* 27 932 1940
- 80 Pirzio Buroli C Bothwell T H and Inch C A Iron absorption II The absorption of radioiron administered with a standard meal in man *J Lab & Clin Med* 51 37 1958

APLASTIC ANEMIA

- 81 Bayrd E D and Bernatz P E Benign thymoma and agenesis of erythrocytes *JAMA* 163 723 1957
- 82 Bomford R R and Rhoads C P R Fractory anemia I Clinical and pathological aspects *Quart J Med* 10 175 1941
- 83 Bowditch M and Elkins H B Chronic exposure to benzene (benzol) *J Indust Hyg & Toxicol* 21 321 1939
- 84 Brittingham T E and Chaplin H Jr Febrile transfusion reactions caused by sensitivity to donor leukocytes and platelets *JAMA* 165 819 1957
- 85 Crosby W H et al Panels in therapy VII Hypoplastic aplastic anemia *Blood* 12 193 1957
- 86 Crosby W H and Rappaport H Autoimmune hemolytic anemia I Analysis of hematologic observations with particular reference to their prognostic value A survey of 57 cases *Blood* 12 42 1957
- 87 Dawson J P Congenital pancytopenia associated with multiple congenital anomalies (Fanconi type) *Pediatrics* 15 325 1955
- 88 Diamond L K and Blackfan K D Hypoplastic anemia *Am J Dis Child* 56 464 1938
- 89 Donegan C C MacLachlaine W A and Leavell B S Hematologic studies on patients with sickle cell anemia following multiple transfusions *Am J Med* 17 29 1954
- 90 Ehrlich P Ueber einen Fall von Anämie mit Bemerkungen über regenerative Veränderungen des Knochenmark *Charité Ann* 13 300 1868
- 91 Estren S and Dameshek W Familial hypoplastic anemia of childhood *Am J Dis Child* 73 671 1947
- 92 Fanconi G Familiäre infantile perniziösartige Anämie perniziöses Blutbild und Konstitution *Jahrb f Kinderh* 117 257 1927

- 93 Gasser C Pure red cell anemia due to auto antibodies immune type of aplastic anemia (erythroblastopenia) *LeSang* 46 6 1955
- 94 Gurney C W Goldwasser E and Fan C Studies on erythropoiesis VI Erythropoietin in human plasma *J Lab & Clin Med* 50 534 1957
- 95 Gurney C W Jacobson L O and Goldwasser F The physiologic and clinical significance of erythropoietin *Ann Int Med* 49 363 1958
- 96 Gurney C W Pierce M I Schrier S E Carson I H and Jacobson L O The stimulatory effect of "anemic plasma" in congenital hypoplastic anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 50 821 1957
- 97 Henniksen E Tetanus og N O-narkose Svaer knoglemarvintoxikation som følge af protraheret kvael troffonitienarkose *Nord med* 56 1418 1958
- 98 Lange R D et al Refractory anemia occurring in survivors of the atomic bombing in Nagasaki Japan *Blood* 10 312 1955
- 99 Lassen H C A Henniksen E Neukirch F and Kristensen H S Treatment of tetanus Severe bone marrow depression after prolonged nitrous-oxide anaesthesia *Lancet* 2:0 5.7 1958
- 100 Loch V J Jr Moore C V and Dubach R The physiologic evaluation and management of chronic bone marrow failure *Am J Med* 15 490 1953
- 101 Lohby A L Ebers J J Medica P T Pansky H and Gordon A S Studies on circulating erythropoietin in anemic human subjects *Clin Res Proc* 5 69 1957
- 102 Mohler D and Leavelle H S Aplastic anemia An analysis of 50 cases *Ann Int Med* 49 326 1958
- 103 Moore C V The treatment of refractory anemia or bone marrow failure *J Chron Dis* 6 321 1957
- 104 Osgood E E Hypoplastic anemias and related syndromes caused by drug idiosyncrasy *JAMA* 152 816 1953
- 105 Rhoads C P and Miller D K Histology of the bone marrow in aplastic anemia *Arch Path* 26 648 1938
- 106 Ross J F Lynch S C Street H B and Strieder J W The simultaneous occurrence of leucemia and refractory anemia *Blood* 9 935 1954
- 107 Rubin D Weinberger A S Botta H C and Storaasli J P Changes in iron metabolism in early chloramphenicol toxicity *J Clin Invest* 37 1260 1958
- 108 Seaman A J and Joler R D Acquired erythrocytic hypoplasia A recovery during cobalt therapy *Acta haemat* 9 153 1953
- 109 Smith L W Report on an unusual case of aplastic anemia *Am J Dis Child* 17 174 1919
- 110 Spet T H Rosenthal M C and Dameshek W ACTH and cortisone in the treatment of the aplastic and adynamic anemias *Bull New England Med Center* 13 252 1951
- 111 Thomas E D The treatment of refractory anemia with cobalt *Ann Int Med* 44 412 1956
- 112 Thompson W P Richter M N and Idsall A S An analysis of so-called aplastic anemia *Am J Med Sc* 187 77 1934
- 113 Tsai S Y and Lee W C Chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia in adults *Am J Med* 22 322 1957
- 114 Wasserman L H Stals H Schwartz L and Fudenberg H Symptomatic and idiopathic hemolytic anemia *Am J Med* 18 961 1955
- 115 Welch H Lewis C H and Berl I Blood dyscrasias Antibiotics & Chemotherapy 4 607 1954

MYELOID METAPLASIA

- 116 Cartwright C E et al Panels in Therapy II Splenectomy in myeloid metaplasia with myelofibrosis *Blood* 10 550 1955
- 117 Cook J E Franklin J W Hamilton H E and Fowler W M Syndrome of myelofibrosis *Arch Int Med* 91 704 1953
- 118 Dameshek W Some speculations on the myeloproliferative syndromes *Blood* 6 372 1951

- 119 Erf I A and Herbut P A Primary and secondary myelofibrosis (a clinical and pathological study of thirteen cases of fibrosis of the bone marrow) *Ann Int Med* 21 883 1944
- 120 Green T W Conley C L Ashburn L L and Icters H R Splenectomy for myeloid metaplasia of the spleen *New England J Med* 248 211 1953
- 121 Heller C L Lewisohn M C and Palin W E Aleukemic myelosis Chronic nonleukemic myelosis agnogenic myeloid metaplasia osteosclerosis leuko-erythroblastic anemia and synonymous designations *Am J Path* 23 327 1947
- 122 Heuck G Zwei Falle von Leukämie mit eigenthümlichen Blut resp Knochen markbefund *Virchows Arch f Path Anat* 78 475 1879
- 123 Hickling R A Chronic non leukemic myelosis *Quart J Med* 11 253 1937
- 124 Hickling R A Treatment of patients with myeloclerosis *Brit M J* 2 411 1953
- 125 Hult M H R Imminger J I and Wetherley Meun C The myeloproliferative disorders With special reference to myelofibrosis *Blood* 8 295 1953
- 126 Jackson H Jr Parker I Jr and Lemon H M Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia of the spleen A syndrome simulating other more definite hematologic disorders *New England J Med* 222 985 1940
- 127 Leavell B S and Thorup O A Personal observation
- 128 Linman J W and Bethell F H Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia Its natural history and present day management *Am J Med* 22 107 1957
- 129 Mersley C Chronic nonleukemic myelosis *Arch Int Med* 84 277 1949
- 130 Mettler S R Hematologic aspects of space consuming lesions of the bone marrow (myelophthisic anemia) *Ann Int Med* 14 456 1940
- 131 Tingle J C Jr and Gardner F H Treatment of myeloid metaplasia with testosterone *Clin Res* 7 210 1959
- 132 Rawson R Parker F Jr and Jackson H Jr Industrial solvents as possible etiologic agents in myeloid metaplasia *Science* 93 541 1941
- 133 Rosenthal N and Erf L A Clinical observations on osteopetrosis and myelofibrosis *Arch Int Med* 71 703 1943
- 134 Schwartz S O and Stansbury F Significance of nucleated red blood cells in peripheral blood *JAMA* 154 1339 1954
- 135 Vaughan J M and Harrison C V Leuco-erythroblastic anaemia and myeloclerosis *J Path & Bact* 48 339 1939
- 136 Wyatt J P and Sommers S C Chronic marrow failure myeloclerosis and extramedullary hematopoiesis *Blood* 5 329 1950

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH ACUTE BLOOD LOSS

- 137 Ebert R V Stead E A Jr and Gibson J C H Response of normal subjects to acute blood loss *Arch Int Med* 68 578 1941
- 138 Gordon A S Quantitative nature of the red cell response to a single bleeding *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 31 583 1934
- 139 Schmidt E Observations on blood regeneration in man I The rise in erythrocytes in patients with hematemesis or melena from peptic ulcer *Am J M Sc* 193 313 1937

ANEMIA OF IRON DEFICIENCY

- 140 Beutler E and Blusdell R A Iron enzymes in iron deficiency II Catalase in human erythrocytes *J Clin Invest* 37 833 1958
- 141 Beutler E Iron enzymes in iron deficiency I Cytochrome C *Am J M Sc* 234 517 1957
- 142 Beutler E Robson M J and Bittenwerfer E A comparison of the plasma iron iron binding capacity sternal marrow iron and other methods in the clinical evaluation of iron stores *Ann Int Med* 48 60 1958
- 143 Brown E B Moore C V Reynafarje C and Smith D E Intravenously administered saccharated iron oxide in the treatment of hypochromic anemia *JAMA* 144 1084 1950

- 144 Cartwright G E Huguley C M Jr Asenbrucker H Fay J and Wintrobe M M Studies on free erythrocyte protoporphyrin plasma iron and plasma copper in normal and anemic subjects *Blood* 3:501 1948
- 145 Chodos R B Ross J F Apt L Polychow M and Hackett J A E The absorption of radioactive labelled foods and iron salts in normal and iron deficient subjects and in idiopathic hemochromatosis *J Clin Invest* 36:314 1957
- 146 Finch S Haskins D and Finch C A Iron metabolism Hematopoiesis following phlebotomy iron as a limiting factor *J Clin Invest* 29:1078 1950
- 147 Fowler W M Chlorosis—an obituary *Ann Med Hist* 8:168 1936
- 148 Hallen Lars Part II Gastric Secretion *Acta med scandinav Supp* 90:398 1938
- 149 Harris J W Whittington R M Wetman R Jr and Horngan D L Pyridoxine responsive anemia in the human adult *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 91:427 1956
- 150 Hayem G *Maladies du Sang* Masson et Cie Paris 1900
- 151 Lange Johann *De Morbo Virgineo Medicinalium et popularium miscellaneo* Basle Wechelus 1554 p 74 (Quoted from Major R H *Class of Descriptions of Disease* 3rd Ed Charles C Thomas Springfield, Ill p 487)
- 152 Lees F and Rosenthal F D Gastric mucosal lesions before and after treatment in iron deficiency anemia *Quart J Med* 27:19 1958
- 153 Pizzo Buroh G Bothwell T H and Finch C A Iron absorption II The absorption of radioactive administered with a standard meal in man *J Lab & Clin Med* 51:37 1958
- 154 Pizzo Buroh G and Finch C A Treatment of iron deficiency anemia in the adult *J Chron Dis* 8:302 1957
- 155 Waldenström Jan Iron and epithelium Some clinical observations I Regeneration of the epithelium *Acta med scandinav Supp* 90:350 1938
- 156 Widdowson E M and McCance R A The absorption and excretion of iron before during and after a period of very high intake *Biochem J* 31:209 1937

HEREDITARY SPHEROCYTOSIS

- 157 Bates G C and Brown C H Incidence of gall bladder disease in chronic hemolytic anemia (spherocytosis) *Gastroenterology* 21:104 1952
- 158 Battle J D Jr Hereditary spherocytosis (congenital hemolytic jaundice) Pathogenesis of the hemolytic crisis *Am J Med Sc* 224:82 1952
- 159 Bertles J F Sodium transport across the surface membrane of red blood cells in hereditary spherocytosis *J Clin Invest* 36:818 1957
- 160 Butternorth C E Kracke R R and Riser W H Jr Hereditary spherocytic anemia in the Negro *Blood* 5:793 1950
- 161 Chauffard A *Pathogenèse de l'ictère congénital de l'adulte* *Semaine Med* 27:25 1907
- 162 Chauffard A and Fieanger V Ictère congénital hémolytique avec lésions globulaires *Bull Intern Soc Med Hop Paris* 24:1169 1907
- 163 Dacie J V Familial haemolytic anaemia (acholic jaundice) with particular reference to changes in fragility produced by splenectomy *Quart J Med* 12:101 1943
- 164 Dacie J V *The Haemolytic Anemias* Grune & Stratton New York, 1954
- 165 Dacie J V and Mollison P L Survival of normal erythrocytes after transfusion to patients with familial hemolytic anaemia *Lancet* 1:500 1943
- 166 Dameshek W and Bloom M L The events in the hemolytic crisis of hereditary spherocytosis with particular reference to the reticulocytopenia pancytopenia and an abnormal splenic mechanism *Blood* 3:1381 1948
- 167 Day von Penn Lord Haemolytic icterus *Brit M J* 1:921 1931
- 168 Dreyfus C Chronic hemolytic jaundice *Bull New England Med Center* 4:122 1942
- 169 Emerson C P Jr Shen S C Ham T H and Castle W B The mechanism of blood destruction in congenital hemolytic jaundice *J Clin Invest* 26:1150 1947
- 170 Gendel B H Chronic leg ulcer in diseases of the blood *Blood* 3:1483 1948

- 119 Erf L A and Herbut P A Primary and secondary myelofibrosis (a clinical and pathological study of thirteen cases of fibrosis of the bone marrow) *Ann Int Med* 21 663 1944
- 120 Green T W Conley C I Ashburn L L and Peters H R Splenectomy for myeloid metaplasia of the spleen *New England J Med* 248 211 1953
- 121 Heller E L Lewinson M G and Lahn W L Akinetic myelosis Chronic nonleukemic myelosis agnogenic myeloid metaplasia osteosclerosis leuko-erythroblastic anemia and synonymous designations *Am J Path* 23 327 1947
- 122 Heuck G Zwei Falle von Leukämie mit eigenthümlichen Blut resp. Knochen marksbefund *Virchows Arch f Path Anat* 78 475 1879
- 123 Hickling R A Chronic non leukemic myelosis *Quart J Med* 6 253 1937
- 124 Hickling R A Treatment of patients with myeloid sclerosis *Brit M J* 2 411 1953
- 125 Hutt M B H Lunniger J L and Wetherley Meiri C The myeloproliferative disorders With special reference to myelofibrosis *Blood* 8 295 1953
- 126 Jackson H Jr Larker I Jr and Lemon H M Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia of the spleen A syndrome simulating other more definite hematologic disorders *New England J Med* 222 985 1940
- 127 Leavell B S and Thorup O A Personal observation
- 128 Linnman J W and Bethell I H Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia Its natural history and present day management *Am J Med* 22 107 1957
- 129 Mersley C Chronic nonleukemic myelosis *Arch Int Med* 84 277 1949
- 130 Mettler S R Hematologic aspects of space consuming lesions of the bone marrow (myeloplastic anemia) *Ann Int Med* 14 436 1940
- 131 Irigle J C Jr and Gardner I H Treatment of myeloid metaplasia with testosterone *Clin Res* 7 210 1959
- 132 Rawson R Larker F Jr and Jackson H Jr Industrial solvents as possible etiologic agents in myeloid metaplasia *Science* 83 541 1941
- 133 Rosenthal N and Erf L A Clinical observations on osteopetrosis and myeloid fibrosis *Arch Int Med* 71 793 1943
- 134 Schwartz S O and Stansbury F Significance of nucleated red blood cells in peripheral blood *JAMA* 154 1339 1954
- 135 Vaughan J M and Harrison C V Leuko-erythroblastic anaemia and myeloid sclerosis *J Path & Bact* 48 339 1939
- 136 Wyatt J P and Sommers S C Chronic marrow failure myelosclerosis and extramedullary hematopoiesis *Blood* 5 329 1950

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH ACUTE BLOOD LOSS

- 137 Ebert H V Stead E A Jr and Gibson J G H Response of normal subjects to acute blood loss *Arch Int Med* 68 578 1941
- 138 Gordon A S Quantitative nature of the red cell response to a single bleeding *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 31 563 1934
- 139 Schugdt E Observations on blood regeneration in man I The rise in erythrocytes in patients with hematemesis or melena from peptic ulcer *Am J M Sc* 193 313 1937

ANEMIA OF IRON DEFICIENCY

- 140 Beutler E and Blasdel H A Iron enzymes in iron deficiency II Catalase in human erythrocytes *J Clin Invest* 37 833 1958
- 141 Beutler E Iron enzymes in iron deficiency I Cytochrome C *Am J M Sc* 234 517 1957
- 142 Beutler E Robson M J and Bittenwieser M A comparison of the plasma iron iron binding capacity sternal marrow iron and other methods in the clinical evaluation of iron stores *Ann Int Med* 48 60 1958
- 143 Brown E H Moore C V Reynafarje C and Smith D E Intravenously administered saccharated iron oxide in the treatment of hypochromic anemia *JAMA* 144 1084 1950

- 197 Diggs L W and Bibb J The erythrocyte in sickle cell anemia morphology size hemoglobin content fragility and sedimentation rate *JAMA* 112 695 1939
- 198 Diggs L W and Chung R F The pathology of sickle cell anemia *South M J* 27 839 1934
- 199 Diggs L W Pulham H N and King J C The bone changes in sickle cell anemia *South M J* 30 249 1937
- 200 Donegan C C MacIlwaine W P and Leavell H S Hematologic studies in patients with sickle cell anemia following multiple transfusions *Am J Med* 17 29 1954
- 201 Ennelt V E A study of the erythrocytes in a case of severe anemia with elongated and sickle shaped red blood corpuscles *Arch Int Med* 50 580 1917
- 202 Greenberg M H Kass E H and Castle W B Studies on the destruction of red blood cells VII Factors influencing the role of S hemoglobin in the pathologic physiology of sickle cell anemia and related disorders *J Clin Invest* 46 833 1957
- 203 Hahn E V and Gillespie E B Sickle cell anemia Report of a case greatly improved by splenectomy Experimental study of sickle cell formation *Arch Int Med* 39 33 1927
- 204 Harris J W Brewster H H Ham T H and Castle W B Studies on destruction of the red blood cells V The biophysics and biology of sickle cell disease *Arch Int Med* 97 145 1956
- 205 Henderson A B Sickle cell anemia Clinical study of fifty four cases with autopsy *Am J Med* 9 757 1950
- 206 Herrick J B Peculiar elongated and sickle shaped red blood corpuscles in a case of severe anemia *Arch Int Med* 6 517 1910
- 207 Hill F S Hughes J G and Davis H C Electroencephalographic findings in sickle cell anemia *Pediatr* 6 277 1950
- 208 Huck J C Sickle cell anemia *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 34 335 1923
- 209 Hughes J G Diggs L W and Gillespie C E The involvement of the nervous system in sickle cell anemia *J Pediatr* 17 166 1940
- 210 Ingram V M A specific chemical difference between the globins of normal human and sickle cell anaemia hemoglobin Nature 178 792 1956 Conference on Hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences 1958 Pub 507 p 233
- 211 Itano H A and Pauling L A rapid diagnostic test for sickle cell anemia *Blood* 4 68 1949
- 211a James G W III and Abbott L D Jr Erythrocyte destruction in sickle cell anemia Simultaneous N¹⁵ hemin and N¹⁵ stercobilin studies *Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med* 88 398 1955
- 212 Kampmeier R H Sickle cell anemia as a cause of cerebrovascular disease *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 46 1323 1936
- 213 Kimmichiel P Vascular occlusion and ischemic infarction in sickle cell disease *Am J M Sc* 216 11 1948
- 214 Leavell H S and MacIlwaine W A Sickle cell anemia Observations following the production of a normal erythrocyte count by transfusion *Tr Am Clin & Clin Assoc* 62 141 1950
- 215 Leavell H S and MacIlwaine W A Sickle cell anemia In Bean Monographs in Medicine Series I William & Wilkins Co Baltimore 1952
- 216 Leavell H S Personal observation
- 217 Levy F E and Schenkel T G Abdominal crises in sickle cell anemia *Am J M Sc* 183 381 1932
- 218 Macht S H and Roman P W The radiologic changes in sickle cell anemia *Radiology* 51 697 1948
- 219 Margolis M P Sickle cell anemia A composite study and survey *Medicine* 30 357 1951
- 220 Neel J V The tolerance of the sickling phenomenon with particular reference to sickle cell disease *Blood* 6 389 1951
- 221 Neel J V Genetic aspects of abnormal hemoglobins Conference on Hemoglobin National Academy of Sciences Pub 557 1958 p 253
- 222 Pauling L Itano H A Singer S J and Wells I C Sickle cell anemia a molecular disease *Science* 110 543 1949
- 223 Pauling L et al Sickle cell anemia hemoglobin *Science* 111 459 1950

- 171 Haden R I The mechanism of the increased fragility of the erythrocytes in congenital hemolytic jaundice *Am J M Sc* 188 441 1934
- 172 Ham T H and Castle W H Relation of increased hypotonic fragility and erythrocytosis to the mechanism of hemolysis in certain anemias *Tr A Am Physicians* 55 127 1940
- 173 Minkowski O Ueber eine hereditäre unter dem Bilde eines chronischen Ikterus mit Urobilinurie Splenomegalie und Nierenverderbis verlaufende Affektion *Verhandl Dtsch Cong f inn Med* 18 316 1900 (Quoted from Dacie J V Ref no 164)
- 174 Naegeli O Blutkrankheiten und Blutdiagnostik 5th Ed Julius Springer Berlin 1931 p 292
- 175 Owen P A Congenital hemolytic jaundice The pathogenesis of the "hemolytic crisis" *Blood* 3 231 1948
- 176 Linkerd T A J Altman K I and Young L E Abnormalities of carbohydrate metabolism of red cells in hereditary spherocytosis *J Clin Invest* 34 1268 1955
- 177 Rice R R On the inheritance and linkage relations of acholuric jaundice *Ann Eugen* 11 365 1942
- 178 Shen S C Castle W H and Fleming E M Experimental and clinical observations on increased mechanical fragility of erythrocytes *Science* 100 387 1944
- 179 Sturgis C C Hematology Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1948
- 180 Thompson W I Hemolytic jaundice Its diagnosis behavior and treatment A review of forty five cases *JAMA* 107 1776 1936
- 181 Vanlair and Mynus *Bull Acad roy Med de Belgique* 5 515 1871 (quoted from Dreyfus)
- 182 Welch C S and Dameshek W Splenectomy in blood dyscrasias *New England J Med* 242 601 1950
- 183 Whipple A O Recent studies in the circulation of the portal bed and of the spleen in relation to splenomegaly *Trs & Stud Coll Physicians Philadelphia* 8 203 1941
- 184 Wintrobe M M Clinical Hematology 4th Ed Lea & Febiger Philadelphia 1956
- 185 Young L L Hereditary spherocytosis *Am J Med* 18 466 1955
- 186 Young L L Izzo M J and Hlatzer R F Hereditary spherocytosis I Clinical hematology and genetic features in 28 cases with particular reference to the osmotic and mechanical fragility of incubated erythrocytes *Blood* 6 1073 1951
- 187 Young L E Hlatzer R F Ervin D M and Izzo M J Hereditary spherocytosis II Observations on the role of the spleen *Blood* 11 1099 1951

SICKLE CELL ANEMIA

- 188 Altmann A The survival of transfused erythrocytes in sickle cell anemia *Tr Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg* 40 901 1947
- 189 Anderson W W and Ware R L Sickle cell anemia *Am J Dis Child* 44 1055 1932
- 190 Bruer J Sickle Cell Disease Pathogenic clinical and therapeutic considerations *Arch Surg* 41 1344 1940
- 191 Berk L and Bull C M Case of sickle cell anemia in Indian woman *Clin Proc* 2 147 1943
- 192 Best H A The genetics of the sickle cell trait in a Bantu tribe *Ann Eugenics* 14 19 1949
- 193 Callender S T E and Nickel J I Survival of transfused sickle cells in normal subject and of normal red blood cells in patients with sickle cell anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 1397 1947
- 194 Callender S T E Nickel J F Moore C V and Powell E O Sickle cell disease Studied by measuring the survival of transfused red blood cells *J Lab & Clin Med* 34 90 1949
- 195 Diggs L W The sickle cell phenomenon The rate of sickling in moist preparations *J Lab & Clin Med* 17 913 1932
- 196 Diggs L W The blood picture in sickle cell anemia *South M J* 25 615 1932

- 248 Kaplan E, Zuelzer W and Neel J V A new inherited abnormality of hemoglobin and its interaction with sickle cell hemoglobin *Blood* 6 1240 1951
- 249 Motulsky A Genetic and haematologic significance of haemoglobin H *Nature* 178 1055 1956
- 250 Powell W N Rodarte J G and Neel J V The occurrence in a family of Sicilian ancestry of the traits for both sickling and thalassemia *Blood*, 5 887 1950
- 251 Rigas D A Koler R D and Osgood E E New hemoglobin possessing a higher electrophoretic mobility than normal adult hemoglobin *Science* 121 372 1950
- 252 Silvestroni E and Bianco I Singolare associazione di anemia microcitica ereditaria con "drepanocitico-anemia" in soggetto di razza bianca Policlinico (sez. Prat.) 53 265 1946
- 253 Singer A Chapman A Z Goldberg S R Rubinstein H M and Rosenblum S A Studies on abnormal hemoglobins IX. Pure (homozygous) hemoglobin C disease *Blood* 9 1023 1954
- 254 Singer A Kraus A P Singer L Rubinstein H M and Goldberg S R Studies on abnormal hemoglobins X. A new syndrome Hemoglobin C-thalassemia disease *Blood* 9 1032 1954
- 255 Smith L W and Conley C L Filter paper electrophoresis of human hemoglobins with special reference to the incidence and clinical significance of hemoglobin C *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 93 94 1953
- 256 Smith L W and Conley C L Clinical features of the genetic variants of sickle cell disease *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 94 289 1954
- 257 Smith L W and Conley C L Sickle cell hemoglobin D disease *Ann Int Med* 50 94 1959
- 258 Spaet T H Alway H H and Ward G Homozygous type C hemoglobin *Pediatrics* 12 483 1953
- 259 Sturgeon P Itano H A and Bergren W R Clinical manifestations of inherited abnormal hemoglobins I The interaction of hemoglobin S with hemoglobin D *Blood* 10 359 1955
- 260 Tanaka, K R and Clifford C O Homozygous hemoglobin C disease Report of three cases *Ann Int Med* 49 30 1958
- 261 Wheby M S Thorup O A and Leavell B S Homozygous hemoglobin C disease in siblings further comment on intraerythrocytic crystals *Blood* 11 266 1956
- 262 Zuelzer W and Kaplan E Thalassemia-hemoglobin C disease A new syndrome presumably due to the combination of the genes for thalassemia and hemoglobin C *Blood* 9 1047 1954
- 263 Zuelzer W W Neel J V and Robinson A R Abnormal Hemoglobins In Tocantins L M Ed *Progress in Hematology* Vol 1 Grune and Stratton New York 93 1956 p 91

THALASSEMIA

- 264 Baty J M Blackfan, K D and Diamond L K Blood studies in infants and in children I Erythroblastic anemia A clinical and pathologic study *Am J Dis Child* 43 667 1932
- 265 Caffey J Cooley's erythroblastic anemia Some skeletal findings in adolescents and young adults *Am J Roentgenol* 65 547 1951
- 266 Cohen F Zuelzer W W Neel J V and Robinson A R Multiple inherited erythrocyte abnormalities in an American Negro family Hereditary spherocytosis, sickling and thalassemia *Blood* 14 816 1959
- 267 Cooley T B and Lee P Series of cases of splenomegaly in children with anemia and peculiar bone changes *Trs Am Pediat Soc* 37 29 1925
- 268 Hamilton H E and Foxler W M Familial leptocytosis (Cooley's anemia and Cooley's trait) *Arch Int Med* 87 825 1951
- 269 Hamilton, H E Sheets R F and DeGowin E I Studies with unagglutinable erythrocyte counts II Analysis of mechanism of Cooley's anemia *J Clin Invest* 29 714 1950

- 224 Ierutz M F and Mitchison J M State of haemoglobin in sickle cell anaemia
Nature 166 677 1950
- 225 Ponder E Red cell cytochemistry and architecture *Ann NY Acad Sci* 48 579 1947
- 226 Reinhard H H Moore C V Dubach H and Wade L J Depressant effects of high concentrations of inspired oxygen on erythrocytogenesis Observations on patients with sickle cell anemia with a description of the observed toxic manifestations of oxygen *J Clin Invest* 23 682 1944
- 227 Reinhard L H Moore C V Dubach R and Wade L J Effect of breathing 80 to 100 percent oxygen on the erythrocyte equilibrium in patients with sickle cell anemia *JAMA* 121 1245 1943
- 228 Ryerson C S and Terplan K L Sickle cell anemia Two unusual cases with autopsy *Folia haemat* 53 353 1935
- 228a Shotton D Crockett C L Jr and Leavell B S Splenectomy in sickle cell anemia Report of a case and review of the literature *Blood* 6 365 1951
- 229 Singer K Robin S King J C and Jefferson R V The life span of the sickle cell and the pathogenesis of sickle cell anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 33 975 1948
- 230 Singer K Motulsky A G and Wile S A Aplastic crisis in sickle cell anemia A study of its mechanism and its relationship to other types of hemolytic crises *J Lab & Clin Med* 35 721 1950
- 231 Smith L W and Conley C L Filter paper electrophoresis of human hemoglobin with special reference to the influence and clinical significance of hemoglobin C *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 93 94 1955
- 232 Smith E W and Conley C L Clinical features of the genetic variants of sickle cell disease *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 94 289 1954
- 233 Weens H S Cholelithiasis in sickle cell anemia *Ann Int Med* 22 182 1945
- 234 Winsor T and Burch G E The electrocardiogram and cardiac state in active sickle cell anemia *Am Heart J* 29 685 1945
- 235 Winsor T and Burch G E Rate of sedimentation of erythrocytes in sickle cell anemia *Arch Int Med* 73 41 1944
- 236 Winsor T and Burch G E Sickle cell anemia A great masquerader easily recognizable with routine use of diagnostic parameter *JAMA* 129 793 1940
- 237 Wintrobe M M The cardiovascular system in anemia with a note on the particular abnormalities in sickle cell anemia *Blood* 1 121 1946

OTHER HEMOGLOBINOPATHIES

- 238 Bingle J P Hughes E B and Prinkerd T A Haemoglobin H disease *Brit M J* 2 1363 1958
- 239 Chernoff A I On the prevalence of hemoglobin D in the American Negro *Blood* 11 907 1956
- 240 Chernoff A Minnich V Chongcharonsuk S Naitikom S and Chernoff R Clinical hematological and genetic studies of hemoglobin E *J Lab & Clin Med* 44 750 1954
- 241 Chernoff A I Studies on hemoglobin E *J Lab & Clin Med* 47 455 1956
- 242 Chernoff A I Smith C and Stunkamp H Homozygous hemoglobin D disease *J Lab & Clin Med* 48 795 1956
- 243 Diggs L W Kraus A P Morris D H and Rudnicki R P T Intracrythrocytic crystal in a white patient with hemoglobin C in the absence of other types of hemoglobin *Blood* 9 1172 1954
- 244 Hedenberg F Muller Eberhard U Sjölin S and Wranne L Haemoglobin H and inclusion body anemia in a Swedish family *Acta Paediat* 47 652 1958
- 245 Itano H A A third abnormal hemoglobin associated with hereditary hemolytic anemia *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 37 775 1951
- 246 Itano H A Berggren W R and Sturgeon P Identification of a fourth abnormal human hemoglobin *J Am Chem Soc* 76 2278 1954
- 247 Itano H A and Neel J V A new inherited abnormality of human hemoglobin *Proc Nat Acad Sci* 36 613 1950

- 296 Levine P Vogel P Katzin E M and Burnham L Pathogenesis of erythroblastosis fetalis Statistical evidence *Science* 94 371 1941
- 297 Mollison P L and Cutbush M A method of measuring the severity of a series of cases of hemolytic disease of the newborn *Blood* 6 777 1951
- 298 Mollison, P L and Cutbush M Haemolytic disease of the newborn Criteria of severity *Brit M J* 1 123 1949
- 299 Mollison, P L Survival of transfused erythrocytes in hemolytic disease of the newborn *Arch Dis Child* 18 161 1943
- 300 Mollison P L and Walker W Controlled trials of the treatment of haemolytic disease of the newborn *Lancet* 1 429 1952
- 301 Odell, G B Studies in kernicterus I The protein binding of bilirubin *J Clin Invest* 38 823 1959
- 302 Rautmann H Ueber Blutbildung bei fetaler allgemeiner Wassersucht *Beitr z path Anat* 54 332 1912
- 303 Wallerstein H Treatment of severe erythroblastosis by simultaneous removal and replacement of blood of the newborn infant *Science* 103 583 1946
- 304 Zuelzer W W and Cohen F ABO hemolytic disease and heterospecific pregnancy *Ped Clin North America* May 1957 p 400

ACQUIRED HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

- 305 Castle W B Disorders of the Blood In Sodeman W A Pathologic Physiology W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1956 p 762
- 306 Castle W B Ham T H and Shen S C Observations on the mechanism of hemolytic transfusion reactions occurring without demonstrable hemolysin *Tr A Am Phys* 63 161 1950
- 307 Coombs R R A Mourant A E and Race R R A new test for the detection of weak and incomplete Rh agglutinins *Brit J Exper Path* 26 253 1945
- 308 Crosby W H and Rappaport H Autoimmune hemolytic anemia I Analysis of hematologic observations with particular reference to their prognostic value A survey of 57 cases *Blood* 12 42 1957
- 309 Dacie J V The autoimmune hemolytic anemias *Am J Med* 18 810 1955
- 310 Dacie J V The Hemolytic Anemias Grune and Stratton New York 1954
- 311 Dameshek W and Schwartz S O Acute hemolytic anemia (acquired hemolytic icterus acute type) *Medicine* 19 231 1940
- 312 Davidsohn I and Spinner Wilma Immunohematological studies in hemolytic anemia *JAMA* 154 818 1954
- 313 Hayem G Sur une variete particuliere d'ictere chronique Ictere infectieux chronique splenomegalique *Presse med* 6 121 1896
- 314 Jandl J H Sequestration by the spleen of red cells sensitized with incomplete antibody and with metallo protein complexes *J Clin Invest* 34 912 1955
- 315 Kyle R A Kiely J M and Stickney J M Acquired hemolytic anemia in chronic lymphocytic leukemia and the lymphomas *Arch Int Med* 104 81 1959
- 316 Leavell B S and Thorup O A Personal observation
- 317 Lederer M A Form of acute hemolytic anemia probably of infectious origin *Am J M Sc* 170 500 1925
- 318 Rosenthal, M C Picotta A V Komninos Z H Goldenberg H and Dameshek W The autoimmune hemolytic anemia of malignant lymphocytic disease *Blood* 10 197 1955
- 319 Sacks M S Workman J B and Jahn E F Diagnosis and treatment of acquired hemolytic anemia *JAMA* 150 1556 1952
- 320 Wagley P F Shen S C Gardner F H and Castle W B Studies on the destruction of red blood cells VI The spleen as a source of a substance causing agglutination of the red blood cells of certain patients with acquired hemolytic jaundice by an antihuman serum rabbit serum (Coombs serum) *J Lab Clin Med* 33 1197 1948
- 321 Welch, C H and Dameshek, W Splenectomy in blood dyscrasias *New England J Med* 242 601 1950

- 270 Kaplan E and Zuelzer W W Erythrocytic survival studies in childhood. II Studies in Mediterranean anemia J Lab & Clin Med 36 517 1950
- 271 Lehmann H Inheritance of human haemoglobin Brit Med Bull 15 40 1959
- 272 Lichtman H C Watson R J Feldman I Ginsberg V and Robinson, J Studies on thalassemia J Clin Invest 32 1229 1953
- 273 Minnich V Na Nakorn S Chongchareonuk S and Kochaseni S Mediteranean anemia A study of 32 cases in Thailand Blood 11 1954
- 274 Neel J V and Valentine W N The frequency of thalassemia Am J M Sc 209 568 1945
- 275 Singer K Hereditary hemolytic disorders associated with abnormal hemoglobins Am J Med 18 633 1955
- 276 Sturgeon P Itano H and Valentine W N Chronic hemolytic anemia associated with thalassemia and sickling traits Blood 7 350 1952
- 277 Valentine W N and Neel J V Hematologic and genetic study of the transmission of thalassemia Arch Int Med 71 185 1944
- 278 Wintrobe M M Matthews E Pollack R and Dobyns B M A familial hemopoietic disorder in Italian adolescents and adults JAMA 114 150 1940

ERYTHROBLASTOSIS FETALIS

- 279 Abelson N M and Boggs T H Jr Plasma pigments in erythroblastosis fetalis Pediatrics 17 452 1956
- 280 Allen F H Jr and Diamond L K Erythroblastosis fetalis New England J Med 257 659 1957 257 705 1957 257 701 1957
- 281 Allen F H Jr and Diamond L K Prevention of kernicterus JAMA 155 1209 1954
- 282 Allen F H Jr Diamond L K and Vaughan V C III Erythroblastosis fetalis VI Prevention of kernicterus Am J Dis Child 60 779 1950
- 283 Brown A K and Zuelzer W W Studies on the neonatal development of the glucuronide conjugating system J Clin Invest 37 332 1958
- 284 Brown A K Zuelzer W W and Robinson A R Studies in hyperbilirubinemia II Clearance of bilirubin from plasma and extravascular space in newborn in infants during exchange transfusion Am J Dis Child 93 274 1957
- 285 Dameshek W Greenwalt T J and Tat H J Erythroblastosis foetalis (acute hemolytic anemia of the newborn) Am J Dis Child 60 571 1943
- 286 Danoff S Grantz Charlotte Boyer Audrey and Holt L L Jr Conversion of indirect to direct reacting bilirubin in vivo Science 127 759 1958
- 287 Darrow D C and Cary M K The serum albumin and globulin of newborn premature and normal infants J Pediat 3 573 1933
- 288 Diamond L K Blackfan K D and Baty J M Erythroblastosis fetalis and its association with universal edema of the fetus icterus gravis neonatorum and anemia of the newborn J Pediat 1 269 1932
- 289 Dunn H G Hemolytic disease of the newborn due to ABO incompatibility Am J Dis Child 85 655 1953
- 290 Ernster L Herlin, L and Zetterstrom R Experimental studies on the pathogenesis of kernicterus Pediatrics 20 647 1957
- 291 Hsia D Y Allen F H Jr Cellis S S and Diamond L K Erythroblastosis fetalis VIII Studies of serum bilirubin in relation to kernicterus New England J Med 247 668 1952
- 292 Kelsall C A Vos C H Kirk R L and Sheld J W The evaluation of cord blood hemoglobin reticulocyte percentage and maternal antiglobulin titer in the prognosis of hemolytic disease of the newborn Pediatrics 20 221 1957
- 293 Landsteiner K and Wiener A S Studies on an agglutinin (Rh) in human blood reacting with antithesis sera and with human isoantibodies J Exper Med 74 309 1941
- 294 Levine P Katzin E M and Burnham L Isoimmunization in pregnancy JAMA 116 825 1941
- 295 Levine P and Stetson R E Unusual case of intragroup agglutination JAMA 113 126 1939

- 346 Schiff L, Rich M L and Simon S D The haematopoietic principle in the diseased human liver *Am J M Sc* 198 313 1938
- 347 Wintrobe M M Relation of disease of the liver to anemia *Arch Int Med* 57 289 1936
- 348 Wintrobe M M and Shumacker H S Jr The occurrence of macrocytic anemia in association with disorder of the liver *Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull* 52 387 1933

HYPERSPLENISM

- 349 Dameshek W Hyperplenism *Bull N Y Acad Med* 31 113 1955
- 350 Doan C A and Wright C S Primary congenital and secondary acquired splenic panhematopenia *Blood* 1 10 26 1946
- 351 Doan C A Hyperplenism *Bull N Y Acad Med* 45 625 1949
- 352 Tullis J L Prevalence nature and identification of leucocyte antibodies *New England J Med* 258 589 1958

- 322 Vidal I, Abrami I and Bruck M Differentiation de divers types d'ictères hémolytiques par le procédé des hématies déplastmatisées *Presse méd* 15 641 1907
- 323 Vidal I, Abrami I and Bruck M Hémoralité d'origine des ictères hémolytiques recherches cliniques et expérimentales *Bull et mem Soc med hop Paris* 24 1354 1907
- 324 Young L L, Miller G and Christian II M Clinical and laboratory observations on autoimmune hemolytic disease *Ann Int Med* 35 507 1951

HEMOGLOBINURIA

- 325 Auditore J V and Hartmann R C Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria II Erythrocyte acetylcholinesterase defect *Am J Med* 27 401 1959
- 326 Crosby W H Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria A classic description of Paul Strübing in 1852 and a bibliography of the disease *Blood* 6 270 1951
- 327 Crosby W H Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria Relation of the clinical manifestations to underlying pathogenic mechanisms *Blood* 8 769 1953
- 328 Crosby W H and Dameshek W The significance of hemoglobinemia and associated hemosiderinuria with particular reference to various types of hemolytic anemia *J Lab & Clin Med* 38 829 1951
- 329 Crosby W H Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria A specific test for the disease based on the ability of thrombin to activate the hemolytic factor *Blood* 5 843 1950
- 330 Finch C A et al Iron metabolism The pathophysiology of iron storage *Blood* 5 963 1950
- 331 Gilligan D R, Altschule M D and Katersky E M Studies of hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria produced in man by intravenous injection of hemoglobin solutions *J Clin Invest* 20 177 1941
- 332 Ham T H Hemoglobinuria *Am J Med* 18 990 1955
- 333 Ham T H Chronic hemolytic anemia with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria *Arch Int Med* 64 1271 1939
- 334 Ham T H A Syllabus on Laboratory Examination in Clinical Diagnosis Harvard University Press Cambridge 1952 p 168
- 335 Mackenzie G M Paroxysmal hemoglobinuria *Medicine* 8 159 1929
- 336 Ross J F Hemoglobinemia and the hemoglobinurias *New England J Med* 233 691 732 1945
- 337 Wintrobe M M Clinical Hematology 4th Ed Lea and Febiger Philadelphia 1950 p 647

ANEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH CHRONIC LIVER DISEASE

- 338 Brown A Megaloblastic anemia associated with adult scurvy Report of a case which responded to synthetic ascorbic acid alone *Brit J Haemat* 1 345 1955
- 339 Goldhamer S M, Isaacs R and Sturgis C C The role of the liver in hematopoiesis *Am J M Sc* 168 193 1934
- 340 Higgins C M and Stasney J The peripheral blood in experimental cirrhosis of the liver *Folia haemat* 54 129 1936
- 341 Jandl, J H The anemia of liver disease Observations on its mechanism *J Clin Invest* 34 390 1955
- 342 King R B The blood picture in portal cirrhosis of the liver *New England J Med* 200 482 1929
- 343 Koszowski B J The occurrence of megaloblastic erythropoiesis in patients with hemochromatosis *Blood* 7 1182 1952
- 344 Movitt E R Megaloblastic erythropoiesis in patients with cirrhosis of the liver *Blood* 5 468 1950
- 345 Rosenberg D H Macrocytic anemia in liver disease particularly cirrhosis Observations on the incidence course and reticulocytosis with a correlated study of the gastric acidity *Am J M Sc* 192 58 1936

POLYCYTHEMIA VERA

Synonyms Primary Polycythemia Vaquez's Disease, Osler's Disease Polycythemia Rubra, Erythremia

Historical Vaquez in 1892 described the first instance of polycythemia that was not associated with pulmonary or cardiac disease.¹⁷ The second description of such a patient was published by Cabot in 1899.¹⁸ In 1903 Osler collected 8 cases, 4 from the literature and 4 of his own, and pointed out many features of the disease.⁴ In 1908 he clearly defined the disorder and discussed the course and prognosis as well as the therapeutic use of bleeding, oxygen, and irradiation of the spleen.¹⁹ Excellent comprehensive reviews of the disease have been written by Harrop,⁶ Lawrence, Berlin, and Huff²⁰ and Pike.²¹

PATHOGENESIS

The etiology of polycythemia vera is unknown. Because of the proliferation of all the cell lines in the bone marrow and the frequent transformation of polycythemia vera into leukemia, myelofibrosis, and other related syndromes, polycythemia vera has been considered to be a myeloproliferative disorder.^{1, 14, 22-24} According to this concept the cytoplasmic reticulum retains its potential for development into various cell lines and responds in different ways to unknown stimuli. The clinical course of the disease seems to be best explained by this hypothesis at the present time.

Because of the known development of polycythemia in response to anoxia, numerous attempts have been made to explain polycythemia vera by a marrow anoxia mechanism of some sort, but none has been satisfactory.^{1, 25} The greater frequency of leukocytosis and thrombocytosis as well as the finding of normal arterial oxygen saturation in polycythemia vera serve to differentiate it from anoxic polycythemia.¹⁹

The increased level of erythrocytes in polycythemia vera is due to increased production of cells rather than to an increased life span of the cells. Studies with radioactive iron showed that the plasma iron turnover in this disease is five times normal.² Studies on the life span of the cells have shown that it is normal,⁴ or that there is a dual population of cells with a normal span together with cells that have a very short life span.⁴ The stimulus for the increased erythropoiesis in this disease has not been identified but extracts of plasma from patients with polycythemia vera have been reported to stimulate erythropoiesis when injected into test animals.^{10, 41}

Polycythemia

AN INCREASE in red blood cells above the normal number may be *relative* or *absolute*. If the volume of fluid in which the red blood cells are suspended is reduced an increase in their concentration results. The number of cells per unit volume of whole blood is increased and this increase is reflected in the red blood cell count and the hematocrit. The total red cell mass remains unchanged. Such a condition of *relative* polycythemia exists in any situation where the plasma volume is reduced without a concomitant reduction in red cell mass. This relative polycythemia is most frequently associated with a shift or loss of body water and in such circumstances the red cell count and hematocrit determination are valuable aids in the recognition and quantification of such changes. In interpreting the hematocrit it must be remembered that osmotic changes associated with alterations of fluid volume may alter the volume of the red blood cell. Ingress or egress of water from the red cell in response to altered osmotic forces outside the cell may be sufficient to affect the hematocrit (Fig. 20). When this occurs the red blood cell count more accurately reflects the loss of plasma volume.

An *absolute* increase in red blood cell mass may occur either as the result of a physiologic response to tissue anoxia or in the pathologic state known as polycythemia vera. In the first instance the polycythemia is secondary to some recognized inciting cause while in the second the polycythemia is classified as "primary" since no inciting cause has been identified.⁸

POLYCYTHEMIA VERA

Synonyms Primary Polycythemia Vaquez's Disease, Osler's Disease Polycythemia Rubra, Erythremia

Historical Vaquez in 1692 described the first instance of polycythemia that was not associated with pulmonary or cardiac disease.¹⁷ The second description of such a patient was published by Cabot in 1899.⁸ In 1903 Osler collected 8 cases, 4 from the literature and 4 of his own and pointed out many features of the disease.¹⁸ In 1908 he clearly defined the disorder and discussed the course and prognosis as well as the therapeutic use of bleeding, oxygen and irradiation of the spleen.¹⁹ Excellent comprehensive reviews of the disease have been written by Harrop,²⁰ Lawrence, Berlin, and Huff²¹ and Pike.⁹

PATHOGENESIS

The etiology of polycythemia vera is unknown. Because of the proliferation of all the cell lines in the bone marrow and the frequent transformation of polycythemia vera into leukemia, myelofibrosis and other related syndromes, polycythemia vera has been considered to be a myeloproliferative disorder.^{9, 13, 22-24} According to this concept the cytoplasmic reticulum retains its potential for development into various cell lines and responds in different ways to unknown stimuli. The clinical course of the disease seems to be best explained by this hypothesis at the present time.

Because of the known development of polycythemia in response to anoxia, numerous attempts have been made to explain polycythemia vera by a marrow anoxia mechanism of some sort, but none has been satisfactory.²⁵⁻²⁸ The greater frequency of leukocytosis and thrombocytosis as well as the finding of normal arterial oxygen saturation in polycythemia vera serve to differentiate it from anoxic polycythemia.

The increased level of erythrocytes in polycythemia vera is due to increased production of cells rather than to an increased life span of the cells. Studies with radioactive iron showed that the plasma iron turnover in this disease is five times normal.²⁹ Studies on the life span of the cells have shown that it is normal,³⁰ or that there is a dual population of cells with a normal span together with cells that have a very short life span.³¹ The stimulus for the increased erythropoiesis in this disease has not been identified but extracts of plasma from patients with polycythemia vera have been reported to stimulate erythropoiesis when injected into test animals.³²⁻³⁴

Polycythemia

AN INCREASE in red blood cells above the normal number may be *relative* or *absolute*. If the volume of fluid in which the red blood cells are suspended is reduced an increase in their concentration results. The number of cells per unit volume of whole blood is increased and this increase is reflected in the red blood cell count and the hematocrit. The total red cell mass remains unchanged. Such a condition of *relative* polycythemia exists in any situation where the plasma volume is reduced without a concomitant reduction in red cell mass. Thus relative polycythemia is most frequently associated with a shift or loss of body water and in such circumstances the red cell count and hematocrit determination are valuable aids in the recognition and quantification of such changes. In interpreting the hematocrit it must be remembered that osmotic changes associated with alterations of fluid volume may alter the volume of the red blood cell. Ingress or egress of water from the red cell in response to altered osmotic forces outside the cell may be sufficient to affect the hematocrit (Fig. 20). When this occurs the red blood cell count more accurately reflects the loss of plasma volume.

An *absolute* increase in red blood cell mass may occur either as the result of a physiologic response to tissue anoxia or in the pathologic state known as polycythemia vera. In the first instance the polycythemia is secondary to some recognized inciting cause while in the second the polycythemia is classified as "primary" since no inciting cause has been identified.⁵⁸

The most common clinical manifestations are referable to the cardiovascular system. Complaints such as dyspnea on exertion, ankle edema, angina pectoris, palpitation, headache, dizziness, and intermittent claudication are present in about two thirds of the patients when first seen.⁴⁸

In about one third of the patients gastrointestinal symptoms such as epigastric pain, nausea, bloating, vomiting, and constipation are prominent. The incidence of duodenal ulcer demonstrable by x ray is reported to be 10 to 19 per cent.^{38, 49, 50} Both hematemesis and melena occur not infrequently and either may be the first manifestation of the disease. On occasion the patient's history of severe bleeding may be doubted because of the failure of the laboratory tests to demonstrate the degree of anemia suggested by the history.

Other symptoms occur much less often in polycythemia vera but are recognized as part of the disease. In some patients severe pruritus and night sweats are troublesome and constitute the main complaint. Patients are sometimes treated for "conjunctivitis" for a time before the underlying disease is recognized. Other less common complaints are those due to gout and those related to the genitourinary system such as hematuria, dysuria, and frequency.

On physical examination often the most striking feature is the appearance of the patient—a ruddy and florid face, telangiectasia of the cheeks and nose, and purplish cyanosis of the lips and ears. The appearance frequently suggests the diagnosis, but the countenance of the middle aged man who has spent most of his life out of doors and indulged freely in alcohol may be virtually indistinguishable. Marked reddening is often evident in the palms, conjunctivae, pharynx, and vaginal mucous membranes. Examination of the fundus frequently reveals retinal veins that are distended and dark purple in color. Hypertension is present in about half of the patients. The spleen is enlarged in about three fourths of the patients; it is usually firm and rarely extends as low as the umbilicus unless the disease has been present for some years.⁵¹ Late in the course of the disease, especially when leukemia or myelofibrosis has developed, the spleen may become greatly enlarged and fill most of the abdominal cavity. Hepatomegaly occurs in about one third to one half of the patients.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

The laboratory data in patients with polycythemia vera illustrate the involvement of all the marrow elements and not the red cells alone.^{1, 48, 54} The untreated patient typically has an erythrocyte count in the range of 6 to 10 million, a hemoglobin between 18 and 24 gm per 100 ml, and a hematocrit that ranges from 55 to 80 per cent.⁵ The total red cell mass is increased, but the plasma volume may be normal, slightly elevated, or even decreased.^{1, 5} The leukocyte count is usually elevated. In our series of 50 patients a range of 5400 to 88 000 per cu mm was found. 70 per cent of patients had counts higher than 10 000 per cu mm.⁴⁹ A figure comparable to

Most of the clinical manifestations of polycythemia vera can be explained by the alterations in the peripheral blood. There is a definite increase in total blood volume to two or three times the normal value that is due almost entirely to an increase in the total mass of circulating red cells. Associated with this increase in erythrocytes there is an increase in blood viscosity that may be five to eight times normal.^{6, 43} The increased blood volume and the slowed circulation in the congested capillaries are responsible for the plethoric appearance of the patient and the ruddy cyanosis which appears when the level of the non oxygenated hemoglobin in the capillaries rises above 5 gm. per 100 ml.^{1, 6} The increased blood volume and viscosity place an added load on the heart with the result that enlargement of the heart, congestion of the pulmonary vessels and evidence of cardiac decompensation may develop. These often improve markedly when the underlying disease is treated effectively. Vascular disease is present in many patients with this disease. The frequent occurrence of thrombosis in this disorder appears to be related to the presence of the vascular disease in association with the increased blood viscosity, decreased blood flow, and increased number of the blood platelets.

One of the puzzling features of polycythemia, a disease characterized by thrombosis, is the frequent occurrence of abnormal bleeding. The distention of the blood vessels has been considered a possible explanation.¹⁸ In addition, abnormalities in the quality of the blood clot and in clot retraction have been demonstrated. It has also been demonstrated that the presence of very large numbers of platelets interferes with the early stages of blood coagulation.¹¹ Still another factor that may be important is the occurrence of increased fibrinolysis that has been demonstrated in polycythemia vera but not in secondary polycythemia.⁶

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Polycythemia vera occurs oftener in males than in females, the ratio being about 13:1 or 2:1.^{16, 25, 38, 40, 6} The disease appears to be more common in Caucasians than in Negroes; in a series of 50 patients with polycythemia vera seen at the University of Virginia Hospital the ratio of Caucasians to Negroes was 24:1 while in the total hospital admissions the ratio of Caucasians to Negroes was 45:1.⁴⁹ Clinical manifestations of the disease appear most often between the ages of 40 to 60, though the disease has been reported in children.^{16, 38} In the authors' series the age at onset ranged from 21 to 68 years, but only 10 per cent of the patients were below the age of 40.⁴⁹

Most of the symptomatology of polycythemia vera is related to the increased blood volume, the associated vascular disease, and the tendency to hemorrhage and thrombosis.

The onset is usually insidious and the manifestations variable. Weakness, easy fatigue, irritability, and dizziness are common early complaints. At other times the onset is abrupt and the first indication of the presence of the disease is the occurrence of a catastrophe such as a gastrointestinal hemorrhage, myocardial infarction, or the development of hemiplegia.

13.2 years in patients treated with radiophosphorus and 6.7 years in patients treated with various methods other than P^{32} . Survival times in individual patients vary from a few months to 25 years.¹⁸ The commonest causes of death are thrombotic episodes, hemorrhage, leukemia, and other myeloproliferative states. In one series, 30 per cent died from thrombosis and 30 per cent from leukemia or some allied disorder.¹⁸ In Lawrence's series, the causes of death in 57 patients treated with P^{32} were as follows: chronic myelogenous leukemia, 11 (6 were acute terminally); cerebral hemorrhage, 7; coronary thrombosis, 8; congestive heart failure, 9; carcinoma, 8; postoperative deaths, 5; miscellaneous, 4; unknown, 5.³⁸ In our own series of 24 patients who died, 12 had received no form of irradiation therapy and 12 had received treatment with P^{32} or x-ray. The causes of death in the 12 who had received no irradiation were: heart failure or cerebrovascular accident, 8; postoperative hemorrhage, 1; carcinoma, 1; miscellaneous (peritonitis, multiple sclerosis, renal insufficiency), 3. The cause of death in 12 who had received P^{32} or x-ray were: heart failure or thromboses, 3; myelogenous leukemia (acute), 3; myeloid metaplasia, 2; miscellaneous (hepatic cirrhosis, unknown), 3.⁴⁹

Although the complications of thrombosis and hemorrhage are the most common serious developments in most patients with polycythemia vera, it is definitely established that leukemia, myelofibrosis, or some other myeloproliferative disorder develops in an appreciable number, perhaps 20 to 30 per cent. These complications are more likely to develop in patients with long survival times. If the incidence of these disorders is higher in patients treated with P^{32} , it is possible that the increased incidence is related to the longer survival of the patients so treated as well as to their exposure to some form of irradiation.



Figure 37. Extensive subcutaneous hemorrhage following dental extraction in a patient with polycythemia vera.

that of 74 per cent found in a much larger series.³⁸ Myelocytes and metamyelocytes are often present on the blood smear and nucleated red blood cells occur not infrequently. Platelet counts range from 100 000 to 1.5 mil per cu mm.⁴⁰ In one series 50 per cent of the platelet counts were above 400 000 per cu mm.⁴⁰ and in another 65 per cent were over 300 000 per cu mm.³⁸

Study of fixed sections of bone marrow is reported to show a characteristic pattern consisting of clumps of stem cells and early normoblasts in about 85 per cent of patients.⁷ Study of smears made from material obtained by aspirations was rarely helpful in our series since about half the marrows appeared to be normal and the remainder showed varying degrees of hyperplasia.⁴⁰

Other laboratory features of the disease are an increased basal metabolic rate, an increased level of uric acid, increased plasma iron turnover,³⁹ and normal arterial oxygen saturation.⁹

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

It has been pointed out that the natural history of polycythemia vera is virtually unknown since some form of therapy has always been available.⁹ Developments such as thrombosis, hemorrhage, and the occurrence of other myeloproliferative syndromes are so frequent that it is difficult to decide whether they should be considered as complications of the disorder or as incidents in its natural history.

A high incidence of vascular thrombosis is to be expected in a disease characterized by an increased blood volume, increased viscosity of the blood, and elevated numbers of platelets when the disease occurs in an age group in which vascular disease is common. The incidence of thrombosis is reported to be 22 per cent,⁸ 28 per cent,⁶³ and was found to be as high as 40 per cent in our own series.⁴⁰ Thrombosis probably occurs in any of the vessels but appears to be most common in the coronary, cerebral, mesenteric, retinal, and peripheral arteries and in the leg, retinal, and portal veins. The episodes of thrombosis are seen more often when there is inadequate control of the red cell mass and platelet level by therapy.

Hemorrhage is a frequent occurrence in polycythemia vera. An incidence of 16 per cent,⁶ 59 per cent,⁶³ and 30 per cent⁴⁰ has been observed. In our experience the most serious hemorrhages have been intracranial, gastrointestinal, and those occurring after various surgical procedures but extensive ecchymoses, hemarthroses, epistaxis, bleeding after dental extractions, and bleeding after minor technical procedures have also proved extremely troublesome.

Peptic ulcer is not uncommon in the disease and the incidence has been found to be from 10 to 14 per cent,⁹ 12 per cent,⁴⁰ and 19 per cent.³⁸ The incidence of gastrointestinal symptoms is higher from 17 per cent⁴⁰ to 25 per cent³⁸ and severe gastrointestinal hemorrhage occurs not infrequently.

The median survival time in polycythemia vera has been reported³⁸ to be

were once considered to be the treatment of choice such as benzol, Fowler's solution, phenylhydrazine, spray roentgen radiation, roentgen irradiation of the spleen and bones, phlebotomy, and a low iron diet. Some forms of therapy such as splenectomy, thyroidectomy, and oxygen inhalation never enjoyed much popularity because they were impractical, ineffective, and even dangerous. Numerous chemotherapeutic agents have been tried in polycythemia, and some such as nitrogen mustard, TEM, Colcemide, pyrimethamine (Daraprim), and 6-mercaptopurine have been found to be inferior to radiophosphorus, while at least one Myleran has not been fully evaluated. Bleeding, radioactive phosphorus, and chemotherapeutic agents are the therapeutic methods that are used most widely at the present time.

Venesection

Venesection is the oldest form of therapy for polycythemia vera. It is a means of reducing the blood volume promptly and often provides prompt symptomatic relief. Because of the development of undesirable symptoms when the blood volume is reduced too rapidly in middle-aged and elderly patients, it is desirable to remove only 500 ml of blood once or twice a week if the blood volume is to be reduced to normal by this method. Although phlebotomy is an effective means of correcting the blood volume in these patients, it is not a satisfactory method of treatment when used alone because platelet levels are not reduced and erythropoiesis is not depressed.

Radioactive Phosphorus

Radioactive phosphorus P^{32} was introduced as a method of treatment for polycythemia vera by Lawrence in 1938⁴⁰ and has many advantages for therapy. It can be administered orally or intravenously. It has a half life of 14.3 days and emits only beta rays which travel less than 0.7 cm in tissue.⁴¹ It is concentrated in tissues that have a high rate of phosphorus turnover, particularly the bone marrow, liver, spleen, and lymph nodes. In these tissues it produces ionization within the cells and halts cell division. Radioactive phosphorus depresses erythropoiesis, myelopoiesis, and platelet production, which results in a reduction of these elements in the circulating blood. Since radioactive phosphorus does not cause any significant increase in the destruction of mature erythrocytes, a significant decrease in the red cell count does not occur for two or three months.

The effectiveness of therapy with radioactive phosphorus is indicated by reports of the reduction in the incidence of thromboses in several large series. From 14.8 to 27.4 per cent in patients treated with conventional means exclusive of radiation to 2.7 to 4.2 per cent in patients treated with P^{32} .⁴² In another series the incidence of thromboses was 50 per cent in 32 patients treated with other forms of therapy and less than 5 per cent in 148 patients treated with P^{32} .⁴³ Comparison of the life expectancy revealed an increase from 7 years in patients treated with drugs, phlebotomy, and roentgen ray

DIAGNOSIS

In most patients with polycythemia vera the diagnosis is made without difficulty. The appearance of the patient, the splenomegaly, and the increases in the erythrocyte, leukocyte, and platelet counts are characteristic. Occasionally it is difficult to decide if polycythemia is present in plethoric appearing middle aged hypertensive men with borderline blood counts and it is not easy to determine whether a well established polycythemia is primary or secondary. Another problem arises when the leukocyte values are such that the distinction between chronic myelocytic leukemia and a "leukemoid reaction in polycythemia is not easily made.

If the hematocrit is 55 per cent and erythrocyte count is elevated to 5.8 to 6.0 mil per cu mm the possibility of an early polycythemia vera cannot be excluded in a middle aged man simply because splenomegaly, leukocytosis and thrombocytosis are absent. In such circumstances a determination of the blood volume is often helpful.

The distinction between primary and secondary polycythemia is usually not a problem because leukocytosis, thrombocytosis and splenomegaly do not usually occur in secondary polycythemia. In addition the presence of a cardiovascular abnormality or chronic lung disease is usually evident in the secondary type. In obscure problems determination of the arterial oxygen saturation is often decisive. As the arterial oxygen saturation is almost invariably over 90 per cent in polycythemia vera and is often below this figure when polycythemia is secondary to some condition that produces anoxia.

Although the presence of frank myelocytic leukemia, either acute or chronic, is easily recognized, a decision as to when polycythemia vera with a markedly elevated leukocyte count becomes transformed into chronic myelocytic leukemia may be virtually impossible since young cells of the myelocytic series appear in the peripheral blood in both circumstances. It has been reported that metabolic differences are demonstrable between the leukocytes in chronic myelocytic leukemia and those seen in polycythemia vera.⁶ These consist of differences in alkaline phosphatase activity, myeloid leukocyte glycogen, and blood histamine. These differences suggest that conditions that have been considered to be identical on morphologic grounds may be different metabolically. Until more is known about this interesting problem, often the best that one can do when faced with this differential diagnosis is to examine the patient periodically before making a decision.

TREATMENT

At the present time there is no cure for polycythemia vera. Therapy is directed toward reducing the increased blood volume, increased viscosity, and increased platelet counts. Since it has been recognized for many years that these abnormalities are responsible for the clinical manifestations of the disease, numerous methods of treatment have been introduced. One author lists 24 methods or agents that have been tried.¹⁸ Among these are many that

out hospitalization whenever possible. Because of the tendency to both hemorrhage and thrombosis that exists in polycythemia vera surgical procedures should be performed only if absolutely necessary. Prior treatment of the polycythemia reduces the likelihood of these complications but does not prevent them in all cases.

The aim of the treatment of polycythemia vera in our clinic is to keep the hematocrit below 50 per cent and the platelet count below 400,000 per cu mm. Initially patients are bled 500 ml. once or twice a week until the hematocrit approaches 55 per cent. Radioactive phosphorus is considered the treatment of choice and the patient is given a dose of 3.5 to 5 millicuries orally. The patient is then observed at monthly intervals. If the hematocrit rises appreciably during this interval phlebotomy is performed. At the end of four months if the desired results have not been obtained, a second dose of radiophosphorus of 2 to 4 millicuries is administered. It is unusual for a patient to need more than two courses of treatment to obtain an initial remission but should it be necessary he receives 2 or 3 millicuries after another four months observation. After the initial remission has been obtained patients are followed at regular intervals when possible the frequency depending on the severity and course of the disease.

Because of the uncertain danger of an increase in leukemia and other myeloproliferative disorders in patients treated with P^{32} and other forms of radiation, control of the disorder by phlebotomy and chemotherapeutic agents such as Myleran is attempted before resorting to radiation in patients less than 40 years of age. Should it be established conclusively that radiotherapy does not increase the incidence of leukemia and myelofibrosis or that even in the younger patients the risk of the development of these disorders is small compared to the beneficial effects of this therapy a distinction in the method of therapy based on the age and life expectancy of the patient would not be necessary. The same is true if the chemotherapeutic agents whose cellular action is very similar should prove to have late effects similar to those of irradiation. Therapy with roentgen rays is rarely used in polycythemia at the present but local therapy over the spleen is a helpful adjunct in patients in the advanced stages who have symptoms due to the marked splenomegaly.

SECONDARY POLYCYTHEMIA

A remarkable increase in total red blood cell mass may occur in any situation which results in tissue anoxia. Currently it is believed that as a consequence of oxygen deprivation some as yet unidentified oxygen sensitive

to 13.3 years in patients treated with P^{32} .³⁹ Splenomegaly and hepatomegaly also often respond in a gratifying manner to this form of therapy.

Radioactive phosphorus is administered either intravenously or orally. If given intravenously about 40 per cent of the dose is lost in the urine in 6 days, and if given orally about 20 per cent is lost in the feces and an additional 15 per cent is lost in the urine in the same period.¹⁸ It has been found that intravenous or oral doses of 15 millicuries do not alter the erythrocyte count in normal individuals.⁴⁰ The total dose that has been required to effect a remission has ranged from 2.3 to 21.3 millicuries. The initial dose is usually from 3.0 to 7.0 millicuries and most often from 4.0 to 4.5 millicuries.¹⁸ In about one half the patients a satisfactory remission follows the initial dose, but 40 per cent require a second treatment and 10 per cent require three treatments.¹ In one series the duration of remissions averaged about 2.5 years but sometimes they lasted as long as 10 years.¹⁸ In another report the average interval between courses was about 15 months; however, the greatest number of retreatments occurred in the first 6 to 10 months. After the patient had a satisfactory remission the interval between treatments increased to about 33 months.¹⁹

It has been strongly suspected that therapy with P^{32} and other forms of irradiation is associated with an increased incidence of leukemia, particularly the acute variety, and other myeloproliferative disorders.⁴¹⁻⁴⁷ Although this important matter is unsettled at the present time,⁴⁸ the many advantages of therapy with P^{32} would seem to make it the treatment of choice, certainly in patients above the age of 50 years, since the beneficial decrease in the incidence of thrombosis seems to outweigh by far the danger of the occurrence of leukemia or other allied disorders.

Chemotherapy

Nitrogen mustard (HN), triethylenemelamine (TEM), Colcemide and pyrimethamine (Daraprim) have been used in the treatment of polycythemia vera.^{17, 18, 49} All have a suppressive effect on the marrow, but the short duration of the remissions that occur and the difficulty in avoiding undesired toxic effects on the marrow have prevented their gaining an important place in therapy. An initial report of the results obtained with Myleran is more promising, since this preparation is less toxic than other chemotherapeutic agents and yet produced satisfactory reductions in the erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets.⁵⁰ The danger of these chemotherapeutic drugs as leukemogenic agents has not been determined.

Plan of Treatment

In the treatment of polycythemia vera it is important that the patient be kept ambulatory if possible. If the disease is even moderately severe, bed rest is dangerous for these patients because of the increased likelihood of thrombosis. For this reason patients with the disease should be treated with

If an individual is already compromised by lowered barometric pressure the occurrence of any chronic pulmonary disorder may be catastrophic. Marked polycythemia, severe cyanosis, pulmonary hypertension, and right heart strain may result.⁴⁴ Some degree of improvement usually follows removal to sea level.^{8, 45, 8}

Other Causes

In the preceding conditions polycythemia appears to be the result of decreased arterial oxygen saturation, which in some fashion causes the release of a humoral substance capable of stimulating erythropoiesis. Polycythemia also occurs in other conditions where the oxygen saturation is normal and the mechanism is unexplained. Among these are hypernephroma,^{21, 9} polycystic kidney disease,³⁰ hydronephrosis,¹¹ renal tuberculosis,⁵⁰ brain tumor,⁷ hydrocephalus,⁵¹ ovarian tumors, and uterine myomata.^{8, 2} The suggestion by Jacobson³³ that the kidney may be concerned with the production or metabolism of erythropoietin is interesting in light of the association of varied kidney disorders with polycythemia.

THE DI GUGLIELMO SYNDROME

(Erythremic Myelosis Erythroleukemia Erythroblastemia)

Originally described by di Guglielmo in 1923, the characteristic feature of this rare syndrome is marked proliferation of the nucleated red blood cells similar to that of the white cells in leukemia. Recent reports have emphasized that not only the erythroid cells but other cell lines as well are involved in the disorder.^{43, 8}

Dameshek^{13, 14, 1} has suggested that the di Guglielmo syndrome be considered together with such diseases as chronic granulocytic leukemia, polycythemia vera, and agnogenic myeloid metaplasia as a myeloproliferative disorder and that some undiscovered stimulus may affect all of the cell lines of the marrow to a greater or lesser extent and be responsible for the variable clinical findings characteristic of these disorders. In the early phase of the di Guglielmo syndrome red cell proliferation may be the only manifestation of the disorder, but if the patient survives myeloblastic proliferation becomes apparent and may predominate.

The clinical features of the di Guglielmo syndrome include normocytic normochromic anemia with extraordinary erythroblastic hyperplasia unaccompanied by a commensurate rise in reticulocytes. Atypical forms of nu

tissue releases the humoral substance erythropoietin¹⁹⁻²³ Increased erythropoietin is thought to cause an increase in the production of red blood cells by producing an expansion of the marrow volume.²⁹ In secondary polycythemia the increase in the red cell mass is often accompanied by a decrease in plasma volume while in primary polycythemia vera the plasma volume is usually normal. In most instances the polycythemia appears to be a physiologic response to decreased arterial oxygen saturation. This response like other homeostatic mechanisms may harm the organism instead of protecting it if sufficiently intense and prolonged. Excessive elevations of the red blood cell mass may produce sufficient alterations of the viscosity of the blood to cause circulatory embarrassment and increase the danger of thrombosis.⁴³

Cardiac and Vascular Malformations

Any cardiac or vascular lesion which results in a high grade veno arterial shunt may produce polycythemia. As the result of the mixing of venous and arterial blood inadequately oxygenated arterial blood reaches the peripheral tissues. An increase in erythropoietin is thought to occur and stimulate erythropoiesis. The subsequent polycythemia increases the oxygen carrying capacity of the blood and affords a measure of relief to the patient.

Pulmonary Disorders

Polycythemia occurs in some chronic pulmonary disorders where it appears to be a physiologic response to the decreased arterial oxygen saturation. The commonest pulmonary abnormalities that lead to anoxemia are

- 1 Perfusion of non aerated or poorly aerated alveoli.
- 2 Altered alveolar membrane characteristics interfering with gaseous exchange
- 3 Direct pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas

One end result of each of these conditions is decreased arterial oxygen saturation.⁴ In the first instance the blood flow is through poorly aerated or non aerated segments and there is inadequate exposure of the blood to oxygen. In the second instance the pulmonary segments are well aerated but the alveolar membranes have been so altered as to interfere with gaseous exchange between the alveoli and the capillaries. Direct pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas cause anoxia because the blood bypasses vessels in which gaseous exchange takes place.⁸

Low Barometric Pressure

Persons who reside at high altitude with lowered barometric pressure have a decreased alveolar oxygen tension which leads to incomplete arterial oxygen saturation. The polycythemia which occurs in response to the anoxia appears to bear a direct relationship to the severity of the oxygen deficit.²¹

Four months later the hematocrit had risen to 65 per cent erythrocyte count was 7.3 mil per cu mm and platelets 772,000 per cu mm. Five hundred ml of blood was removed by phlebotomy on two occasions to reduce the red cell count and the patient was given an additional 6.0 millicuries of P^{32} by the oral route. Two and one half months later the spleen had decreased markedly in size and extended only a single fingerbreadth below the left costal margin.

For the next eighteen months the patient's hematocrit remained between 48 and 50 per cent, platelets less than 500,000 per cu mm and leukocyte count between 9000 and 13,000 per cu mm. At the end of that period however it was found that her hematocrit had risen to 55 per cent, erythrocyte count to 6.6 mil cu mm, and platelet count was 1,200,000 per cu mm. The spleen had increased in size and once again extended to the level of the umbilicus. The patient was given another 4 millicuries of P^{32} by the oral route and four months later the hematocrit was 51 per cent and platelet count 500,000 per cu mm.

The patient then did well from a symptomatic point of view for the next two years despite the fact that the platelet count fluctuated and was some times greater than 1,000,000 per cu mm. During this time the hematocrit remained less than 48 per cent. Two and one half years after the third dose of P^{32} the hematocrit had risen to 58, erythrocyte count to 7.4, platelets were 1,200,000 per cu mm and the spleen had once again increased in size being 11 or 6 fingerbreadths below the left costal margin. At this juncture it was decided to institute therapy with Myleran and observe the effect on the course of the patient's disease. Phlebotomy once again reduced her hematocrit and the administration of Myleran 2 mg twice a day was initiated. The levels of the cellular elements in her peripheral blood were followed at weekly intervals and were satisfactory. After 50 days the Myleran was stopped and three months later the hematocrit was 46 per cent, platelet count 300,000, leukocyte count 9800 per cu mm. The spleen was still at the level of the umbilicus. The remission has lasted six months.

Comments As is true of the majority of patients with polycythemia vera this patient's initial symptoms appeared in middle age. The evidence of increased red blood cell mass, the presence of a markedly enlarged spleen and generalized marrow hyperplasia suggested the possibility of chronic myelogenous leukemia or polycythemia vera. The diagnosis could not be made with certainty on the initial visit. The first remission required 10 millicuries of P^{32} and lasted eighteen months. Following the administration of an additional 4 millicuries of P^{32} the patient's hematocrit returned to normal levels and she remained free of symptoms for thirty six months longer despite the fact that her platelet count was not adequately controlled. When the hematocrit values once again rose to abnormal levels it was decided to use the chemotherapeutic agent Myleran in an attempt to obtain a satisfactory reduction of erythrocytes, leukocytes and platelets. This was successful and for six months the hematologic values have remained within satisfactory limits.

nucleated red blood cells may be found in the peripheral blood and bone marrow. Some of the nucleated red blood cells appear to be megaloblastic in character but do not respond to the administration of vitamin B₁₂. There are a disproportionately large number of immature nucleated red blood cells which increase as the disease progresses.¹⁰ The white blood cell count is usually low or normal while the platelets are often diminished. It has been reported that careful inspection of blood and bone marrow smears will reveal myeloblastic as well as erythroblastic activity.¹¹

No therapeutic procedures have proved effective. The course is marked by a progressive anemia and leukemia frequently occurs as a terminal event.¹

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Case 1

This 53 year old white housewife enjoyed good health until 12 months prior to admission when she had a single profuse nosebleed. Six months later she had a fall and examining herself to ascertain its effects noted a non tender mass in the left upper quadrant of her abdomen. One month prior to admission she developed dyspnea and ankle edema. Examination by her family physician revealed splenomegaly and the patient was referred for investigation.

Physical Examination. The spleen extended almost to the level of the umbilicus and was moderately firm. The liver was palpable 2 fingerbreadths below the right costal margin. The remainder of the physical examination was non contributory.

Laboratory Studies. Erythrocyte count 5.2 mil per cu mm, hematocrit 47 per cent, leukocyte count 15,000 per cu mm, reticulocytes 0.2 per cent. Differential count (per cent): myelocytes 1, juvenile 1, bands 10, segmented 79, lymphocytes 4, monocytes 1, eosinophils 3, basophils 1. Platelet count was 426,000 per cu mm. Bone marrow examination revealed the marrow to be hypercellular with hyperplasia of all cell lines.

It was thought that this patient had either an early polycythemia vera or chronic myelocytic leukemia. Treatment was withheld pending further periodic examinations.

Treatment and Course. Six months later the diagnosis of polycythemia vera was evident. She had a very florid complexion, the spleen and liver were unchanged. The hematocrit was 59 per cent, leukocyte count 14,000 per cu mm, platelets 580,000 per cu mm. The hematocrit was reduced to 55 per cent after three phlebotomies over the next eight days and she was given 4.0 millicuries of P³² orally.

confusion followed by unconsciousness. She remained unconscious and died a few hours after admission. Death was attributed to an intracranial hemorrhage.

Autopsy showed extensive intracranial hemorrhage. There was evidence of old infarction of the myocardium and generalized arteriosclerosis. Marked splenomegaly and hepatomegaly were present. Microscopic examination of the liver, spleen and bone marrow disclosed chronic myelocytic leukemia.

Comment. The patient died at the age of 78, some ten years after the onset of her symptoms. Earlier in her illness she was thought to have myelocytic leukemia rather than polycythemia vera because the hematologic values were obtained after a massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Later in her course the diagnosis of polycythemia vera appeared to be well established. Subsequently the patient had many complications of this disease such as angina pectoris, intermittent claudication, cerebral thrombosis and post-operative bleeding. Her final episode was an intracranial hemorrhage. As is often the case it was difficult to determine whether these episodes were due to her blood dyscrasia or to the diabetes mellitus and arteriosclerosis which were present. It appeared likely, however, that the blood dyscrasia was a factor. The incidence of complications of this type has been reduced by treatment with radioactive phosphorus and had this agent been used the course of her illness might have been altered. Late in her course this patient also developed chronic myelocytic leukemia which was evident at autopsy. This development illustrates the unsettled problem of the relationship between polycythemia vera and myelocytic leukemia and the important question as to whether there is any relationship between irradiation therapy of polycythemia and the development of the leukemia.

REFERENCES

1. Abbatt J D, Chaplin H Jr, Durr J M M and Pitney W R. Treatment of polycythemia vera with radiophosphorus. Hematological studies and preliminary clinical assessment. *Quart J Med* 23:91, 1954.
2. Altschule M D, Volk M C and Henstell H. Cardiac and respiratory function at rest in patients with uncomplicated polycythemia vera. *Am J Med Sci* 200:478, 1940.
3. Berk L, Burchenal J H, Wood T and Castle W B. Oxygen saturation of sternal marrow blood with special reference to the pathogenesis of polycythemia vera. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 69:316, 1948.
4. Berlin N I, Lawrence J H and Lee H C. The life span of the red blood cell in chronic leukemia and polycythemia. *Science* 114:365, 1951.
5. Berlin N I, Lawrence J H and Gärland J. Blood volume in polycythemia as determined by P³² labeled red blood cells. *Am J Med* 9:747, 1950.
6. Björkman S E, Laurén C B and Nilsson I M. Serum proteins and fibrinolysis in polycythemia vera. *Scandinav J Clin & Lab Invest* 8:304, 1958.
7. Block M and Bethard W F. Bone marrow studies in polycythemia. *J Clin Invest* 31:618, 1952.
8. Burchell H H and Clagett O T. The clinical syndrome associated with pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas including a case report of a surgical cure. *Am Heart J* 34:151, 1947.
9. Cabot R C. A case of chronic cyanosis without discoverable cause ending in cerebral hemorrhage. *Boston Med. and Surg J* 141:574, 1899.

This patient's course has now extended over seven years during which time she has had no complications and has lived a normal life. The difficulty in obtaining a satisfactory reduction in the level of platelets is well illustrated.

Case 2

A 69 year old white housewife with known diabetes mellitus of fifteen years duration was admitted with a history of passing tarry stools for four days. The most significant abnormalities on physical examination were splenomegaly and hepatomegaly. On this admission the hemoglobin was 7.5 gm per 100 ml; erythrocyte count was 2.8 mil per cu mm and the leukocyte count was 22,000 per cu mm. Differential count (per cent): myelocytes 1, juvenile 1, bands 3, segmented 58, lymphocytes 15, monocytes 21, eosinophils 1. No nucleated red cells were seen. Occult blood was present in the stool but barium studies of the entire gastrointestinal tract revealed no intrinsic lesion. The sternal marrow was markedly hypercellular and the myeloid erythroid ratio was 3:1.

It was thought that the patient probably had chronic myelocytic leukemia with gastrointestinal hemorrhage. She was treated with blood transfusions and had a satisfactory response. Follow up examinations for several months revealed normal hemoglobin and red count values, leukocyte counts of about 17,000 per cu mm and a differential count similar to that noted in the hospital. Six months later the patient again had a severe gastrointestinal hemorrhage with melena and hematemesis. Following this episode the hemoglobin was 10.5 gm per 100 ml, red count 3.3 mil per cu mm, leukocyte count 36,000 per cu mm.

After recovery from this hemorrhage the red count rose to 6.3 million and hemoglobin to 17 to 18 grams and it was apparent that the diagnosis of polycythemia vera was the correct one. Her leukocyte count varied from 12,000 to 36,000 per cu mm. Because of the discomfort from the size of the spleen she received several courses of roentgen therapy over the spleen which resulted in a reduction of the splenic size as well as reduction in the leukocytes, hematocrit and red cell count.

When she was 73 years of age she had angina pectoris and intermittent claudication. During the next five years the erythrocyte cell count rose to 7.7 mil per cu mm on several occasions and phlebotomies were performed as indicated. She fell and suffered an intertrochanteric fracture of the hip. During the operation to pin the fracture there was considerable bleeding. Two days later a cerebral vascular accident occurred. The patient improved slowly and returned home. Six months later the patient's hematocrit was 45 per cent, erythrocyte count 4.7 mil per cu mm, but the leukocyte count had risen to 102,000 per cu mm. Differential count (per cent): myelocytes 5, juveniles 8, bands 7, segmented 70, monocytes 8, eosinophils 1. It was the clinical impression that the patient had developed leukemia. Three weeks later the patient was admitted to the hospital after an episode of mental

- 39 Lawrence J H Polycythemia Physiology diagnosis and treatment based on 303 cases Grune & Stratton New York 1953
- 40 Lawrence J H Nuclear physics and therapy Preliminary report on a new method for the treatment of leukemia and polycythemia Radiology 35 51 1940
- 41 Linman J W Bethell F H and Long M J Studies on the nature of the plasma erythropoietic factor(s) J Lab & Clin Med 51 11 1958
- 42 London I M Shemin D West R and Rittenberg D Heme synthesis and red blood cell dynamics in normal humans and in subjects with polycythemia vera sickle cell anemia and pernicious anemia J Biol Chem 179 463 1949
- 43 Martin W J and Bayrd, E H Erythroleukemia with special emphasis on the acute or incomplete variety Blood 9 321 1954
- 44 Mendlowitz M The effect of anemia and polycythemia on digital intravascular blood viscosity J Clin Invest 27 565 1948
- 45 Monge C Chronic mountain sickness Physiol Rev 23 166 1943
- 46 Monge C High altitude disease Arch Int Med 59 32 1937
- 47 Osler W Chronic cyanosis with polycythemia and enlarged spleen a new clinical entity Am J Med Sc 126 187 1903
- 48 Osler W A clinical lecture on erythraemia Lancet 1 143 1908
- 49 Personal observation
- 50 Pike G M Polycythemia vera New England J Med 258 1250 1297 1958
- 51 Primrose D A Polycythemia in association with hydrocephalus Lancet 2 1111 1952
- 52 Reinhard C H and Hahneman B The treatment of polycythemia vera J Chron Dis 6 332, 1957
- 53 Reissmann K R Studies on the mechanism of erythropoietic stimulation in parabiotic rats during hypoxia Blood 5 372 1950
- 54 Rosenthal N and Bassen F A Course of polycythemia Arch Int Med 62 603 1938
- 55 Schwartz B M and Stats D Oxygen saturation of sternal marrow blood in polycythemia vera J Clin Invest 28 736 1949
- 56 Schwartz S O and Critchlow J Erythremic myelosis Blood 7 765 1952
- 57 Schwartz S O and Ehrlich L The relation of polycythemia vera to leukemia A critical review Acta haemat 4 129 1950
- 58 Selzer A Chronic cyanosis Am J Med 10 34 1951
- 59 Stroebel C F Hall B E and Pease G L Evaluation of radiophosphorus therapy in primary polycythemia JAMA 146 1501 1951
- 60 Thompson A P and Marston J C W Polycythemia with fibroids Lancet 2 709 1953
- 61 Tinney W S Hall B E and Cniffin H L The liver and spleen in polycythemia vera Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 18 46 1943
- 62 Valentine W N Beck, W S Follette J H Mills H and Lawrence J S Biochemical studies in chronic myelocytic leukemia polycythemia vera and other idiopathic myeloproliferative disorders Blood 7 959 1952
- 63 Videbaek A Polycythemia vera Course and prognosis Acta med scandinav 138 179 1950
- 64 Wald, N Hoshino T and Sears M H Therapy of polycythemia vera with Myleran Blood 13 757 1958
- 65 Waserman L R Polycythemia vera—its course and treatment relation to myeloid metaplasia and leukemia NY Acad Med Bull 30 343 1934
- 66 Waserman B K Rohn H J Bournele B A and Myers W G The treatment of polycythemia vera with radioactive phosphorus Ann Int Med 34 311 1951

- 10 Contopoulos A N McCombs R Lawrence J H and Simpson M E Erythropoietic activity in the plasma of patients with polycythemia vera and secondary polycythemia *Blood* 12 614 1957
- 11 Cooper W M and Tuttle W B Polycythemia associated with a benign kidney lesion Report of a case of erythrocytosis with hydronephrosis with remission of polycythemia following nephrectomy *Ann Int Med* 47 1008 1957
- 12 Dameshek W and Henstell H H The diagnosis of polycythemia *Ann Int Med* 13 1360 1940
- 13 Dameshek W Some observations on polycythemia vera *Bull New England Med Center* 16 53 1954
- 14 Dameshek W Some speculations on myeloproliferative syndromes *Blood* 6 372 1951
- 15 Dameshek W and Baldini M The di Guglielmo syndrome *Blood* 13 192 1958
- 16 Damon A and Holub D A Host factors in polycythemia vera *Ann Int Med* 49 43 1958
- 17 Ellison H H Ginsberg V and Watson J Triethylcne melamine in polycythemia vera *Cancer* 6 327 1953
- 18 Erf L A Radioactive phosphorus in the treatment of primary polycythemia (vera) In Tocantins L M *Progress in Hematology* Vol 1 Grune & Stratton New York 1956 p 153
- 19 Erslev A Humoral regulation of red cell production *Blood* 8 349 1953
- 20 Fisher J M Bedell G N and Seelbach I M Differentiation of polycythemia vera and secondary polycythemia by arterial oxygen saturation and pulmonary function tests *J Lab Clin Med* 50 455 1957
- 21 Forssell J Polycythemia and hypernephroma *Acta med scandinav* 150 155 1954
- 22 Gottschalk R G and Furth J Polycythemia with features of Cushing's syndrome produced by leucomis *Acta haemat* 5 100 1951
- 23 Grant W C and Root W S Fundamental stimulus for erythropoiesis *Physiol Rev* 32 449 1952
- 24 Gurney C W Goldwasser E and Pan C Studies on erythropoiesis VI Erythropoietin in human plasma *J Lab & Clin Med* 50 534 1957
- 25 Hallock P Polycythemia of morbus crurulus (cyanotic type of congenital heart disease) *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 44 11 1940
- 26 Harrop G A Jr Polycythemia *Medicine* 7 291 1928
- 27 Holmes C R Kredel F E and Hanna C B Polycythemia secondary to brain tumor *South M J* 45 967 1952
- 28 Horwitz A and McKelway W P Polycythemia associated with uterine myomas *JAMA* 158 1360 1955
- 29 Huff R L Elminger P J Garcia J F Oda J M Cockrell M C and Lawrence J H Ferrokinetics in normal persons and in patients having various erythropoietic disorders *J Clin Invest* 30 1512 1951
- 30 Huff R L et al Plasma and red cell iron turnover in normal subjects and in patients having various hematopoietic disorders *J Clin Invest* 29 1041 1950
- 31 Hurtado A Merino C and Delgado E Influence of anoxemia on the hematopoietic activity *Arch Int Med* 75 284 1945
- 32 Isaacs H Treatment of polycythemia vera with Daraprim *JAMA* 156 1491 1954
- 33 Jacobson L O Goldwasser E Fried W and Ilizak I Role of kidney in erythropoiesis *Nature* 179 633 1957
- 34 Klein E Furber S Freeman C and Fiorentino H The effects of varying concentrations of human platelets and their stored derivatives on the recalcification time of plasma *Blood* 11 910 1956
- 35 Klemperer P Reticuloendotheliosis *N Y Acad Med Bull* 50 5-6 1954
- 36 Kurlle C R A case of Carabock's disease (polycythemia hypertonica) *M J Australia* 1 777 1954
- 37 Lawrence J H The control of polycythemia by marrow inhibition *JAMA* 141 13 1949
- 38 Lawrence J H Berlin N I and Huff R L The nature and treatment of polycythemia vera *Medicine* 32 323 1953

The defense of hemostasis can then be divided conveniently into a vascular and a biochemical phase. The vascular phase of hemostasis has received little attention when compared to that given the biochemical aspects. The response of the vessel to injury, the role of the vascular endothelium in repair, and the factors responsible for the maintenance of the functional efficiency of the vascular wall are little understood. The importance of the vessel wall in hemostasis is evidenced by the fact that the platelets may be reduced and the blood made biochemically incoagulable without the occurrence of purpura or hemorrhage. This is a promising area for research and deserves more emphasis.³⁹

On the contrary, a great deal of information has been gathered concerning the process of blood coagulation. It is with this phase of hemostasis that this section is primarily concerned. While much of our knowledge of blood coagulation is based on empiric laboratory tests, it has nonetheless found extensive clinical application. The theory of blood coagulation to be presented is but an expansion of the classic theory developed at the turn of the century. The various disorders of hemostasis will subsequently be presented within the same framework.

As an aid to the reader, a list of synonyms is given below.³⁹⁻⁴⁶

TERMS USED IN TEXT

SYNONYMS

Antihemophilic factor (AHF)

Antihemophilic globulin (AHG)
Thromboplastinogen A
Factor VIII
Platelet co factor I
Antihemophilic factor A

Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC)

Christmas factor (CF)
Factor IX
Autoprothrombin II
Antihemophilic factor B
Beta thromboplastin

Factor V

Accelerator globulin ACG
Pro accelerator
Labile factor
Co-factor of thromboplastin
AC globulin

Factor VII

Serum prothrombin conversion
accelerator (SPCA)
Pro-converter
Stable factor
Co thromboplastin
Prothrombin accelerator
Autoprothrombin I

Stuart Factor

Stuart Prower Factor
Factor X

Blood Coagulation.

Theory and

Clinical Applications

INTRODUCTION

IT IS NOT surprising that the events responsible for hemostasis have been so extensively studied. The process by which fluid blood becomes a solid clot has stirred the curiosity of many and the consequences of the failure to maintain hemostasis in a variety of disorders have lent further impetus to the study. New techniques for the investigation of these problems have recently become available. Application of these techniques has made possible the development of a useful concept of blood coagulation and led to a better understanding of many of the blood dyscrasias which result in abnormal bleeding. Advances in therapy have occurred as the result and the clinician is now better able to cope with these distressing disorders.

Hemostasis is the end result of a series of related but not necessarily interdependent events. Damage to a vessel wall is followed by immediate but temporary reflex vasoconstriction. In some manner as yet unknown platelets are attracted to the site of injury and agglutinate. During this process of agglutination a vasoconstrictor substance, serotonin, is released from the platelets. Serotonin affords a more prolonged vasoconstriction of the damaged vessel and causes vasoconstriction of other vessels in the immediate vicinity as well.

This initial defense of hemostasis is followed by the formation of a fibrin clot which effectively seals the vessel. Later the clot is replaced by connective tissue and undergoes dissolution. Repair is then complete.

of new factors necessary for the development of normal thromboplastin activity. The general design of these investigations is simple. An *in vitro* test system is employed. The defect of the plasma, serum, or platelets of the patient under investigation is identified by successive substitutions of the corresponding fraction of normal blood until the coagulation defect is corrected. Thus localized to either the plasma, serum, or platelets, the defect is further identified by comparing the defective fraction with comparable fractions from patients with known defects. In this way it can be determined whether the defect under study is the result of the deficiency of a known or previously unknown factor.

The result of such studies has been an expansion of the classic theory of coagulation.⁴⁶

PRESENT DAY THEORIES OF COAGULATION

For purposes of discussion the coagulation of blood may be considered to occur in three stages. During the first stage thromboplastin activity develops as the result both of the coagulation factors in the blood and the admixture of tissue juices and plasma. The blood (intrinsic) and tissue (extrinsic) systems responsible for the development of thromboplastin activity may be separated *in vitro* and shown to be independent and equally potent. There seems little doubt that they both function in the physiologic defense of hemostasis. The second stage of blood coagulation is the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin. The evolution of thrombin from prothrombin will occur in the presence of thromboplastin activity and calcium ions. The third stage of blood coagulation is the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin in the presence of thrombin. Each of these stages will be discussed separately.

The Development of Thromboplastin Activity

The first stage of blood coagulation may be outlined as follows:

Extrinsic (Tissue) System

Tissue Factors
Factor VII

or

Intrinsic (Blood) System

AHF Platelets
PTC PTA
Hageman Factor

+

+

Factor V
Stuart Factor
Ca⁺⁺

↓
Thromboplastin Activity

HISTORICAL ASPECTS

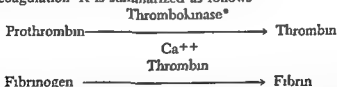
The current concepts of the process of coagulation are better understood when viewed in historical perspective. For details of the early history of the study of coagulation the reader is referred to the reviews by Gamgee in 1880⁵ and Howell in 1935²⁴.

In 1845 Buchanan¹⁸ noted that a substance was formed during clotting which when extracted from the clot would cause the coagulation of serous fluids. The substance which Buchanan had discovered was thrombin. In 1859 Denis⁸ demonstrated that a material which was the soluble precursor of the fibrin of the clot was present in the plasma. This protein was named fibrinogen. Schmidt,⁶ working along similar lines in 1872, concluded that the formation of fibrin was due to the interaction of fibrinogen and serum globulin in the presence of thrombin. He noted that the clot promoting substance thrombin could be extracted after a clot was formed but no such substance could be demonstrated in the liquid state. From this observation he concluded that thrombin was present in the circulating blood in an inactive or precursor state and the concept of prothrombin was evolved. In 1879 Hammarsten⁴⁰ using a better method of preparation of fibrinogen demonstrated that it could be converted to fibrin in the presence of thrombin without the participation of serum albumin or globulin.

In 1878 the great French hematologist Hayem³ first demonstrated that the platelets are distinct from leukocytes and suggested that they play a role in coagulation. He described the weblike fibrillar structure which occurred during the agglutination of platelets and postulated that this structure reacted with fibrinogen.

In 1890 Arthus and Page² proved that calcium was essential for the coagulation of blood. It was shown that substances which bind or remove calcium from the blood prevent coagulation.

At the turn of the century Morawitz⁹ was able to formulate the classic theory of coagulation. It is summarized as follows:



The classic theory which was simple and agreed with the known facts remained unaltered until recently. As additional factors essential to the process of coagulation were discovered expansion of the scheme became necessary but the classic theory remains the basis of most of the modern theories of coagulation.

The most important contributions to the theory of coagulation have been concerned with the development of thromboplastin activity. The exact nature of the material responsible for the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin is unknown and for purposes of discussion is designated as "thromboplastin activity".

Studies of patients with disorders of hemostasis have led to the discovery

* Thromboplastin activity

of storage at 4 °C but may fall off rapidly thereafter.¹⁶ Fresh frozen plasma retains its PTC activity for long periods.

Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA)⁴¹ was discovered as was PTC during investigation of persons with hemophilia like states. It is thought to be a globulin, and migrates with the beta globulins electrophoretically.^{61a} Since it is not consumed during coagulation it is present in both plasma and serum. Unlike PTC it is not adsorbed by inorganic precipitating compounds and is present in BaSO₄ adsorbed plasma. PTA activity persists in fresh frozen plasma for at least two years and for up to four months in plasma stored at room temperature.⁹

The Hageman factor was recognized when a patient was discovered whose blood did not coagulate in a normal period of time on contact with a glass surface. The patient had no clinical disorder of coagulation. Hageman factor is not adsorbed when plasma is adsorbed with BaSO₄, nor is it consumed during coagulation.^{10, 60} It has been suggested recently that the Hageman factor may play a role in the initiation of the clotting process. Inhibitors in the blood are believed to keep the factor in an inactive state. Exposure to glass activates the Hageman factor which may initiate clotting. The active factor is then enzymatically destroyed stopping its action.⁹

The platelets contribute to the early phase of coagulation in the intrinsic system.^{13, 81} The disruption of the platelets and subsequent release of their granules seem of great importance. The active material in the granules is thought to be ethanolamine phosphatide. Platelets also carry serotonin (5 hydroxytryptamine) which is capable of bringing about vasoconstriction. The role of this material in hemostasis however is not completely defined.^{41, 8}

The above named factors are now known to play a role in the early phase of the formation of thromboplastin activity in the intrinsic system. New factors will likely continue to be isolated and old factors redefined resulting in a better understanding of coagulation.

Additional Factors From this point the extrinsic (tissue) and the intrinsic (blood) systems follow a common pathway resulting in the development of thromboplastin activity. Additional factors are necessary for either system to proceed.

Factor V is probably formed in the liver but is not vitamin K dependent. It is found only in the plasma as it is consumed during the coagulation of blood. The time at which it enters the coagulation scheme has been investigated,³ and it seems to play an important part in the later phases of thromboplastin formation. Factor V is not adsorbed by inorganic precipitating compounds and remains in BaSO₄ adsorbed plasma. It migrates between the beta and gamma globulins on filter paper electrophoresis.¹

The Stuart factor^{9, 42} has but recently had its identity established. It is found in the serum as it is not consumed during coagulation. It is adsorbed by inorganic precipitating compounds and is relatively heat stable. The Stuart factor has no doubt been confused in the past with Factor VII since the two have many properties in common.

The two systems capable of developing thromboplastin activity are initially distinct but utilize a common final pathway. Both systems develop equally potent thromboplastin activity though the rate of its development is more rapid in the extrinsic system.¹²

The Extrinsic System The extrinsic system requires a source of tissue factors. All tissues probably contain the factors essential to the development of thromboplastin activity and contribute to the physiologic defense of hemostasis. Brain or lung tissue is generally used as a tissue source in the performance of coagulation tests. For many years it was thought that these tissues contained one active principle but investigation has now revealed that they contain a complex of heat stable and heat labile fractions.⁴⁶ It is well to recognize that the nature of this complex is not completely understood and that it is in all probability the end result of a series of chemical and enzymatic reactions.

Factor VII is one of the plasma factors essential for the development of thromboplastin activity from a tissue source. This factor is apparently formed in the liver and like prothrombin is dependent on vitamin K for its continued production. Factor VII is not consumed during the coagulation of blood and is found in both plasma and serum. It is adsorbed by inorganic precipitating compounds (BaSO_4 , etc.) and is relatively heat stable.⁵ Factor VII behaves as a beta globulin on electrophoresis. It is not considered to play any role in the production of thromboplastin activity by the intrinsic system.^{2, 36, 51}

The remaining factors necessary to the development of thromboplastin activity by the extrinsic system are essential to the intrinsic system as well. They will be discussed following a description of those factors unique to the intrinsic system.

The Intrinsic System Among the factors essential for the intrinsic system is the antihemophilic factor (AHF)^{13, 71} so named because a deficiency of this factor is responsible for the bleeding diathesis in classic hemophilia. It is a globulin but the site of its production is unknown. AHF is relatively short lived in the body with a half life on the order of 8 to 24 hours. It is consumed during coagulation and is therefore found only in the plasma.¹² AHF is not adsorbed by the inorganic precipitating compounds and is present in BaSO_4 adsorbed plasma. The activity of AHF in plasma or whole blood diminishes rapidly on storage under standard blood bank conditions but will persist when fresh frozen plasma is stored at -30°C .⁹ It is relatively heat stable. AHF has not as yet been obtained in pure form.

Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) was discovered during the investigation of persons with hemophilia like bleeding disorders.^{3, 4, 11, 13} This factor unlike AHF is not consumed in coagulation and is found both in plasma and serum. It is adsorbed by organic precipitating compounds and is not present in BaSO_4 adsorbed plasma. Though PTC is relatively heat labile it fares somewhat better on storage at 4°C than does AHF.³ PTC activity can still be demonstrated in near normal amounts after two weeks.

It will be recalled that the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin in the final phase of coagulation was recognized in 1859 by Denis when he demonstrated the existence of fibrinogen.

Fibrinogen is formed in the liver and is present in the blood in a concentration of 300 mg per 100 ml. Its molecular weight is 450,000 and it is available in a highly purified form.

Fibrin is formed when thrombin is added to fibrinogen.^{6, 43, 46, 63} Thrombin has the ability to split arginylglycine bonds of the fibrinogen molecule to form a monomer of fibrin and two peptides A and B.²⁷ Polymerization of fibrin occurs independently of the presence of thrombin to form a fibrin polymer. Physiologic fibrin is then formed through the action of another plasma substance at present undefined⁴² in the presence of Ca^{++} ions. The clotting time of fibrinogen is inversely proportional to the concentration of thrombin.

The schematic diagram of the three stages of blood coagulation may now be gathered together and considered as a whole.

Extrinsic (Tissue) System

Tissue Factors
Factor VII

or

Intrinsic (Blood) System

AHF Platelets
PTC PTA
Hageman Factor

+

+

Factor V
Stuart Factor
 Ca^{++}

Prothrombin

Thromboplastin Activity

Thrombin

Ca^{++}

Fibrinogen

Thrombin

Fibrin Monomer + Peptides A & B

Fibrin Polymer

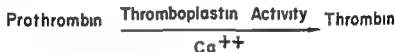
Fibrin
Stabilizing Factor
 Ca^{++}

Physiological Fibrin

Calcium ions are necessary for the development of thromboplastin activity in concentrations of between 11 and 20 mg per 100 ml. Marked prolongation of coagulation time occurs only when the calcium is below 2.5 mg per 100 ml and these levels are not seen clinically. The effectiveness of oxalates and citrates as anticoagulants depends on their ability to bind calcium.

The Conversion of Prothrombin to Thrombin

The second stage of blood coagulation may be outlined as follows



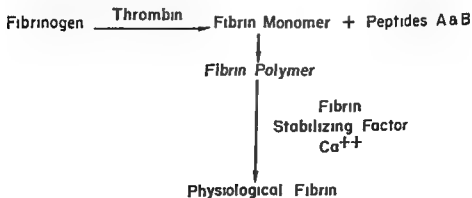
The conversion of prothrombin to thrombin is brought about in the presence of thromboplastin activity and Ca^{++} ions.⁶

The existence of prothrombin was suspected by Schmidt in 1892 and since that time this material has been extensively studied.⁶ Prothrombin has a molecular weight of 62 700.³⁸ Eighteen amino acids and hexosamine have been identified in the molecule. Glutamic acid, aspartic acid, and arginine make up approximately 33 per cent of the protein nitrogen. On electrophoresis, prothrombin behaves as an alpha 1 globulin. It is formed in the liver and is dependent on adequate intake of vitamin K for its production.

Thrombin is quite similar to prothrombin in its amino acid content and the amount formed in the presence of thromboplastin activity and Ca^{++} varies directly with the amount of prothrombin available. Thrombin is not present in circulating blood. It is the material found in shed blood which was shown capable of clotting fluid from serous cavities by Buchanan in 1842. The molecular weight of thrombin is 40 000.³⁴ A unit of thrombin is defined as that amount of thrombin necessary to clot 1 ml of standard fibrinogen solution in 15 sec at 28°C. Thrombin has been highly purified. Some of the preparations contain 12 000 units/mg N.^{6a}

The Conversion of Fibrinogen to Fibrin

The final stage of blood coagulation may be considered to occur thus



Recent evidence^{10 4 48} indicates that heparin acts *in vivo* and *in vitro* by interfering with the development of thromboplastin activity. This is suggested by the fact that neither the antihemophilic factor nor Factor V is consumed in its presence. There is also direct interference with thromboplastin activity at higher concentrations. This antithromboplastin activity may be the main mode of action of heparin, though it is known to have an antithrombin effect as well in the presence of albumin.²

FIBRINOLYSIS

The fibrin clot which is the end product of coagulation of blood must be removed once its function has been served. It is thought that the proteolytic enzyme plasmin (fibrinolysin) is responsible for the destruction of the fibrin clot. The mechanism by which the inert form of plasmin (plasminogen) is converted to the active enzyme probably entails a number of steps and is not completely understood.⁶ It is known to occur spontaneously and in response to fear, exercise, and trauma.⁴ It has been suggested that certain types of lipids present in the plasma may affect the mechanism.⁶³

EXAMINATION OF THE PATIENT WITH HEMORRHAGIC DIATHESIS

The most accurate clinical diagnosis in the case of hemorrhagic diathesis is reached when a specific defect is demonstrated and its cause determined. To attain this goal, special laboratory techniques are often required in the course of the diagnostic examination which begins when the patient consults his physician because of abnormal bleeding. As with any diagnostic problem, however, the physician notes the character of the symptoms and signs, then proceeds in an orderly manner to a consideration of the various disorders known to produce such complaints. With constant review of the evidence collected during the course of his examination, the physician is able to exclude certain disorders while pursuing others with increased interest. Final identification of the cause of the complaint allows institution of rational therapy.

History

It is sometimes difficult to establish whether a particular patient has a hemorrhagic diathesis or not. The answer may be obvious if the patient presents with purpura or hemarthroses, but may be elusive when a patient with a history of "easy bruising" is to be evaluated prior to elective surgery. The presence of a hemorrhagic diathesis is best demonstrated by the history, as results of laboratory tests are often variable during the course of these disorders. A history of abnormal bleeding is far more significant than a battery of negative laboratory tests.

No theory of blood coagulation may be considered fact until the chemical reactions responsible for the coagulation of blood are elucidated. The one presented is but an expansion of the classic theory and remains empiric. Deletions or additions must be made as old factors are reconsidered and new factors make their appearance. Despite its defects this theory serves as a useful clinical and laboratory guide.

PHYSIOLOGIC ANTICOAGULANTS AND FIBRINOLYSIS

The mechanisms responsible for keeping the blood fluid within the vascular system have not been clearly defined. It seems reasonable that there must be a delicate balance between those forces tending to produce coagulation and those tending to inhibit it. There must also be measures by which the body can dispose of a clot once repair of a vessel is complete. Failure of the blood to remain fluid within the vascular system results in a local thrombosis which may then be the source of emboli to other parts of the vascular system. A thrombosis may bring sudden death to any patient forced to inactivity by disease, surgery, or childbirth. Studies of this aspect of coagulation are of considerable importance in all fields of medicine and there are few fields in which new methods of approach are more urgently needed.

Antithrombin

Thrombin has been noted to be an extremely potent proteolytic enzyme and must be removed or in some manner neutralized following physiologic coagulation or all of the blood in the body would soon be clotted. There are one or more substances which may bring about progressive inactivation of thrombin. Partial purification of one such substance⁴⁴ has revealed it to be a globulin. This antithrombin forms a stable compound with thrombin which has been termed metathrombin. Another antithrombin is thought² to be present in the albumin fraction of the serum. The action of this latter substance is enhanced by heparin.

Thrombin is also adsorbed by fibrin and thus inactivated. Still other antithrombin activities have been postulated.⁴⁵

Heparin is a mucopolysaccharide which is similar to the chondroitin sulfuric acid of cartilage. It was isolated from the liver of dogs and contains large quantities of glucuronic acid (26 per cent) and glucosamine (23 per cent).² Heparin has not been isolated from tissues of the human body and its presence in the circulating blood of man is disputed.

Heparin is used clinically as an anticoagulant and its action may be quantitatively neutralized by protamine.⁴⁶ It is interesting that this reaction with protamine was discovered by investigators searching for a material to prolong the action of heparin. They chose protamine because of its action in slowing the release of insulin from subcutaneous depots.

Recent evidence³⁰⁻⁴² indicates that heparin acts *in vivo* and *in vitro* by interfering with the development of thromboplastin activity. This is suggested by the fact that neither the antihemophilic factor nor Factor V is consumed in its presence. There is also direct interference with thromboplastin activity at higher concentrations. This antithromboplastin activity may be the main mode of action of heparin, though it is known to have an antithrombin effect as well in the presence of albumin.⁵³

FIBRINOLYSIS

The fibrin clot which is the end product of coagulation of blood must be removed once its function has been served. It is thought that the proteolytic enzyme plasmin (fibrinolysin) is responsible for the destruction of the fibrin clot. The mechanism by which the inert form of plasmin (plasminogen) is converted to the active enzyme probably entails a number of steps and is not completely understood.⁵ It is known to occur spontaneously and in response to fear, exercise, and trauma.⁴ It has been suggested that certain types of lipids present in the plasma may affect the mechanism.⁵³

EXAMINATION OF THE PATIENT WITH HEMORRHAGIC DIATHESIS

The most accurate clinical diagnosis in the case of hemorrhagic diathesis is reached when a specific defect is demonstrated and its cause determined. To attain this goal, special laboratory techniques are often required in the course of the diagnostic examination which begins when the patient consults his physician because of abnormal bleeding. As with any diagnostic problem, however, the physician notes the character of the symptoms and signs, then proceeds in an orderly manner to a consideration of the various disorders known to produce such complaints. With constant review of the evidence collected during the course of his examination, the physician is able to exclude certain disorders while pursuing others with increased interest. Final identification of the cause of the complaint allows institution of rational therapy.

History

It is sometimes difficult to establish whether a particular patient has a hemorrhagic diathesis or not. The answer may be obvious if the patient presents with purpura or hemarthroses, but may be elusive when a patient with a history of "easy bruising" is to be evaluated prior to elective surgery. The presence of a hemorrhagic diathesis is best demonstrated by the history, as results of laboratory tests are often variable during the course of these disorders. A history of abnormal bleeding is far more significant than a battery of negative laboratory tests.

The history obtained from a patient suspected of having a bleeding diathesis should begin with a detailed review of the events of his birth and early childhood. Many disorders of hemostasis are familial and manifest soon after delivery. Specific inquiry should be made as to the occurrence of excessive bleeding from the umbilical cord or following circumcision. Prolonged bleeding or excessive bruising in the wake of minor trauma should be regarded with suspicion. Tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy are challenges to which many children are subjected and to which a child with a hemorrhagic diathesis may respond abnormally. Occasional epistaxis is unusual in childhood but repeated or severe epistaxis is a cause for concern. Loss of the first teeth during childhood is often accompanied by slight bleeding but persistent bleeding is evidence in favor of a hemorrhagic diathesis.

On reaching adult life the hemostatic defenses of the patient continue to be challenged. The female patient may note excessive menstrual bleeding. Pregnancy and subsequent delivery further test hemostasis. In the event that excessive bleeding occurs with delivery or menstruation effort should be made to determine whether some obstetric or endocrine condition rather than a defect in hemostasis could be responsible for the bleeding. Minor cuts and scratches sustained in the kitchen or garage constantly test the efficiency of hemostasis. Operative procedures constitute important diagnostic trials of hemostasis and the result of each should be recorded. The oozing of blood from the gums after brushing the teeth occurs occasionally in normal persons but is of significance if severe or persistent. Men are daily exposed to minor razor nicks and will remember excessive bleeding because of the inconvenience it causes. It is clear that the most important tests of hemostasis are those afforded by the stress of day to day life about the home or while at work. The results of these tests are available to the physician for the asking.

The family history is of paramount importance in determining if the defect is congenital or acquired. It is essential to discover whether any members of the patient's family are known to be "bleeders." If it appears likely that others do have a hemorrhagic diathesis the physician should then examine as many members of the family as are available. This is important not only to the patient at hand but for purposes of counseling members of the family group. Such studies will allow the physician the opportunity of contributing to the general understanding of the genetic mechanisms involved.

The onset of abnormal bleeding at birth or during infancy is strong evidence that the disorder was genetically transmitted and a negative family history does not rule out the possibility. Some disorders of coagulation are transmitted by genes that are autosomal recessives and the patient must be homozygous for the abnormal gene in order that its presence be clinically apparent. The child in question may be the first member of the family homozygous for the abnormal gene or may represent a mutation. The patient

may be assumed to have an acquired hemorrhagic diathesis if he has reached adult life before the onset of abnormal bleeding and has a negative family history

Physical Examination

Once it is established that the patient has a defect in hemostasis it is important to determine what phase of hemostasis is defective and if the hemorrhagic diathesis is of the acquired type the nature of the underlying disease. The physical examination with particular reference to the characteristics of the abnormal bleeding will usually provide helpful information.

A disorder of the vascular phase of hemostasis is suggested by the finding of petechiae, ecchymoses and superficial bruising. Characteristically these lesions are found in the skin of the extremities and over pressure points. The most common sites are the lower legs and ankles but the forearms, wrists and buttocks are frequently involved. Petechiae may also be seen in the mucous membranes of the mouth and on ophthalmoscopic examination of the retina. The ecchymotic lesions of senile purpura are located over the dorsum of the hands and feet where there is but scant subcutaneous tissue to provide support for the vessels. The occurrence of purpuric lesions only in the skin of the hands, feet and ears suggests the presence of a cold precipitable protein or cold agglutinin as these areas are most subject to exposure to the elements. Petechial hemorrhages widely scattered over the trunk as well as the extremities may be the result of a rickettsial, bacterial or viral infection. A clue as to the etiology of the purpura may be found in the associated dermatologic lesions. The Schoenlein-Henoch syndrome is characteristically associated with a variety of skin lesions and erythema, edema and necrosis of the skin have all been noted. The presence of eczema, hives or wheals may indicate that an allergy is the inciting cause of the purpura while the finding of purplish red infiltrations of the skin associated with petechiae and ecchymoses might point to a leukemic process.

A disorder of blood coagulation is suspected in the presence of joint hemorrhage, large hematomas and post-traumatic hemorrhage. The joint into which bleeding has occurred is painful and swollen and the presence of fluid is usually demonstrable. Later there may be ankylosis and residual bone destruction. All joints should be carefully examined for evidence of prior hemorrhage. Hematomas may develop at any site but occur most frequently in those parts of the body exposed to trauma. Truly spontaneous hemorrhage is very rare but the amount of trauma necessary to produce hemorrhage may be slight indeed. It has been reported, for example, that hemorrhage into a vocal cord may occur while a patient is singing. Common locations of deep hematomas are the tongue, neck, buttocks and extremities. The persistence of bleeding following operative or accidental trauma or its recurrence should alert the physician to the possibility of a bleeding dyscrasia.

Other details of the physical examination are also important. Ophthalmoscopic examination of the retina may reveal retinopathy compatible with the presence of leukemia, thrombocytopenia, anemia, or polycythemia. Of these, only the lesions of leukemia are specific. The perivascular sheathing of the retinal veins seen in this disorder is thought to represent collections of leukocytes. Subhyaloid flame shaped or punctate hemorrhages may be seen in patients with severe anemia or thrombocytopenia. Distention of the veins and a diffuse plethora of the retina are often present in polycythemia. The presence of hemorrhagic lesions with pale centers is suggestive of endocarditis, though similar lesions may occur in anemia and in tuberculosis.

The gums of patients with leukemia may be swollen and oozing blood. Ulcerations of the buccal mucosa and posterior pharynx are also commonly associated with this disease. The mouth is also a frequent site of the lesions of hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia.

Laboratory Examination

Following completion of the clinical examination of the patient, the physician must turn to the laboratory for further information as to the nature of any defect in hemostasis which he has uncovered. It is important that he understand just what information laboratory tests do and do not afford. The tests which are used to identify defects in hemostasis are empiric. The reagents used in the performance of the tests are not pure and the reactions involved are largely unknown. Their usefulness is directly related to the experience of the technical staff who must perform the tests and the ability of the physician to interpret them.

The technical staff must be familiar with the range of normal results in their own laboratory. Results considered to be within the normal range in one laboratory may not be so considered in another. The constant use of normal controls is essential if meaningful results are to be obtained. The physician should become thoroughly familiar with the laboratory tests available to him. He should know something of the nature and purity of the reagents used, the technique of performing the tests, and the calculations used to derive the results recorded in the chart. He will then be able to interpret correctly the results of these empiric procedures and so obtain much useful information.

The platelet count, bleeding time, tourniquet test, and estimation of retraction all measure the adequacy of the vascular phase of hemostasis. The platelet count is quantitative and affords information as to the number of circulating platelets.¹ The factor used in calculating the result of the indirect count is from 2500 to 5000 and that used in the direct count from 1000 to 1500. A variation of 10 platelets counted by either method may result in a difference of 10,000 to 50,000 platelets per cubic millimeter being recorded in the chart. A careful examination of the peripheral blood smear

often affords as much information as the quantitative enumeration of the platelets

The *bleeding time* is designed to test the response of small vessels to injury. It is immediately apparent that variations in the thickness of the skin and the distribution of the vessels combine to prevent uniformity of the test from patient to patient or indeed in the same patient from day to day. It is likely that the Ivy method of obtaining the average bleeding time of three uniform punctures of the skin of the inner surface of the forearm has some advantage over that obtained from the more commonly used single ear lobe puncture. Again it should be pointed out that the reliability of this test is directly related to the experience of the person doing it. False positive as well as false negative results may be obtained.

The *tourniquet test* is perhaps less reliable than either the platelet count or the bleeding time. Designed to test the response of the small vessels to stress its reproducibility is depressingly rare. Minor variations from normal are unreliable and major variations can in many instances be predicted in advance. When it seems obvious that the tourniquet test will be positive the performance of the test with the attendant discomfort to the patient is perhaps unwise.

Both the speed and completeness of *clot retraction* have been correlated with the quantity and quality of the platelets in the blood. In addition to reflecting alterations in platelet number and function clot retraction is affected by the red blood cell volume. Clot retraction is also influenced by certain disease states among which are multiple myeloma, pneumonia and jaundice.^{1, 47}

The one stage *prothrombin time* is used to reveal deficiencies of those factors essential to the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin in the presence of *tissue* thromboplastin activity. The factors which influence the results of the test are Factor V, Stuart factor, Factor VII and prothrombin. Since the end point of the test is the formation of a fibrin clot a deficiency of fibrinogen will also be revealed. This test, despite its lack of specificity, still is of great clinical importance.⁵

The *coagulation time* is another non specific test which measures the over all effectiveness of blood coagulation.⁴⁸ It is a rather insensitive test and moderate abnormalities of the first stage of blood coagulation may go undetected. It is most accurately performed by the Lee and White four tube method. Care should be taken that an admixture of tissue juices with the blood does not occur during venipuncture.

The Thromboplastin Generation Test - The thromboplastin generation test has proved to be one of the most important tests of blood coagulation.⁹ It will reveal any deficiency of the coagulation factors essential to the development of thromboplastin activity in the intrinsic (blood) system. The test is based on the fact that potent thromboplastin activity develops during the incubation at 37°C of normal Al(OH)₃ adsorbed plasma (containing

AHF PTA Hageman and Factor V) normal serum (containing Stuart PTA Hageman and PTC) platelets or a cephalin substitute together in the presence of calcium ions. The rate of development of the thromboplastin activity is measured by removing a sample of the incubation mixture at one minute intervals and measuring the time required for it to produce coagulation of normal platelet free citrated plasma. The rate of development of thromboplastin activity in incubation mixtures using normal components is then compared to the rates obtained when the patient's plasma serum or platelets are substituted serially for their normal counterparts in three additional incubation mixtures. Each of the three mixtures contains two normal components and one from the patient. Thus the defect may be localized in the serum adsorbed plasma or platelets.

If the development of thromboplastin activity is abnormal when the patient's serum is substituted for the normal serum in the incubation mixture the defect could be considered to be any one of the factors found in normal serum (Stuart factor PTA Hageman or PTC). Both PTA and Hageman factor are also present in $Al(OH)_3$ adsorbed plasma and as they would be contributed by the normal adsorbed plasma in the mixture their absence in the patient's serum would not be revealed. Thus the defect must be considered to be either of PTC or Stuart factor. As Stuart factor is essential to the one stage prothrombin time test and PTC is not they can be separated by this test.

Should the development of thromboplastin activity be decreased when the patient's $Al(OH)_3$ adsorbed plasma is substituted for normal adsorbed plasma in the incubation mixture the defect would be considered due to a deficiency of one of the factors contained in normal adsorbed plasma (AHF Factor V PTA or Hageman). A deficiency of PTA or Hageman is ruled out as they would be contributed by the normal serum in the incubation mixture. The defect must then be one of AHF or Factor V. Once again the one stage prothrombin time test serves to differentiate the two as Factor V is essential for the normal evaluation of thrombin in the test and AHF is not.

PTA and Hageman factor are present both in normal serum and in $Al(OH)_3$ adsorbed plasma. Should the patient have a deficiency of either factor it will not be revealed if normal adsorbed plasma or normal serum is in the incubation mixture. However when the patient's serum and $Al(OH)_3$ adsorbed plasma are used together in the incubation mixture in place of their normal counterparts the thromboplastin generation will be abnormal.^{7, 8} There remains the task of separating Hageman factor deficiency from that of PTA. This can usually be done on clinical grounds as patients with Hageman factor deficiency have no hemorrhagic diathesis. Furthermore the addition of PTA deficient plasma or serum will correct the clotting defect of Hageman factor deficiency and vice versa. This however requires the availability of abnormal serum or plasma.

Circulating anticoagulants may produce abnormal results in the thromboplastin generation test when either the patient's serum or adsorbed plasma is substituted in the incubation mixture. If the titer of circulating anticoagulant is sufficiently high, both the patient's serum and adsorbed plasma will produce abnormal results. As circulating anticoagulants are not adsorbed by inorganic precipitating agents the use of 50 per cent normal and 50 per cent patient's adsorbed plasma and normal serum in the incubation mixture will also produce abnormal results. As the results of the thromboplastin generation test in the case of Factor V or APTT deficiency would be corrected by such an addition of normal adsorbed plasma this maneuver may be used to identify the presence of circulating anticoagulants.

Should the platelets of the patient be deficient in factors necessary for the development of thromboplastin activity it will be apparent when an equal number of platelets from the patient and from a normal donor are compared under conditions of the test.

Prothrombin, Factor VII, fibrinogen, Factor V, and Stuart factor are all essential for the normal evolution of thrombin from prothrombin in the presence of tissue thromboplastin activity. A deficiency of any of these factors results in a prolonged one-stage prothrombin time. If a patient has a prolonged one-stage prothrombin time and the results of the thromboplastin generation test are normal, Factor V deficiency and Stuart factor deficiency are removed from consideration. A thrombin titer will determine whether a fibrinogen deficiency is responsible for the abnormal results of the test. To separate Factor VII deficiency from prothrombin deficiency a modification of the thromboplastin generation test may be employed. The patient's plasma is used as a substrate to test the thromboplastin activity of a normal incubation mixture. It has been shown that the substrate clotting time in the presence of normal intrinsic thromboplastin activity depends on the concentration in the substrate of prothrombin and fibrinogen. A normal clotting time precludes a prothrombin deficiency.^{33, 4}

Fibrinogen Concentration. The thrombin time and titer are used to estimate the concentration of fibrinogen in a patient's plasma. The thrombin used is that which is commercially available. It is made up according to the manufacturer's instructions and should be adjusted so that 0.1 ml. of thrombin will give a clotting time of 10 to 12 seconds when added to 0.25 ml. normal plasma. Platelet-free citrated plasma from the patient and a normal control are prepared by centrifuging citrated whole blood at 2000 rpm. for 15 minutes. Serial dilutions of both normal and patient's plasma are made and the highest dilution which contains a visible clot after addition of 0.1 ml. of thrombin is determined. Normal plasma should still contain a clot when diluted 1/64 or 1/128. The thrombin time is the thrombin clotting time of the 1/2 dilution of patient's plasma compared to that of a normal. The objection to using whole blood for these determinations is that it is difficult to see the clot. This test also has the advantage over those which estimate

the quantity of fibrinogen biochemically in that what is tested is reactive fibrinogen while the biochemical assay may include inert fibrinogen or other proteins⁶⁷

Acquired hypofibrinogenemia often presents as an obstetrical or surgical emergency and the equipment necessary to perform the simple tests required for the diagnosis should be convenient to the operating theater and the delivery rooms. Failure of shed blood to form a firm clot should immediately alert the attending physician to this emergency. As acquired hypofibrinogenemia may be associated with Factor V and AHF deficits as well treatment must remedy these defects as well as replace the fibrinogen.

Choice of Laboratory Tests: These laboratory tests are sufficient to obtain the information needed to identify the particular defect responsible for disordered hemostasis in the vast majority of patients. There are many excellent laboratory procedures available which might serve to augment or extend the results obtained by those presented but space does not permit their inclusion. For details of other methods the reader is referred to texts devoted entirely to the subject of blood coagulation.^{14 54 5}

The physician must determine which of these tests is necessary on the basis of his clinical findings. If the clinical examination gives no clue as to which phase of hemostasis is at fault the platelet count, bleeding time, tourniquet test, coagulation time, and one stage prothrombin time should be obtained. This group of tests affords information concerning both phases of hemostasis and if the results of each are normal it is unlikely that the patient has a disorder of hemostasis. The coagulation time, however, is an insensitive test and the thromboplastin generation test will be needed to detect a mild abnormality of the first stage of coagulation.

Should the results of the clinical examination suggest a disorder of the vascular phase of hemostasis the platelet count, tourniquet test, bleeding time, measurement of clot retraction, coagulation time, and one stage prothrombin time should be obtained. The coagulation time and one stage prothrombin time should be within normal limits if only the vascular phase of coagulation is abnormal. The tourniquet test should be positive and the bleeding time prolonged. The platelet count may be depressed and clot retraction may be poor or not occur at all. If the bleeding time alone is abnormal a thromboplastin generation test should be obtained to be sure that no deficiency exists in the first stage of coagulation.

If the physician feels that the biochemical phase of hemostasis is at fault the platelet count, bleeding time, one stage prothrombin time, and thromboplastin generation test should be obtained. The platelet count and bleeding time should be normal. If the one stage prothrombin time is prolonged and the thromboplastin generation test reveals no deficiency of Factor V or Stuart factor it must be determined if diminished prothrombin, fibrinogen, or Factor VII is responsible. A thrombin time will establish the adequacy of fibrinogen concentration and a modification of the thromboplastin generation test will separate Factor VII and prothrombin.

Table 8 notes the results of various laboratory tests in disorders of hemostasis.

Table 3 Tests of Hemostasis

	NAME	PLATELET COUNT	THROMBOCYTOSIS	LYMPHOCYTOSIS	BLOOD TYPING	CLOTTING TESTS	THROMBOCYTOSIS				PT (sec)	APTT (sec)	FIBRINOGEN (g/L)
							Serum	Plasma	Platelets	Serum and Plasma			
under phase of normal	Thrombocytopenic Purpura	A	A	A	A	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	Non-thrombocytopenic Purpura	N	A	N	A	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	Never any Hemorrhage This person	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
	ANF Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	A	N	A	N	N	N
	PTC Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	A	N	N	A	N	N	N
First Stage of Clotting	PTA Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	N	N	A	N	N	N
	Corrals Anticoagulant	N	N	N	N	/	/	/	N	/	/	/	N
	Factor Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	A	N	N	A	A	N	N
First and Second Stage of Clotting	Factor V Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	A	N	A	N	N	N
	Factor VII Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	N	N	N	A	N	N
	Factor VIII Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	N	N	N	A	N	N
Second Stage of Clotting	Factor IX Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	N	N	N	A	N	N
	Factor X Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	N	N	N	A	N	N
	Factor XI Deficiency	N	N	N	N	/	N	N	N	N	A	N	N
Third Stage of Clotting	Congenital Afibrinogenemia	N	N	A	N	A	N	N	N	N	A	A	A
	Acquired Hypofibrinogenemia	/	N	A	N	/	N	N	/	A	A	A	A
	von Willebrand Disease	N	N	N	A	N	A	N	A	N	N	N	N

N - Normal, A - Abnormal, / - Inconclusive

REFERENCES

- 1 Ackroyd J F A simple method of estimating clot retraction with a survey of normal values and the changes that occur with menstruation *Clin Sc* 7 231 1948 9
- 2 Ackroyd J F Function of Factor VII *Brit J Haemat* 2 397 1956
- 3 Aggeler P M Spact T H and Emery B E Purification of plasma thromboplastin factor II (plasma thromboplastin component) and its identification as a beta globulin *Science* 119 606 1954
- 4 Aggeler P M et al Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) deficiency A new disease resembling hemophilia *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 79 692 1952
- 5 Arthus M and Pages C Nouvelle theorie chimique de la coagulation du sang *Arch physiol norm et path* 2 739 1890
- 6 Astrup T Fibrinolysis in the organism *Blood* 11 781 1956
- 7 Bergsagel D E and Hougie C Intermediate stages in the formation of blood thromboplastin *Brit J Haemat* 2 113 1956
- 8 Bergsagel D E Viscous metamorphosis of platelets *Brit J Haemat* 2 170 1956
- 9 Bettelheim F R The clotting of fibrinogen II Fractionation of peptide material liberated *Biochim et biophys acta* 19 121 1956
- 9a Biggs R and Douglas A S The thromboplastin generation test *J Clin Path* 6 23 1953
- 10 Biggs R Douglas A S and Macfarlane R G The action of thromboplastic substances *J Physiol* 122 554 1953
- 11 Biggs R et al Christmas disease *Brit M J* 2 1378 1952
- 12 Biggs R Douglas A S and Macfarlane R G The formation of thromboplastin in human blood *J Physiol* 119 89 1953
- 13 Biggs R Douglas A S and Macfarlane R C The initial stages of blood coagulation *J Physiol* 122 538 1953
- 14 Biggs R and Macfarlane R G Human Blood Coagulation 2nd Ed Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1957
- 15 Bordet D J and Delange L La coagulation du sang et la genese de la thrombine *Ann Inst Pasteur* 9 42 1912
- 16 Brafield A J Madras M B and Case J The stability of Christmas factor A guide to the management of Christmas disease *Lancet* 2 667 1956
- 17 Brecher G and Cronkite E P Morphology and enumeration of human blood platelets *J Appl Physiol* 3 365 1950
- 18 Buchanan A On the coagulation of the blood and other fibriniferous liquids *J Physiol* 2 148 1879 60
- 19 Chargaff E and Olson K B Studies on the chemistry of blood coagulation VI Studies on the action of heparin and other anticoagulants *J Biol Chem* 122 153 1938
- 20 Collins I S The stability of coagulation factors in stored blood *Med J Australia* 2 718 1955
- 21 Cox F M Lanchantin C F and Ware A G Chromatographic purification of human serum accelerator globulin *J Clin Invest* 35 106 1956
- 22 Crane M M and Sanford H H The effect of variations in total calcium concentration upon the coagulation time of blood *Am J Physiol* 118 703 1937
- 23 Douglas A S Factor V consumption during blood coagulation *Brit J Haemat* 2 153 1956
- 24 Douglas A S The action of heparin in the prevention of prothrombin conversion *J Clin Invest* 35 533 1956
- 25 Duke W W The relation of blood platelets to hemorrhagic diseases *JAMA* 55 1183 1910
- 26 Eagle H The formation of fibrin from thrombin and fibrinogen *J Gen Physiol* 18 547 1934 35
- 27 Eagle H The role of prothrombin and of platelets in the formation of thrombin *J Gen Physiol* 18 531 1934 35
- 28 Gamgee A Physiological Chemistry of the Animal Body Macmillan and Co London 1880 Vol I
- 29 Graham J H Barrow E M and Hougie C Stuart clotting defect II Genetic aspects of a new hemorrhagic state *J Clin Invest* 36 497 1957

- 30 Hammarsten O Über das Fibrinogen *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 19 563 1879
- 31 Hardisty M and Pinniger J L Congenital afibrinogenemia: Further observations on the blood coagulation mechanism *Brit J Haemat* 2 139 1956
- 32 Hayem G Sur la formation de la fibrine du sang études au microscope *Compt rend Acad Sci* 56 58 1878
- 33 Hougou C Barro E M and Graham J B Stuart clotting defect I Segregation of an hereditary hemorrhagic state from the heterogeneous group heretofore called stable factor (SPCA proconvertin Factor VII) deficiency *J Clin Invest* 36 485 1957
- 34 Howell W H Theories of blood coagulation *Physiol Rev* 15 435 1935
- 35 Jorpes J E The origin and the physiology of heparin The specific therapy in thrombosis *Ann Int Med* 27 361 1947
- 36 Koller F Loebliger A and Duckert P Experiments on a new clotting factor (Factor VII) *Acta haemat* 6 1 1951
- 37 Laki K Gladner J A Folk J E and Lomitz D R The mode of action of fibrinogen in thrombosis and Diathesis Haemorrhagica 2 205 1953
- 38 Lamy F and Vaughn D F Certain physical properties of bovine prothrombin *J Biol Chem* 203 489 1953
- 39 Laurell C B Synonyms for components influencing blood coagulation *Blood* 7 500 1952
- 40 Lee R I and White P D A clinical study of the coagulation time of blood *Am J Med Sci* 145 495 1911
- 41 Lee S L and Sanders M A disorder of blood coagulation in systemic lupus erythematosus *J Clin Invest* 34 1814 1953
- 42 Lowey A G Veneziale C and Furman M Purification of the factor involved in the formation of irreversibly fibrin *Biochim et biophys acta* 26 670 1957
- 43 Lorand L Interaction of thrombin and fibrinogen *Physiol Rev* 34 742 1954
- 44 Lytle J W The antithrombin activity of human plasma *Biochem J* 38 8 1954
- 45 Macfarlane R G and Biggs R Fibrinolysis Its mechanism and significance *Blood* 3 1187 1948
- 46 Macfarlane R G Blood coagulation with particular reference to the early stages *Physiol Rev* 36 479 1956
- 47 Macfarlane R G A simple method for measuring clot retraction *Lancet* 1 1199 1939
- 48 MacMillan R L and Brown K W G Heparin and thromboplastin *J Lab Clin Med* 44 378 1954
- 49 Margolius A and Ratnoff O D Observations on the hereditary nature of Hageman trait *Blood* 11 565 1956
- 50 Mersitz P Trans by Hartmann R C and Guenther P II The Chemistry of Blood Coagulation Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1958
- 51 Owen C A and Boffman J L Prothrombin conversion factors of Dicumarol plasma *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 67 231 1948
- 52 Orrin A Proconversion the new clotting factor *Scandinav J Clin & Lab Invest* 3 168 1951
- 53 Quick A J The normal antithrombin of the blood and its relation to heparin *Am J Physiol* 123 712 1938
- 54 Quick A J The Physiology and Pathology of Hemostasis Lea & Febiger Philadelphia 1951
- 55 Quick A J The prothrombin in hemorrhage and in obstructive jaundice *J Biol Chem* 109 73 1935
- 56 Raccigla C Duff I F and Bettell F H The detection of defects of first stage of coagulation *J Lab & Clin Med* 53 769 1959
- 57 Rimm B Angelopoulos B and Singer K Plasma thromboplastin antecedent deficiency *Arch Int Med* 95 703 1955
- 58 Ratnoff B Singer K Hellner P and Zimmerman H J Hageman factor (HIF) deficiency *Blood* 11 742 1956
- 59 Ratnoff O D An enzyme in plasma inactivating Hageman factor *J Clin Invest* 37 943 1958

- 60 Ratnoff O D A familial trait characterized by deficiency of a clot promoting fraction of plasma J Lab & Clin Med 44 915 1954
- 61 Rosenthal R L Dreskin O H and Rosenthal N New hemophilia like disease caused by deficiency of a third plasma thromboplastin factor Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 82 171 1953
- 61a Rosenthal R L Properties of plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) in relation to blood coagulation J Lab & Clin Med 45 123 1955
- 62 Schmidt A Neue Untersuchungen über die Faserstoffgerinnung Pflügers Arch ges Physiol 6 413 1872
- 63 Scott R F and Thomas W A Methods for comparing effects of various fats on fibrinolysis Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 96 24 1957
- 64 Seegers W H Johnson J F and Foll C An antithrombin reaction related to prothrombin activation Am J Physiol 178 97 1954
- 65 Seegers W H McClaughry R I and Fahey J L Some properties of purified prothrombin and its activation with sodium citrate Blood 5 421 1950
- 66 Seegers W H and McInty D A Further purification of thrombin Probable purity of products J Biol Chem 146 511 1942
- 67 Sharp A A Howie B Biggs R and Methuen D T Defibrination syndrome in pregnancy Value of various diagnostic tests Lancet 2 1309 1958
- 68 Sherry S Troll W and Glueck H Thrombin as a proteolytic enzyme Physiol Rev 34 736 1954
- 69 Spaet T H Vascular factors in the pathogenesis of hemorrhagic syndromes Blood 7 641 1952
- 70 Tocantins L M The Coagulation of Blood Methods of Study 1st Ed Grune & Stratton New York 1955
- 71 Wagner R H Pite D and Brinkhous K M Further purification of antihemophilic factor (AHF) from dog plasma Fed Proc 13 445 1954
- 72 White S C Aggeler P M and Emery H E Plasma thromboplastin component (ITC) potency of plasma fractions Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 83 111 1953
- 73 Wishart C Smith C A Honey G E and Taylor K H Dental extraction in haemophilia Lancet 2 363 1957

Disorders of Hemostasis

THE VARIOUS clinical syndromes which occur as the result of disordered hemostasis have been defined largely by application of a series of empiric laboratory tests

Incomplete understanding of the biochemical reactions involved in these tests makes impossible a definitive classification of the disorders of hemostasis at this time. For purposes of discussion they will be presented within the framework of the theory presented in Chapter VI and grouped according to the results of the major laboratory tests in common use

Classification

- I Vessel and or Platelet Abnormalities
 - A Purpura
 - 1 Thrombocytopenic purpura
 - a Secondary
 - b Idiopathic
 - c Neonatal
 - d Thrombotic
 - 2 Non thrombocytopenic purpura
 - a Allergic

- 60 Ratnoff O D A familial trait characterized by deficiency of a clot promoting fraction of plasma J Lab & Clin Med 44 915 1954
- 61 Rosenthal R L Dreskin O H and Rosenthal N New hemophilia like disease caused by deficiency of a third plasma thromboplastin factor Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 82 171 1953
- 61a Rosenthal R L Properties of plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) in relation to blood coagulation J Lab & Clin Med 45 123 1955
- 62 Schmidt A Neue Untersuchungen uber die Faserstoffgerinnung Pfluegers Arch ges Physiol 6 413 1872
- 63 Scott R F and Thomas W A Methods for comparing effects of various fats on fibrinolysis Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 96 24 1957
- 64 Seegers W H Johnson J F and Fell C An antithrombin reaction related to prothrombin activation Am J Physiol 176 97 1954
- 65 Seegers W H McClaughry R I and Fahey J L Some properties of purified prothrombin and its activation with sodium citrate Blood 5 421 1950
- 66 Seegers W H and McInty D A Further purification of thrombin Probable purity of products J Biol Chem 146 511 1942
- 67 Sharp A A Howie B Biggs R and Methuen D T Defibrination syndrome in pregnancy Value of various diagnostic tests Lancet 2 1309 1958
- 68 Sherry S Troll W and Glueck H Thrombin as a proteolytic enzyme Physiol Rev 34 736 1954
- 69 Spaet T H Vascular factors in the pathogenesis of hemorrhagic syndromes Blood, 7 641 1952
- 70 Tocantins L M The Coagulation of Blood Methods of Study 1st Ed Grune & Stratton New York 1955
- 71 Wagner H H Pate D and Brinkhous K M Further purification of antihemophilic factor (AHF) from dog plasma Fed Proc 13 445 1954
- 72 White S G Aggeler P M and Emery B E Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) potency of plasma fractions Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 83 69 1953
- 73 Wishart C Smith C A Honey C E and Taylor K H Dental extraction in haemophilia Lancet 2 363 1957

The level below which the platelets must fall before bleeding occurs varies from person to person. Bleeding is rare when the platelet count is above 50 000 per cu mm, but it may not occur even when the platelets fall below this level. The life span of the platelet has been variously estimated at from 3 to 10 days. If a strict balance between production and destruction is to be maintained, 10 to 30 per cent of the circulating platelets must be replaced daily.

Thrombocytopenia like anemia or fever should be considered as a symptom of disease, not as a disease in itself. Every effort must be made to determine the cause.

Pathologic Physiology of Thrombocytopenia

The physiologic function of the platelets has been extensively investigated^{109, 112, 133, 14, 15} but as yet there is only incomplete understanding of their role in hemostasis. They are known to participate in both the vascular and biochemical defense of hemostasis. They mechanically plug rents in the wall of a vessel by their agglutination and thrombus formation. At the same time they release serotonin, a powerful vasoconstrictor substance.

Platelets are essential to the normal evolution of thromboplastin activity in the intrinsic or blood system and in the final phase of coagulation they influence clot retraction by their interaction with fibrin. They have also been demonstrated to contain a heparin neutralizing factor.

It is apparent that a quantitative decrease in cells which play an important mechanical role in hemostasis and participate in at least two of the three major phases of blood coagulation would represent a serious hazard to the organism. It is not readily apparent, however, why relatively comparable degrees of thrombocytopenia are associated with such variability in clinical findings. It has been speculated that the plasma may contain a factor that is essential to the maintenance of vascular integrity and is complementary to the mechanical role of the platelet. The importance of such a factor in hemostasis would be enhanced if the platelets were diminished.³

The disturbed laboratory tests and clinical findings presented by patients with thrombocytopenic purpura may be ascribed to a defect in hemostasis resulting from a quantitative decrease in platelets in association with some as yet undefined change in the vascular endothelium.

Clinical Examination

Characteristically, the clinical manifestations of thrombocytopenic purpura from any cause develop over a period of several days or weeks, though the onset may on occasion be sudden. Bruising or prolonged bleeding from minor trauma, menorrhagia, or epistaxis may be noted before the appearance of petechiae which are the hallmark of the thrombocytopenic state. Petechiae vary in size from those too small to see with the unaided eye to approximately 1/16 inch in diameter. They are the result of tiny extravasations of

b Infectious

c Other

II Hereditary Telangiectasia

II Abnormalities of Blood Coagulation

A Disorders affecting predominantly the first stage of blood coagulation and resulting in an abnormal thromboplastin generation test

1 Antihemophilic factor deficiency

2 Plasma thromboplastin component deficiency

3 Plasma thromboplastin antecedent deficiency

4 Circulating anticoagulants

B Disorders affecting both the first and second stage of blood coagulation and resulting in an abnormality of both the thromboplastin generation test and the one stage prothrombin time

1 Factor V deficiency

2 Stuart factor deficiency

C Disorders affecting predominantly the second stage of blood coagulation and resulting in an abnormal one stage prothrombin time with a normal thromboplastin generation test

1 Factor VII deficiency

2 Prothrombin deficiency

D Disorders affecting the third stage of blood coagulation resulting in an abnormal one stage prothrombin time and qualitative or quantitative changes in fibrinogen

1 Congenital afibrinogenemia

2 Acquired hypofibrinogenemia

III Disorders of both vessel function and blood coagulation

A Von Willebrand's disease

B Thrombopathia

I VESSEL AND/OR PLATELET ABNORMALITIES

THE PURPURAS

The term purpura originated from the Greek word *porphyra* which was the name of the mollusk from which a purple dye was obtained.⁶⁷ Prior to the sixteenth century purpuric lesions were thought to occur only during the course of "fevers" such as plague or typhus. From that time however it has been recognized that purpura may occur in the absence of a febrile illness.

The conventional classification of the purpuras into those associated with thrombocytopenia and those with quantitatively normal platelets seems justified. The difference is striking. The significance of this difference is not at all clear as will become apparent from the discussion.

THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

The relationship between a decrease in the number of platelets in the peripheral blood and the occurrence of spontaneous bleeding is well known.

Table 9 Causes of Secondary Thrombocytopenic Purpura

1. *Invasion of the marrow cavity with subsequent suppression or destruction of the normal marrow elements by*
 - a. Malignant cells: Carcinoma, sarcoma, leukemia, lymphoma
 - b. Granuloma: Sarcoid, tuberculosis
 - c. Lipoidosis: Gaucher's disease, reticuloendotheliosis
 - d. Microorganisms: Bacteremia, viremia
2. *Direct suppression of marrow elements by*
 - a. Physical agents: roentgen rays, radioactive isotopes
 - b. Chemical agents
 - (1) Universal susceptibility: Urethane, alkylating agents (nitrogen mustard, Myleran, chlorambucil, TEM), benzol, antineoplastic agents (a methopren and inopren 6-MP)
 - (2) Individual susceptibility
 - (a) Drugs: Any from the group of analgesics, antipyretics, antibiotics, chemotherapy, antihistamines, hormones
 - (b) Food
 - (c) Insecticides: DDT
 - (d) Dyes: Organic
 - (e) Other: Any new agents to which the patient has been exposed must be suspected
3. *Peripheral destruction of platelets by*
 - a. Excessive demands from abnormal coagulation
 - (1) Widespread intravascular clotting
 - (2) Burns
 - b. Hypersplenism: enlarged spleen from any cause
 - c. Hypothermia and heat stroke
 - d. Hemangioendothelioma
 - e. Blood transfusions
 - (1) Incompatible: immunologic incompatibility of platelets as well as red cells, trapping and stasis, intravascular coagulation
 - (2) Compatible: after large numbers of transfusions. Mechanisms unknown
 - f. Viremia and bacteremia
 - g. Collagen disorders

While thrombocytopenic purpura *per se* is a serious condition, the ultimate prognosis for any given patient depends largely on the underlying cause. Thrombocytopenic purpura following measles threatens as it may be does not carry so grave a prognosis as that associated with a malignancy.

MECHANISMS. Thrombocytopenia is the end result of increased destruction of platelets, decreased production of platelets, or a combination of the two. The means through which this result is reached varies with the inciting cause. The decrease in platelets which occurs as the result of the invasion of the bone marrow by tumor cells, granuloma, the reticuloendotheliosis, lipidoses, and microorganisms is thought to be the result of (a) physical crowding of normal megakaryocytes, (b) competitive utilization of nutrient substrate by the invading cells, or (c) production of metabolic end products by the invading cells which are toxic to the normal marrow elements. Thrombocytopenia that follows exposure to ionizing radiation and those chemicals which universally depress bone marrow function is believed due to the interference of those agents with cellular division, perhaps through inhibition of deoxyribonucleic acid synthesis.²⁰⁻²² Vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, and ascorbic

blood from the arteriolar end of the capillary loop in the skin or mucous membranes.⁴³ A coalescence of petechiae results in larger lesions of varied size which are referred to as ecchymoses.

Purpuric lesions may occur anywhere in the body. Those located in the mucous membranes are not as well supported as those in the skin and free bleeding into the genitourinary tract or the gastrointestinal tract is common. The total amount of blood found in the urine or feces is more likely the result of multiple tiny hemorrhages than of a large hemorrhage from a single petechia. The occurrence of bleeding within the central nervous system presents the most serious threat. Once again it appears that the failure of the supporting tissues to contain the petechial hemorrhage allows its progression to serious proportions. The occurrence of bleeding in the optic fundus is not infrequent and may result in permanent impairment of vision.

The physical findings will vary depending on the organ system involved and the magnitude of the blood loss.

Laboratory Examination

Thrombocytopenia is the *sine qua non* of this condition. The degree of depression of the platelet count varies and is not always related to the severity of the clinical manifestations. If symptoms are present however the platelet count is usually below 40 000 to 50 000 per cu mm. Anemia is not commonly noted in these patients. If present it is normochromic and normocytic in type and the degree of the anemia usually reflects the magnitude of the bleeding. It is unusual for the platelets to be sufficiently depressed to produce an alteration in the clotting time. The bleeding time is prolonged but may vary from day to day. The results of the test may return to normal during the course of the disease though the platelet level remains depressed. Clot retraction is poor and indeed there may be no retraction of the clot after 24 hours. The degree of clot retraction is usually directly proportional to the number of platelets present. The tourniquet test is positive but the performance of the test is usually unnecessary and unwarranted in the presence of thrombocytopenic purpura.

Clinical Syndromes

Four forms of thrombocytopenic purpura have been described: (a) Secondary thrombocytopenic purpura, (b) idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, (c) neonatal thrombocytopenic purpura, (d) thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura.

As there is considerable variation in the etiology, course, prognosis and treatment of these disorders they will be discussed separately.

(a) Secondary Thrombocytopenic Purpura. Secondary thrombocytopenic purpura bears a clear and identifiable relationship to some primary agent or disease. Some of the diseases and chemical and physical agents that may result in secondary thrombocytopenic purpura are listed in Table 9.

penia. Precipitating causes are legion. Exposure to any new drug, chemical or foodstuff must be suspect. The possible association with recent infection should be kept in mind. Accidental as well as therapeutic exposure to ionizing radiation must be looked for in view of the widespread use of nuclear fission products in industry and medicine. A careful history and physical examination will often reveal the underlying disease.

Treatment of secondary thrombocytopenic purpura will depend in large measure on the nature of the underlying disorder. In addition to therapy directed at the precipitating cause, therapy to relieve the bleeding diathesis may be indicated and will be discussed under idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.

(b) Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura. The separation by Werlhof of the "morbus maculosus hemorrhagicus" from the infectious diseases in 1735 was the first recognition of this disorder as a distinct entity. It was not until 1883 that Krauss recognized that the platelets of these patients were deficient in number.⁴ Kaznelson suggested the use of splenectomy in the treatment of these patients in 1916.

As the term "idiopathic" indicates knowledge of the etiology of this disorder is still incomplete and the diagnosis is made only after exclusion of the diagnosis of secondary thrombocytopenic purpura.

INCIDENCE. In a group of 50 patients with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura seen at the University of Virginia Hospital in the past ten years, one half were under 20 years of age. Of the remaining 25 patients, 9 were past 50 and 3 were past 60 at the onset of their illness. While other series^{5, 6} indicate a similar preponderance in youth, the occurrence of the disease in so many patients beyond 50 years of age is unusual. There was no significant sex difference in our series, though idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura has often been reported to be more common in females than in males.^{5, 5a}

MECHANISM. A great deal of effort has been made to elucidate the factors responsible for the development of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. The finding that an altered immunologic response was the basis of some of the drug-induced secondary thrombocytopenic purpuras spurred efforts to demonstrate a similar mechanism in connection with the idiopathic variety.

The evidence^{4, 6, 7} indicates that an abnormal immunologic mechanism may be responsible for the low platelet count in many patients with this disorder. Platelet agglutinins have been demonstrated in the plasma of some patients with idiopathic thrombocytopenia,^{7, 14} and the platelet agglutinin has been passively transferred. In some instances it is not possible to demonstrate platelet destruction; hence a decrease in the production of platelets may be responsible for the thrombocytopenia.¹⁴ The major role played by the spleen is to remove the sensitized platelets, but it may also contribute to the production of platelet agglutinins and in some manner suppress megakaryocyte function in the bone marrow.^{5a}

CLINICAL EXAMINATION. The disease may begin insidiously with an increased tendency to bruise followed in days or weeks by the appearance

acid deficiencies may result in thrombocytopenia. Sequestration of platelets in *hemangioendothelioma*¹⁶ may render them susceptible to destruction. During hypothermia platelets have been shown to be sequestered in the spleen, liver and possibly the intestinal tract and marrow. The sequestered platelets have been shown to return to the circulation with rewarming.¹⁴ Increased permeability of the capillaries during heat stroke is thought responsible for a decrease in the number of platelets.¹⁰

Several different platelet types have been demonstrated⁶ and thrombocytopenia may occur secondary to blood transfusions as the result of incompatibility of platelet types. Stasis due to sludging or excessive utilization of platelets in those cases of incompatible transfusion accompanied by intravascular clotting may result in thrombocytopenia.⁶ The mechanism responsible for thrombocytopenia which may occur following massive transfusions is obscure.³ An enlarged spleen may trap large numbers of platelets. The resulting stasis which renders platelets susceptible to destruction is believed responsible for the thrombocytopenia associated with splenomegaly. The possibility that the spleen may produce a humoral factor which depresses megakaryocytic function also has been considered.⁶ Viremia and bacteremia are thought to cause agglutination and destruction of platelets *in vivo*.⁶ Megakaryocytes may appear inactive and diminished in number as well. Thrombocytopenic purpura may be the presenting problem of patients with disseminated lupus erythematosus but the mechanism responsible is unknown.¹

The manner in which certain drugs, foods or chemicals induce thrombocytopenia in susceptible individuals has been the subject of extensive investigations.^{3, 14, 15, 16, 17} Whether increased destruction or decreased production is responsible for drug induced thrombocytopenia has been for many years the subject of a lively debate. It is now known that immunologic factors can affect both the rate of destruction and production of platelets.^{3, 6} Together a drug and platelet act as a hapten and exhibit weakly antigenic properties. Antibodies may be formed which will destroy the platelets on the next exposure to that particular drug. The four factors necessary to demonstrate agglutination and lysis of platelets are (1) platelets (2) the drug (3) serum from the drug sensitive patient and (4) complement. Agglutination alone may occur without complement.⁶ The factor responsible for the lysis of platelets is in the serum of the affected patient. Lysis and complement fixation may be demonstrated *in vitro* using serum from an affected patient, the drug, and his own or normal platelets but will not occur if normal serum is used. The immunologic nature of the mechanism of this form of thrombocytopenia has been amply demonstrated⁶ and the sensitivity has been passively transferred.¹³ As the exhibition of minute amounts of the offending drug after recovery may cause severe thrombocytopenia to recur in these patients it is best not to test the drug *in vivo* to confirm the suspicion of sensitivity.

MANAGEMENT It is clear in light of the above discussion that a search ing history must be obtained from any patient presenting with thrombocyto

cytopenic purpura as being of the acute or chronic variety must be retrospective and is of little help in the handling of the new patient. Death may result in either the acute or chronic type and recurrences may occur after many years of remission.

TREATMENT Evaluation of the various forms of treatment used in this disorder is made difficult by its unpredictable course.⁶⁻¹³ The rationale for the use of adrenocortical steroids lies in the observation that they decrease antigen-antibody reactions and protect the vascular endothelium in some fashion as yet not understood. Initially one of the adrenocortical steroids is administered in high doses and then gradually decreased as improvement occurs. A maintenance dose is continued for several weeks and the dose is gradually decreased under careful observation. Whole blood transfusions are withheld unless there is life-threatening hemorrhage. Platelet transfusions may be of value immediately prior to emergency splenectomy.^{9,10} It is essential that blood be freshly drawn in order to infuse sufficient numbers of platelets to be effective. A number of different platelet types have been demonstrated and the survival time of transfused platelets decreases progressively with each succeeding transfusion, probably as the result of the formation of isoagglutinins.¹⁻⁹ Splenectomy is probably best reserved unless a life-threatening situation develops and bleeding cannot be controlled with adrenocortical steroids in adequate dosage. It has been reported that splenectomy has a greater likelihood of being effective if platelet agglutinins are found. The results of splenectomy in a series of 303 cases⁹ were as follows:

Complete remission	61%
Incomplete remission	17%
Failure	22%
Mortality	11%

Steroid therapy has now reduced the mortality accompanying splenectomy to a lower figure than the one presented.

In reviewing our experience it was apparent that failure of hormonal therapy did not prejudice the results of splenectomy nor did the failure to respond to splenectomy affect the future response to ACTH or adrenocortical steroids. Both ACTH and adrenocortical steroids produced similar results. When relapse occurred following cessation of hormonal therapy, remission was often obtained upon restarting therapy. Capillary fragility often diminished following institution of steroid therapy without a significant alteration of the platelet count. On the basis of these observations the following general plan of therapy seems indicated:

1. When first seen these patients, whether "acute" or "chronic," are started on prednisone 60 to 80 mg. daily by mouth. Usually the dosage may be decreased over the next several days to 15 to 20 mg. daily. If there is no improvement in one or two weeks, it is unlikely to occur with further therapy.

2. Splenectomy is employed in the event of failure to control bleeding with steroids after a reasonable period of trial.

3. Transfusions may be required to replace the blood lost. The use

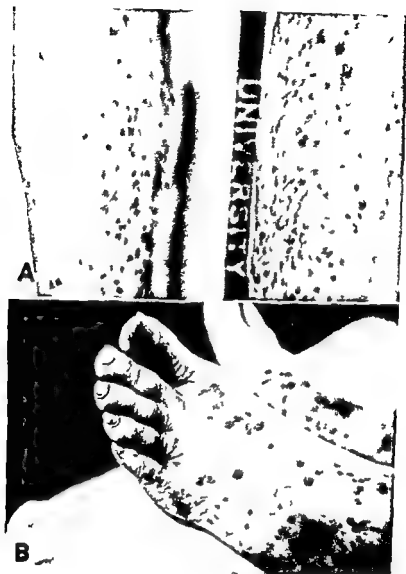


Figure 38 Petechiae and ecchymoses in a patient with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura

of petechiae on the skin or mucous membranes. In other patients there may be a sudden onset with the appearance of petechiae and moderate to severe bleeding from the gastrointestinal or genitourinary tract. Neurologic defects or death may be the result if bleeding occurs in the central nervous system. The historical account of the illness and the results of the physical examination will depend largely on the site and extent of the bleeding.

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS The disease may pursue an unremitting and fulminant course to death in a few days or stop as suddenly as it began within days or weeks of the onset. The designation of idiopathic thrombo-

The most commonly involved organs are the heart, adrenals, kidneys, pancreas and brain. The occlusive material is acidophilic, amorphous and hyaline like.^{47, 137} Many believe that it is composed of platelets, but its exact nature is unknown. The thromboses may result in aneurysmal dilatation of the vessel and subsequent rupture.

The hemolytic anemia which occurs in patients with this disorder is of an extracorporeal type. A fluctuation in the intensity of the hemolytic mechanism is considered responsible for the intermittent spherocytosis occasionally observed. An erythrocyte which has assumed a spherical shape is considered to be in a prehemolytic state. The Coombs antiglobulin test is usually negative.

The thrombocytopenic manifestations of the disorder are characteristic, but the mechanism by which the platelets are reduced has been the source of much debate.^{44, 4} A shortened survival time of normal platelets in these patients has been described, while infusions of plasma from patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura did not diminish the number of platelets in a normal recipient. No platelet agglutinins have yet been described. There is evidence of alteration in megakaryocytic function in some patients, the megakaryocytes being immature.

The neurologic lesions are secondary to vascular lesions in the brain.

CLINICAL ASPECTS While there have been chronic or relapsing forms noted in the literature, most patients present with a dramatic and fulminating disease resulting in death in a few days or weeks.⁴⁴ The diagnosis is suspected in a young person critically ill with hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenic purpura, and changing neurologic signs. Positive diagnosis has been made following the finding of characteristic lesions in small vessels removed by marrow aspiration and sectioned in paraffin block. Muscle biopsy may also be helpful.⁴

TREATMENT : Treatment is supportive. No striking results have been noted from the use of steroids, splenectomy or antibiotics. Many feel, however, that steroids have not had wide enough use for final judgment to be made. Steroids are used in hope that they may interfere with the underlying mechanism producing the disease. Their effectiveness in other forms of hemolytic disease justifies their use in these cases. Transfusion should be used to replace blood loss from hemorrhage or hemolysis.

Illustrative Cases

Secondary Thrombocytopenic Purpura A 14 year old white girl had been well until three or four days prior to admission when she contracted measles which was epidemic in her community and present in her home. Eighteen hours before admission she had a sudden epistaxis and later vomited blood and passed tarry stools. Her mother who had raised fourteen children and knew the measles¹³⁸ stated that she had noted a change in the character of the rash during the 24 hours prior to admission.

of platelet transfusions is limited because of the rapid destruction of platelets

4 If remission obtained with steroid therapy is followed by relapse the patient may be given another course. If failure recurs splenectomy is carried out

It is important to note that idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura may recur weeks, months or even years after splenectomy. The question as to just when a splenectomy should be performed must be answered for each patient individually depending on the course of disease

(c) **Neonatal Thrombocytopenic Purpura** Thrombocytopenic purpura occurring at the time of delivery may affect both the mother and baby, the baby alone or the mother alone.^{6, 7, 141} The infant usually appears normal at the time of delivery but develops purpura several hours later. The hemorrhagic manifestations may disappear after a few days but the thrombocytopenia often persists for weeks or months

MECHANISMS Investigators have ascribed the pathogenesis of neonatal thrombocytopenic purpura to the same mechanisms as those shown to be operative in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.⁷ The mother may have autoagglutinins (even after splenectomy) which cross the placental barrier and sensitize the platelets of the child.¹⁴¹ The platelets which have been sensitized by the agglutinins received from the mother will be destroyed in the presence of the child's spleen. After delivery the agglutinin titer will fall and the thrombocytes will rise to normal levels. A second mechanism has been likened to that of Rh sensitization. Should the mother and fetus have different platelet types, maternal isoagglutinins may form, cross the placenta, and destroy the platelets of the fetus. Soon after birth the titer falls and recovery ensues. Finally, the mother may have a thrombocytopenic purpura without an agglutinin and may have a normal baby

THERAPY These situations are self-limiting and the aim of therapy is to tide the infant over the days or weeks until recovery occurs. Steroid therapy may be very helpful. Splenectomy is not indicated unless there is a failure to control symptoms with steroids and the situation is life-threatening

(d) **Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura** Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura is an exotic malady first described by Moschowitz in 1925.⁶⁰ The syndrome is now being recognized more frequently, though less than one hundred cases have been reported in the literature.^{1, 14} It occurs most commonly in the female in the 10 to 40 age group and is marked by the striking triad of hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenic purpura, and changing neurologic signs

MECHANISM The relationship of this disorder to the collagen diseases was pointed out quite early and the suggestion that it is primarily the result of a vascular lesion has recently received support.^{44, 47} The characteristic pathologic lesion of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura is partial or complete occlusion of many small arterioles and capillaries (rarely venules).⁴⁷ These lesions are widespread in the body and any organ may be involved

blood. The bleeding time was 12 minutes, tourniquet test positive, and clot retraction poor after two hours. There were no platelets seen on examination of multiple smears. The prothrombin time and coagulation time were normal. Preparations made to demonstrate the lupus erythematosus cell phenomena were negative on three occasions. Bone marrow megakaryocytes were diminished in number and immature in appearance. Atypical lymphocytes and young plasma cells were seen on examination of the bone marrow smear and the smear of the peripheral blood. A diagnosis of thrombocytopenia secondary to measles was made.

COURSE. Because of continued bleeding and low hematocrit, the patient was transfused with 500 ml of whole blood. Twenty five mg of ACTH was given intravenously over a 6 hour period, and prednisone was administered orally in a dosage of 25 mg three times a day. The patient's nose was packed and bleeding was controlled adequately, though there was slight oozing for the first four days. Platelets, which were seen for the first time on a smear made on the sixth hospital day, numbered 216 000 by the eleventh hospital day. At that time the bleeding time had returned to 24 minutes. The patient was discharged to be followed in the Hematology Clinic. Instructions were given to reduce the prednisone gradually. Her platelets remained at normal levels for the four months she was followed after steroid therapy had been discontinued.

COMMENTS. This girl presents the classic clinical and laboratory findings of thrombocytopenic purpura. In addition to the failure to find platelets in the peripheral blood, the megakaryocytes which were seen in the marrow preparation were immature and did not seem to be forming platelets. L. E. preparations were obtained because purpuric lesions may be the presenting complaint of patients who are subsequently found to have disseminated lupus erythematosus. The presence of the atypical lymphocytes and young forms of plasma cells suggested the presence of a virus disease. In view of the history of measles it was felt that this represented *secondary thrombocytopenic purpura* occurring as the result of measles.

Thrombocytopenia is a rare sequela of measles. The appearance of the purpuric rash has been reported² as occurring from the third day of the measles rash to as long as two weeks subsequent to its disappearance. Contrary to popular opinion, purpura does not follow only severe attacks of measles, and the accompanying infection may be but a mild one.

The use of blood transfusion was simply for blood replacement. Steroids were used to sustain the patient through what proved to be self limited acute thrombocytopenia secondary to an infectious viral disease.

The prognosis is good in this case, and it is doubtful if she will have a recurrence. However, the patient was instructed to return immediately if symptoms recurred.

Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura. HISTORY. A 24 year old white married mother had been in good health until four months prior to admission when she noted bruising without recognized trauma. Bruising continued and when she sought medical attention three months prior to admission, she was told that her platelets were less than 10 000. Intramuscular injections

Careful questioning failed to reveal any history of a hemorrhagic diathesis in the patient or in her family. There had been no known exposure to chemicals and she had received no drugs.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION There were many petechiae over the lower legs and back and subconjunctival hemorrhages were noted in both eyes. There was a small amount of blood in the posterior pharynx and mild oozing from the nares. There were small nodes in both the posterior cervical triangles and the suboccipital area but the spleen was not palpable. The remainder of the examination was non contributory.



Figure 39 Positive tourniquet test in a patient with secondary thrombocytopenic purpura

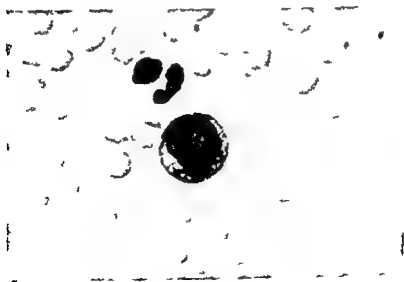


Figure 40 Pathologic lymphocyte in peripheral blood of patient with secondary thrombocytopenic purpura following measles

LABORATORY EXAMINATION Laboratory examination revealed a hematocrit of 26 per cent and a white blood cell count of 11,000 per cu mm. Urinalysis was negative but the stool examination was positive for occult

blood. The bleeding time was 12 minutes tourniquet test positive and clot retraction poor after two hours. There were no platelets seen on examination of multiple smears. The prothrombin time and coagulation time were normal. Preparations made to demonstrate the lupus erythematosus cell phenomena were negative on three occasions. Bone marrow megakaryocytes were diminished in number and immature in appearance. Atypical lymphocytes and young plasma cells were seen on examination of the bone marrow smear and the smear of the peripheral blood. A diagnosis of thrombocytopenia secondary to measles was made.

COURSE. Because of continued bleeding and low hematocrit, the patient was transfused with 500 ml of whole blood. Twenty five mg of ACTH was given intravenously over a 6 hour period, and prednisone was administered orally in a dosage of 25 mg three times a day. The patient's nose was packed and bleeding was controlled adequately though there was slight oozing for the first four days. Platelets which were seen for the first time on a smear made on the sixth hospital day numbered 216 000 by the eleventh hospital day. At that time the bleeding time had returned to 2½ minutes. The patient was discharged to be followed in the Hematology Clinic. Instructions were given to reduce the prednisone gradually. Her platelets remained at normal levels for the four months she was followed after steroid therapy had been discontinued.

COMMENTS. This girl presents the classic clinical and laboratory findings of thrombocytopenic purpura. In addition to the failure to find platelets in the peripheral blood the megakaryocytes which were seen in the marrow preparation were immature and did not seem to be forming platelets. L. E. preparations were obtained because purpuric lesions may be the presenting complaint of patients who are subsequently found to have disseminated lupus erythematosus. The presence of the atypical lymphocytes and young forms of plasma cells suggested the presence of a virus disease. In view of the history of measles it was felt that this represented *secondary thrombocytopenic purpura* occurring as the result of measles.

Thrombocytopenia is a rare sequela of measles. The appearance of the purpuric rash has been reported ⁷ as occurring from the third day of the measles rash to as long as two weeks subsequent to its disappearance. Contrary to popular opinion purpura does not follow only severe attacks of measles and the accompanying infection may be but a mild one.

The use of blood transfusion was simply for blood replacement. Steroids were used to sustain the patient through what proved to be self limited acute thrombocytopenia secondary to an infectious viral disease.

The prognosis is good in this case and it is doubtful if she will have a recurrence. However the patient was instructed to return immediately if symptoms recurred.

Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura. **HISTORY.** A 24 year old white married mother had been in good health until four months prior to admission when she noted bruising without recognized trauma. Bruising continued and when she sought medical attention three months prior to admission she was told that "her platelets were less than 10 000." Intramuscular injections

of ACTH gel were given with improvement. The platelets returned to normal levels and bruising ceased. After an interval of two or three weeks excessive bruising was again noted and upon examination platelets once more were found to be low. With the onset of excessive menstrual bleeding she was referred for further treatment. No significant family or personal history could be elicited. There had been no exposure to toxins nor had there been any recent infections.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION The physical examination revealed many ecchymoses over the upper and lower extremities. Several petechiae were noted on the buccal mucosa. The remainder of the examination was negative. No lymph nodes were enlarged and the spleen was not palpable.

LABORATORY EXAMINATIONS Laboratory examinations revealed a hematocrit of 41 per cent and a white blood cell count of 10,300 per cu mm. Differential white count was normal. Urinalysis was normal and examination of the feces was negative for occult blood. The platelet count was 22,000, the bleeding time 18 minutes and the tourniquet test positive. The coagulation time and prothrombin time were both normal. A diagnosis of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura was made.

COURSE Since the patient had responded once to adrenocortical steroid therapy it was decided to attempt once again to control her bleeding with these compounds. Accordingly oral prednisone 15 mg every 6 hours (60 mg a day) was begun. After four days the platelet count was 150,000 per cu mm and bruising had ceased. The dose of prednisone was reduced to 10 mg every 6 hours (40 mg a day) and improvement continued. On the sixth day the platelet count was 409,000 per cu mm and the dosage of prednisone was reduced to 5 mg four times a day. The patient was discharged in the care of her physician and was instructed to take 5 mg prednisone three times a day.

The dosage of prednisone was decreased gradually and after two months it was discontinued. Immediately her platelets fell to less than 10,000. In view of the two relapses following withdrawal of steroid therapy it was decided that splenectomy should be performed. Accordingly prednisone was restarted in preparation for operation and continued through the postoperative period. The platelet count at time of operation was 748,000 per cu mm and on the first postoperative day was 898,000. The patient was discharged with instruction to reduce the prednisone gradually over an eight day period. She continued well during the following year without the support of adrenocortical steroid therapy.

COMMENT Careful search failed to reveal any primary etiology and a diagnosis of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura was made. Laboratory findings confirmed the diagnosis in that bleeding time and tourniquet test were both abnormal and the finding of a low platelet count revealed the reason for the abnormal tests.

Splenectomy was performed because adrenocortical steroid administration could not be discontinued without relapse after a six month trial period. The increase in thrombocytes after splenectomy is but one of the charac-

teristic changes in the peripheral blood after this operation. Others include the appearance of target cells, Howell Jolly bodies, leukocytosis, and nucleated red blood cells. These changes have been thought to indicate that the spleen exerts some inhibitory effect on the bone marrow. Another explanation may be that removal of the spleen decreases the peripheral destruction of these particular elements. A relapse may occur in this patient as long as 20 to 25 years after splenectomy. Should this occur, a decision must then be made as to whether she may have developed an accessory spleen and warrants re exploration.

NON THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

Patients with non thrombocytopenic purpura may have all of the hemorrhagic lesions noted for those with thrombocytopenic purpura. They differ in that their platelet count remains within the normal range. Characteristic lesions include petechiae, ecchymoses, hematoma, or spontaneous bleeding from the genitourinary tract or gastrointestinal tract. The hemorrhagic lesions may be present in the skin or mucous membranes.

(a) *Allergic Purpura*

This disorder, known also as the Schoenlein Henoch syndrome, was extensively studied by Osler⁸⁷ and his reports are the basis of much of our present day knowledge of the variability of the clinical findings.

Clinical Examination: The presenting complaints will depend on the site and extent of the involvement. Osler⁸⁷ remarked that the two outstanding clinical features were recurrence at long or short intervals and marked variability of the skin lesions. The syndrome characteristically recurs several times before final remission. The recurrences may appear over a period of weeks, months, or in some cases, years. The underlying pathology allows the development of skin lesions of great variability. There may be only purpura with petechiae and ecchymoses, or there may be associated effusion, erythema, or necrosis of the skin. Gastrointestinal involvement is marked by colicky abdominal pain which is often of great severity and occurs chiefly at night. Diarrhea and vomiting are frequent and both the vomitus and stools may contain blood.^{88, 89} Hematuria is also a frequent finding, and nephritis commonly accompanies the disorder.^{1, 22, 30} Joint symptoms may be the presenting complaint. Several joints are usually involved by pain at one time, and there may or may not be associated swelling.

The prognosis for life is generally good unless there is involvement of some unfortunate site such as the glottis. The disease is marked by repeated attacks which may extend over months or years, though most recover after a month or so.

There is no consistent laboratory finding. There may be an anemia if the bleeding has been extensive enough, but this is rare. Platelets, of course,

are normal or only slightly reduced. The capillary fragility test is positive in only a portion of the cases.³

Mechanism The etiology of this disorder remains unknown. There is increased capillary permeability which allows the escape of elements of the blood into the surrounding tissue but the nature of the capillary lesion is not clear. In some cases infection may play a role. Streptococcal infection of the throat has been implicated by some¹⁰ but the evidence is weak.³ Hypersensitivity to certain foods has been implicated in some instances of this disorder and recovery has followed the avoidance of the offending agent. Some have pointed to a resemblance between the lesions of allergic purpura and those of the collagen diseases but again the evidence is incomplete.³³

Treatment The treatment of this syndrome is largely supportive. A careful search should be made for an offending food in the chronic cases. Throat culture should be made and dealt with as indicated. The frequency with which the syndrome is accompanied by nephritis makes it imperative to pay close attention to the cultures. Ackroyd feels the patients should be kept in bed in the hope of reducing the incidence and severity of nephritis.³ Steroid therapy has not had wide trial but the results have been disappointing thus far.³³

(b) Infectious Purpura

Purpura in association with infection has been known since ancient times.⁴⁷ It is a recognized and expected clinical finding in such disorders as Rocky Mountain spotted fever, typhus, meningococcemia and bacterial endocarditis. In each of these disorders an escape of blood elements into the surrounding tissue follows damage to the vascular endothelium.

There are instances in which purpura is associated with severe forms of exanthems such as chickenpox or smallpox. In these instances the purpura seems to occur because of the unusual severity of the disease which causes damage to the vascular endothelium.⁶⁸

Finally purpura may be associated with infection in certain patients who exhibit what appears to be individual susceptibility. The purpura may be thrombocytopenic or non thrombocytopenic. Both types have occurred in association with scarlet fever, varicella, measles, tuberculosis and infectious hepatitis.³ These diseases need not be particularly severe for purpura to be a complication. The natural history of the purpura in these instances is similar to that of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.

The mechanism responsible for the purpura is not clear. No histologic change in the vascular system has yet been demonstrated.

TREATMENT While treatment is directed to the underlying disease with the use of appropriate antibiotics, care should be taken to tide the patient over the hemorrhagic episode. Adrenocortical steroids may be helpful but caution must be observed in light of recent reports of the extraordinary severity and frequent deaths from varicella in children who have been on steroid therapy.⁶⁹ Adrenocortical steroids should be used with caution in

varicella if at all and should be used with caution in other virus exanthemas. Splenectomy would not be indicated except possibly in chronic cases for example those associated with tuberculosis involving the spleen.

(c) Other Types

Non thrombocytopenic purpura may occur following exposure to chemicals or drugs to which the individual is susceptible⁵ in vitamin C deficiency⁵³ as the result of certain snake bites⁵⁴ and in disorders characterized by the presence of abnormal serum proteins. In the last case deposition of abnormal proteins in the small vessels alters their permeability and allows escape of



Figure 41. Senile purpura

fluid content. This is seen in multiple myeloma in association with cryoglobulins or para amyloid. Waldenström has described⁵⁴ a macroglobulinemia usually occurring in elderly men and characterized by the presence of abnormal lymphocytes in the bone marrow and a globulin of high molecular weight in the serum. In this disorder purpura occurs particularly over the lower extremities. Purpura may also occur in association with cold agglutinins for example following virus pneumonia. Non thrombocytopenic purpura may be a feature of old age presumably as the result of loss of support to the small vessels.

HEREDITARY HEMORRHAGIC TELANGIECTASIA

This hereditary vascular anomaly was first described in 1596 by Rendu⁵⁵. In 1901 Osler⁵⁶ reported several cases in detail and noted most of the clinical

are normal or only slightly reduced. The capillary fragility test is positive in only a portion of the cases.³

Mechanism The etiology of this disorder remains unknown. There is increased capillary permeability which allows the escape of elements of the blood into the surrounding tissue but the nature of the capillary lesion is not clear. In some cases infection may play a role. Streptococcal infection of the throat has been implicated by some¹⁰ but the evidence is weak.³ Hypersensitivity to certain foods has been implicated in some instances of this disorder and recovery has followed the avoidance of the offending agent. Some have pointed to a resemblance between the lesions of allergic purpura and those of the collagen diseases but again the evidence is incomplete.³³

Treatment The treatment of this syndrome is largely supportive. A careful search should be made for an offending food in the chronic cases. Throat culture should be made and dealt with as indicated. The frequency with which the syndrome is accompanied by nephritis makes it imperative to pay close attention to the cultures. Ackroyd feels the patients should be kept in bed in the hope of reducing the incidence and severity of nephritis.³ Steroid therapy has not had wide trial but the results have been disappointing thus far.¹³³

(b) Infectious Purpura

Purpura in association with infection has been known since ancient times.⁶ It is a recognized and expected clinical finding in such disorders as Rocky Mountain spotted fever, typhus, meningococcemia and bacterial endocarditis. In each of these disorders an escape of blood elements into the surrounding tissue follows damage to the vascular endothelium.

There are instances in which purpura is associated with severe forms of exanthems such as chickenpox or smallpox. In these instances the purpura seems to occur because of the unusual severity of the disease which causes damage to the vascular endothelium.⁶³

Finally, purpura may be associated with infection in certain patients who exhibit what appears to be individual susceptibility. The purpura may be thrombocytopenic or non thrombocytopenic. Both types have occurred in association with scarlet fever, varicella, measles, tuberculosis and infectious hepatitis.³ These diseases need not be particularly severe for purpura to be a complication. The natural history of the purpura in these instances is similar to that of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.

The mechanism responsible for the purpura is not clear. No histologic change in the vascular system has yet been demonstrated.

TREATMENT While treatment is directed to the underlying disease with the use of appropriate antibiotics, care should be taken to tide the patient over the hemorrhagic episode. Adrenocortical steroids may be helpful but caution must be observed in light of recent reports of the extraordinary severity and frequent deaths from varicella in children who have been on steroid therapy.⁹ Adrenocortical steroids should be used with caution in

varicella if at all and should be used with caution in other virus exanthemas. Splenectomy would not be indicated except possibly in chronic cases for example those associated with tuberculosis involving the spleen.

(c) Other Types

Non thrombocytopenic purpura may occur following exposure to chemicals or drugs to which the individual is susceptible² in vitamin C deficiency³ as the result of certain snake bites⁴ and in disorders characterized by the presence of abnormal serum proteins. In the last case deposition of abnormal proteins in the small vessels alters their permeability and allows escape of

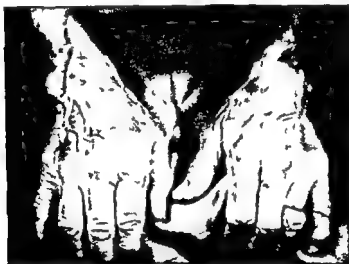


Figure 41 Senile purpura

fluid content. This is seen in multiple myeloma in association with cryoglobulins or para amyloid. Waldenström has described¹⁴⁴ a macroglobulinemia usually occurring in elderly men and characterized by the presence of abnormal lymphocytes in the bone marrow and a globulin of high molecular weight in the serum. In this disorder purpura occurs particularly over the lower extremities. Purpura may also occur in association with cold agglutinins for example following virus pneumonia. Non thrombocytopenic purpura may be a feature of old age presumably as the result of loss of support to the small vessels.

HEREDITARY HEMORRHAGIC TELANGIECTASIA

This hereditary vascular anomaly was first described in 1896 by Rendu⁴⁵. In 1901 Osler⁴⁶ reported several cases in detail and noted most of the clinical

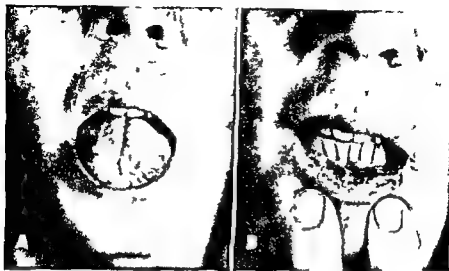


Figure 42 Hereditary telangiectasia involving (A) tongue and (B) lips

findings known today. Weber¹⁴⁶ reported an extensive family study in 1907 and two years later Hines¹ made further contributions on the subject and suggested the name by which the disorder is known today.

Pathologic Physiology Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia is genetically transmitted by either sex as an autosomal dominant. Often the disease may not become apparent until the second or third decade when the lesions develop and gradually increase in number. Abnormal bleeding may be delayed until middle life and often grows more severe with age. Some patients are unaffected by the presence of telangiectasia and hemorrhage does not occur. These lesions are composed of greatly dilated thin walled vessels which are reported¹ to have inadequate smooth muscle and elastic tissues.

Clinical Examination The characteristic vascular lesions are pin point in size or several millimeters in diameter. They are red or purple in color and slightly raised from the surrounding surface. They may blanch slightly with pressure. The lesions which may occur anywhere on the surface of the body or in any organ are most frequently found on the skin of the face, the ears, or the hands and feet, or on the mucous membranes of the nose and mouth.

The diagnosis must be suspected in cases of recurrent hemorrhage associated with telangiectasia and a family history of abnormal bleeding. The most common complaints are those of hemorrhage and anemia. Hemorrhage may occur as the result of slight trauma to one of the vascular lesions anywhere on the body or may be spontaneous. Hemorrhage from the nose or mouth is common, but bleeding may occur from the respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, or genitourinary tract as well.

The chief laboratory findings are those of anemia. There may be iron

deficiency with low serum iron and high iron binding capacity if bleeding has been chronic. Coagulation studies are completely normal.

Treatment: The use of electrocoagulation has been successful in controlling some of the accessible lesions. One of Osler's patients used a small balloon which he inserted into his nose in a deflated condition and then inflated to control nasal hemorrhage. This procedure is used with success today. The management of hemorrhage from the lesions of hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia presents a difficult problem when they are located in the gastrointestinal tract. They are difficult if not impossible to localize by x ray but occasionally may be demonstrated by endoscopy.¹⁴⁶ While resection may remove one source of hemorrhage, the future development of similar lesions remains a constant threat.

II ABNORMALITIES OF BLOOD COAGULATION

DISORDERS AFFECTING PREDOMINANTLY THE FIRST STAGE OF BLOOD COAGULATION

The following disorders are grouped together because of the similarity of their clinical and laboratory findings. Each results in a delay in the development of blood thromboplastin activity to a greater or less extent^{3, 13} but produces no alteration in the one stage prothrombin time.

Hemophilia is one of the oldest recognized bleeding disorders and affected members of several of the ruling houses in Europe. It has been recognized in recent years that the clinical findings of classic "hemophilia" may result from any one of three distinct genetic defects or from acquired circulating anticoagulants. These disorders can be differentiated only by appropriate laboratory tests since they present similar clinical findings. It is for this reason that accurate classification of the cases presented in the older literature as "hemophilia" is not possible. The three genetic disorders now recognized with their relative incidence in two series^{41, 11, 118} are as follows:

- 1 Antihemophilic factor (AHF) deficiency 80-82%
- 2 Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) deficiency 11-15%
- 3 Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) deficiency 5-7%

1 *Antihemophilic Factor (AHF) Deficiency*

Pathologic Physiology: Antihemophilic factor (AHF) deficiency is passed from one generation to the next as a sex linked recessive. Ordinarily the female is a carrier and manifests no clinical signs or symptoms of the disorder.

The genetic possibilities inherent in this and similar disorders are best indicated by the use of symbols and diagrams. By common usage the male is designated as X^{Y} while the female is designated X^{X} . In order for a male to be conceived, the male parent must contribute the Y chromosome while

the female contributes the X . Specific genes are usually referred to by superscript letters. A dominant gene is designated by a capital letter and a recessive by a lower case letter.

The abnormal gene responsible for AHF deficiency is recessive and is designated by the lower case letter h . The normal gene which is dominant is designated by a capital H . A normal female would thus be designated $X^H X^H$. The carrier female would be $X^H X^h$. In the case of the carrier female the dominant normal gene suppresses any expression of the recessive abnormal gene. The carrier has no symptoms. The Y chromosome of the male does not carry this gene and has neither H nor h . Whether a male child has AHF deficiency or not depends entirely on the character of the X chromosome he must receive from the female. If the female carrier contributes the normal X^H to the male offspring the male is normal. If however the X chromosome contributed by the female to her male offspring is that which carries the abnormal gene it would find expression as there would be no normal gene (H) to suppress it.

The following diagrams will illustrate the possibilities. The male in each instance is designated by the rectangle and the female by the circle.

Figure 43 represents a normal family with no factor deficiency. All offspring are normal.

Figure 44 indicates that a mating of a normal male and a carrier female may result in a hemophiliac male or a carrier female as well as normal children of both sexes. Unfortunately there is no way to establish with certainty whether a female is a carrier or not. There is evidence however that the degree of recessiveness may vary and that some carrier females may have depressed AHF levels.

Figure 45 indicates the results of a mating of an AHF deficient male with a normal female. All of their female children *must* be carriers since the only

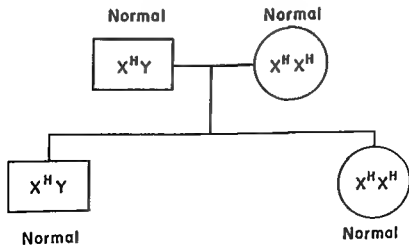


Figure 43

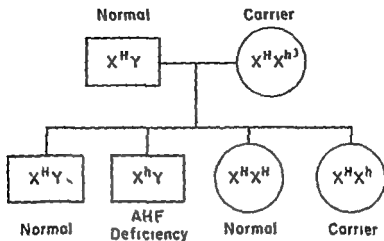


Figure 44

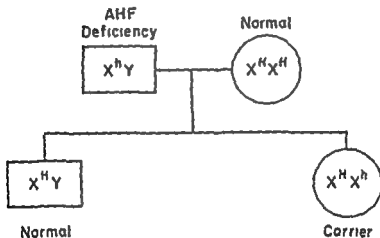


Figure 45

X chromosome the male has to contribute carries the abnormal gene. On the other hand, none of the male offspring can have hemophilia since a male must receive the lone X chromosome from the normal mother.

In Figure 46 we see the results of the mating of an AHF deficient male and a carrier female.

For many years the possibility that a female could have an AHF deficiency was not accepted, but several well documented cases have now been reported.⁴⁶ The female offspring of the mating noted here would receive an X^h from the AHF deficient male and the second X^h from the carrier mother.

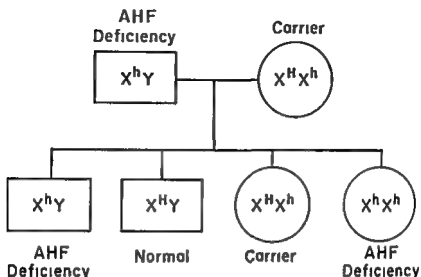


Figure 46

In Figure 47 we see the result of a mating between a normal male and an AHF deficient female

All male progeny would receive X^h from the mother while all female would receive an X^H from the father in addition to the X^h from the mother. All males would then be AHF deficient and all females would be carriers.

The mating of a male and a female both deficient in AHF has probably never occurred except in laboratory animals. All of the offspring of such a mating would be AHF deficient (Fig. 48).

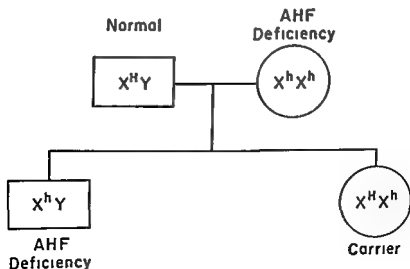


Figure 47

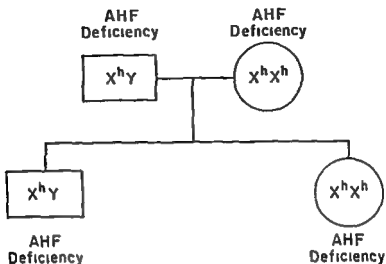


Figure 48

As there are patients with hemophilia who have no family history of the disorder the rate of mutation is thought to be high.

The result of the genetic defect is known to be the deficiency of a globulin first described by Patek and Taylor.¹⁰⁰ In the absence of this globulin the first phase of coagulation is impeded. Since the platelets and the capillaries are unaffected, the bleeding time is normal while the coagulation time is often prolonged. The more severe the deficiency of AHF the more severe the bleeding problem. Levels of below 3 per cent are usually found in symptomatic patients though a bleeding diathesis may be found in patients with levels as high as 20 per cent. The level of AHF in any one patient is remarkably constant throughout his life.

AHF is one of the factors needed in the development of blood thromboplastin activity and in its complete absence the only effective hemostatic defense left to the patient is that supplied by the vascular phase of hemostasis and the extrinsic system. In the event of a defect in the larger vessels these defenses are not sufficient to maintain hemostasis and extensive bleeding may occur.

Clinical Aspects. In the past many born with AHF deficiency died in infancy or in the first five years but with modern therapy there has been marked improvement in the prognosis. The availability of adequate transfusion service has probably been the most important factor in the reduction of mortality from this disorder.

Mildly affected hemophiliacs may reach adult life before serious bleeding occurs. The more severely affected individuals may have repeated episodes of bleeding from the surface of the body, the serous surfaces, the gastrointestinal tract, the genitourinary tract or into joint spaces. Bleeding does

not often if ever occur in the absence of trauma. The hemarthroses which are suffered often result in permanent ankylosis and deformity.

Elective surgery is denied these patients and dental extractions must be done with great skill and careful preparation by dental surgeons aware of the problem. Until recently conditions which made surgery imperative were catastrophic. Now it is possible to prepare for such emergencies with a reasonable chance of success.³⁷⁻⁸⁴

For many years the diagnosis of "hemophilia" was made when it could be demonstrated in vitro that plasma from the patient in question did not correct clotting defect of a patient with known hemophilia. The diagnostic difficulties previously encountered are now recognized to have occurred because any one of several defects can produce clinical findings of classic hemophilia. These defects may be identified only by proper laboratory tests. The platelet count, tourniquet test and bleeding time are unaffected as they depend on capillary integrity and platelets both of which are normal in AHF deficiency. Clot retraction is likewise normal since there is adequate fibrin and normal platelet function. The prothrombin time is normal since this test system bypasses the factor deficient in hemophilia.

The coagulation time may be prolonged owing to a decrease in the formation of thromboplastin activity. It is important to note however that the coagulation time may be normal despite relatively severe AHF deficiency. The thromboplastin generation test can be used to identify the specific defect in any of these disorders.¹⁰ Modifications may be made in the thromboplastin generation test which enable one to determine the percentage of AHF activity present in the suspect plasma.

Treatment. The treatment of patients with hemophilia has improved considerably in recent years. Modern blood banking methods have made available large quantities of whole blood and plasma. High potency preparations of AHF factor from animal blood have recently become available⁸¹ and the use of concentrates of human AHF factor is now under trial.⁶⁰ While none of these materials provide the answer for hemophilia as does vitamin B₁₂ for pernicious anemia, they have nonetheless proved a great boon to the hemophilic. Blood loss is more quickly replaced and hemostasis secured. If the patient is properly prepared, tooth extraction so often denied these patients in the past despite desperate need is now reasonably safe and major surgery though still extremely hazardous is at least feasible.

The use of human plasma as a source of AHF has been successful in controlling most hemorrhage into soft tissues, hematuria, and the bleeding which follows tooth extraction in those hemophilic patients with a mild deficiency. It must be freshly prepared for it loses over 50 per cent of its activity in four days if stored at usual blood bank temperatures of 2 to 4° C.⁶⁰ Plasma which has been quickly separated and frozen at -30° C retains its activity for as long as 30 days, however, and is an excellent product to have available. Unfortunately hemostatic levels of AHF cannot be obtained in the severe hemophilic using plasma alone. The AHF level of human plasma is rela

tively low and the circulatory system would be overloaded before an adequate concentration could be reached.

The need for a source of concentrated AHF has long been recognized. Successful preparation of high potency material from animal blood¹⁷⁻²¹ has made it possible to give to the patient an amount of AHF equivalent to that found in 8 liters of human blood in a single infusion of small volume. However, as these preparations are of heterologous protein they are antigenic and are thus limited in their usefulness. It has proved possible to give a single course of therapy to a patient over eight to ten days, but the response to the infusions often progressively diminishes. A second course is prohibited by the possibility of anaphylaxis. Since there are only two animal preparations available (bovine and porcine) they are reserved for dire emergencies.

The preparation of concentrates of human AHF holds considerable promise. With these preparations an amount of AHF equivalent to that found in a liter of plasma can be given in 100 ml. Its use is still in the experimental phase and its antigenicity has not yet been determined.²²

Dental extractions have been rendered more safe by the use of dental splints of acrylic resin.²³ These splints protect the gum and prevent the dislodgment of a clot once formed. Calcium alginate gauze soaked in Russell viper venom may be placed between the splint and the gum to act as a local hemostatic agent. A liter of fresh plasma is given these patients an hour before the extraction and thereafter as indicated. Under no circumstances should the gum margins be sutured, as bleeding may continue beneath the sutures and dissect into the fascial planes of the neck, causing respiratory obstruction.

Hemorrhage in the tissue of the throat, at the base of the tongue or in the neck is usually controlled by the infusion of fresh plasma. The possibility of respiratory obstruction should be appreciated in time to enable an endotracheal tube to be passed. Tracheotomy should be avoided if possible as it increases the danger of serious hemorrhage. The blood in these tissues does not localize and the surgeon should not attempt drainage, as such efforts result only in further bleeding and increased danger to the patient. The hemorrhage will cease and the blood will be absorbed quickly if an adequate concentration of AHF is obtained. Superficial hemorrhage is controlled by the immediate application of local pressure while the infusion of fresh plasma is started. After an elevation of the AHF is obtained, the pressure should be released to allow blood with adequate AHF to replace the AHF deficient blood in the blocked vessels and then reapplied.

Hemarthroses should be treated as conservatively as possible. Bed rest and ice bags to the affected joint during the acute phase, with cautious activity as improvement occurs, seem indicated. Repeated aspirations and lavage may lead to infection or further bleeding and should be avoided if possible.²⁴ Plasma should be given to raise the AHF level. It is desirable to have the joint in the most functional position should ankylosis occur.

Operations should be avoided if possible. Should major surgery be essential, a concentration of not under 25 per cent AHF must be obtained. Since

this is not possible using plasma alone animal or human AHF must be available. It is essential that surgery on these patients be carried out in centers where careful laboratory control can be exercised.^{37, 84}

Illustrative Case History An 18 year old white male was admitted for the first time because of continued bleeding for six days from the site of a tooth extraction. This young man stated that he had been told by his mother that he had been a "bleeder" since birth. He had always bled easily from minor cuts and abrasions, bruised quite easily, and had frequent nose bleeds. He had suffered "bluish" swelling of the right knee and painful hip joints. Because of his bleeding tendency, he had never been allowed to go to school. Six days prior to admission he had had a right lower molar extracted. The gum flaps were sutured as bleeding continued after the extraction. Several hours later a mass was noted at the angle of his jaw and bleeding from the gum continued. He was seen by his physician who referred him for treatment.

Family history revealed that his mother and father were cousins. One brother was known to have a bleeding dyscrasia. Two sisters and the other brother were normal.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION The patient was a thin, pale young man lying quietly in bed. Examination revealed a large clot in his mouth overlying the right gum from beneath which blood was still oozing. An indurated 3×4 cm mass was palpable below the angle of the right ramus of the mandible. A large ecchymosis of the skin extended from the area occupied by the mass to the anterior chest wall on the right. There was no lymphadenopathy and no organs or masses were palpable in the abdomen.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION Laboratory examination revealed a hematocrit of 28 per cent and white blood cell count of 5600 per cu mm. Platelet count, bleeding time, and tourniquet test were normal. The coagulation time was 16 minutes and the prothrombin time normal. Thromboplastin generation test was abnormal when the patient's plasma was substituted for normal plasma in the incubation mixture. The patient's serum was normal. Assay revealed less than 1 per cent AHF activity. No circulating anticoagulants could be demonstrated.

Subchondral cystic change and irregularity of articulating surfaces of both hips and knees were noted by x ray. These changes were felt to be consistent with hemophilic arthritis. A diagnosis of antihemophilic factor deficiency was made.

COURSE The patient was transfused with 2000 ml of fresh whole blood during the next 48 hours. The bleeding ceased and the clotting time returned to 11 minutes. A dentist removed the sutures from the gum flap and cleaned the area gently, after which a firm clot formed.

COMMENT This case history demonstrates several features of importance. It is a classic example of the grave risks which are encountered when tooth extraction is attempted without proper preparation. The risks were compounded by the suturing of the gum flaps. This lad is fortunate to have

escaped asphyxiation which might have resulted from continued bleeding *interiorly*—beneath the sutured flaps with dissection of fascial planes of the neck.

The use of fresh whole blood (or plasma) to control bleeding of this sort is demonstrated to be of value. The amount of blood given would not have been expected to raise the AHF concentration greatly but was adequate. It should be noted that the coagulation time returned to normal despite the fact that the AHF concentration was still very low. This test may not reveal coagulation defects if they are not severe.

The social problem presented by this patient is quite apparent. His parents had been advised never to send him to school. He had had no education whatsoever and without his parents would be unable to support himself. These children should be protected from trauma but they must not be denied an education.

The use of the thromboplastin generation test clearly separated this AHF deficiency from the other defects in the first phase of coagulation.

The patient's brother was subsequently brought to the hospital and was demonstrated to have AHF deficiency.

2 Plasma Thromboplastin Component (PTC) Deficiency

The practice of comparing the coagulation characteristics of plasma from patients with undiagnosed hemorrhagic disease with those of plasma from clinically accepted cases of hemophilia in order to establish the diagnosis of hemophilia has in the past led to considerable confusion.^{1,2} In 1947 Pavlosky¹⁰¹ reported that the addition of blood from one hemophilic patient to that of another *in vitro* occasionally resulted in a normal coagulation time. Aggeler et al.⁷ and Biggs et al.¹² later recognized that the existence of a heretofore unrecognized factor must be postulated and that the absence of this factor would produce a syndrome clinically indistinguishable from hemophilia. This factor, most commonly known as the plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) or the Christmas factor, has been extensively investigated. Many patients thought to have AHF deficiency have now been recognized to have a deficiency of this factor.

Pathologic Physiology. This defect is transmitted as a sex-linked recessive with genetic possibilities similar to those described above under AHF factor deficiency. The gene is not as recessive as that responsible for AHF deficiency and symptoms may occur in female heterozygotes.

Like the AHF, plasma thromboplastin component takes part in the first phase of the coagulation of blood. A deficiency of this factor impedes the development of thromboplastin activity. The platelets and capillaries are unaffected and repair of small capillary rents proceeds normally.

Clinical Findings. These patients may present any of the problems found in AHF deficiency. Males are more commonly affected though PTC deficient females are not as uncommon as those with AHF deficiency. This

is perhaps a reflection of the fact that this gene is less completely recessive than that responsible for AHF deficiency and is finding expression in heterozygotes. Manifestations of the hemorrhagic diathesis may appear at birth with bleeding from the umbilical cord or following circumcision. Excessive bleeding will mark minor trauma and surgical procedures throughout the life of the patient.

The laboratory findings in this disorder follow the same general pattern as those in AHF deficiency. The platelet count, capillary fragility, clot retraction, bleeding time, and prothrombin time are normal.

The coagulation time is often prolonged since the development of thromboplastin activity is impeded. As in AHF deficiency, however, PTC deficient patients may have normal coagulation times.

As PTC is not consumed during coagulation it is present in normal serum. As a consequence the coagulation of PTC deficient plasma may be brought to normal *in vitro* by the addition of normal serum. The defect will not be corrected by the addition of BaSO_4 treated normal serum or plasma since BaSO_4 adsorbs PTC completely. This disorder may be identified by the thromboplastin generation test which is based on these facts. Substitution in the incubation mixture of the patient's serum for the normal serum will prevent the normal evolution of thromboplastin activity.

Treatment. The treatment of this disorder is perhaps more difficult than that of AHF deficiency, as there are at present no concentrates of PTC available and these patients may have a clinical course equally severe. It is thought that PTC is stable on storage at blood bank temperatures for two or three weeks.^{4, 113} It has been reported that when acid citrate dextrose plasma stored at 4° C is the source of PTC, the results of the thromboplastin generation test are abnormal within fourteen days and normal during the first four days of storage only. However, plasma stored at 4° C for fifteen days and longer has been reported to raise the PTC level of patients with known PTC factor deficiency.⁴ Serum which can be shown to be a good source of PTC *in vitro* has been demonstrated to be ineffective in the treatment of PTC deficiency. The reason for this is not clear.¹¹⁴ The comments made above on the clinical management of AHF deficiency apply equally to the management of this disorder.

3 *Plasma Thromboplastin Antecedent (PTA) Deficiency*

Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) deficiency was described by Rosenthal in 1953.¹¹⁴ The clinical findings are similar to those of AHF and PTC deficiency but the hemostatic defect is usually less severe.

Pathologic physiology. PTA deficiency is genetically transmitted as an autosomal dominant. Reception of the abnormal gene from either parent will produce the disease. The disorder may occur in either sex, as the gene is not carried on the sex chromosome. The patient will have a 50 per cent chance of passing the disorder to his or her offspring. The gene has a high degree of penetrance and variable expression. This indicates that the gene

will more than likely manifest itself if present but that the seriousness of the defect will vary^{114 115}

PTA deficiency like PTC or AHF deficiency interferes with the development of adequate thromboplastin activity during the first phase of coagulation

Clinical Aspects Patients of either sex present with a bleeding diathesis similar to AHF and PTC deficiency The bleeding episodes are neither so frequent nor so severe as those encountered in patients with AHF and PTC deficiency and there appear to be periods when bleeding does not occur despite major trauma

The laboratory findings follow the same general pattern as that described for AHF or PTC deficiency The platelet count capillary fragility test bleeding time clot retraction and fibrinogen assay are all normal The coagulation time may reflect the impaired thromboplastin activity

Unlike AHF PTA is not consumed during coagulation and with PTC is present in both plasma and serum PTA however is not adsorbed from normal plasma by BaSO_4 while PTC is adsorbed Consequently the clotting time of PTA deficient plasma is corrected by BaSO_4 treated normal plasma which does not correct the clotting time of PTC deficient plasma It is also corrected by the addition of normal serum which would not correct the clotting time of AHF deficient plasma The three disorders may be separated by the thromboplastin generation test the design of which makes use of these facts

Treatment These patients are successfully treated with plasma stored up to fourteen days since PTA fares well on storage The effect of the administered plasma is gradually lost over a period of a week to ten days If surgery cannot be avoided these patients should be carefully prepared Prior to operation normal plasma given in amounts equal to 15 per cent of the plasma volume (about 450 ml) has been reported¹¹⁶ to restore clotting time and prothrombin consumption to normal

4. Circulating Anticoagulants

Severe hemorrhagic symptoms may be caused by the development of circulating anticoagulants They interfere with the development of thromboplastin activity and may produce any of the findings noted to occur as the result of deficiencies of those coagulation factors concerned with the development of thromboplastin activity When circulating anticoagulants occur in patients with preexisting hemorrhagic diathesis the treatment is made far more difficult While there may be no increase in the number of hemorrhagic episodes the treatment of each episode is complicated by the need to overcome the effect of the circulating anticoagulant as well as treat the original defect Circulating anticoagulants developing during, or subsequent to pregnancy may produce a severe hemorrhagic diathesis which persists for months or years⁹ There have been reports of circulating anticoagulants occurring in association with a heterogeneous group of disorders including syphilis

chronic nephritis tuberculous lymphadenopathy and the collagen diseases^{3, 4, 9, 8} Rarely they may develop spontaneously in persons without known disease

Clinical Findings These patients may have any of the physical findings associated with the other disorders affecting the formation of thromboplastin activity or its function Once again it is in the laboratory that positive identification of the disorder is made Since the vascular phase of hemostasis is unaffected the platelet count, bleeding time, tourniquet test and clot retraction are normal Fibrinogen assay is also normal as there is no interference in the final phase of coagulation Interference by the circulating anticoagulant with the formation of thromboplastin activity results in an abnormal thromboplastin generation test Diminished formation of thromboplastin activity occurs when the patient's serum or adsorbed plasma is substituted in the incubation mixture The use of 50 per cent normal and 50 per cent patient's adsorbed plasma with normal serum in the incubation mixture results in diminished formation of thromboplastin activity The presence of a circulating anticoagulant is thereby identified as any genetic defect likely to be confused with it would have been corrected by the addition of 50 per cent normal adsorbed plasma

Heparin like compounds may be differentiated from circulating anticoagulants by the addition to the plasma of protamine sulfate or toluidine blue which neutralizes the heparin like compounds and leaves circulating anticoagulants unaffected

Pathologic Physiology The circulating anticoagulants have been shown to interfere with the reactions leading to the formation of thromboplastin activity in the intrinsic system^{10, 61, 6} Others have suggested they may also interfere with the action of formed thromboplastin^{1, 19, 18}

They are present in the gamma fraction of the plasma and are thought to be the result of some immunologic mechanism^{9, 61, 4} The finding of circulating anticoagulants in patients treated repeatedly with blood or blood products following pregnancy and in association with diseases known to have deranged immunologic mechanisms has lent substance to this theory There are however instances in which such a mechanism does not seem to operate and the mechanism is unclear^{7, 61} Circulating anticoagulants are relatively heat stable and fare well on storage at 0 to 4° for long periods of time Circulating anticoagulants against AHF, PTC, Factor V and Factor VII have been described as well as those reportedly interfering with thromboplastin activity In those instances when circulating anticoagulants interfere with Factor V, Factor VII or thromboplastin activity itself the one stage prothrombin time will of course be prolonged

Treatment Treatment of these patients is the same as that employed in other disorders interfering with the formation of blood thromboplastin activity Occasionally massive transfusions of fresh blood effect a response when smaller ones do not Adrenocortical steroids have not been used with striking success but should be tried

DISORDERS AFFECTING BOTH THE FIRST AND SECOND STAGES OF BLOOD COAGULATION

The disorders to be discussed below affect both the first and second phases of blood coagulation. The thromboplastin generation test and the one stage prothrombin time test are abnormal. Both disorders may be hereditary or acquired.

1 Factor V Deficiency (Parahemophilia)

Factor V deficiency was first demonstrated to be a distinct clinical entity by Owren²⁵ in 1947. The young woman whose disorder he reported suffered from epistaxis, easy bruising, and excessive menstrual bleeding. The one stage prothrombin time was prolonged and was not shortened by the addition of prothrombin. It was corrected, however, by the addition of a prothrombin free plasma fraction obtained from a normal source. Thus was it demonstrated that a deficiency of a factor other than prothrombin could not only prolong the one stage prothrombin time but could produce a serious clinical disorder as well.

Pathologic Physiology. Factor V deficiency may be congenital or acquired. The congenital form is thought to be transmitted as an autosomal recessive although the abnormal gene has a potency roughly equal to the normal counterpart. There is a high degree of variation in expressivity which is thought responsible for the finding of some heterozygotes with hemorrhagic symptoms while in others the carrier state is not detectable.²¹ Consanguinity has been noted to be a feature of some of the family pedigrees.

The acquired form of the disorder has been reported in association with severe liver damage and a variety of other diseases.²²⁻²⁴ Notably the level of Factor V is depressed in association with fibrinolysis and certain instances of acquired fibrinogen deficiency. As Factor V is essential to the first phase of blood coagulation, its deficiency will result in the inadequate production of thromboplastin activity. Fentl²⁶ has reported that abnormal bleeding will occur when the level of Factor V falls below 30 per cent of normal. Serum does not contain Factor V because it is consumed during the process of blood coagulation.

Indirect evidence points to the liver as the normal source of Factor V and acquired deficiencies have been reported in severe liver disease. The factor is not vitamin K dependent and deficiency of Factor V does not occur in obstructive jaundice or during the administration of coumarin drugs.

Clinical Findings. In a recent review of the reported cases of congenital Factor V deficiency,²⁶ it was noted that bleeding occurs in the first few years of life. Bleeding from accidental or operative trauma was excessive and spontaneous bleeding into the genitourinary tract and the gastrointestinal tract was noted. Hemarthrosis was not common. Menstrual bleeding was found to be excessive and may be life threatening.

The clinical findings of the acquired form of the disorder are similar to

those of the congenital variety complicated of course by the underlying disease.

The vascular phase of hemostasis is unaffected. Platelets are normal in number and function and the bleeding time and tourniquet test are normal. There is no quantitative or qualitative defect in fibrinogen.

Since Factor V deficiency affects the first stage of coagulation it is reflected in an abnormal thromboplastin generation test. The one stage prothrombin time is prolonged since Factor V is essential for the normal evolution of thrombin from prothrombin under the conditions of the test. Inadequate formation of thromboplastin activity is responsible for the abnormal coagulation time.

The laboratory findings in the acquired form of the disorder will of course be modified by the associated disease.

Treatment. Treatment consists of the administration of fresh plasma by the intravenous route. Fantl⁴⁶ has reported that it is necessary in the case of complete deficiency to administer 10 ml. of fresh citrated human plasma per kilogram of body weight in order to attain adequate levels. The half life of the Factor V is reported to be approximately twenty hours.

2. Stuart Factor Deficiency

In 1957 Hougie Barrow and Graham⁴⁷ restudied a patient thought to suffer from a deficiency of Factor VII. Their careful work established the heterogeneity of the coagulation defects in the patients in this group. A new blood clotting factor was uncovered and its properties detailed in their report.

Pathologic Physiology. Stuart factor deficiency has been demonstrated⁴⁸ to be transmitted by an incompletely recessive autosomal gene. While most severe in the homozygote, bleeding tendencies have been noted in the heterozygote and carriers can often be detected with appropriate tests.

Recently Graham⁴ has described a temporary deficiency of Stuart factor developed presumably as the result of contact with a farm insecticide.

Stuart factor has been demonstrated to be essential in the first phase of blood coagulation and a deficiency of the factor is demonstrated by the thromboplastin generation test. The defect is apparent when the patient's serum is substituted for normal serum in the incubation mixture. Stuart factor is adsorbed by BaSO_4 from normal plasma. As BaSO_4 treated plasma is used in performance of the test the defect is not detectable when the patient's BaSO_4 treated plasma is substituted for normal. Both normal and patient plasma are deficient in Stuart factor under conditions of the test. Stuart factor is present in normal serum as it is not consumed in coagulation and substitution of the patient's serum for normal serum in the incubation mixture reveals the defect.

The one stage prothrombin time is prolonged since Stuart factor as well as Factor VII and Factor V is essential for optimal development of thromboplastin activity from the usual tissue sources and platelets.

Stuart factor has been shown to be vitamin K dependent and is reduced after several days of administration of coumarin drugs³⁴ The half life of Stuart factor in the body has been reported to be 2.85 days^{4, 5}

Clinical Findings The patients described have had a moderate bleeding diathesis Though hemorrhagic symptoms may occur in childhood clinical manifestation of the disorder may not appear until later in life Frequent epistaxis and hematoma have been most disturbing Hemarthrosis has been reported but is mild and infrequent

While the defect is most severe in the homozygote it is important to note that heterozygotes with hemorrhagic symptoms have been reported The patients usually female have been noted to be bad operative risks and have persistent anemia presumably secondary to menorrhagia

The bleeding time tourniquet test and platelets are normal Fibrinogen is quantitatively and qualitatively normal The whole blood clotting time and thromboplastin generation test are abnormal due to deficient formation of blood thromboplastin activity One stage prothrombin time is prolonged as Stuart factor is required for evolution of optimal tissue thromboplastin activity

Treatment Transfusion with whole blood or plasma is effective in relieving symptoms As Stuart factor is relatively stable it is not necessary to use freshly prepared material The general management of these patients is similar to that of those with antihemophilic factor deficiency

DISORDERS AFFECTING PREDOMINANTLY THE SECOND STAGE OF BLOOD COAGULATION

The following disorders affect predominantly the second phase of blood coagulation and result in an abnormal one stage prothrombin time test While congenital prothrombin deficiency is recognized, it is extremely rare Many cases formerly thought to represent congenital deficiency of prothrombin have on retesting in light of present knowledge proved to be deficiencies of Factor V Stuart factor or Factor VII

Factor VII Deficiency

In 1951 Alexander Goldstein Landwehr and Cook reported the first patient recognized to have a congenital deficiency of Factor VII^{3, 4} The characteristic defect noted was a prolonged one stage prothrombin time corrected by normal plasma or serum but not by BaSO_4 treated plasma Since the two stage prothrombin time was consistently normal it was recognized that the defect could not be due to a prothrombin deficiency As BaSO_4 treated plasma contains Factor V its failure to correct the prolonged one stage prothrombin time established the syndrome as distinct from Owren Factor V deficiency as well

those of the congenital variety complicated of course by the underlying disease

The vascular phase of hemostasis is unaffected. Platelets are normal in number and function and the bleeding time and tourniquet test are normal. There is no quantitative or qualitative defect in fibrinogen.

Since Factor V deficiency affects the first stage of coagulation it is reflected in an abnormal thromboplastin generation test. The one stage prothrombin time is prolonged since Factor V is essential for the normal evolution of thrombin from prothrombin under the conditions of the test. Inadequate formation of thromboplastin activity is responsible for the abnormal coagulation time.

The laboratory findings in the acquired form of the disorder will of course be modified by the associated disease.

Treatment Treatment consists of the administration of fresh plasma by the intravenous route. Fantl³⁶ has reported that it is necessary in the case of complete deficiency to administer 10 ml of fresh citrated human plasma per kilogram of body weight in order to attain adequate levels. The half life of the Factor V is reported to be approximately twenty hours.

2 Stuart Factor Deficiency

In 1957 Hougie Barrow and Graham³⁷ restudied a patient thought to suffer from a deficiency of Factor VII. Their careful work established the heterogeneity of the coagulation defects in the patients in this group. A new blood clotting factor was uncovered and its properties detailed in their report.

Pathologic physiology Stuart factor deficiency has been demonstrated³⁸ to be transmitted by an incompletely recessive autosomal gene. While most severe in the homozygote, bleeding tendencies have been noted in the heterozygote and carriers can often be detected with appropriate tests.

Recently Graham³ has described a temporary deficiency of Stuart factor developed presumably as the result of contact with a farm insecticide.

Stuart factor has been demonstrated to be essential in the first phase of blood coagulation and a deficiency of the factor is demonstrated by the thromboplastin generation test. The defect is apparent when the patient's serum is substituted for normal serum in the incubation mixture. Stuart factor is adsorbed by BaSO_4 from normal plasma. As BaSO_4 treated plasma is used in performance of the test the defect is not detectable when the patient's BaSO_4 treated plasma is substituted for normal. Both normal and patient plasma are deficient in Stuart factor under conditions of the test. Stuart factor is present in normal serum as it is not consumed in coagulation and substitution of the patient's serum for normal serum in the incubation mixture reveals the defect.

The one stage prothrombin time is prolonged since Stuart factor as well as Factor VII and Factor V is essential for optimal development of thromboplastin activity from the usual tissue sources and platelets.

Prothrombin Deficiency

In 1934 Dam and Schonheyder^{13 5} noted that chicks raised on an artificial diet had a hemorrhagic diathesis unaffected by ascorbic acid. The following year Dam³¹ proposed the name vitamin K for the antihemorrhagic factor deficient in the diet and noted that it was fat soluble. Many compounds have been found to have vitamin K activity. All of these compounds are essentially derivatives of 2-methyl 1-4-naphthaquinone. Vitamin K₁ was isolated from alfalfa and vitamin K from putrefying fish meal.^{1 4} They differ from the synthetic menadione (2-methyl 1-4-naphthaquinone) by having a group substituted in the 3-position and from each other by the nature of the group. Vitamin K₁, which is 2-methyl 3-phytyl 1-4-naphthaquinone and menadione are both used clinically.

During this same period a number of workers were investigating the hemorrhagic sweet clover disease in cattle. Although first thought to be of infectious origin, it was soon recognized to result from the ingestion of spoiled sweet clover. The agent in spoiled sweet clover responsible for the hemorrhagic tendency was identified^{6 1} as 3,3-methylene bis (4-hydroxycoumarin) and its effect on the prothrombin time test demonstrated.¹⁰⁶ This entire story is reviewed in excellent fashion by Link.⁷

A number of "coumarin drugs" have now been synthesized and are used in the prevention of thrombosis. The structural relationship between the coumarin drugs and synthetic vitamin K is striking and it has been suggested that these anticoagulants may compete with vitamin K and substitute for it in reactions ordinarily leading to the formation of prothrombin. They act then in the manner of antimetabolites preventing normal utilization of vitamin K.⁶⁴ More recently it has been noted that Factor VII, the Stuart factor⁶ and probably PTC as well, require vitamin K for their synthesis and are quantitatively reduced by the action of the anticoagulant coumarin derivatives.⁶⁴

Pathologic Physiology. While congenital hypoprothrombinemia probably exists it must be extremely rare. Instances of this disorder reported before 1957 must be reevaluated in light of recent advances in our understanding of the evaluation of thrombin. The present discussion will be confined to the acquired form of the disorder.

It is not possible to produce a significant dietary deficiency of vitamin K in man as the intestinal bacteria produce sufficient vitamin to cover the daily needs. A deficiency will become apparent in any situation wherein the vitamin cannot be absorbed from the intestinal tract, however. Vitamin K is fat soluble and its absorption from the intestinal tract is impaired by disorders which result in a decrease in bile acids and consequent decrease in fat absorption.¹⁰⁷ Loss of large quantities of fat in the stool will likewise lead to loss of the vitamin. The occurrence of vitamin K deficiency in patients receiving wide spectrum antibiotics over long periods of time with sterilization of the intestinal tract and loss of vitamin K producing bacteria has been reported when associated with a vitamin K-deficient diet.

Since 1951 a number of case reports have appeared in the literature described as Factor VII deficiency. All had prolonged one stage prothrombin times uncorrected by BaSO_4 treated plasma but results of other coagulation tests varied. Recent work⁶⁰ has now established a third factor (Stuart factor) necessary for optimum development of thromboplastin activity under the conditions of the one stage prothrombin time test. Some of the cases formerly designated Factor VII deficiency have now been reexamined and found to be deficient not in Factor VII but in the newly described Stuart factor. Much of the confusion in the literature prior to 1957 relative to Factor VII deficiency can now be resolved.

Pathologic Physiology The mode of inheritance of congenital Factor VII deficiency is not known for certain but the gene is thought to be an autosomal recessive.⁴⁹ It seems clear from the studies carried out on the blood of patients with Factor VII deficiency that this factor while necessary for optimal development of extrinsic thromboplastin activity is not required for the development of intrinsic thromboplastin activity. Normal clotting time and thromboplastin generation test are therefore understandable. The presence of hemorrhagic symptoms in these patients attests to the importance of the development of optimal extrinsic thromboplastin activity in the physiologic defense of hemostasis.⁴

Factor VII is thought to be formed in the liver and is vitamin K dependent. It may be diminished in severe liver disease and is rapidly reduced during the administration of coumarin drugs.²⁴ Recent studies⁴ indicate the half life of Factor VII in normal man to be 7.2 to 10.8 hours. The clinical and laboratory findings in acquired Factor VII deficiency would of course reflect the primary disorder in addition to presenting those of the congenital deficiency.

Clinical Findings Patients with Factor VII deficiency may have the onset of abnormal bleeding in infancy and hemorrhage from the cord has been noted. Gastrointestinal hemorrhage, easy bruising and frequent epistaxis are common. These patients may also have mild hemarthroses. The tourniquet test and platelets are normal. In the majority of the patients bleeding time is normal but in as many as one third it may be prolonged. This finding cannot be explained at present. The thromboplastin generation test is normal in Factor VII deficiency but abnormal in Stuart factor deficiency. The one stage prothrombin time is prolonged and not corrected by the addition of BaSO_4 treated normal plasma (containing Factor V). The laboratory findings of acquired Factor VII deficiency will of course reflect the underlying pathology in addition.

Treatment Administration of fresh blood or plasma to patients with a congenital defect of Factor VII has been effective. The effects are short lived and the prothrombin time returns to pre transfusion levels within 24 hours.⁴

Factor VII deficiency secondary to anticoagulant coumarin drugs will respond to vitamin K_1 administration.

cutaneously, intramuscularly or intravenously. A 2 ml ampule containing 75 mg. is available for intravenous administration in emergency situations.

Illustrative Case

This 10 year old child was admitted to the hospital for investigation of a hemorrhagic diathesis. At birth she had a severe hemorrhage from the umbilicus and over the succeeding years recurrent episodes of epistaxis, gastrointestinal hemorrhages and multiple hematomas. Excessive bleeding often followed minor trauma but hemarthroses had not occurred.

Physical examination revealed only the presence of multiple bruises on the lower legs.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION. Erythrocyte count 458 ml per cu mm, leukocyte count 9880 per cu mm, hemoglobin 10.5 gm per 100 ml. Tourniquet test, bleeding time, clot retraction and coagulation time were normal. Platelet count (indirect) 281,000 per cu mm. Quick one stage prothrombin time was 54 seconds with a control of 14 seconds.

On her first admission at the age of 5 years it was thought that she had idiopathic hypoprothrombinemia on the basis of the data then available.

During a subsequent admission it was found that when normal plasma was mixed with that of the patient the prothrombin time was reduced but did not return to normal. The addition of "purified" prothrombin did not result in a normal one stage prothrombin time. One part of serum when mixed with three parts of the patient's plasma resulted in a normal one stage prothrombin time. On the basis of these studies it was felt that the patient probably had a Factor V deficiency.

The patient was then followed at another hospital where it was realized that she could not represent a Factor V deficiency since the one stage prothrombin time was corrected by the addition of normal serum and not by normal plasma. Factor VII was described at that time and it was noted that the clinical and laboratory findings of this patient fitted well with those of the Factor VII deficiency state. She was then carried as a Factor VII deficiency until the thromboplastin generation test became available. Once again the patient was reevaluated. It has now been concluded that a deficiency of Stuart factor is responsible for her hemorrhagic diathesis.

COMMENT. This case illustrates the growth of our knowledge of the second stage of blood coagulation. The patient was known to have abnormal bleeding, which was not related to platelet or vessel factors. She was studied extensively with all of the tests available during each hospitalization. A diagnosis of idiopathic hypoprothrombinemia was made when she was first admitted on the basis of the Quick one stage prothrombin time test. It was not until the thromboplastin generation test became available and it was found that the substitution of this patient's serum for normal serum in the incubation mixture resulted in a reduction in thromboplastin activity that the patient could be identified as having a Stuart factor defect.

Severe liver disease may also result in an abnormal prothrombin time. In these cases there is an adequate amount of the vitamin but the reactions in which it takes part in the liver are impaired.

The administration of anticoagulant drugs may produce the same effects as vitamin K deficiency. In addition to the coumarin drugs salicylates are known to produce hypoprothrombinemia. The mechanism by which these compounds exert their effect is not clear⁸ but it has been suggested that it is similar to that of the coumarin drugs.

Prothrombin, Factor VII, PTC and Stuart factor levels are below normal during the first six weeks of life¹. While most investigators have found a rise in these factors following the administration of vitamin K to the mother in labor or to the newborn infant, others³⁸ have failed to achieve this result. It has been suggested¹⁴³ that the low concentration of these factors in the neonatal period could be responsible for some instances of hemorrhagic disease of the newborn¹. Though this point is not yet settled³⁸ it is common practice to administer a routine prophylactic dose of 1 or 2 mg vitamin K to all infants at birth. Large doses of vitamin K (over 5 mg) have been reported to increase serum bilirubin levels and the risk of kernicterus in premature infants and should be avoided.⁸⁷

Clinical Examination Hypoprothrombinemia may result in a hemorrhagic diathesis manifested by bleeding from the gums, nose or gastrointestinal tract. Excessive menstrual flow is also a common finding.

A prolongation of the one stage prothrombin time is found in these disorders. The thromboplastin generation test should be normal and the modified thromboplastin generation test will indicate a deficiency of prothrombin. Fibrinogen assays are normal.

Treatment Blood transfusions should be given in emergency situations and will serve to treat shock, correct anemia and aid in restoration of missing coagulation factors.

It has now been found¹¹⁸ contrary to the original report¹¹ that natural vitamin K₁ (2-methyl 3-phytyl 1,4-naphthoquinone) is more effective than the synthetic vitamin K (menadione).

Vitamin K₁ is given slowly by the intravenous route in severe deficiencies when bleeding is imminent or has occurred. The time needed for a response to the drug to be demonstrable depends on the cause of the deficiency and the amount of vitamin administered. Generally bleeding is controlled in 3 to 6 hours. A 1 ml ampule contains 50 mg vitamin K₁. It is recommended that it be administered slowly at a rate not exceeding 10 mg/min.

Vitamin K₁ is also available in 5 mg tablets for oral administration in nonemergency situations. Five to 10 mg are given initially and the dosage adjusted depending on the clinical situation. In the presence of obstructive jaundice or biliary fistula the concomitant administration of bile salts is necessary when the drug is given by mouth.

Synthetic vitamin K (menadione) supplied as the sodium salt of 2-methyl 1,4-naphthohydroquinone is a water soluble compound. It is supplied in 1 ml ampules containing 5 or 10 mg. It may be administered sub

on the plasma fibrinogen level than will subsequent doses of comparable size. Transfusions of whole blood should be given to replace blood loss if need be.¹⁰⁴

Acquired Fibrinogen Deficiency

Pathologic Physiology. The mechanism by which the blood becomes depleted of fibrinogen in these conditions has been extensively investigated. Decidual and placental extracts are both rich tissue sources of thromboplastin activity. Widespread intravascular clotting may follow if these tissues or those of the lung or brain should gain access to the vascular system. Thus clotting is so widely disseminated that obstruction to the flow of the blood may not occur but the utilization of fibrinogen by the coagulation process will dangerously reduce its level.¹¹⁰ In a like manner the level of fibrinogen has been thought to be reduced by the coagulation of large retroplacental hemorrhage in instances of abruptio placentae.¹⁰ Fibrinolysins have been reported to occur in some obstetrical conditions^{10, 110, 111, 147} and in prostatic carcinoma¹⁴ and may be responsible for the depressed levels of fibrinogen.

Sharp et al.^{1, 9} have recently noted that a portion of the plasma fibrinogen may be physiologically inert during the early phases of this syndrome. Laboratory methods which quantitatively measure the level of fibrinogen may not be adequate and a test which measures the reactivity of the fibrinogen to thrombin is preferred.

Clinical Examination. Acquired fibrinogen deficiency may develop suddenly during labor or shortly thereafter and is manifested by generalized bleeding and incoagulability of the blood. It has been seen following abruptio placentae,^{110, 147} in association with amniotic fluid emboli,¹¹¹ and with the retention of a dead fetus.¹¹⁰ It is important to emphasize the suddenness with which this syndrome may arise. Its early recognition is imperative. The condition has also been reported following pulmonary resections in association with carcinoma of the prostate following incompatible blood transfusions and with severe burns.^{1, 11, 136}

Laboratory tests commonly used to demonstrate fibrinogen deficiency employ the fibrin clot as an end point. In the presence of fibrinogen deficiency the clot fails to form or is of poor character. The thrombin titer is perhaps the most reliable test. Normal plasma when diluted 1 to 64 with saline and often in the 1 in 128 dilution will clot following the addition of thrombin. Plasma from patients with fibrinogen deficiency often fails to clot even at low dilutions. The whole blood clotting time is often abnormal. When the blood clots in the normal period of time the clot is usually of poor quality but in some instances no coagulation occurs.

The one stage prothrombin time though a sensitive indicator of fibrinogen deficiency is non specific. Deficiency of Stuart factor, Factor V, Factor VII or prothrombin will also give abnormal results in this test. The thrombin clotting time of plasma is often prolonged (normal 10 to 12 seconds). The

DISORDERS AFFECTING THE THIRD STAGE OF BLOOD COAGULATION

Fibrinogen deficiency may be either congenital or acquired. The congenital variety is quite rare. Acquired fibrinogen deficiencies are more common and usually present as complications of certain surgical procedures or obstetrical accidents and are of grave importance.

Congenital Fibrinogen Deficiency

Pathologic Physiology Congenital fibrinogen deficiency appears to be genetically transmitted as a non sex linked recessive. In many of the reported cases the family history revealed consanguineous marriages in parents or grandparents.^{43, 104}

In these cases the absence of fibrinogen prevents the coagulation process from completing its final phase i.e. the conversion of fibrinogen to the fibrin clot. Thus coagulation cannot occur. The arrest of small vessel hemorrhage is normal as it is brought about by vasoconstriction and platelet thrombi.⁴³ Menstrual bleeding is normal and seems to be controlled by vasoconstriction of endometrial arterioles. These patients have been shown to have a decrease in synthesis of fibrinogen rather than an increase in its destruction. Minute traces of fibrinogen have been detected immunochemically in the blood and connective tissues of some of these patients and the defect may not be absolute in all instances.⁴³ Others have been unable to detect fibrinogen by any method.⁴³

Clinical Examination The disorder is often manifested at birth by the occurrence of bleeding from the umbilical cord.^{43, 104} The condition resembles AHF deficiency clinically but is usually less severe.¹⁰ Persistent bleeding may occur however in the wake of minor trauma and spontaneous bleeding may occur into joint spaces or soft tissues. Crippling hemarthroses do not occur in this disorder.^{43, 104} The thromboplastin generation test is normal since there is no defect in the early phases of clotting. Platelet count, tourniquet test and bleeding time are likewise unaffected by the absence of fibrinogen. The whole blood clotting time, one stage prothrombin time and thrombin time all require a fibrin clot as an end point and are abnormal in the absence of fibrinogen. Fibrinogen assay reveals only minute traces of fibrinogen or a complete absence.

Treatment The hemostatic defect in patients with congenital fibrinogen deficiency can be corrected by the administration of fibrinogen. Half of the fibrinogen administered intravenously to patients with congenital afibrinogenemia has been reported to be lost in 48 hours and thereafter it disappears with a half life of approximately four days.⁴³ The early loss of half of the administered fibrinogen is thought to represent equilibration with the extravascular compartment.⁴³ The mass of plasma protein located in extravascular spaces is approximately equal to the mass of plasma protein circulating within the blood vessels and the two are in dynamic equilibrium. As the extravascular deficit must be made up as well as that of the intravascular compartment the first dose of fibrinogen administered will have less effect

discovered. In this case the house officer noted that the patient's blood did not clot and when the addition of thrombin to the patient's plasma did not bring about coagulation the administration of fibrinogen was immediately begun. The patient's response to fibrinogen was good. It is interesting to note that the administration of 3000 ml of whole blood which contain approximately 9 gm of fibrinogen did not correct the defect while the administration of 4 gm of fibrinogen in saline brought about a distinct decrease in the rate of hemorrhage. The reason for this discrepancy which has been noted previously is unknown. The bleeding which occurred at the time of delivery of the stillborn infant was probably related to the tear rather than to fibrinogen deficiency since the coagulation time was still normal.

In retrospect it would have been advisable to avoid the administration of dextran to this patient since dextran itself may interfere with the clotting mechanism.¹¹⁹

III DISORDERS OF BOTH VESSEL FUNCTION AND BLOOD COAGULATION

Von Willebrand's Disease (Inherited autosomal hemorrhagic diathesis with antihemophilic factor deficiency and prolonged bleeding time)

In 1926 von Willebrand described a hemorrhagic diathesis found in members of a family living on the Åland Islands off the coast of Finland. He designated the condition as pseudohemophilia and felt that it resulted from abnormal platelet function. A number of reports of cases of pseudohemophilia have since appeared in the literature. The patients reported generally have had clinical findings similar to those of the family described by von Willebrand but the results of the laboratory tests have been varied. It now seems apparent that the term pseudohemophilia as used in the literature is not specific. Reassessment of the patients originally described by von Willebrand has made clear the nature of their defect⁹ and it seems reasonable to refer to their disorder as von Willebrand's disease.

Pathologic Physiology. Von Willebrand's disease is inherited and is transmitted as an autosomal dominant with varying degrees of expressivity.⁹⁻¹¹ The patients originally described by von Willebrand and thought to have a qualitative platelet defect have been reexamined⁹ and no such defect could be established. It would seem reasonable to include under the term von Willebrand's disease only those patients who have findings similar to those of the original group, namely a prolonged bleeding time, slightly prolonged coagulation time, moderate or slight decrease in AHF levels, and normal platelets. It has been demonstrated that the AHF level may be raised by the administration of fraction 1-0 of normal human plasma and the bleeding time simultaneously is corrected. The bleeding time can also be corrected by the administration of a fraction 1-0 which has no AHF activity.

thrombin time is less sensitive than the thrombin titer however Acquired fibrinogen deficiency may be associated with a deficiency of Factor V AHF and platelets The platelet count is often low during the acute phase of the syndrome¹¹ AHF and Factor V deficiency can be demonstrated by the thromboplastin generation test

Treatment Immediate treatment is often required in these cases Fibrinogen preparations are administered in doses of 4 to 11 gm and should be repeated as needed Steroids may be of benefit if fibrinolytic activity is present Steps should be taken to correct the underlying disease if possible Fibrinogen alone may not be adequate as there may be associated defects of Factor V and AHF and fresh whole blood should be used as well

Illustrative Case HISTORY A 40 year old white woman gravida 10 para 8 aborta 1 was admitted one month prior to the expected date of delivery She had progressed normally in her gestation until the night before admission when she developed diarrhea and weakness The patient fainted on the morning of admission and her physician was called He found her in shock and referred her for treatment

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION Examination revealed a blood pressure of 30/0 with a pulse rate of 120 per minute A term fetus was present with the vertex floating The uterus was very firm and the fetal heart could not be heard There was no external loss of blood

LABORATORY EXAMINATION The hematocrit was 22 per cent and urinalysis revealed 6 to 8 w b c/hpf 20 to 30 r b c/hpf and 4+ albumin A diagnosis of premature separation of the placenta with non viable fetus was made

COURSE As the patient was moved from the stretcher into bed approximately 500 ml of unclotted blood gushed from the vagina An intravenous infusion of 500 ml of dextran was started immediately and within a few minutes the administration of 500 ml of whole blood was started Six bottles of whole blood (3000 ml) were necessary over the next one and one half hours to maintain the blood pressure above shock levels because of continued and profuse vaginal hemorrhage It was noted that the patient's blood did not clot and a fibrinogen assay was performed The addition of human thrombin to her plasma did not result in coagulation which indicated the probability of a fibrinogen deficiency Four grams of fibrinogen in 400 ml of saline was administered intravenously Three additional pints of blood (1500 ml) were infused in the next hour Since bleeding continued though somewhat slowed an additional 2 gm of fibrinogen was given intravenously in 200 ml of saline following which the coagulation time was four minutes Patient was delivered of a stillborn infant 18 hours after admission with the loss of approximately 700 to 800 ml more blood and additional whole blood was administered Coagulation time at this point was still normal Following repair of a small laceration of the fourchette bleeding ceased and the remainder of the patient's course was uneventful

COMMENTS Excessive bleeding is expected with premature separation and often it is some time before the existence of a fibrinogen deficiency is

age when Gelfoam and topical thrombin became available and an extraction was successfully carried out using these agents. She was now admitted for further dental work, having had but one nosebleed of any significance in seven years and only rare vaginal spotting.

The patient's mother and father were first cousins. There was no history that either the parents or grandparents had had any abnormal bleeding. Two brothers had died following hemorrhage in infancy, another brother died following uncontrollable epistaxis, and a fourth brother bled to death during an appendectomy. A fifth committed suicide. The remaining five siblings were alive and well without historical evidence of abnormal bleeding.

A review of the old record revealed marked variability of the bleeding time and the fact that the coagulation time was somewhat prolonged occasionally. Prothrombin time, platelet counts and clot retraction were consistently normal. The results of the tourniquet test varied and from time to time were slightly positive. On one occasion the bleeding time was noted to be $17\frac{1}{2}$ minutes in one ear while at the same time it was 180 minutes in the other. There was also striking evidence that the infusion of whole blood affected the bleeding time. On one occasion the capillaries were visualized directly and it was noted that they did not retract properly after being punctured with a needle.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION In addition to dental caries for which she was admitted the only positive physical finding was very slight hepatomegaly.

LABORATORY FINDINGS The red blood cell count was 3.5 ml per cu mm, hemoglobin 9.6 gm per 100 ml, hematocrit 29 per cent and platelets 364,000 per cu mm. The bleeding time was discontinued at 15 minutes, the coagulation time was 13 minutes and the thromboplastin generation test revealed a depression of AHF.

COURSE The patient was given prednisone and 3 units of fresh (4 to 6 hours old) blood. Her bleeding time and thromboplastin generation test returned to normal and she tolerated the removal of three teeth without excessive bleeding. Within 48 hours the bleeding time was again prolonged despite continued administration of prednisone. Five hundred ml of fresh plasma in glass bottles was given and once again the bleeding time was returned to normal. She tolerated the removal of two more teeth without excessive bleeding.

COMMENT The history presented indicates the variability of the clinical manifestation of this disorder. There is clear evidence that the bleeding time was affected by both whole blood transfusions and plasma transfusions. The fact that plasma transfusions collected in and administered from glass bottles corrected the defect affords evidence against the possibility that platelets played any role in the correction of the bleeding time. The patient's platelets were normal in the thromboplastic generation test. The decreased AHF and prolonged bleeding time indicates the similarity of this patient's disorder to those described by von Willebrand, though this patient's defect may have been inherited as an autosomal recessive. The clinical course of this patient was favorably altered by the administration of fresh plasma. The administra-

Fibrinogen has no effect on the bleeding time. These findings suggest that the fraction 1-0 of normal plasma contains a factor other than AHF or fibrinogen which will influence the bleeding time. The identification of this factor has not yet been accomplished.⁹⁻¹³

Clinical Features. This disorder is often apparent in the first few weeks of life when spontaneous bleeding from the nose or gums may occur. Excessive bleeding often follows minor trauma. Uterine bleeding may be excessive and pregnancy is often complicated by bleeding episodes.¹¹⁻¹³ Neither petechiae nor hemarthrosis is common in this disease. The great variability in the bleeding tendency in the same patient from time to time makes the clinical course difficult to anticipate, but it is rare for these patients to succumb during an episode of bleeding.

The laboratory findings in this group of patients are not consistent from patient to patient or indeed in the same patient from one examination to the next.^{8-10,13,14}

The platelets are normal quantitatively and qualitatively. The one-stage prothrombin time is normal since it bypasses the defect. Fibrinogen levels are adequate. The bleeding time is prolonged. The coagulation time may be prolonged and seems to reflect the level of AHF. It does the thromboplastin generation test which is abnormal in the plasma phase. In 1941 Macfarlane¹⁵ demonstrated that the capillaries in the nail beds of these patients appeared bizarre and failed to constrict normally.

Treatment. The fact that more than one disorder has in the past been included under this name may be responsible for the wide variation reported in response to therapy.

Blood transfusions are indicated for support of a patient through a severe hemorrhagic episode. The use of fresh plasma has been effective in control as has Cohn's fraction 1-0.

The natural history of this disorder is extremely variable and it is difficult to interpret the efficacy of a particular therapeutic maneuver. Any surgery is a major hazard to these patients and should be avoided if possible. If surgery is unavoidable the patient should be prepared by the administration of fresh plasma.

Illustrative Case History. A 50-year-old white married woman was admitted to the hospital for the extraction of several teeth. She had been known to be a "bleeder" all her life. Minor cuts and abrasions were followed by excessive bleeding in childhood and there had been repeated epistaxis, subcutaneous hemorrhages, and oozing from the gums. At 18 years of age she had a severe hemorrhage which continued for two to three days following the extraction of a tooth. Following a miscarriage at the age of 33 she had intermittent bleeding for six months. Bleeding was finally controlled by the administration of a number of whole blood transfusions. There were, however, long intervals of freedom from any evidence of bleeding tendency.

She began to have severe pain as the result of excessive dental caries while in her late thirties. Dental extractions were denied her on several occasions because of her history of a hemorrhagic diathesis. She was 42 years of

- 14 Ancona G C Ellenhorn W J and Falconer E H Purpura due to food sensitivity J Allergy 20 467 1951
- 15 Astrup T Fibrinolysis in the organism Blood 11 781 1956
- 16 Barry A P Geoghegan F and Shea S M Acquired fibrinopenia in pregnancy Brit M J 3 287 1955
- 17 Bidwell E The purification of bovine antihæmophilic globulin Brit J Haemat 1 35 1955
- 18 Biggs R et al Christmas disease Brit M J 2 1378 1952
- 19 Biggs R and Douglas A S The thromboplastin generation test J Clin Path 6 23 1953
- 20 Biggs R and Macfarlane R G Haemophilia and related conditions Brit J Haemat 4 1 1958
- 21 Bonnin J A Cohen A K and Hicks N D Coagulation defects in a case of systemic lupus erythematosus with thrombocytopenia Brit J Haemat 2 168 1956
- 22 Brafield A J Madras M B and Cave J The tability of Christmas factor A guide to the management of Christmas disease Lancet 2 567 1956
- 23 Brinkhous K M Langdell R D Penick G D Graham J M and Wagner R H Newer approaches to the study of hemophilia and hemophiloid states JAMA 154 481 1954
- 24 Brinkley S M MacCorquodale D W Thayer S A and Dossy E A The isolation of vitamin K₃ J Biol Chem 130 219 1939
- 25 Buchanan J C and Leavell B S Pseudohemophilia Report of 13 new cases and statistical review of previously reported cases Ann Int Med 44 241 1956
- 26 Conley C L Evans M S Harrington W J Schwartz S O and Dameshek W Panels in therapy Treatment of acute ITP Blood 11 384 1956
- 27 Conley C L Rathbun H K Morse W I II and Robinson J M Jr Circulating anticoagulant as a cause of hemorrhagic diathesis in man Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull 63 268 1948
- 28 Cooper T Stickney J M Pease G L and Bennett W A Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura Am J Med 13 374 1952
- 29 Craddock C G and Lawrence J S Hemophilia Bk 2 505 1947
- 30 Cronkite E P Ionizing radiation injury Its diagnosis by physical examination and clinical laboratory procedures JAMA 139 366 1949
- 31 Dam H The antihemorrhagic vitamin of the chick Biochem J 29 1273 1935
- 32 Dam H and Schotheyder F A deficiency disease in chicks resembling scurvy Biochem J 28 1355 1934
- 33 Derham R J and Rogerson M M The Schonlein Henoch syndrome and collagen disease Arch Dis Childhood 27 139 1952
- 34 Dische F E Blood clotting substances with Factor VII activity A comparison of some congenital and acquired deficiencies Brit J Haemat 4 201 1958
- 35 Fantl P and Nance M H An acquired haemorrhagic disease in a female due to an inhibitor of blood coagulation Med J Australia 2 125 1946
- 36 Fantl P Parahemophilia (proaccelerin deficiency) occurrence and biochemistry In Brinkhous K M Ed Hemophilia and Hemophiloid Diseases University of North Carolina Press Chapel Hill 1957 pp 79 92
- 37 Fraenkel G J Surgery in haemophilia J Royal Coll Surgeons Edinburgh 3 54 1957
- 38 Fresh J W Ferguson J H Stamey C Morgan F M and Lewis J H Blood prothrombin proconvertin and proaccelerin in normal infancy Questionable relationships to vitamin K Pediatrics 19 241 1957
- 39 Frick, M G Acquired circulating anticoagulants in systemic collagen disease "autoimmune thromboplastin deficiency" Blood 10 691 1955
- 40 Frick, M G Hemophilia like disease following pregnancy Blood 8 598 1953
- 41 Frick, M G Relative incidence of antihemophilic globulin (AHG) plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) and plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) deficiency J Lab Clin Med 43 560 1954
- 42 Frick, M G Studies on the turnover rate of stable prothrombin conversion factor in man Acta Haemat 19 20 1958

tion of adrenocortical steroids was not considered to have played a role in the correction of the bleeding time since it was prolonged again 48 hours after administration of fresh whole blood despite their continued administration. In retrospect the use of dental splints as described under the treatment of AHF deficiency may have obviated some of this patient's difficulty with extraction.

Thrombopathia

Hemorrhagic diathesis has been attributed to qualitative as well as quantitative changes in the platelets.^{16, 17, 139, 140} As the platelets play so broad a role in the defense of hemostasis, altered platelet function may affect the vascular or biochemical phase of hemostasis or both. It is not surprising to find a wide range of abnormal laboratory tests reported in the literature since individual platelet functions are difficult to assess and more than one function may be altered.

Thrombopathia is usually investigated by the use of the thromboplastin generation test, heparin neutralizing activity, clot retraction, morphologic study of the platelets, bleeding time, and tourniquet test.

At present it seems clear that altered platelet function may produce hemorrhagic diathesis, but clarification of these platelet abnormalities must await further investigation.

REFERENCES

1. Aballi A J, Banus V L, deLamerens S, and Rozengauig S. Coagulation studies in the newborn period. III. Hemorrhagic disease of the newborn. *Am J Dis Child* 97:524, 1959.
2. Aballi A J, Banus V L, deLamerens S, and Rozengauig S. Coagulation studies in the newborn period. IV. Deficiency of Stuart Prower factor as a part of the clotting defect of the newborn. *Am J Dis Child* 97:549, 1959.
3. Ackroyd J F. Allergic purpura including purpura due to foods, drugs, and infection. *Am J Med* 14:605, 1953.
4. Ackroyd J F. Function of Factor VII. *Brit J Haemat* 2:397, 1956.
5. Ackroyd J F. The pathogenesis of thrombocytopenic purpura due to hypersensitivity to Sedormid (allyl isopropyl acetylarbunide). *Clin Sci* 7:249, 1949.
6. Ackroyd J F. The role of Sedormid in the immunologic reaction that results in platelet lysis in Sedormid purpura. *Clin Sci* 13:409, 1954.
7. Aggeler P M, et al. Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) deficiency: A new disease resembling hemophilia. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 79:692, 1952.
8. Alexander H and Goldstein R. Dual hemostatic defect in pseudohemophilia. *J Clin Invest* (abs) 32:551, 1953.
9. Alexander H, Goldstein R, Landwehr C, and Cook C D. Congenital SPCA deficiency: A hitherto unrecognized coagulation defect with hemorrhage rectified by serum and serum fractions. *J Clin Invest* 30:596, 1951.
10. Alexander H, et al. Congenital afibrinogenemia. *Blood* 9:843, 1954.
11. Almquist H J and Klose A A. Antihemorrhagic activity of 2-methyl-1,4-naphthoquinone. *J Biol Chem* 130:787, 1939.
12. Almquist H J. Purification of the antihemorrhagic vitamin. *J Biol Chem* 114:241, 1936.
13. Almquist H J and Stokstad E L R. Hemorrhagic chick disease of dietary origin. *J Biol Chem* 111:105, 1935.

- 66 Johnson S A, Monte R W and Caldwell M J A new approach to the thrombocytopathies Thrombocytopathy A Thrombosis Et Diathesis Haemorrhagica ~ 279 1958
- 67 Jones H W and Tocantins L H The history of purpura hemorrhagica Ann Med History 5 349 1933 (N S)
- 68 Jorpes J E The origin and the physiology of heparin The specific therapy in thrombosis Ann Int Med 27 361 1947
- 69 Kelwick R A and Wolf P A concentrate of human antithrombotic factor—its use in six cases of haemophilia Lancet 1 647 1957
- 70 Kellaway C H Snake venom Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 60 1 1937
- 71 Kingley C S Familial Factor V deficiency The pattern of heredity Quart J Med 23 323 1954
- 72 Koller F, Loehger A and Duckert F Experiments on a new clotting factor (Factor VII) Acta Haemat 6 1 1951
- 73 Krevans J R and Jackson D P Hemorrhagic disorder following massive whole blood transfusions JAMA 159 171 1955
- 74 Lee S L and Sanders M A disorder of blood coagulation in systemic lupus erythematosus J Clin Invest 34 1814 1955
- 75 Lewis J H, Ferguson J H, Spaugh E, Frish J W and Zucker M B Acquired hypoprothrombinemia Blood 12 84 1957
- 76 Lewis J H and Ferguson J H Afibrinogenemia Report of a case Am J Dis Child 88 711 1954
- 77 Link K P The anticoagulant from packed sweet clover hay Harvey Lectures 39 163, 1944
- 78 Link K P, Overman R S, Sullivan W R, Huebner C F and Scheel L D Studies on the hemorrhagic sweet clover disease VI Hypoprothrombinemia in the rat induced by salicylic acid J Biol Chem 147 463 1943
- 79 Lozier E L, Jelliffe L S and Taylor F H L Hemorrhagic diathesis with prolonged coagulation time associated with a circulating anticoagulant Am J Med Sci 199 318 1940
- 80 Lozier E L The thrombocytopenic purpuras Bull N Y Acad Med 30 184 1954
- 81 Macfarlane R G, Biggs R and Bidwell E Bovine antithrombotic globulin in the treatment of haemophilia Lancet 1 1316 1954
- 82 Macfarlane R G A boy with no fibrinogen Lancet 1 309 1938
- 83 Macfarlane R G Critical review The mechanism of haemostasis Quart J Med NS 10 1 1941
- 84 Macfarlane R G et al Surgery in haemophilia Lancet 2 251 1957
- 85 Meacham C C and Weisberger A S Unusual manifestations of disseminated lupus erythematosus Ann Int Med 43 143 1955
- 86 Merskey C The occurrence of haemophilia in the human female Quart J Med NS 20 299 1951
- 87 Meyer T C and Angus J The effect of large doses of Synkavit in the newborn Arch Dis Child 37 212 1962
- 88 Mills S D Purpuric manifestations occurring in measles in childhood J Pediatrics 36 32 1950
- 89 Mitchell J B Metabolic effects of therapeutic doses of X and gamma radiations Br J Radiol 16 329 1947
- 90 Moschowitz E An acute febrile pleiochromic anemia with hyaline thrombosis of the terminal arterioles and capillaries An undescribed disease Arch Int Med 66 83 1955
- 91 Muirhead J F Platelets and stored blood Br J Haemat 2 17 1956
- 92 Nilsson I M, Blombäck H, Jorpes E, Blombäck B and Johansson S A Von Willebrand's disease and its correction with human plasma fraction 1-0 Acta Med Scandinav 159 179 1957
- 93 Nilsson I M, Blombäck M and von Frawcken J On an inherited autosomal hemorrhagic diathesis with antithrombotic globulin (AHG) deficiency and prolonged bleeding time Acta Med Scandinav 159 35 1957
- 94 Nour El Din F and Wilkenson J E Changes in the blood-clotting defect in Christias disease after plasma and serum transfusions Clin Sci 17 303 1958

- 43 Gitlin D and Borges W H Studies on the metabolism of fibrinogen in two patients with congenital afibrinogenemia *Blood* 8 679 1953
- 44 Gitlow S and Goldmark C Generalized capillary and arteriolar thrombosis *Ann Int Med* 13 1046 1939
- 45 Goldstein R and Alexander B Further studies on proconvertin deficiency and the role of proconvertin In Brinkhous K M Ed Hemophilia and Hemophiloid Disease University of North Carolina Press Chapel Hill 1957 pp 93 110
- 46 Good T A Camazzo E F and Good R A Thrombocytopenia and giant hemangioma in infants *Am J Dis Child* 90 260 1955
- 47 Gore I Disseminated arteriolar and capillary platelet thrombosis A morphologic study of its histogenesis *Am J Path* 26 155 1950
- 47a Graham J B Barrow E M and Wynne T R Stuart clotting defect III An acquired case with complete recovery In Brinkhous K M Ed Hemophilia and Other Hemorrhagic States University of North Carolina Press Chapel Hill 1959 Chapter 18
- 47b Graham J B Stuart clotting defect and Stuart factor *Thromb Diath Hemorr Suppl* In Press
- 47c Graham J B and Geratz J D Recent experiences with transfusion therapy in PTC deficiency In Hollander L Ed Trans VII Congr Internat Soc of Blood Trans Basel 1959
- 48 Graham J B Barrow E M and Hougie C Stuart clotting defect II Genetic aspects of a new hemorrhagic stage *J Clin Invest* 36 497 1957
- 49 Graham J B Genetic problems Hemophilia and allied diseases In Brinkhous K M Ed Hemophilia and Hemophiloid Diseases University of North Carolina Press Chapel Hill 1957 pp 137 162
- 50 Haggerty R J and Eley R C Vancella and cortisone *Pediatrics* 18 160 1956
- 51 Hanes F M Multiple hereditary telangiectases causing hemorrhage *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 20 63 1909
- 52 Hardisty R M Acquired haemophilia like disease *J Clin Path* 7 26 1954
- 53 Hardisty R M and Pinniger J L Congenital afibrinogenemia Further observations on the blood coagulation mechanism *Brit J Haemat* 2 139 1956
- 54 Harrington W J The clinical significance of antibodies for platelets *Sang* 25 712 1954
- 55 Harrington W J Minnich V and Arimura C The autoimmune thrombocytopenias In Tocantins L M Ed Progress in Hematology Grune & Stratton New York 1956
- 56 Harrington W J The Purpuras Disease a Month Year Book Publications Chicago July 1957
- 57 Harrington W S Sprague C C Minnich V Moore C V and Dubach R Immunologic mechanisms in idiopathic and neonatal thrombocytopenic purpura *Ann Int Med* 38 433 1953
- 58 Hess A F and Fish M Infantile scurvy The blood the blood vessels and the diet *Am J Dis Child* 8 365 1914
- 59 Hodgkinson C P Margulis R R and Luzadre J H Etiology and management of hypofibrinogenemia of pregnancy *JAMA* 154 557 1954
- 60 Hougie C Barrow E M and Graham J B Stuart clotting defect I Segregation of an hereditary hemorrhagic state from the heterogeneous group heretofore called stable factor (SICA proconvertin Factor VII) deficiency *J Clin Invest* 36 485 1957
- 61 Hougie C Circulating Anticoagulants *Brit M Bull* 11 16 1955
- 62 Huebner C F and Link K I Studies on the hemorrhagic sweet clover disease VI The synthesis of the diketone derived from the hemorrhagic agent through alkaline degradation *J Biol Chem* 138 529 1941
- 63 Humble J C The mechanism of petechial hemorrhage function *Blood* 4 69 1949
- 64 Hunter R B and Shepherd D M Chemistry of coumarin anticoagulant drugs *Brit M Bull* 11 58 1955
- 65 Ingram G I C Observations in a case of multiple hemostatic defects *Brit J Haemat* 2 180 1956

- 66 Johnson S A, Monto R W and Caldwell M J A new approach to the thrombo cytopathies. *Thrombocytopathy A. Thrombosis Et Diathesis Haemorrhagica* 2 279 1958
- 67 Jones H W and Tocantins L M The history of purpura hemorrhagica. *Ann Med History* 5 349 1933 (NS)
- 68 Jorpes J E The origin and the physiology of heparin. The specific therapy in thrombo sis. *Ann Int Med* 27 361 1947
- 69 Kirkwick R A and Wolf P A concentrate of human antihemophilic factor—Its use in six cases of hemophilia. *Lancet* 1 647 1957
- 70 Kellaway C H Snake venom. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 60 1 1957
- 71 Kingsley C S Familial Factor V deficiency. The pattern of heredity. *Quart J Med* 23 323 1954
- 72 Koller F, Loeliger A and Duckert F Experiments on a new clotting factor (Factor VII). *Acta Haemat* 6 1 1951
- 73 Krevans J R and Jackson D P Hemorrhagic disorder following massive whole blood transfusions. *JAMA* 159 171 1955
- 74 Lee S L and Sanders M A disorder of blood coagulation in systemic lupus eryth matosus. *J Clin Invest* 34 1814 1955
- 75 Lewis J H, Ferguson J H, Spaugh E, Fresh J W and Zucker M B Acquired hypoprothrombinemia. *Blood* 12 84 1957
- 76 Lewis J H and Ferguson J H Afibrinogenemia. Report of a case. *Am J Dis Child* 68 711 1954
- 77 Link A P The anticoagulant from poiled sweet clover hay. *Harvey Lectures* 39 182 1944
- 78 Link A P, Overman R S, Sullivan W H, Huebner C F and Schell L D Studies on the hemorrhagic sweet clover disease. VI. Hypoprothrombinemia in the rat induced by wheyhe acid. *J Biol Chem* 147 463 1943
- 79 Lozner F L, Jolliffe L S and Taylor F H L Hemorrhagic diathesis with prolonged coagulation time associated with a circulating anticoagulant. *Am J Med Sc* 194 318 1940
- 80 Lozner E L The thrombocytopenic purpuras. *Bull NY Acad Med* 30 184 1954
- 81 Macfarlane R G, Biggs R and Bidwell E Bovine antihemophilic globulin in the treatment of haemophilia. *Lancet* 1 1316 1954
- 82 Macfarlane R G A boy with no fibrinogen. *Lancet* 1 709 1938
- 83 Macfarlane R G Critical review. The mechanism of haemostasis. *Quart J Med* NS 10 1 1941
- 84 Macfarlane R G et al Surgery in haemophilia. *Lancet* 2 251 1957
- 85 Meacham C C and Weisberger A S Unusual manifestations of disseminated lupus erythematosis. *Ann Int Med* 43 143 1955
- 86 Merskey C The occurrence of haemophilia in the human female. *Quart J Med* NS 40 499 1951
- 87 Meyer T C and Angus J The effect of large doses of Synkavit in the newborn. *Arch Dis Child* 31 212 1956
- 88 Mills S D Purpuric manifestations occurring in measles in childhood. *J Pediatrics* 36 35 1950
- 89 Mitchell J B Metabolic effects of therapeutic doses of λ and gamma radiations. *Brit J Radiol* 16 339 1943
- 90 Moschowitz E An acute febrile pleochromic anemia with hyaline thrombosis of the terminal arterioles and capillaries. An undescribed disease. *Arch Int Med* 36 89 1925
- 91 Muirhead J F Platelets in stored blood. *Brit J Haemat* 2 17 1956
- 92 Nilsson I M, Blombäck M, Jorpes E, Blombäck H and Johansson H A Von Willebrand's disease and its correction with human plasma fraction 1-0. *Acta med scandinav* 159 179 1957
- 93 Nilsson I M, Blombäck M and von Francken I On an inherited autosomal hemorrhagic diathesis with antihemophilic globulin (AHG) deficiency and prolonged bleeding time. *Acta med scandinav* 159 35 1957
- 94 Nour Eldin F and Wilkinson J F Changes in the blood-clotting defect in Christ mas disease after plasma and serum transfusions. *Clin Sc* 17 303 1958

- 95 O'Brien J R An acquired coagulation defect in a woman *J Clin Path* 7 22 1954
- 96 Osler W On a family form of recurring epistaxis associated with multiple telangiectases of the skin and mucous membranes *Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull* 12 333 1901
- 97 Osler W The visceral lesions of purpura and allied conditions *Brit M J* 1 517 1914
- 98 Owren I A The coagulation of blood—investigation on a new clotting factor *Acta med scandinav Supp* 194 1947
- 99 Owren P A The diagnostic and prognostic significance of plasma prothrombin and Factor V levels in parenchymatous hepatitis and obstructive jaundice *Scandinav J Clin & Lab Invest* 1 131 1949
- 100 Patch A J Jr and Taylor F H L Hemophilia II Some properties of a substance obtained from normal human plasma effective in accelerating the coagulation of hemophilic blood *J Clin Invest* 16 113 1937
- 101 Pavlosky A Contribution to the pathogenesis of hemophilia *Blood* 2 185 1947
- 102 Philpott M G The Schonlein-Henoch syndrome in childhood with particular reference to the occurrence of nephritis *Arch Dis Child* 27 450 1952
- 103 Frcsley H J Best W R and Lamarzi L R Bone marrow in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura *J Lab & Clin Med* 40 503 1952
- 104 Irichard R W and Vann R I Congenital afibrinogenemia *Am J Dis Child* 88 703 1954
- 105 Pritchard J A and Wright M R Studies to determine the cause of hypofibrinogenemia in placental abruption *Am J Med* 27 321 1959
- 106 Quick A J The coagulation defect in sweet clover disease and in the hemorrhagic chick disease of dietary origin *Am J Physiol* 118 260 1937
- 107 Quick A J The prothrombin in hemophilia and in obstructive jaundice *J Biol Chem* 109 73 1935
- 108 Quick A J and Collentine G E The role of vitamin K in the synthesis of prothrombin *Am J Physiol* 164 716 1951
- 109 Rand M and Reid G Source of serotonin in serum *Nature* 168 385 1951
- 110 Reid D E Weiner A E Roby C C and Diamond L A Maternal afibrinogenemia associated with long standing intrauterine fetal death *Am J Obst & Gynec* 66 500 1953
- 111 Reid D E Weiner A E and Roby C C Intravascular clotting and afibrinogenemia The presumptive lethal factors in the syndrome of amniotic fluid embolism *Am J Obst & Gynec* 66 465 1953
- 112 Rosenthal M C Deficiency in plasma thromboplastin component II Its incidence in hemophilic population Critique of methods for identification *Am J Clin Path* 24 910 1954
- 113 Rosenthal M C and Sanders M Plasma thromboplastin component deficiency *Am J Med* 16 153 1954
- 114 Rosenthal R L Driskin O H and Rosenthal N New hemophilia like disease caused by deficiency of a third plasma thromboplastin factor *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 82 171 1953
- 115 Rosenthal R L Properties of plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) in relation to blood coagulation *J Lab & Clin Med* 45 123 1955
- 116 Schneider C L Fibrin embolism (disseminated intravascular coagulation) with defibrination as one of the end results during placental abruption *Surg Gynec Obst* 92 27 1951
- 117 Schneider C L Rapid estimation of plasma fibrinogen concentration and its use as a guide to therapy of intravascular defibrination *Am J Obst & Gynec* 64 141 1952
- 118 Schulman I Smith C H Landon M and Fort L Vascular hemophilia *Am J Dis Child* 90 526 1955
- 119 Scott J S Blood coagulation failure in obstetrics effects of dextran and plasma *Brit M J* 2 290 1955
- 120 Sharp A A Howe B Biggs R and Methuen D T Defibrination syndrome in pregnancy Value of various diagnostic tests *Lancet* 2 130 1958
- 121 Singer K and Ramot B Pseudohemophilia Type B *Arch Int Med* 97 715 1956

- 122 Singer K Thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura *Advances Int Med* 6 195
- 123 Soulier J P and Larrieu M J Differentiation of hemophilia into two groups A study of thirty three cases *New England J Med* 249 547 1953
- 124 Soulier J P Syndromes hemorrhagiques avec atteinte isolée de la résistance capillaire *Sang* 21 801 1950
- 125 Stahmann M A Huebner C F and Link K P Studies on the hemorrhagic sweet clover disease V Identification and synthesis of the hemorrhagic agent. *J Biol Chem* 138 513 1941
- 126 Stefanini M Activity of plasma labile factor in disease *Lancet* 1 606 1951
- 127 Stefanini M Basic mechanisms of hemostasis *Bull NY Acad Med* 20 239 1954
- 128 Stefanini M and Chatterjea J B Studies on platelets IV A thrombocytopenic factor in normal human blood plasma or serum *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 79 623 1952
- 129 Stefanini M Chatterjea J B Dameshek W Zannos L and Santiago E P The effect of transfusion of platelet rich polycythemic blood on the platelets and hemostatic function in idiopathic and "secondary" thrombocytopenic purpura *Blood* 7 53 1952
- 130 Stefanini M and Dameshek W Collection preservation and transfusion of platelet *New England J Med* 248 797 1953
- 131 Stefanini M and Dameshek W The Hemorrhagic Disorders Grune and Stratton 1955 New York.
- 132 Stefanini M Management of thrombocytopenic states *Arch Int Med* 95 543 1955
- 133 Stefanini M Roy C A Zannos L and Dameshek W Therapeutic effect of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) in a case of Henoch Schonlein vascular (anaphylactoid) purpura *JAMA* 144 1372 1950
- 134 Steinkamp R Moore C V and Doubek W G Thrombocytopenic purpura caused by hyper sensitivity to quinine *J Lab & Clin Med* 45 18 1955
- 135 Tagnon H J Schulman P Whitmore W F and Leone L A Prostatic fibrinolysin *Am J Med* 15 875 1953
- 136 Tagnon H J Whitmore W F and Shulman N R Fibrinolysis in metastatic cancer of the prostate *Cancer* 5 9 1952
- 137 Talbott J H and Ferrandis R M *Collagen Diseases* Grune and Stratton 1956 New York
- 138 Tocantins L M Platelets and the structure and physical properties of blood clots *Am J Physiol* 114 709 1936
- 139 Van Creveld H Ho L K and Veder H A Thrombopathia *Acta haemat* 19 199 1958
- 140 Van Creveld S and Paulssen M M P Significance of clotting factors in blood platelets in normal and pathological conditions *Lancet* 2 42 1951
- 141 Vandenbroucke J and Verstrichte M Thrombocytopenia due to platelet agglutinins in the newborn *Lancet* 1 593 1955
- 142 Vallalobus T J Adelson E and Barila T J Hematologic changes in hypothyrmic dogs *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 89 192, 1955
- 143 Waddell W W Jr Cuerry III III Bray W H and Kelley O H Possible effects of vitamin K on prothrombin and clotting time in newly born infants *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 40 432 1939
- 144 Waldenström J Incipient myelomatosis or essential hyperglobulinemia with fibrinogenopenia—a new syndrome? *Acta med scandinav* 117 216 1944
- 145 Ware A G Faley J L and Seegers W V Platelet retracts fibrin formation and interaction of purified prothrombin and thromboplastin *Am J Physiol* 154 140 1948
- 146 Weber F P Multiple hereditary developmental angiodysplasia (telangiectases) of the skin and mucous membranes associated with recurring hemorrhages *Lancet* 2 160 1907
- 147 Weiner A H Reid D E and Roby C C Incoagulable blood in severe premature separation of the placenta A method of management *Am J Obst & Gynec* 66 415 1953

- 148 Williams G A and Brack I B · Gastrointestinal bleeding in hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia Arch Int Med 95 41 1955
- 149 Wishart C Smith A C Honey G ■ and Taylor A B Dental extraction in haemophilia Lancet 2 363 1957
- 150 Wright D O Reppert L B and Cuttino J T · Purpuric manifestations of heat stroke Arch Int Med 77 27 1946

Leukocytes

CREDIT FOR distinguishing between the red and white corpuscles in the circulating blood has been given to William Hewson.¹¹ The term "leukocytosis" was introduced by Virchow to indicate a temporary increase in the number of circulating leukocytes; he recognized that increases occurred in a variety of normal and disease states. The association of leukocytosis with infectious processes attracted considerable attention and stimulated numerous investigations. Almost fifty years ago the authors of one book on hematology wrote "The problem of leukocytosis has been subjected to as much discussion as any question of modern medicine. An exhaustive recital of the work devoted to it of its methods and of the results of this work would fill a whole volume and would be out of place in a treatise on blood diseases."¹² Since that time other investigations of the origin, function, and variations in the leukocytes have added to our knowledge, but many important details remain to be clarified.

The origin, morphology, and function of the leukocytes are discussed in Chapter I. The present chapter deals with the numbers of the different types of leukocytes that are found in normal circumstances, the variations that occur under different physiologic and pathologic conditions, and the mechanisms that are considered important in producing these changes.

LEUKOPOIESIS

Granulocytes

The granulocytes constitute a tissue of considerable size. Only a small part of this tissue is contained in the circulating blood where the number of granulocytes normally ranges from 2000 to 6000 per cumm. Osgood has calculated that the total number of the cells of this series in the hematopoietic organs (marrow) is 18×10^{11} and in the circulating blood 20×10^9 in the tissue exclusive of the blood and blood forming organs the calculated total is 12×10^{11} .⁴ The quantity and distribution of the cells are better appreciated by considering the total mass of cells rather than the total numbers. It is estimated that the weight of the granulocytic cells in the marrow is 900 gm. in the circulating blood 10 gm. and in other tissues 600 gm. In the normal adult the spleen weighs about 150 gm. and the liver about 1500 gm.¹ The presence in the circulation of only a relatively small percentage of the total number of granulocytes in the body supports the interpretation that the cells in the blood stream are those that are being transported from one site to another.⁴

The location and function of the extravascular granulocytes is an intriguing problem. The bone marrow apparently serves as a reservoir of functioning cells as well as an organ of production.^{4, 27} Other sites of extravascular accumulation are the lungs, liver and spleen.^{1, 4} Granulocytes may also be found within the vascular compartment arranged along the walls of the capillaries in various tissues apparently sequestered from the general circulation. The presence of cells in these locations may indicate that they perform some function such as transportation or it may indicate that the cells accumulate in these areas prior to elimination or destruction. It is also possible that these intravascular aggregates of cells constitute a reserve of motile cells ready to be utilized in the defense of the body. Experimental evidence indicates that leukocytes that have left the intravascular compartment are unable to recirculate in significant numbers.

The studies of Craddock and coworkers have provided valuable information about the location and size of the reserve pool of granulocytes.^{3, 4, 7} Dogs were subjected to the rapid removal of leukocytes by leukopheresis and the responses were studied under various conditions. The tremendous reserve of leukocytes was demonstrated by the observation that it was necessary to remove the leukocytes from the blood at a rate of 1.5 blood volumes per hour for three hours in order to reduce the leukocytes to a level of 1000 to 1500 per cumm. When the initial leukopheresis was terminated the leukopenia persisted for about two hours (phase I). Following this delay a linear rise in the leukocyte count occurred and within a period of six to eight hours the count reached a level that was 150 to 200 per cent of the pre leukopheresis baseline (phase II). This phase was followed by a stabilization period at the new level that persisted for from 24 to 36 hours (phase III). If leukopheresis was carried out during phase II the period of greatly

accelerated entry of leukocytes into the peripheral blood the procedure could be carried out for long periods without the production of leukopenia. Leukopheresis during phase III and for two or three days thereafter produced a response similar to that observed initially. Morphologic studies of the leukocytes in the peripheral blood and bone marrow revealed no evidence of increased immaturity of the granulocytes until after the third or fourth day. The data indicate that the response to leukopheresis during this period came from preformed cells that were available in areas of storage. Further support for this interpretation was afforded by the observation that dogs subjected to LD₀ whole body irradiation behaved similarly under the same conditions although the magnitude of the response was less.

In another series of experiments the responses of labeled leukocytes were studied by the determination of leukocyte DNA in which radioactive phosphorus had been incorporated. The cells labeled in this manner did not appear in the peripheral blood in appreciable numbers until three or four days after the leukopheresis experiments were performed. Leukopheresis performed on the third day after the marrow cells had been labeled with DNA P³² indicated that a high percentage of the cells which contributed to the rapid rise during phase II came from the marrow leukocyte pool.

From these studies it was concluded that the main source of mature granulocytes that take part in an acute leukocytosis is the marrow reserve. The mechanism whereby the stimulus of leukopheresis is mediated to the marrow is unknown. The results obtained with leukopheresis were not interpreted to indicate that in all circumstances leukocytosis occurs only as a result of the release of cells from the marrow and not from redistribution of leukocytes within the vascular system. These studies provide new information about the mechanism of leukocytosis and emphasize the importance of the large reserve pool of granulocytes in the marrow described by Kindred¹³ Yoffey¹⁷ and Osgood.⁴

The factors that control the level of the granulocytes in the circulation in normal and abnormal conditions have not been defined clearly. Infection has been recognized as a stimulus to neutrophilic leukocytosis from the time that leukocytosis was first described. In Ehrlich's and Lazarus' textbook of fifty years ago chemotaxis was accepted as the explanation of the migration of leukocytes into areas of infection and it was postulated that the marrow cells were stimulated by a chemical that led to increased proliferation and output of these cells.⁶ The importance of the reactive ability of the marrow was recognized for it was known that an injection of oil of turpentine produced leukocytosis in normal individuals but failed to do so in patients with typhoid fever and leukopenia until after the fever and leukopenia had disappeared. More recent studies have provided a better understanding of some of the factors concerned in the leukocytosis of infection. Nattleship concluded that the substance responsible for hyperplasia in the marrow was released from necrotic leukocytes.² Menkin and associates have demonstrated the presence of a "leukocytosis promoting" factor in inflammatory exudates in animals and man. This factor which is thermolabile was also found in the

circulating blood of dogs when inflammatory exudates were produced in the pleural space by the instillation of turpentine but it could not be demonstrated in normal blood or serum^{16 17 18 19} The leukocytosis induced by the injection of this substance was accompanied by proliferation of the younger forms and increased cellularity in the marrow Efforts to produce similar alterations in the leukocytes by the intravenous injection of histamine nucleic acid derivatives adenosine or bacterial suspensions were unsuccessful The leukocytosis promoting factor appears to be distinct from those that are concerned with the migration of leukocytes (leukotaxin) and the necrosis of tissue (necrosin) Injection of this fraction into animals was followed by an increase of between 70 and 400 per cent in the leukocyte count within a few hours

At least in special circumstances hormonal factors exert an influence on the circulating leukocytes⁸ It has been shown that ACTH produces an increase in circulating neutrophils and a decrease in circulating eosinophils⁸ the similar response that has been observed in adrenalectomized animals may have been due to contamination of the ACTH material with pituitary growth factors that are known to produce a rise in neutrophils⁸ The administration of cortisone to mice was followed by an increase in the myeloid cells of the marrow associated with an increase in circulating neutrophils⁹

Although most of the studies indicate that neutrophilic leukocytosis is produced by the rapid release of granulocytes into the circulation followed by the augmented production of these cells in the marrow an increased life span of the cells in the circulation occurring as a consequence of decreased removal or destruction of the cells could produce the same result The life span of the neutrophils has been estimated by different methods and different results have been obtained¹⁴ Studies that employed transfusion or cross circulation techniques generally indicate a short life span measured in hours while other methods indicate a longer survival The marrow culture method has indicated that the total life span of the neutrophil is four and one half days⁴ By the same technique the life span of eosinophils and basophils outside the marrow has been found to be from eight to twelve days while the time spent within the marrow was found to be the same as that of the neutrophils⁴

In another study when P^{32} was administered as Na_2HPO_4 to human subjects the subsequent determination of the DNA content of leukocytes at intervals of 24 hours to three weeks indicated a longer life span for the granulocytes¹ It was found that the marrow showed high DNA P^{32} specific activity for three or four days before the labeled cells were found in the circulation The observations led to the conclusion that the total life span is about thirteen days four of which are spent in the marrow Another study that utilized DNA labeled with P^{32} indicated that the granulocytes generally enter the circulation at six days of age the mean age of circulating granulocytes was found to be about nine days and only a negligible number survived for more than three weeks The granulocytes in two patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia were found¹⁰ to have an average life span of 23

days when studied by a method that employed the adenosine-8 labeled with C^{14} . The longer life spans found with the isotope labeling technique are probably nearer to the true value than the shorter ones obtained in transfusion and cross circulation experiments.

If the neutrophil is not destroyed in the circulation it eventually leaves the blood stream and migrates into the extravascular spaces. Some authors believe there is a free two way flow of leukocytes between the circulation and the extravascular space¹ while others do not think there is any significant reentry into the circulation from the extravascular tissue.⁴⁻⁷ The sites most concerned in the removal of leukocytes from the circulation are the lungs, liver, spleen, gastrointestinal tract, bone marrow, striated muscle and kidney.¹ Studies that employed catheterization of various vessels have revealed that the lungs remove large numbers of leukocytes from the circulation. The removal of cells from the peripheral circulation could be initiated by the administration of histamine, nicotinic acid, and colloidal substances. The fate of the cells trapped in the pulmonary circulation is uncertain but the following possibilities have been suggested: (1) transient trapping with later entry into the general circulation; (2) migration and excretion through the sputum and gastrointestinal tract; (3) reentry into the general circulation by way of the lymphatics and thoracic duct; (4) disintegration in the lung.³ A failure of the removal mechanism has been suggested as a cause of leukocytosis in certain diseases, especially leukemia.

Lymphocytes

Only a small percentage of the lymphocytes in the body are present in the circulating blood. Osgood has calculated that the total numbers of lymphocytes are as follows: bone marrow 4×10^{11} (100 gm); lymphocytic tissue and spleen 4×10^{11} (100 gm); peripheral blood, 12×10^9 (3 gm); total outside the blood and blood forming organs 52×10^{11} (1300 gm).⁴

Although the injection of ACTH has been shown to cause a lymphocytopenia followed by a lymphocytosis,² the factors that control the level of these cells in the circulation under normal circumstances are poorly understood. The life span of the lymphocytes in normal individuals and those with chronic lymphocytic leukemia has been calculated to be at least 30 days, one tenth of which is thought to be spent in lymphatic tissue.⁴ Studies that employed the labeling of lymphocytes with radioactive isotopes in man suggest a dual population of lymphocytes: one with a mean age of two to three days and a larger number (50 per cent) with a mean age of 100 to 200 days.² Similar investigation of two human subjects with chronic lymphocytic leukemia indicated that the lymphocytes had an average life span of 85 days. There was also prolonged retention of isotope in other cells (half time about 300 days) but whether this indicated a dual population of cells, one of which survived for very long periods or a specific reutilization of large fragments of nucleic acid or nucleoprotein was uncertain.¹⁰

The function and fate of the lymphocytes that enter the blood stream

each day is one of the interesting problems in hematology. The lymphocytes are produced in the lymphoid tissue and enter the blood through blood capillaries or lymphatics.³ Although the life span of the lymphocyte has been estimated as more than 30 days,⁴ studies in animals that utilized a cannula in the thoracic duct indicate that lymphocytes enter the blood stream at a rate sufficient to replace the total in the circulating blood from two to twenty four times each day.^{9, 27} Yoffey considers that the evidence is against the existence of a true circulation of the lymphocytes between the blood and lymph and for this reason interprets the discrepancy between the levels of cells in the circulating blood and the outflow from the thoracic duct as evidence that large numbers of small lymphocytes leave the circulating blood probably to enter the bone marrow, the lumen of the intestine and the connective tissue throughout the body.³⁷ However, Gowans, who transfused labeled lymphocytes into the veins of rats and studied the composition of the cells obtained from the thoracic duct of the recipient rats, concluded that the great majority of cells in the thoracic duct are cells that have recirculated from the blood.⁹ Although the nature of the connection between the blood and the lymph remains unknown, it was suggested that recirculation occurred through the lymph nodes.

Monocytes

Monocytes are found normally in the lymph nodes, spleen, bone marrow and loose connective tissue,³⁴ and they constitute from 3 to 7 per cent of the circulating leukocytes. The total number of cells of the monocytic series in the circulating blood has been calculated to be 0.5×10^{11} .⁴ The life span of the monocyte both in the hematopoietic organs and in the circulation is thought to be comparable to that of the granulocyte.⁴ The origin of the monocytes is still a matter of controversy and the factors that regulate their production are not fully understood. The injection of ACTH has been found to produce a monocytopenia followed by a monocytosis.³⁴ Monocytes occur in large numbers about early tubercles and in the early stages of inflammation. The monocyte has been considered to be a young cell destined to become a macrophage and thus a cell that may develop into an epithelioid cell or a giant cell if appropriate conditions are present.³⁴

NORMAL VALUES

The normal values for the total and differential leukocyte counts in adults according to various authors are shown in Table 10. Both the total count and the percentages of the different cells vary with the age of the individual. In the newborn, total counts varying from 3600 to 45 000 per cu mm have been reported but the great majority are in the range of 10 000 to 25 000 per cu mm.^{7, 33} At this time the neutrophils constitute about 60 per cent of the cells. From the second week through the second year when the total count ranges from 8000 to 13 000 per cu mm, the lymphocytes predominate

and make up from 50 to 69 per cent of the total.⁷⁻²² During childhood the total count is usually around 8000 per cu mm and the range is 4000 to 13 000 per cu mm; during the same period the percentage of lymphocytes decreases to a range of 25 to 48 per cent by the twelfth year.²³ At about the fifteenth year the adult values are reached and these are maintained throughout the remainder of the individual's life.

Table 10 Total and Differential Leukocyte Counts in Normal Adults According to Various Authors

AUTHOR	TOTAL (PER CU MM)	NEUTRO (%)	EOSIN (%)	BAO (%)	LYMPH (%)	MONO (%)
Osgood et al. ²⁴	4 000-11 000	33-75	0-8	0-2	15-60	0-9
Sturges and Bethell ²⁵	8 000-7 400	55-67	2-3	0.5-0.7	23-39	4-8
Schilling ²²	5 000-8 000	51-67	2-4	0-1	21-35	4-8
Wintrobe ²⁶	5 000-10 000	54-62	1-3	0-0.75	25-33	3-7

PHYSIOLOGIC VARIATIONS

In addition to the variations in leukocytes that are found at different ages changes occur as a result of other physiologic processes. These variations which since the time of Virchow have been recognized to occur independently of disease have been the subject of several detailed reviews.²⁷

Spontaneous fluctuations in the leukocyte count occur during the day. These appear to be inconstant, irregular, and unrelated to the ingestion of food.^{7-8, 43} The changes have been interpreted as indicative of a redistribution of leukocytes within the body rather than an increased production of new cells, because these fluctuations are not associated with an increase in immature cells.⁸⁻⁹ An hourly rhythm of the leukocytes with an afternoon increase regardless of food ingestion has been reported but not confirmed.⁸

Strenuous exercise produces a marked leukocytosis.⁷⁻²⁹ Total counts as high as 27 000 per cu mm have been found in marathon runners and football players. Leukocytosis that develops within 11 seconds has also been found after a 100 yard dash. After exercise the count returns to normal within several hours. Although pregnancy is associated with only a slight increase in leukocytes and neutrophils,²⁹ at the onset of labor there is a marked increase greater in primiparae than multiparae that may reach levels of 17 000 to 34 000 per cu mm.⁷⁻²⁹

Other causes of leukocytosis are paroxysmal tachycardia (13 000 to 20 000 per cu mm),⁷⁻⁴² and convulsions (37 000 to 43 000 per cu mm).⁷ Emotional states may be associated with changes in the leukocyte counts; the count has been noted to rise from 8000 to 18 000 per cu mm with the development of a panic reaction and to decrease 6000 to 12 000 per cu mm in one hour when Amytal administered intravenously induced a change in the emotional status.³⁰

VARIATIONS DUE TO DISEASE

Changes that occur in the leukocytes in the peripheral blood in disease are often helpful in considering both the diagnosis and prognosis. In general the changes in the peripheral blood reflect the type of injury, the extent of the process, and the body's reaction to the injury. Significant alterations may occur in the total number of leukocytes, in the proportion of the various cells present, and in the morphologic appearance of the individual cells.

Although no unconditional statements can be made concerning the reaction of the body to infection, certain generalizations can be stated. A leukocytosis is more likely to occur in acute infections than in chronic disorders. A mild infection most often is associated with no change in the leukocytes or with a slight increase to 11 000 or 15 000 per cumm. In infectious or destructive processes a marked neutrophilic leukocytosis accompanied by an increase in the younger forms indicates a severe injury and a brisk reaction of the body's defense mechanism. A low or normal total leukocyte count associated with a marked increase in younger forms in the presence of infection indicates either an early stage of the infectious process or a subnormal response to a severe infection. Severe infection and extensive tissue destruction are also manifested by morphologic changes in the granulocytes such as cytoplasmic basophilia, vacuolation of the cytoplasm, and toxic granulation. Bacterial infections, particularly those due to cocci, are apt to be accompanied by an increase in the total leukocyte count and the neutrophilic granulocytes, while viral infections are likely to be associated with a low or normal total leukocyte count and a relative or absolute lymphocytosis. Neoplastic disease, leukemia excepted, is usually associated with a normal leukocyte count unless the process is extensive and tissue necrosis has occurred. In this circumstance neutrophilic leukocytosis of marked degree is often present.

The most common causes of increases in neutrophilic granulocytes, lymphocytes, monocytes, and eosinophilic granulocytes are presented in Tables 11 to 14.

Table 11 Causes of Neutrophilic Leukocytosis

- ✓ 1 Infections, especially with pyogenic bacteria, either localized as appendiceal abscess or generalized as septicemia
- 2 Other disorders associated with acute inflammation or cellular necrosis: infarction, collagen disease, acute hemolysis
- 3 Neoplasms: leukemia, carcinoma, lymphomas, especially with areas of tissue necrosis and wide spread metastases
- 4 Intoxications: drugs, chemicals, especially in poisonings with liver damage
- 5 Acute hemorrhage

Table 12 Causes of Lymphocytosis

1 Infections	(a) Acute infectious mononucleosis pertussis infectious lymphocytosis other viral and bacillary infections (b) Convalescence especially viral infections (c) Chronic tuberculosis brucellosis syphilis
2 Neoplasms	Lymphocytic leukemia lymphosarcoma
3 Metabolic disease	Hyperthyroidism

Table 13 Causes of Monocytosis

1 Infections	(a) Bacterial tuberculosis subacute bacterial endocarditis brucellosis typhoid fever (b) Protozoal malaria kala-azar (c) Rickettsial Rocky Mountain spotted fever
2 Neoplasms	Monocytic leukemia Hodgkin's disease reticuloendotheliosis
3 During recovery from infections and agranulocytosis	polycythemia vera

Table 14 Causes of Eosinophilia

1 Allergic reactions	Bronchial asthma drug reactions allergic dermatitis hay fever angioneurotic edema
2 Parasitic infestation	Intestinal (hookworm tapeworm ascaris Tricua echinococcus) especially with muscle invasion by trichina
3 Skin diseases	Exfoliative dermatitis lymphogus dermatitis licheniformis
4 Neoplasms	Metastatic carcinoma myelocytic leukemia Hodgkin's disease
5 Other diseases	Paratuberculosis nodosa eosinophilic granuloma

A decrease in the number of circulating leukocytes which is generally due to a decrease in the granulocytes is found in a variety of clinical conditions. The most frequent causes of neutropenia are listed in Table 15. Although the factors that may produce neutropenia are not as well understood as those that produce anemia, the possible mechanisms can be classified in a similar fashion: (1) diminished production, (2) increased destruction, and (3) the "loss" of leukocytes from the circulation by sequestration in the various organs or tissues. In the majority of clinical conditions with neutropenia, diminished production appears to be the important mechanism.

Diminished production may be due to a deficiency of essential substances such as vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid, or to the presence of metabolic antagonists such as aminopterin and 6-mercaptopurine. Diminished granulocytopenia may also be the result of damage to the precursor cells in the marrow by irradiation, chemicals, marrow replacement, drug idiosyncrasy, and other unknown causes.

The importance of leukocyte antibodies as a mechanism responsible for the production of neutropenia is uncertain. The occurrence of nonspecific transfusion reactions characterized by chills, fever, and leukopenia associated

with the presence in the recipient's blood of agglutinins against the donor leukocytes has been reported.² In another study it was found that leukoagglutinins were demonstrable in 38 of 350 patients with hematologic disorders. However, 64 per cent of the patients with leukoagglutinins had no leukopenia and only one of 22 patients with leukopenia had leukoagglutinins. Ninety per cent of the patients with leukoagglutinins had received transfusions and the likelihood of a positive test was greater after multiple transfusions. Because of this observation and the failure to demonstrate any agglutination of autologous leukocytes, it was concluded that at least the majority of leukoagglutinins are isoagglutinins.⁶ A different experience is reported by Tullis, who employed a different technique.³ He found positive tests for leukocyte antibodies in 59 of 132 sera from patients with leukopenia and in only 11 of 102 sera from patients with hematologic and hepatic disorders without leukopenia. Antibodies were demonstrated in patients with *primary agranulocytosis*, *primary hypersplenism*, *secondary hypersplenism*, *myelophthisic anemia*, *leukemia*, and *drug sensitivity*. The anti-leukocyte antibody activity, which appeared to be made up of two components, decreased as clinical improvement occurred and the granulocyte counts rose after treatment with steroids or splenectomy.

Splenomegaly from diverse causes, such as portal hypertension, tuberculosis, kala-azar, and involvement by diseases of the lymphoma group, may be associated with a neutropenia that is relieved by splenectomy. Whether splenectomy removes an organ of leukocyte destruction or removes a site of the production of leukocyte antibodies or eliminates a depressive influence on the bone marrow is uncertain.

The neutropenia that occurs in anaphylactic shock and after the administration of histamine and nicotinic acid is thought to be due to a loss of the leukocytes from the circulation as a result of sequestration in the tissues of the body, particularly the splanchnic circulation, liver, spleen, and lungs.

Table 15 Causes of Neutropenia

- 1 Infections: Acute viral (rubeola, infectious hepatitis), bacterial (brucellosis, typhoid fever), protozoal (malaria, kala-azar), and overwhelming infections (septicemia)
- 2 Bone marrow damage: Aplastic anemia or neutropenia due to unknown cause, irradiation, toxic drugs and chemicals (benzol, mustard drugs, antimetabolic agents), drug idiosyncrasy (aminopyrine, sulfonamides and others)
- 3 Disorders associated with splenomegaly: Congestive splenomegaly, diseases of the reticuloendothelial system (parasitic diseases, chronic infections, neoplasms), Felty's syndrome
- 4 Other disorders: Disseminated lupus erythematosus, anaphylaxis, "aleukemic" leukemia
- 5 Nutritional deficiency: vitamin B₁₂, folic acid

AGRANULOCYTOSIS

Synonyms

Agranulocytic angina, granulocytopenia, malignant neutropenia, primary granulocytopenia

Historical Introduction

Although isolated cases of this disease had been seen prior to that time it was Schultz's report in 1922 that established agranulocytosis as an entity.³ This report described five fatal cases that occurred in women whose illness was characterized by necrotic ulceration of the oropharynx accompanied by marked leukopenia and granulocytopenia. After this description additional instances of the same disorder which was thought to be the result of some infectious agent were soon recognized. However, Roberts and Kracke established that the sepsis which occurred in nearly all patients with the disorder followed the agranulocytosis and was not a causative factor.⁴ A further advance in the knowledge of the disease came when Kracke noted that the disease occurred largely in Germany and the United States particularly in middle aged women who gave a history of treatment with drugs. He also noted that the coal tar derivatives had come into wide usage in these countries following World War I. The fact that benzene is a leukocyte depressant led him to suspect that benzene or its products should be seriously considered as the cause of the condition—a belief that was strengthened when he was able to produce the hematologic and clinical features of agranulocytosis in rabbits by the subcutaneous injection of benzene and its oxidation products.^{4, 5}

Madison and Squier^{4b} Plum⁶ and others^{4c} established that drugs containing amidopyrine were responsible for most cases of agranulocytosis at that time. In 1935 Kracke and Parker noted that of 172 cases that had been reported in the literature 153 had occurred after the administration of amidopyrine.^{4c} In the same report they listed 46 American proprietary compounds that contained amidopyrine. Because the number of reported instances of agranulocytosis was small in comparison to the large number of persons who took amidopyrine in one compound or another an idiosyncrasy was suspected. This was demonstrated conclusively by Madison and Squier in 1934^{4b} and by Plum in 1935.⁶ It was recognized that agranulocytosis could be caused by other drugs and in 1938 Fitz Hugh listed 14 drugs thought to be responsible.^{4d} This list was compiled at the beginning of the sulfonamide era and since then the list has lengthened steadily.

Mechanism of the Disease

Agranulocytosis was considered to be an infectious disease until it was demonstrated that the primary factor was the reduction of the granulocytes in the peripheral blood which lowered resistance and led to bacterial invasion.^{4, 5} The drugs that were the most common offenders contained a known leukocyte depressant in the form of the benzene ring, and it was known that the marrow of some fatal cases was almost completely devoid of cells of the granulocytic series. Because of these observations it was thought that the responsible drugs or their breakdown products acted by direct suppression of granulocytopoiesis in the marrow.^{4b, 4c, 4d, 5a} The greater

likelihood of a different mechanism was shown by Madison and Squier⁴⁸ They administered small doses of amidopyrine to two patients who had recovered from agranulocytosis caused by amidopyrine symptoms developed in two or three hours and the circulating granulocytes diminished greatly or disappeared completely by the twelfth hour recovery occurred in four days These observations which were confirmed by others³⁸ indicated that some mechanism other than depression of granulocytopoiesis must have acted to produce so profound a change in such a short time

A possible explanation of the rapid disappearance of the circulating granulocytes in these circumstances was provided by the experiments of Moeschlin and Wagner⁹ Blood was obtained from a Pyramidon sensitive patient three hours after the administration of 0.3 gm Pyramidon When 300 ml of this blood was given to two normal recipients severe granulocytopenia developed in from twenty to forty minutes and persisted for three or four hours The same workers also demonstrated that at the height of the Pyramidon agranulocytosis the plasma and serum contained a substance that caused agglutination of both homologous and heterologous leukocytes It was suggested that leukocytes agglutinated in this manner were removed from the circulation and destroyed mainly in the lungs The existence of such a mechanism was demonstrated in guinea pigs which were injected with the anti leukocyte serum produced by the injection of guinea pig leukocytes into rabbits⁴⁹

Although the presence of leukocyte antibodies may explain the occurrence of agranulocytosis in certain hypersensitive patients it appears that this mechanism is not the only one concerned in all instances of agranulocytosis that occur as a result of drug idiosyncrasy Amidopyrine appears to produce agranulocytosis by means of a true immunologic reaction that may follow the administration of only a very small amount of the drug However the agranulocytosis that sometimes follows the administration of sulfonamide compounds probably is the result of another mechanism because agranulocytosis is rarely seen during therapy with these drugs unless a fairly large amount of the drug has been administered

The role that the bone marrow plays in the production of agranulocytosis has not been clearly defined It is probably an important one in the development of the clinical syndrome The depletion of the granulocytic series of the marrow that is seen at autopsy⁴ and the delay in the development of agranulocytosis until one or two weeks after the last dose of offending drug that it is seen in some patients^{37, 39} appear to be explained best by the action of the responsible mechanism on all members of granulocytic series in the marrow The normal and hyperplastic marrows that have been found in some patients with the disorder have been interpreted by some as evidence of partial recovery from previous damage^{39, 4} and by others as a maturation arrest⁴¹ Still another interpretation has been offered namely that the hyperplasia of the granulocytic elements in the marrow is an effort to compensate for the destruction of leukocytes in the circulation according to this concept the picture of marrow depletion develops only when the bone marrow has

become exhausted.⁴⁸⁻⁵⁰ This interpretation appears unlikely in view of the results that have been obtained with leukopheresis experiments.

The drugs that are most likely to produce a decrease in one or more of the types of cells in the blood because of an idiosyncrasy have been listed and classified by Osgood⁵¹ and Welch, Lewis and Kerlan.⁵² Osgood's classification is used in Table 16 and the additional drugs mentioned by Welch et al. have been included.

*Table 16 Drugs That Sometimes Produce Hematologic Abnormalities
(Classification and Estimated Risk)*

1 Anticonvulsants	methyl phenyl-ethyl hydantoin (Mesantoin)—high trimethadione (Tridione)—moderate
2 Antihistaminics	phenothiazine type (Plavergan)—moderate ethylenediamine type (Pyribenzamine)—low
3 Antimicrobial Agents	arsenobenzol—high chloramphenicol—high sulfonamides—moderate thiosemicarbazone—moderate streptomycin—low oxytetracycline chlortetracycline
4 Antithyroid Agents	thiouracils—high methimazole (Tapazole)—moderate
5 Sedatives	Sedormid—high amidopyrine—high phenacetamide—moderate pyrimethadione—low chlorpromazine
6 Spasmolytics	phenothiazine (Diparcol)—moderate procaine amide (pronestyl)—low
7 Unclassified	gold preparations—high phenylbutazone (Butazolidin)—high nitrophenols—high mercurial diuretics—low quinidine—low quinine hydrochloride (Atabrine)—low mercury amphotamine—low

Clinical Manifestations

Agranulocytosis occurs in both sexes and may develop at any age. Prodromal symptoms such as fatigue, headache, weakness, insomnia, and restlessness usually occur. The majority of patients complain of a sore throat. This often progresses rapidly as chills, increasing fever, and dysphagia develop. Unless improvement occurs, the temperature rises to 105° F or more and the patient becomes mentally confused, irrational, prostrated, or stuporous.

Physical examination early in the disease may reveal nothing more than a few small areas of necrosis in the tonsillar areas. Later the areas of necrotic ulceration enlarge as edema and slight reddening of the mucous membranes develop. The cervical lymph nodes become enlarged and slightly tender and in some patients the soft tissue of the neck becomes swollen. At times vaginal and rectal ulcerations occur.

Laboratory Examination

The most significant feature is the occurrence in the peripheral blood of severe leukopenia and granulocytopenia unaccompanied by anemia or thrombocytopenia. Many patients develop lymphocytopenia as well as granulocytopenia and the total leukocyte count falls to levels as low as 100 to 2000

likelihood of a different mechanism was shown by Madison and Squier⁴⁸ They administered small doses of amidopyrine to two patients who had recovered from agranulocytosis caused by amidopyrine symptoms developed in two or three hours and the circulating granulocytes diminished greatly or disappeared completely by the twelfth hour recovery occurred in four days These observations which were confirmed by others⁴⁸ indicated that some mechanism other than depression of granulocytogenesis must have acted to produce so profound a change in such a short time

A possible explanation of the rapid disappearance of the circulating granulocytes in these circumstances was provided by the experiments of Moeschlin and Wagner⁴⁹ Blood was obtained from a Pyramidon sensitive patient three hours after the administration of 0.3 gm Pyramidon When 300 ml of this blood was given to two normal recipients severe granulocytopenia developed in from twenty to forty minutes and persisted for three or four hours The same workers also demonstrated that at the height of the Pyramidon agranulocytosis the plasma and serum contained a substance that caused agglutination of both homologous and heterologous leukocytes It was suggested that leukocytes agglutinated in this manner were removed from the circulation and destroyed mainly in the lungs The existence of such a mechanism was demonstrated in guinea pigs which were injected with the anti leukocyte serum produced by the injection of guinea pig leukocytes into rabbits⁴⁹

Although the presence of leukocyte antibodies may explain the occurrence of agranulocytosis in certain hypersensitive patients it appears that this mechanism is not the only one concerned in all instances of agranulocytosis that occur as a result of drug idiosyncrasy Amidopyrine appears to produce agranulocytosis by means of a true immunologic reaction that may follow the administration of only a very small amount of the drug However the agranulocytosis that sometimes follows the administration of sulfonamide compounds probably is the result of another mechanism because agranulocytosis is rarely seen during therapy with these drugs unless a fairly large amount of the drug has been administered

The role that the bone marrow plays in the production of agranulocytosis has not been clearly defined It is probably an important one in the development of the clinical syndrome The depletion of the granulocytic series of the marrow that is seen at autopsy⁴ and the delay in the development of agranulocytosis until one or two weeks after the last dose of offending drug that is seen in some patients^{34, 35} appear to be explained best by the action of the responsible mechanism on all members of granulocytic series in the marrow The normal and hyperplastic marrows that have been found in some patients with the disorder have been interpreted by some as evidence of partial recovery from previous damage^{39, 4} and by others as a maturation arrest⁴¹ Still another interpretation has been offered namely that the hyperplasia of the granulocytic elements in the marrow is an effort to compensate for the destruction of leukocytes in the circulation according to this concept the picture of marrow depletion develops only when the bone marrow has

per cent³⁰ The mortality rate was nearly 100 per cent in patients whose leukocyte counts fell to less than 1000 per cu mm and in persons over 60 years of age The general condition of the patient and the amount of drug that had been administered also appeared to influence the outcome³⁰

In the pre-antibiotic era many forms of treatment were employed in an effort to produce an increase in granulocytes These included x ray therapy blood transfusion injections of pentose nucleotide leukocyte concentrates extracts of liver or bone marrow The early reports on each method were hopeful but subsequent experience was disappointing The first real advance in treatment came when Dameshek and Wolfson administered sulfathiazole a drug known to be capable of producing agranulocytosis to two moribund patients whose disease was due to some other drug the therapy appeared to bring the infection under control and the patients recovered⁴⁰

The most important aspects of treatment are the withdrawal of the offending drug and the administration of a chemotherapeutic agent to combat infection The daily administration of 300 000 units of procaine penicillin and 0.5 gm streptomycin has been recommended for moderately severe cases⁵¹ if the disease is severe or progressive this dose is given twice daily and is supplemented with penicillin G 500 000 units daily if symptoms progress It is recommended that treatment be continued for a week after the lesions heal⁵¹ The use of penicillin alone has been recommended (600 000 to 1 200 000 units daily) tetracycline 0.5 gm every six hours or some other wide spectrum antibiotic is added if necessary⁴⁶

Illustrative Case

This 62 year old white widow was in good health until six weeks prior to admission when she developed hematuria frequency of urination dysuria and suprapubic pain A diagnosis of urinary tract infection was made and she was treated with a sulfonamide (Sulamyd) 0.5 gm three times a day The urinary symptoms improved and the medication was continued for about five weeks At this time the patient complained of fatigue lassitude and chilliness She was admitted to her community hospital where she was found to have a leukocyte count of 600 per cu mm and a temperature of 101° F She was treated with penicillin transfusions and cortisone Four days later the leukocyte count had risen to 2000 per cu mm but granulocytes were still absent from the peripheral blood and she was referred for further treatment.

Physical Examination Temperature 103 pulse 84 respirations 22 There was no ulceration of the nasopharynx or vagina and the liver spleen and lymph nodes were not enlarged The remainder of the examination was noncontributory

Laboratory Examination Blood studies on admission hct 55 per cent wbc 2000 per cu mm differential count (per cent) juveniles 1 bands 0 segmented 0 lymphocytes 70 monocytes 12 basophils 2 reticulocytes 13 per cent platelet count normal Bone marrow obtained by aspiration five

per cu mm Granulocytes often constitute less than 10 per cent of the total cells and may be entirely absent Those that are present often show extreme degrees of toxic granulation Monocytes often make up an appreciable percentage of the cells especially during recovery and a total monocyte count of over 100 per cu mm is considered a sign of a good prognosis^{3 5}

The appearance of the bone marrow varies with the stage of the disease In most of the severe cases at the height of the disease the cells of the granulocytic series are greatly reduced or absent and the percentages of lymphocytes plasma cells and reticuloendothelial cells are increased^{39 4} In other patients particularly when recovery is taking place examination of the marrow reveals hyperplasia of the granulocytic series in such circumstances toxic granulation is evident in many of the younger cells^{39 44 47}

In severe cases blood cultures often establish the presence of septicemia. Smears made from the ulcerated lesions or sputum often show masses of bacteria accompanied by but few cells

Differential Diagnosis

The most important consideration in the differential diagnosis is acute leukemia The distinction is usually not difficult because leukemia is generally associated with anemia thrombocytopenia and hemorrhagic manifestations which are not a part of agranulocytosis Examination of the bone marrow and study of smears made from the buffy coat of the peripheral blood nearly always reveal the presence of blasts and other young cells when leukemia is present A carefully taken history regarding recent exposure to drugs or chemical agents is often helpful

The presence of agranulocytosis may be suspected in some patients with infectious mononucleosis who have ulcerative pharyngeal lesions and a marked reduction in the granulocytes in the peripheral blood The degree and distribution of the adenopathy the presence of pathologic lymphocytes in the blood smear and the positive heterophil agglutination test usually lead to the recognition of infectious mononucleosis in doubtful cases a few days of observation generally resolve the difficulty because leukopenia rarely persists for more than a few days in infectious mononucleosis

Other diseases are less likely to be confused with agranulocytosis Sepsis is rarely responsible for a leukocyte count of less than 3000 per cu mm or a depression of the granulocytes to less than 30 per cent of the total Other diseases such as those of the lymphoma group tuberculosis and subacute bacterial endocarditis are sometimes associated with severe leukopenia In such patients the underlying disease is usually easily recognized because of splenomegaly or other features that lead to the correct diagnosis

Prognosis and Treatment

Before antibiotics became available agranulocytosis was a serious disease with a mortality rate in the well developed cases that varied from 50 to 100

changes in the neutrophils. In addition no significant fluctuations were found in the levels of gamma globulin or properdin.

In some patients treatment with corticosteroids and splenectomy appear to modify temporarily the clinical manifestations of the disease without producing a significant alteration in the cyclic neutropenia.⁶¹ Splenectomy appears to produce more lasting benefit in older patients with definite splenomegaly.⁶ Antibiotics are important in the treatment of infections during the neutropenic phases but their long term prophylactic use is not recommended.

INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS

Synonyms

Glandular fever, acute hemag, lymphoblastosis, monocytic angina, acute lymphadenosis.

Historical Introduction

Credit for the first description of this disease is generally given to Pfeiffer for his report on Drusensieber which appeared in 1889.⁶ Pfeiffer described an illness occurring in children five to eight years of age which was characterized by fever of one to ten days duration, sore throat, adenopathy, splenomegaly, and hepatomegaly. The disorder was considered to be an infectious and epidemic disease. Following this account reports of unusual cases of adenitis that were associated with marked lymphocytosis and resembled lymphocytic leukemia appeared in the literature⁶⁷ but the report of Sprunt and Evans in 1920 provided the first clear description of the disease to which they gave the name infectious mononucleosis.¹ They studied six young adults whose illness was characterized by fever, enlargement of the cervical axillary and inguinal lymph nodes, splenomegaly, and leukocytosis. The differential count was unusual because of an increase in mononuclear elements chiefly large lymphocytes; even more important was the observation that "all types of pathological lymphocytes, some resembling Turk's irritation forms, were to be seen." Study of lymph nodes removed from three patients disclosed definite hyperplasia distinct from Hodgkin's disease, tuberculosis, and lymphosarcoma; that could not be distinguished from lymphocytic leukemia. It was concluded that the cases constituted a clinical syndrome that had a good prognosis. In the next few years groups of similar cases were reported by Bloedorn and Houghton,⁶ Longcope,⁶² and Tidy and Morley,¹¹ and it was generally agreed that the diseases glandular fever and infectious mononucleosis were identical.

The abnormal mononuclear cells that had been noted were studied carefully by Downes and McKinlay in 1923.⁸ Their observations have been confirmed many times but little has been added to their description. In a study of nine cases they recognized three types of abnormal lymphocytes in the blood and concluded that there was "no danger of confusing the blood picture with leukemia if well studied."

An important contribution that facilitated the recognition of the disease

days after the agranulocytosis was recognized was cellular erythropoiesis was normoblastic in type and the megakaryocytes were normal. The cells of the granulocytic series were increased. Differential count of the marrow leukocytes (per cent): promyelocytes 0.5, myelocytes 16, juveniles 14, bands 46, segmented cells 18, lymphocytes 5, eosinophils 1. The patient was treated with penicillin 500 000 units per day. Her temperature returned to normal by the third day and remained normal thereafter. The leukocyte count rose rapidly. On the day after admission it was 3500, the third day 10 000, the sixth day 18 000, the fourteenth day 21 000. One month after discharge from the hospital and about seven weeks after onset of symptoms of agranulocytosis her hematocrit was 47 per cent, hemoglobin 15 gm per 100 ml, leukocyte count 5000 per cu mm, platelets 230 000 per cu mm. The differential count was normal.

Comment. This elderly patient had agranulocytosis manifested by severe leukopenia associated with normal red cell and platelet counts. The bone marrow specimen which was examined after recovery had begun appeared hyperplastic. That obtained at another hospital a week earlier was either aplastic or dilute. The extremely low leukocyte count in this patient would have augured a poor prognosis in the days before antibiotics. On treatment with penicillin and supportive measures she made an uneventful recovery. When agranulocytosis is caused by a sulfonamide drug which was suspected but not proved in this case, the fall in granulocytes usually does not occur until after the patient has been taking the drug for several weeks. The patient was warned against future use of the suspected drug.

CYCLIC NEUTROPENIA

Cyclic neutropenia is a well established but poorly understood entity that was first described by Leale in 1910.⁸⁹ Recent reviewers have found 30 cases reported in the literature.^{8, 90} This rare disorder which may occur at any age is characterized by the regular diminution or disappearance of the neutrophilic granulocytes from the circulation at approximately 21 day intervals. During the neutropenic phase fever, malaise and oral pharyngeal ulceration usually appear and are often accompanied by arthralgia, head ache, sore throat and lymph node enlargement. Relatively minor intercurrent infections occur commonly but severe infections are unusual.⁸

The careful studies of Page and Good have provided the clearest picture of the disorder.⁹¹ By serial bone marrow studies they showed that the recurrent neutropenia is due to the cyclic arrest of production of the entire neutrophilic series. Neither a neutropenia producing factor nor leukoagglutinins could be demonstrated in the blood of the patient. The patient's serum exerted no demonstrable influence on the motility function of normal neutrophils. Although the influence of a hormonal factor could not be excluded, none was demonstrated. The occurrence of neutropenia bore no relationship to menstruation or to the urinary excretion of FSH or 17 ketosteroids. The concentrations of corticotropin and 17 hydroxycorticosteroid in the blood and the response of the adrenal gland to stimulation by corticotropin remained within normal limits without fluctuation throughout the cyclic

was made by Paul and Bunnell in 1932.⁸⁶ These investigators utilized a sheep cell agglutination test to study the presence of heterophil antibodies in patients with rheumatic fever and in a group of individuals who served as controls. In their report they stated: "Quite by accident it was discovered that heterophil antibodies were present in a specimen of serum from a patient ill with infectious mononucleosis in much higher concentration than has been described in serum disease or any other clinical condition that we studied." They obtained similar results in three other patients with infectious mononucleosis and apart from serum sickness and one other exception failed to find high titers of heterophil antibodies in a large number of other conditions. Since that time the heterophil agglutination test has proved helpful in diagnosing infectious mononucleosis. However an increasing number of positive tests have since been found in conditions other than infectious mononucleosis and for this reason Davidsohn's differential test has proved valuable.

Comprehensive monographs on infectious mononucleosis have been written by Bernstein⁸³ and Leibowitz⁹⁰ and Tidy has given an excellent review of the history and clinical features of the disease.¹¹³

Mechanism of Disease

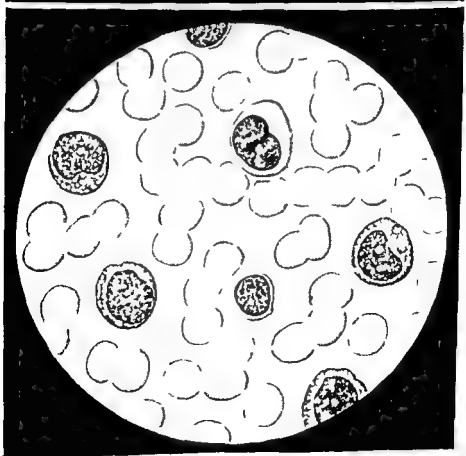
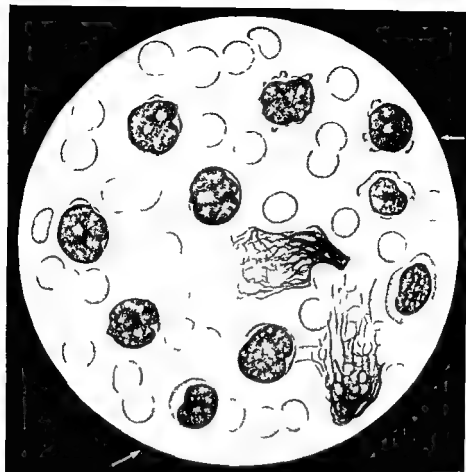
The cause of infectious mononucleosis is unknown. It is generally thought to be an infection^{80 89 111 112} probably viral in origin even though efforts to isolate an infectious agent or transmit the disease to human volunteers by the use of nasal washings lymph node suspension plasma whole blood, and serum have been unsuccessful with one possible exception.¹¹⁸ The disease which appears to have a low degree of infectivity occurs sporadically and in epidemics.^{80 110 116} The incubation period has been estimated at five to fifteen days¹¹¹ one to twenty eight days⁸³ four to eighteen days⁸⁰ and five to eight weeks.⁸

Most of the clinical manifestations of the disease are explained by the pathologic findings. The most complete report is that of Custer and Smith.⁷¹ In a study of nine autopsies they found that the lymph nodes were usually enlarged as a result of an increase in the size of the lymph follicles. Enlargement of the lymph nodes was not invariable and in some cases the architecture of the nodes was blurred and the follicles were inconspicuous. Splenic enlargement occurred in every instance and was associated with lymphocytic infiltration of the trabeculae and capsule. Varying degrees of lymphocytic infiltration were also found in the tissue of the central nervous system meninges myocardium and in the periportal areas of the liver. In this series the bone marrows were normal or hyperplastic. In another study of 23 bone marrow biopsies granulomatous lesions were found in nine.⁵

Figure 49 Acute leukemia

Figure 50 Infectious mononucleosis

(From Heinenyer L. and Begemann H. *Atlas der klinischen Hamatologie und Cytologie*. Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg: Springer 1955.)



and was characterized by a temperature of 101 to 103 F moderate glandular enlargement and frequent recrudescence. In the "angiose" type the prodromal period lasted from one to three weeks following which the patient developed a severe membranous sore throat clinically indistinguishable from diphtheria, peritonsillar edema and a temperature of 104 F. The "febrile" type was characterized by the sudden onset of malaise headache chills and temperature of 102 to 103 F a rash was often noted during the first week and glandular enlargement did not appear until from ten to twenty one days had passed. Other authors have classified patients on the basis of outstanding clinical features as "pharyngeal" or "typhoidal" and as "angiose" "insidious" "eruptive" "icteric" "pulmonary" "abdominal" "lymphoglandular" and "meningitic".¹¹⁶

The incidence of the symptoms and signs in patients with infectious mononucleosis varies in different series.^{63 9 60 88 106 10 111 118} The extremes are shown in Table 17.

Table 17 The Incidence of Various Symptoms and Signs in Infectious Mononucleosis as Reported by Different Authors

SYMPTOMS	PER CENT	PHYSICAL SIGNS	PER CENT
Sore throat	50-80	Fever	70-100
Malaise	25-63	Enlarged nodes	78-100
Headache	35-67	Pharyngitis	68-82
Weakness	13-54	Splenomegaly	28-70
Anorexia	17-41	Hepatomegaly	6-37
Abdominal pain or disease	14-23	Rashes	0-18
Ocular symptoms	6-15	Jaundice	5-8
		Hematuria	1-7

Skin Lesions. Various types of cutaneous eruptions occur and an incidence of 18 per cent was found in one series. The rash usually makes its appearance between the fourth and seventh days^{62 111} but may appear as late as the twentieth day.¹ The commonest type is a fine macular or maculopapular rash pink or pinkish brown in color that involves mainly the trunk. The rash is often virtually indistinguishable from that seen in rubella. The rash which may consist of only eight or ten lesions usually appears in a single crop that lasts from three to seven days.^{62 11 111} Other types of lesions that have been seen less often are erythematous urticarial morbilliform and vesicular. Lesions like those seen in erythema multiforme and erythema nodosum also occur.^{1 5 6 1}

Liver Damage. Although jaundice occurs in only about 11 per cent of patients with infectious mononucleosis it is probable that some impairment of liver function occurs in a high percentage of patients with the disease. Study of liver tissue obtained by biopsy and at autopsy indicates that the jaundice is due to a form of hepatitis and is not the result of extrahepatic obstruction from enlarged nodes.^{1 9 61 34} The lesion consists mainly of perportal infiltration with mononuclear cells; there are minimal changes in the hepatic cells which are not accompanied by necrosis or alteration of the

Clinical Manifestations

Infectious mononucleosis occurs in both sexes and is predominantly a disease of children and young adults. The disease has been reported in a four month old infant and in an adult seventy years of age.¹¹¹ About 80 per cent of the cases occur between the ages of 15 and 30^{63 60 87} and the disease is rarely seen in persons over 40.¹¹¹ At one time infectious mononucleosis was considered rare in Negroes⁶³ but a more recent report indicates that the incidence in Negroes is about the same as that in Caucasians.¹¹⁶

Although infectious mononucleosis varies a great deal in its manner of onset, severity and clinical manifestations, the majority of patients have a similar clinical picture. The patient with infectious mononucleosis usually complains of malaise, sore throat, headache and weakness of several days' duration. Anorexia and cough are not unusual. Fever of less than 102° F is usually present and the pulse is generally normal or slow in proportion to the temperature. Examination of the pharynx usually reveals diffuse injection of the mucous membranes or follicular tonsillitis. Palpable enlargement of the cervical lymph nodes is usually evident when the patient is first seen or develops within a few days. Involvement of the nodes in the cervical region, which is generally bilateral, is soon followed by the appearance of enlargement of the axillary and inguinal nodes. The spleen and liver are often palpable. Usually both the characteristic findings in the blood—a lymphocytosis associated with pathologic lymphocytes—and the positive heterophil agglutination test are present when the patient is first seen or develop during the first week or ten days thereafter. As a rule, the fever subsides by lysis within the first or second week and the symptoms disappear during the second or third week. Convalescence is rapid in most patients. The glandular enlargement often improves within a few days but some residual enlargement may persist for months. In three fourths of the patients the blood picture returns to normal in two months and the heterophil agglutination becomes negative in less than four months.¹¹¹

The "usual" clinical picture is not seen in a number of patients with infectious mononucleosis. Some patients are essentially asymptomatic and the presence of the disease is manifested only by painless adenopathy and the characteristic laboratory findings. Other patients become acutely ill with high fever and present the appearance of a severe overwhelming infection. In still other patients the clinical features are dominated by the presence of the disease in a particular organ; in such patients the presenting complaints are abdominal pain, jaundice, hematuria or disease of the central nervous system.

The essential features of infectious mononucleosis as emphasized by Tidy are fever, glandular enlargement, faucial infection and lymphocytosis.¹¹¹ The prominence of these features varies in different patients and various authors have recognized different groups of clinical syndromes. Tidy classified his patients into "glandular," "angiose" and "febrile" types. The "glandular" type occurred most often in children five to eleven years of age.

present in the autopsied cases. Although the electrocardiographic changes persist for months in some patients¹⁰³ there is little or no evidence that chronic heart disease occurs in patients with infectious mononucleosis.

Rupture of the Spleen This is a serious complication that has been seen in at least 21 patients with infectious mononucleosis¹⁰. This complication which has a mortality rate of about 33 per cent in the reported cases¹⁰ is one of the most frequent causes of death in infectious mononucleosis.⁷¹ Rupture of the spleen occurs as a consequence of splenic enlargement associated with capsular infiltration and subcapsular hemorrhage.^{71, 88, 102, 103} The rupture rarely occurs before the third week of the disease but has been reported as early as the end of the second week^{66, 103} and as late as thirty days after onset.¹⁰¹ The presence of this complication is generally manifested by severe pain in the upper abdomen or left upper quadrant followed by circulatory collapse. In some patients the occurrence of this complication has not been recognized because the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis had not been made prior to the rupture and was not suspected then because the intraperitoneal hemorrhage was associated with polymorphonuclear leukocytosis.¹⁰¹ Although rupture of the spleen in infectious mononucleosis is usually termed "spontaneous" the importance of slight trauma associated with a trivial blow or the performance of the physical examination has been emphasized.^{101, 103}

Hematologic Complications The most important hematologic complications that occur in infectious mononucleosis are hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenic purpura. Both complications are rare but each has been reported at least 16 times.¹¹ In the reported cases the hemoglobin levels have ranged from 4.3 to 9.8 gm per 100 ml, the reticulocyte count from 7.0 to 37.5 per cent and the level of indirect reacting bilirubin in the serum from 1.6 to 6.0 mg per 100 ml.¹⁰² The antiglobulin (Coombs') test has been positive in most of the patients with hemolytic anemia when it has been performed.^{10, 109} which suggests that the hyperhemolysis is due to autoimmune antibodies. Both the anemia and the thrombocytopenia disappear spontaneously or with appropriate treatment and no deaths have been reported from these complications.

Hematuria Hematuria occurs in from 3 to 6 per cent of patients.^{111, 116} and may be the presenting complaint.¹¹⁵ Presumably the hematuria results from lymphocytic infiltration in the kidney.^{66, 1} Chronic renal disease secondary to infectious mononucleosis has not been reported.

Laboratory Manifestations

The most characteristic abnormalities in the peripheral blood in infectious mononucleosis are leukocytosis, absolute lymphocytosis and the presence of abnormal lymphocytes. Leukocyte counts of 5000 per cu mm or less may occur early in the disease⁶⁵ but the total count is usually elevated by the second week.^{63, 66, 67} Counts over 40,000 per cu mm are rare.⁶⁶ The most constant feature in infectious mononucleosis is the presence of the

hepatic architecture. A high incidence of abnormal liver function tests has been found in patients with *infectious mononucleosis without jaundice*⁶⁹⁻⁷¹. In one series of 15 patients the thymol turbidity and BSP tests were found to be positive in all and the alkaline phosphatase level was elevated in 7 of 8 patients on whom it was determined. Plasma electrophoresis was performed on 6 patients and a protein distribution similar to that seen in *infectious hepatitis* was found; there was a slight decrease in albumin, increase in alpha and beta globulin and a marked increase in gamma globulin. Other studies have shown a positive thymol turbidity test in 60 to 68 per cent⁶⁹⁻⁷¹ and a positive cephalin flocculation test in 95 per cent.⁷² Such studies have led to the conclusion that hepatitis is a feature of nearly all cases of *infectious mononucleosis*.⁷⁰ Although abnormal liver function tests may persist for long periods (up to 22 months in one report),⁷¹ the prognosis for complete recovery is excellent even in the patients with jaundice. Cirrhosis of the liver has been reported only once and this patient had an alcoholic history.⁷³

Central Nervous System Involvement : Involvement of the central nervous system first reported in 1931⁷⁴⁻⁷⁶ is a rare complication of *infectious mononucleosis*. Up to 1955 64 cases had been reported.⁷⁷ Involvement of the central nervous system has been manifested by headache, nuchal rigidity, drowsiness, stupor, coma, paralysis, convulsions and changes in the spinal fluid such as pleocytosis, increased protein and increased pressure. The types of central nervous system involvement were classified by Bernstein and Wolff as follows: (1) serous meningitis, (2) meningitis, (3) encephalitis, (4) meningoencephalitis, (5) meningitis or meningoencephalitis with acute polyneuritis, (6) peripheral neuropathy.⁷⁴ Meningitis, encephalitis and meningitis or meningoencephalitis with polyneuritis (Guillain Barre syndrome) make up about three fourths of the reported cases.⁷⁷ Although central nervous system involvement is estimated to occur in less than one per cent of the patients with *infectious mononucleosis*,⁷⁴ this complication is responsible for a high percentage of deaths in the disease when death occurs; it is usually the result of respiratory paralysis.⁷⁸ Despite a course that is frequently stormy, the prognosis is good in patients with central nervous system involvement; 85 per cent recover within a period that varies from a few days to several months after the onset of the complication.⁷⁴

Cardiac Involvement : The occurrence of cardiac involvement has been reviewed.⁸¹ There is rarely any clinical evidence of cardiac involvement but pericarditis which was diagnosed by the occurrence of chest pain, pericardial friction rub, electrocardiographic abnormalities and changes in heart size has been reported nine times.^{79-84, 100-103} Most of the reported cardiac abnormalities are not obvious and consist of electrocardiographic changes in the T waves, P-R interval or cardiac rhythm.^{81, 100-110} Routine electrocardiograms have revealed abnormalities in from 5 to 50 per cent of patients.^{81, 110} Postmortem studies have revealed focal interstitial infiltration of abnormal lymphocytes in the myocardium that appears to offer an explanation for the electrocardiographic findings.⁸¹ Pericarditis has not been

rickettsialpox, and allergic states.² In these disorders the percentage of abnormal lymphocytes is generally less than in infectious mononucleosis and elevated total leukocyte counts are unusual. Although absolute lymphocytosis nearly always occurs in infectious mononucleosis it is not a constant finding. An increase in polymorphonuclear cells sometimes occurs in the prodromal phase and early in the disease.^{6, 112}

Eosinophilia which is more likely to develop during convalescence^{90, 118} has been found in 14 per cent of one series⁹⁴ and in 10 per cent of another.¹¹⁸ The eosinophils are usually less than 15 per cent but counts as high as 21 per cent occur. Except in rare instances complicated by hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia the hemoglobin, red cell count, and platelet counts are normal.

Although the heterophil agglutination (Paul Bunnell) test is nonspecific it is a very helpful procedure in the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis.⁹⁶ Titers of 1:50^{93, 1:160²} and 1:224 have been considered confirmatory of infectious mononucleosis if the clinical and hematologic findings are suggestive of the disease. The differential adsorption test of Davidsohn is more specific because agglutinins for sheep cells sometimes occur in normal persons and in patients with serum sickness and other diseases.² Davidsohn found that the heterophil antibodies in infectious mononucleosis are not completely removed from the serum by adsorption with guinea pig kidney but are removed completely when adsorbed with beef red cells. The heterophil antibodies found in normal individuals and in patients with serum sickness and other diseases are different in that they are removed from the serum when adsorbed with guinea pig kidney. The test is useful in excluding patients with high titers that are not due to infectious mononucleosis and in establishing the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis in patients with low titers. The test has been particularly helpful in patients with monocytic leukemia and acute leukemia; titers as high as 1:896 have been seen in these diseases but they could be distinguished from infectious mononucleosis by the guinea pig absorption test.^{1, 14} The incidence of positive heterophil agglutination tests in infectious mononucleosis has been reported to be from 70 per cent to 100 per cent but is probably around 70 per cent.^{12, 90, 91} The frequency of positive tests depends on the criteria used for establishing the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis, the stage of the disease, and the number of the tests performed. The test is usually positive when the patient is first seen^{9, 10, 9} but the time of development of a positive test varies from one to 69 days. In the vast majority of patients the test will be positive in the first two weeks of the disease if it is going to become positive.⁹⁰ The heterophil agglutination test may remain positive from 9 days to 63 weeks⁶ but generally it becomes negative in from two to four months.⁶² In one series the test became negative in 75 per cent of the patients within four months.

The thymol turbidity, BSP excretion, and cephalin flocculation tests and the serum alkaline phosphatase level have been found to be abnormal in a high percentage of patients with infectious mononucleosis.^{72, 94, 95} One

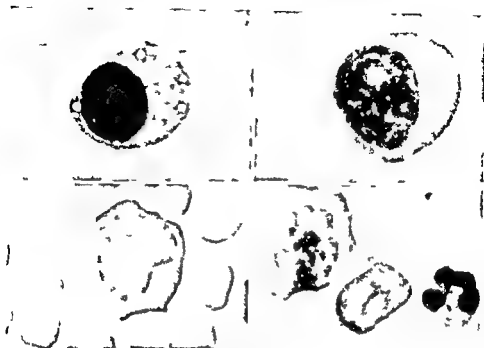


Figure 51 Various forms of pathologic lymphocytes seen in patients with infectious mononucleosis

pathologic lymphocytes" first described by Sprunt and Evans¹⁰ and classified into three types by Downey and McKinlay.³ The Type I cell is a highly differentiated mature lymphocyte with a nucleus that has a cloudy appearance due to the presence of a coarse network of chromatin strands or masses that is not sharply separated from the parachromatin. The nucleus is often indented. The cytoplasm is very basophilic and somewhat mottled in appearance. The Type II cell has a nucleus with a coarse chromatin structure somewhat similar to that of the plasma cell. The cytoplasm is less basophilic than the Type I cell and contains fewer vacuoles. The Type III cell, which more closely resembles leukemic cells, has a less differentiated nucleus that contains nucleoli. In Downey and McKinlay's report the Type III cells were uncommon; they were seen in small numbers in only one of nine cases, while the Type I and II cells were numerous in all nine cases that were studied.

Other abnormalities such as nuclear indentation, cytoplasmic vacuolation, and nuclear fenestration may be seen in lymphocytes of all sizes. In patients who are diagnosed as having infectious mononucleosis, mononuclear cells almost invariably constitute over 50 per cent of the leukocytes at some stage of the disease,^{63 90 94 111} and counts as high as 96 per cent have been observed.⁶³ Abnormal lymphocytes probably occur in all patients with infectious mononucleosis but are not pathognomonic of the disease. Apparently identical cells, for which the name "viocyte" has been suggested, have been observed in the following conditions: infectious hepatitis, virus pneumonia, herpetic infections, rubella, rubi-cola, roseola infantum, undulant fever.

nopathy or evidence of central nervous system involvement is the presenting complaint the diagnosis may not be considered in sporadic cases when the patient is first seen. When the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis is considered repeated examination of the peripheral blood, repeated agglutination tests and a period of observation may be necessary before the question can be settled.

Course and Prognosis

Infectious mononucleosis usually runs an acute course characterized by fever for ten days or less,⁸ followed by prompt recovery. A recrudescence of fever and symptoms is not unusual after the temperature has returned to normal for several days. In some patients the manifestations of the disease are so mild that the presence of the disease is recognized only by the laboratory tests. In other patients malaise and weakness may persist for months before complete recovery occurs. Nearly all patients recover completely, but deaths have occurred in some patients with splenic rupture and in some with central nervous system complications.

Treatment

The treatment of infectious mononucleosis is largely symptomatic and supportive. Parenteral fluids may be necessary if the throat is much involved. Prolonged bed rest is not necessary in patients with abnormal liver function tests or abnormal electrocardiograms. Treatment with sulfonamides, penicillin, chlortetracycline and chloramphenicol has not been found to shorten significantly the duration of symptoms or fever or to reduce the incidence of complications.^{61 68 69 114}

Illustrative Case

A 17 year old white male student was in excellent health until two weeks prior to admission when he first noticed malaise. Ten days prior to admission transient chilly sensations occurred. Five days before admission severe headache appeared and was accompanied by sore throat and enlargement of the cervical lymph nodes. The sore throat became progressively worse and on the day of admission the patient was unable to swallow liquids.

Physical Examination. The oral temperature on admission was 100° F. The tonsillar areas were covered with a white, thick, pseudomembranous type of exudate. There was bilateral enlargement of the cervical and axillary lymph nodes which measured 1 to 3 cm. in diameter. A soft spleen edge was palpable 1 cm. below the left costal margin. The neurologic examination and the remainder of the routine examination were within normal limits.

Laboratory Examination. Admission blood studies: hct 50 per cent, wbc 14,000 per cu mm, differential count (per cent): granulocytes 28, lymphocytes 64, monocytes 8. Many of the lymphocytes appeared abnormal.

review of the literature reports that the various liver function tests were abnormal in from 40 to 100 per cent of 524 cases ⁶³

The occurrence of false positive Wassermann and Kahn tests in infectious mononucleosis is well known. Incidences of 2 per cent ¹⁰⁸ 3 per cent, ¹¹⁶ 10 per cent ⁸ 18 per cent ¹³ and "about half" ¹¹¹ have been reported. The test usually becomes positive during the second week and reverts to negative by the eighth week ¹¹¹ but the duration of positivity varies from a few days ⁶³ to more than three months. The finding of a positive routine serologic test for syphilis in a young adult may be the first intimation that the patient may have infectious mononucleosis.

False positive agglutination tests for *Br melitensis* *S typhosa* *S paratyphi A* and *B* and *Proteus* \ 19 have been reported ⁶ ⁶⁷. In some patients several agglutination tests may be positive at the same time ⁶ ⁶⁸. When repeated titrations have been done it has been noted that the titers rose abruptly sometimes to as high as 1:2560 but fell quickly.

Transient urinary abnormalities in the form of red blood cells, white blood cells, albuminuria and casts have been reported in 3 per cent and 6 per cent of patients ¹¹¹.

Diagnosis

The possibility of infectious mononucleosis is suggested by the occurrence of sore throat, fever, enlarged lymph nodes or lymphocytosis in children and young adults. The presence of more than 50 per cent lymphocytes and more than 10 per cent pathologic lymphocytes is even stronger evidence. Most authors accept a diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis if the clinical and hematologic picture is considered characteristic even if the heterophil agglutination test is negative ⁶³ ⁹⁰ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁸. However, some consider that patients with a negative heterophil agglutination reaction who have the clinical and hematologic features of infectious mononucleosis really have a different disease that is closely allied to infectious mononucleosis ⁸⁰ ¹⁰⁰. The actual incidence of positive heterophil agglutination tests is hard to determine because it depends on many factors including the stage of disease when the test is performed, the number of the tests done and the criteria that are accepted for the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis. Titers of over 1:50 ⁹⁹ and over 1:224 ² have been considered diagnostic if the other features of the disease are consistent. It has been recommended that the differential adsorption test be used if the titer is less than 1:224 and the findings suggest infectious mononucleosis and also in circumstances when the titer is over 1:224 but is associated with no evidence of the disease ⁷. If the titer is reduced more than 75 per cent by adsorption with guinea pig kidney, the antibody is probably not of the infectious mononucleosis type.

The diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis may be difficult if the patient is seen before the characteristic hematologic and serologic findings appear especially when the clinical features are those that are more often associated with other diseases. When jaundice, hematuria, a septic type of fever, ade

- 11 Hewson W The Works of Wilham Hewson London Printed for the Sydenham Society p 282 1816
- 12 Kline H L and Clifton E E Lifespan of leucocytes in man J Applied Physiol 5 79 1952
- 13 Kundig J E A quantitative study of the hemopoietic organs of young adult albino rats Am J Anat 71 207 1942
- 14 Lawrence J S Ervin H M and Wetrich H M Life cycle of white blood cells The rate of disappearance of leukocytes from the peripheral blood of leukopenic rats Am J Physiol 144 84 1945
- 15 Menkin V Biology of inflammation Science 1 3 527 1956
- 16 Menkin V The effect of the leukocytosis promoting factor on the growth of cells in the bone marrow Am J Path 19 1021 1943
- 17 Menkin V and Kadish M A Presence of the leukocytosis promoting factor in the circulating blood Arch Path 33 193 1942
- 18 Menkin V Kadish M A and Sommers S C Leukocytosis promoting factor in inflammatory exudates of man Arch Path 33 158 1942
- 19 Menkin V Studies on inflammation VIII On the mechanism of leukocytosis with inflammation Am J Path 16 13 1940
- 20 Milhorat A T Small S M and Dethlefs O Leukocytosis during various emotional states Arch Neurol & Psychiat 47 779 1942
- 21 Morris Sir Henry Human Anatomy Edited by Shaeffer J P 11th ed The Blakiston Company New York 1953
- 22 Nettleship A Leucocytosis associated with acute inflammation Am J Clin Path 8 398 1938
- 23 Osgood E E Brownlee J E Osgood M W Ellis D M and Cohen W Total differential and absolute leukocyte counts and sedimentation rates Arch Int Med 61 105 1939
- 24 Osgood E E Number and distribution of human hemic cells Blood 9 1141 1954
- 25 Ottesen J On the age of human white cells in peripheral blood Acta physiol scandinav 32 75 1954
- 26 Payne Rose Leukocyte agglutinins in human sera Arch Int Med 69 567 1957
- 27 Perry H Weinstein J M Craddock C G Jr and Laurence J S The combined use of typhoid vaccine and P₂ labeling to assess myelopoiesis Blood 12 549 1957
- 28 Ponder H Saslow G and Schweitzer M On variations in the white cell count of man Quart J Exper Physiol 21 21 1931 1933
- 29 Quitner H N Wald N Sussman L N and Antopol W The effect of massive doses of cortisone on the peripheral blood and bone marrow of the mouse Blood 6 513 1951
- 30 Reinstein G H and Hilfinger M F Jr Studies on leukocytosis Am J Path 18 383 1942
- 31 Sadia F R Cunningham R S Doan C A and Kundwall J A The normal rhythm of the white blood cells Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 37 14 1925
- 32 Schilling V The Blood Picture C V Mosby Co St Louis 1929
- 33 Sturgis C C and Bethell E H Quantitative and qualitative variations in normal leukocytes Physiol Rev 23 279 1943
- 34 Tompkins E H The monocyte Ann NY Acad Sc 59 732 1955
- 35 Tullis J J Prevalence, nature and identification of leukocyte antibodies New England J Med 259 509 1958
- 36 Wintrobe M M Diagnostic significance of changes in leukocytes Bull NY Acad Med 15 333 1939
- 37 Wolff J M The quantitative study of the leukocytes Ann NY Acad Sc 59 948 1955

AGRAULOCYTOSIS

- 38 Dameshek W and Colmer A The effect of drugs on the production of agranulocytosis with particular reference to amiodopyrine hypersensitivity J Clin Invest 15 85 1936

they were large and had an opaque basophilic cytoplasm. The nuclei of many of the smaller cells were indented or fenestrated. Other examinations showed the following: serum bilirubin level 0.7 mg per 100 ml; alkaline phosphatase 6.3 (B U); thymol turbidity 9.6 units; cephalin flocculation 4 plus in 48 hours; spinal fluid normal. The heterophil agglutination test was positive in dilutions of 1:3564 before adsorption and positive in a dilution of 1:792 after differential adsorption.

A diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis was made. The patient responded well to symptomatic measures and was essentially asymptomatic when discharged from the hospital eight days later. One month after discharge nodes that measured 1×1 cm were still palpable in the cervical area and in the left axilla. The leukocyte count was 7000 per cu mm and the differential count was (per cent): bands 1, segmented 47, lymphocytes 40, monocytes 9, eosinophils 2, basophils 1. A few atypical lymphocytes persisted. The heterophil test was still positive in dilutions of 1:24 after adsorption.

Comment. This patient illustrates most of the typical features of infectious mononucleosis. The majority of patients are young adults who complain of fever, malaise, sore throat, and cervical adenopathy. As often happens, the heterophil agglutination test was positive and the blood smear was typical of infectious mononucleosis when the patient was first seen. The patient is typical of many with the disease in that he had neither clinical jaundice nor elevation of the serum bilirubin but did exhibit evidence of liver dysfunction in the various tests. Because of his severe headache, the complication of a meningo-encephalitis was considered but was discarded when the neurologic examination and cerebrospinal fluid proved to be normal.

REFERENCES

LEUKOCYTES AND LEUKOPOIESIS

1. Bierman H. R., Kelly J. H. and Cordes F. L. The sequestration and visceral circulation of leukocytes in man. *Ann N.Y. Acad. Sc.* 59:850, 1955.
2. Brittingham T. E. and Chaplin H. Jr. Sensitivity to buffy coat—a cause of non-specific transfusion reactions. *J. Clin. Invest.* 36:877, 1957.
3. Craddock C. G. Jr. et al. Studies of leukopenias. The technique of leukopheresis and the response of myeloid tissue in normal and irradiated dogs. *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 45:881, 1955.
4. Craddock C. G. Jr., Perry S. and Lawrence J. S. The dynamic of leukopenias and leukocytosis as studied by leukopheresis and isotopic technique. *J. Clin. Invest.* 35:285, 1956.
5. Dougherty T. F. and White A. Influence of hormones on lymphoid tissue structure and function. The role of the pituitary, adrenotrophic hormone in the regulation of the lymphocytes and other cellular elements of the blood. *Endocrinology* 55:1, 1944.
6. Ehrlich P. and Lazarus A. *Anemia*. Reiman Ltd. London, 1910.
7. Garrey W. E. and Bryan W. R. Variations in white blood cell counts. *Physiol. Rev.* 15:597, 1935.
8. Gordon A. S. Some aspects of hormonal influences upon the leukocytes. *Ann N.Y. Acad. Sc.* 59:907, 1955.
9. Cowans J. L. Life history of lymphocytes. *Brit. M. Bull.* 15:50, 1959.
10. Hamilton L. D. Nucleic acid turnover studies in human leukaemic cells and the function of lymphocytes. *Nature* 178:597, 1958.

- 66 Brien F ■ : Infectious mononucleosis Complications Canad MAJ 58 499 1947
- 67 Cabot R C The lymphocytosis of infection Am J M Sc 145 335 1913
- 68 Carpenter G Kaffer J and Reilly E ■ Elevated titers of serum heterophil antibodies in three instances of monocytic leukemia Am J M Sc 20 195 1950
- 69 Carter A B and MacLagan N F Some observations on liver function tests in diseases not primarily hepatic Brit M J 2 50 1946
- 70 Cohn C and Lidman H I Hepatitis without jaundice in infectious mononucleosis J Clin Invest 25 145 1946
- 71 Cutler R P and Smith E B The pathology of infectious mononucleosis Blood 3 850 1948
- 72 Davidson I Stern A and Kashiwaga C The differential test for infectious mononucleosis Am J Clin Path 21 1101 1951
- 73 Downey H and McKinlay C A Acute lymphadenitis compared with acute lymphatic leukemia Arch Int Med 32 82 1933
- 74 Epstein S H and Dameshek W Involvement of the central nervous system in a case of glandular fever New England J Med 205 1238 1931
- 75 Evans A S Experimental attempts to transmit infectious mononucleosis to man J Biol & Med 20 19 1947
- 76 Evans A S Liver involvement in infectious mononucleosis J Clin Invest 27 106 1948
- 77 Evans W F and Graybiel A Electrocardiographic evidence of cardiac complications in infectious mononucleosis Am J M Sc 211 20 1946
- 78 Hoagland R J Infectious mononucleosis Am J Med 13 158 1952
- 79 Hoagland R J and McCluskey R T Hepatitis in mononucleosis Ann Int Med 43 1019 1955
- 80 Hobson F G Lawson B and Wigfield M Glandular fever A field study Brit M J 2 645 1953
- 81 Houck C H Involvement of the heart in infectious mononucleosis Am J Med 14 61 1953
- 82 Howde R F and Sundberg R D Granulomatous lesions in the bone marrow in infectious mononucleosis Blood 5 99 1950
- 83 Johanson A H Serous meningitis and infectious mononucleosis Acta medica scand 76 69 1931
- 84 Kasper E H and Robbin S L Severe hepatitis in infectious mononucleosis Arch Path 50 644 1950
- 85 Kilham L and Stegman A J Infectious mononucleosis Lancet 2 452 1942
- 86 King H B Spontaneous rupture of spleen in infectious mononucleosis Report 1 a case New England J Med 224 1058 1941
- 87 Leavell B S and McVet J O Infectious mononucleosis Unusual manifestations Virginia M Month 69 150 1942
- 88 Leavell B S and Thorup O A Personal Observation
- 89 Leibowitz S and Brody H Changes of the liver following infectious mononucleosis Am J Med 8 675 1950
- 90 Liewitz S Infectious Mononucleosis Modern Medical Monographs Crime and St. Atton New York 1953
- 91 Liewitz S Infectious mononucleosis The value of differential absorption test in its serologic diagnosis Am J Med 19 172 1952
- 92 Litvin J and Liebowitz S Atypical lymphocyte (variant) in virus like other than infectious mononucleosis Acta haemat 5 23 1951
- 93 Liebowitz S Infectious mononucleosis (glandular fever) with a report of ten cases Am J M Sc 161 781 1952
- 94 Light C E Infectious mononucleosis Journal Lancet 58 91 1954
- 95 Miller H Urachio J F and Hillip H W Acute pericarditis associated with infectious mononucleosis New England J Med 49 136 1953
- 96 Paul J H and Brink H W The presence of heterophil antibodies in infectious mononucleosis Am J M Sc 163 90 1952
- 97 H. H. E. Drunbecher J. J. H. H. K. derik 29 57 1959

- 33 Dameshek W. Leukopenia and Agranulocytosis. Oxford University Press, New York, 1944.
- 40 Dameshek W. and Wolfson I. I. A preliminary report on the treatment of agranulocytosis with sulfadiazole. *Am J M Sc* 203:819, 1942.
- 41 Fitz Hugh F. Jr. and Krumbhaar I. H. Myeloid cell hyperplasia of the bone marrow in agranulocytic anemia. *Am J M Sc* 183:104, 1932.
- 42 Fitz Hugh F. Jr. Sensitivity reactions of the blood and bone marrow to certain drugs. *JAMA* 111:1643, 1938.
- 43 Kracke R. R. and Larker F. I. The relationship of drug therapy to agranulocytosis. *JAMA* 105:960, 1935.
- 44 Kracke R. R. Recurrent agranulocytosis. Report of an unusual case. *Am J Clin Path* 1:385, 1931.
- 45 Kracke R. R. The experimental production of agranulocytosis. *Am J Clin Path* 2:11, 1932.
- 46 Lawrence J. S. Leukopenia. Its mechanism and therapy. *J Chron Dis* 6:321, 1957.
- 47 Leavell B. S. and Thorup O. A. Personal Observation.
- 48 Madison I. W. and Squier T. I. The etiology of primary granulocytopenia (agranulocytic anemia). *JAMA* 102:755, 1934.
- 49 Moeschlin S. Meyer H. Israels I. C. and Tarr Clark I. Experimental agranulocytosis. Its production through leukocytic agglutination by antileukocytic serum. *Acta haemat* 11:73, 1934.
- 50 Moeschlin S. and Wagner A. Agranulocytosis due to the occurrence of leukocyte agglutinins (Tyramidon and cold agglutinins). *Acta haemat* 8:21, 1933.
- 51 Osgood I. L. Hypoplastic anemias and related syndromes caused by drug idiosyncrasy. *JAMA* 152:816, 1933.
- 52 Plum I. Agranulocytosis due to amidopyrine. An experimental and clinical study of seven new cases. *Lancet* 1:11, 1935.
- 53 Reznikoff P. The etiologic importance of fatigue and the prognostic significance of monocytosis in neutropenia (agranulocytosis). *Am J M Sc* 105:627, 1938.
- 54 Roberts S. R. and Kracke R. R. Agranulocytosis. Report of a case. *JAMA*, 95:760, 1930.
- 55 Rosenthal N. and Abel H. A. The significance of the monocytes in agranulocytosis (leukopenic infectious monocytosis). *Am J Clin Path* 6:205, 1938.
- 56 Schultze W. Ueber eigenartige Hämokrankungen (a) Monocytenanämie (b) Can-
granzierende Prozesse und Defekt des Granulozytensystems. *Deutsch med Wochenschr* 48:1435, 1922.
- 57 Welch H. Lewis C. N. and Kerlin I. Blood dyscrasias. A nationwide survey. *Antibiotics & Chemother* 1:607, 1954.

CYCLIC NEUTROPHILIA

- 58 Duane C. W. Periodic neutropenia. *Arch Int Med* 102:462, 1958.
- 59 Leake M. Recurrent furunculosis in an infant showing an unusual blood picture. *JAMA* 51:1854, 1910.
- 60 Page A. H. and Good R. A. Studies on cyclic neutropenia. *Am J Dis Child* 91:623, 1957.

INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS

- 61 Bernike T. Penicillin treatment of infectious mononucleosis. *Arch Int Med* 87:181, 1951.
- 62 Bernstein A. Antibody responses in infectious mononucleosis. *J Clin Invest* 13:419, 1934.
- 63 Bernstein A. Infectious mononucleosis. *Medicine* 19:85, 1940.
- 64 Bernstein T. C. and Wolff H. G. Involvement of the nervous system in infectious mononucleosis. *Ann Int Med* 33:1120, 1950.
- 65 Bloedorn W. A. and Houghton J. P. The occurrence of abnormal leukocytes in the blood in acute infections. *Arch Int Med* 27:315, 1921.

- 66 Brien F ■ Infectious mononucleosis Complications Canad MAJ 56 499 1947
- 67 Cabot R C The lymphocytosis of infection Am J M Sc 145 335 1913
- 68 Carpenter G Kahler J and Reilly E ■ Elevated titers of serum heterophil antibodies in three instances of monocytic leukemia Am J M Sc 270 195 1950
- 69 Carter A B and MacLagan N F Some observations on liver function tests in diseases not primarily hepatic Brit M J 3 80 1946
- 70 Cohen C and Lidman B I Hepatitis without jaundice in infectious mononucleosis J Clin Invest 25 145 1946
- 71 Custer R P and Smith E B The pathology of infectious mononucleosis Blood 3 830 1948
- 72 Davidsohn I Stern L and Kashnagat C The differential test for infectious mononucleosis Am J Clin Path 21 1101 1951
- 73 Downey H and McKinstry C A Acute lymphadenitis compared with acute lymphatic leukemia Arch Int Med 32 82 1923
- 74 Epstein S R and Dameshek W Involvement of the central nervous system in a case of glandular fever New England J M d 205 1238 1931
- 75 Evans A S Experimental attempts to transmit infectious mononucleosis to man Yale J Biol & Med 20 19 1947
- 76 Evans A S Liver involvement in infectious mononucleosis J Clin Invest 27 106 1946
- 77 Evans W F and Craybuel A Electrocardiographic evidence of cardiac complications in infectious mononucleosis Am J M Sc 211 220 1946
- 78 Hargland R J Infectious mononucleosis Am J Med 13 158 1952
- 79 Hargland R J and McCluskey R T Hepatitis in mononucleosis Ann Int Med 40 1019 1953
- 80 Hobson F G Lawson B and Wigfield M Glandular fever A field study Brit M J 1 845 1958
- 81 Hirsch G H Involvement of the heart in infectious mononucleosis Am J Med 14 261 1953
- 82 Hoide R F and Sundberg R D Crinomatous lesions in the bone marrow in infectious mononucleosis Blood 5 209 1950
- 83 Johanson A H Serous meningitis and infectious mononucleosis Acta med scand nav 76 69 1931
- 84 Kahn E H and Robbins S L Severe hepatitis in infectious mononucleosis Arch Path 50 644 1950
- 85 Kilham L and Steigman A J Infectious mononucleosis Lancet 2 452 1942
- 86 King R B Spontaneous rupture of spleen in infectious mononucleosis Report of a case New England J Med 274 1038 1941
- 87 Leavell B S and McNeil J O Infectious mononucleosis Unusual manifestations Virginia M Month 69 180 1942
- 88 Leavell B S and Thorpe O A Personal Observation
- 89 Lebowitz S and Brody H Curiosity of the liver following infectious mononucleosis Am J Med 8 675 1950
- 90 Lebowitz S Infectious Mononucleosis Modern Medical Microbiology Grune and Stratton New York 1953
- 91 Lebowitz S Infectious mononucleosis The value of differential lymphocyte counts in etiologic diagnosis Am J M d 13 172 1952
- 92 Liu J and Lebowitz S Altered lymphocyte (mixtures) in virus-like infections in infectious mononucleosis Acta haemat 5 23 1951
- 93 Luzzatto W T Infectious mononucleosis (glandular fever) with a report of ten cases A J M S 181 781 1952
- 94 Lyall C E Infectious mononucleosis Journal Lancet 53 91 1958
- 95 Miller H Ursell J E and Phillips R W Acute pericarditis associated with infectious mononucleosis New England J M d 249 130 1953
- 96 Paul J R and Benn R W W The presence of heterophil antibody in infectious mononucleosis Am J M Sc 163 90 1952
- 97 R. H. J. Dru. n. b. r. Jahrb. f. k. d. e. l. k. 25 1869

- 98 Schultz A L and Hall W H Clinical observations in 100 cases of infectious mononucleosis and the results of treatment with penicillin and Aureomycin *Ann Int Med* 36 1498 1952
- 99 Seifert M H Chandler V I and Van Winkle W Aureomycin in infectious mononucleosis *JAMA* 142 1133 1950
- 100 Shubert S Collee J G and Smith B J Infectious mononucleosis A syndrome or a disease? *Brit M J* 1 671 1954
- 101 Smith E B and Custer H P Rupture of the spleen in infectious mononucleosis A clinicopathologic report of seven cases *Blood* 1 317 1946
- 102 Smith J N Jr Complications of infectious mononucleosis *Ann Int Med* 44 661 1956
- 103 Soloff L A and Zatuchni J Infectious mononucleosis associated with symptoms of acute pericarditis *JAMA* 152 1530 1953
- 104 Southam C M Goldsmith Y and Burchenal J H Heterophile antibodies and antigens in neoplastic diseases *Cancer* 1 1036 1951
- 105 Sprunt T P and Evans F A Mononuclear leukocytosis in reaction to acute infections (infectious mononucleosis) *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 31 410 1920
- 106 Stevens J E Infectious mononucleosis A clinical analysis of 210 sporadic cases *Virginia M Month* 79 74 1952
- 107 Templeton H J and Sutherland M T The exanthem of acute mononucleosis *JAMA* 113 1215 1939
- 108 Thompson W T Jr and Pitt C Frank hematuria as a manifestation of infectious mononucleosis *Ann Int Med* 33 1274 1950
- 109 Thurn R H and Bassen F Infectious mononucleosis and acute hemolytic anemia *Blood* 10 641 1955
- 110 Tidy H L and Daniel E C Glandular fever and infective mononucleosis with an account of an epidemic *Lancet* 2 9 1923
- 111 Tidy H L Glandular fever and infectious mononucleosis *Lancet* 2 160 and 236 1934
- 112 Tidy H L and Morley E B Glandular fever *Brit M J* 1 452 1921
- 113 Timmes J J Averill J H and Metcalfe J Splenic rupture in infectious mononucleosis *New England J Med* 239 173 1948
- 114 Walker S H The failure of antibiotic therapy in infectious mononucleosis *Am J M Sc* 226 65 1953
- 115 Watson J Johnson I Kahn J and Stone F M Subclinical infectious mononucleosis with hepatitis *Arch Int Med* 63 618 1951
- 116 Wechsler H F Rosenblum A H and Sills C T Infectious mononucleosis Report of an epidemic in an army post *Ann Int Med* 25 113 1946
- 117 Wett J P An epidemic of glandular fever *Arch Mediat* 13 669 1896
- 118 Wising P J Successful transmission of infectious mononucleosis to man by transfusion of heparinized blood *Acta med Scandinav* 169 507 1942

Agents Used in the Treatment of Leukemia and Malignant Lymphoma

THE PRINCIPAL agents used in the treatment of leukemia and lymphoma are ionizing radiation, alkylating agents, antineoplastic antibiotics, and the adrenocortical hormones. Each of these agents may produce serious side effects and none is curative, yet they often induce hematologic and clinical remission when employed properly.

IRRADIATION

Ionizing radiation may be administered from an external source by use of roentgen rays or cobalt⁶⁰ or from an internal source by the administration of a radioactive isotope such as radioactive phosphorus (P^{32}). The effects produced by the irradiation of tissue cells have been studied extensively, but the site of the primary biochemical lesion has not been established. A variety of enzymatic changes have been demonstrated in the cell after irradiation but

these occur late and may be secondary to some disturbance in cellular metabolism" ^{18, 19} Inhibition of the synthesis of both deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA) has been demonstrated but protein synthesis by the cell seems unaffected ^{1, 20} It has been demonstrated that small doses of radiation produce a delay in the onset of DNA synthesis ⁴³ but do not inhibit DNA synthesis once it has been initiated At the present time it is not known whether these changes represent a primary effect of ionizing radiation on the biochemical sequence leading to nucleic acid synthesis or an effect that is secondary to mitotic inhibition ^{1, 26, 27} It has been shown that main polynucleotide chains of DNA are broken by the direct action of ionizing radiations If this effect is relatively unselective as it appears to be any cellular function in which DNA is involved may be affected It has been postulated that the primary effect of irradiation on the cell may be so small as to be undetectable at present As the result of the initial disturbance the metabolic activities of the cell may function incompletely and produce the biochemical and anatomic changes which can be demonstrated ²

Because ionizing radiation interferes with deoxyribonucleic acid synthesis it produces damage in any tissue composed of dividing cells The damage is most apparent in the tissues with active cellular proliferation Therapeutic irradiation aims at destroying the rapidly proliferating tumor cells while sparing the normal cells of the body as far as possible Ionizing radiation from an external source is directed in such a manner that the amount of normal tissue in its path is as small as possible This is accomplished by careful positioning of the patient and the use of protective shielding The use of multiple portals of entry for the ionizing radiation when a large dose is required in the body cavity reduces the effects on the normal skin and other tissues which must be traversed to reach the lesion The cells of the hematopoietic system the gastrointestinal tract and the skin which have a high rate of turnover are particularly susceptible to radiation damage Damage to the cutaneous cells and depression of the bone marrow frequently limit the amount of radiation the patient can receive

Ionizing radiation has been used extensively in the treatment of diseases of the lymphoma group and the chronic forms of leukemia but is not employed in the treatment of the acute forms of leukemia since its use often results in a more rapid course It was used first for the treatment of Hodgkin's disease between 1902 and 1905 ⁴⁷ Since that time it has been used more than any other form of treatment for all of the diseases in the lymphoma group It is more effective than the radioactive isotopes in the control of these disorders ^{4, 48} The diseases of the lymphoma group are radiosensitive and they often undergo striking regression after exposure to a small amount of radiation Unfortunately the remissions are temporary and the diseases eventually become resistant to additional intensive therapy It is customary to employ larger doses of radiation during the initial course of therapy than in the treatment of recurrences The amount of therapy to be administered must be individually determined for each patient and depends on the nature of the disease the region involved the extent of disease the condition of

the patient and the resistance of the lesion to ionizing radiation. Giant follicle lymphoma is the most radiosensitive of the group and requires the smallest amount of radiation. Reticulum cell sarcoma and lymphosarcoma usually require more than Hodgkin's disease. Irradiation of neighboring lymphatic areas has been recommended by some on the grounds that extensions generally occur in one of the proximal lymph node regions¹¹ but has been considered unwise by others who feel that the prediction of further sites of involvement is impossible.¹²

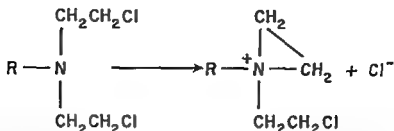
The use of radioactive phosphorus (P^{32}) which was introduced in 1936 as a source of ionizing radiation has been reviewed recently.¹³ This method of treatment offers certain advantages over roentgen ray therapy in that generalized irradiation of the hematopoietic system may be obtained with relative ease without the production of radiation sickness.¹⁴ P^{32} emits beta radiation which produces ionization within an area limited to its maximum range of 0.7 cm. It has a 14.3 day half life and decays to stable sulfur. Since the sensitivity of a cell to ionizing radiation seems related to its mitotic stage the continuous irradiation provided by P^{32} may have a distinct advantage over intermittent therapy from an external source in the treatment of a growing tissue that contains cells asynchronously undergoing cell division. Following administration P^{32} is concentrated in tissues composed of rapidly metabolizing cells which have a high phosphorus turnover such as the bone marrow, lymph nodes, spleen and liver; later the P^{32} enters the osseous tissue of the skeleton. Because of the selectivity provided by its distribution within the body the chief value of radioactive phosphorus has been in the treatment of chronic leukemias and polycythemia vera.

Because of the depressant effect that all ionizing radiation exerts on the bone marrow, frequent leukocyte counts and hematocrit determinations are performed while the patient is undergoing therapy. The level of the leukocytes that is considered a contraindication to further therapy depends on details of the individual case and no fast rules can be stated. The development of leukopenia, thrombocytopenia and anemia demands caution and careful evaluation before proceeding with further therapy.

ALKYLATING AGENTS

Among the most effective compounds available for the treatment of chronic leukemia and lymphoma are the alkylating agents. These agents were introduced into clinical medicine as the result of extensive studies that were carried out during World War II. The chemical, pharmacologic and clinical studies of these compounds have been summarized.¹⁵

One group of alkylating agents, the mustards, owe their biologic activity to the presence of the bis-beta-chloroethyl grouping.¹⁶ In neutral or alkaline aqueous solution the nitrogen mustards are highly reactive. The tertiary amine undergoes intramolecular transformation to form a cyclic iminium cation with liberation of a chloride ion. This cyclic ethyleniminium cation reacts readily with inorganic anions, water and organic radicals.¹⁷ These



compounds limit tissue growth by inhibiting mitotic activity and cell division. Although the nitrogen mustards are capable of inactivating many enzyme systems, the evidence appears to indicate that these compounds do not act *in vivo* by inhibiting intracellular enzymatic activity.^{8, 30, 31} Considerable work along different lines has led to the hypothesis that alkylating agents which are active in aqueous solution produce their anti-tumor effect by esterifying ionized acid groups rather than by reacting with sulfhydryl groups or free amino groups.³

A reaction with nucleic acids, especially the inactivation of deoxyribonucleic acid, would have a profound effect on cell division. *In vitro* experiments have demonstrated that alkylating agents cause marked alterations in the physical properties of nucleic acids. These include changes in the shape of the macromolecules and in the ability to combine with basic material.³² It has been demonstrated that nitrogen mustard produces a marked decrease in the viscosity of dilute solutions of deoxyribonucleic acid.³³ Other *in vitro* studies that have utilized the electron microscope have demonstrated intramolecular cross-linking and coiling up of deoxyribonucleic acid molecules after exposure to nitrogen mustard.³⁴ The alkylating agents appear to act by producing cross-linking of the different DNA molecules via their phosphate groups, which renders them inactive.

The alkylating agents that have been used most widely in clinical practice are

- 1 Methyl bis (β chloroethyl) amine hydrochloride (nitrogen mustard HN)
- 2 Triethylene melamine (TEM)
- 3 *p* (Di 2 chloroethylamine) phenylbutyric acid (chlorambucil CB 1348 Leukeran)
- 4 1-4 Dimethanesulfonyloxybutane (busulfan Myleran)

These compounds differ in their effectiveness against different strains of cells, different types of lesions, and in their toxic effects.

Nitrogen Mustard

Nitrogen mustard has been studied more extensively than the other alkylating agents. The histologic changes in the lymphoid tissue and marrow that occur in rats after the injection of mustard were studied by Kindred.⁴¹ He found that lymphocytes were more sensitive than the granulocytes or the

red cell precursors reticulum cells and megakaryocytes were much less sensitive

For clinical use nitrogen mustard is made up in a fresh solution of physiologic saline and is administered intravenously by injecting it into the tubing of an intravenous saline infusion. Local thrombophlebitis sometimes develops and a severe local reaction occurs if the nitrogen mustard is extravasated into the tissue. Approximately 80 per cent of the patients who receive the drug develop nausea and vomiting.⁴⁰

The most important toxic effect is exerted on the bone marrow. This is manifested within seven to ten days by a fall in the leukocyte count followed by a decrease in the platelets that generally reaches its lowest level within two or three weeks. In order to avoid serious damage to the bone marrow an interval of at least six weeks is allowed between courses of therapy when ever possible. When the patient has extensive involvement with lympho sarcoma smaller doses spaced several days apart are advisable because the rapid destruction of tissue may cause hyperuricemia and renal impairment⁴¹ or even vascular collapse.⁴² Evidence of impaired bone marrow function is also an indication for smaller doses spaced at longer intervals.

Nitrogen mustard has found its greatest usefulness in Hodgkin's disease in which it often produces a prompt remission in fever, sweats, anorexia, pruritus and weakness accompanied by a decrease in the size of the spleen, liver and lymph nodes. In lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma and giant follicular lymphoma the response to treatment with nitrogen mustard varies greatly in different patients but in general the response is not as good as in Hodgkin's disease.^{39, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55} Nitrogen mustard has not been used widely in the treatment of chronic leukemia though it has been suggested that it might be effective if a satisfactory plan of administration could be worked out.⁴

TEM

Triethylene melamine (TEM) is converted in an acid medium to a reactive quaternary ethylenonium compound and produces therapeutic effects similar to those produced by nitrogen mustard. Since it is transformed into its active form in an acid medium it may be administered by mouth. Because TEM will be inert by the time it is absorbed if the stomach contents are too acid it is usually administered with sodium bicarbonate. It is often difficult to determine how much active compound has been absorbed and in addition there seems to be considerable individual variation in response to the drug. For these reasons the drug must be administered with great caution. In some patients an initial dose of 2.5 mg produces a marked effect on hematopoiesis that persists for months. Although the effects of TEM are similar to those produced by nitrogen mustard, better clinical results have been obtained with TEM in lymphosarcoma and giant follicle lymphoma than in Hodgkin's disease and reticulum cell sarcoma.⁵⁶ Good clinical results have been obtained in the treatment of both chronic myelocytic leukemia and chronic lymphocytic leukemia with TEM.⁴

Chlorambucil

Chlorambucil (CB 1348) a water soluble aromatic nitrogen mustard is also administered orally and is much less toxic to hematopoietic tissue than nitrogen mustard or TEM. It can produce marrow aplasia, however and blood counts should be performed at intervals of not less than three weeks while the patient is receiving the drug.³⁷ Improvement generally occurs in three or four weeks if the drug is effective and the usual course of treatment lasts from four to eight weeks. Gastrointestinal disturbances are mild and infrequent. This drug is more effective in diseases characterized by abnormal lymphocyte proliferation such as lymphosarcoma and giant follicle lymphoma than in reticulum cell sarcoma and Hodgkin's disease.³⁷ However remissions were obtained in 22 of 47 patients with Hodgkin's disease and in 12 the remission lasted five to twelve months.¹ Chlorambucil is effective in the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia but is ineffective in chronic myelocytic leukemia.

Myleran

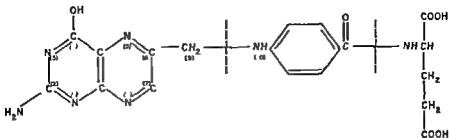
Myleran is a sulfonic acid ester and in low doses selectively depresses granulocytopoiesis. This alkylating agent is an effective agent in the treatment of chronic myelogenous leukemia and other myeloproliferative disorders¹⁴⁻¹⁷ but has not been effective in other forms of malignant disease. The ease of administration and the relatively high therapeutic index of Myleran make it the agent of choice in chronic myelogenous leukemia.

ANTIMETABOLITES

Folic Acid Antagonists

Folic acid antagonists were introduced in the treatment of acute leukemia by Farber who in 1947 noted the acceleration of the leukemic process in patients receiving folic acid. He suggested that antifolic compounds might be of benefit, and the following year reported the production of a temporary remission in 10 of 16 children with leukemia who were treated with an antifolic compound aminopterin, an observation which ushered in the present era of chemotherapy in leukemia.¹⁹ The use of these agents which interfere with the metabolism of neoplastic cells to a greater extent than they do with the metabolism of normal cells has not yet resulted in the cure of leukemia but it has produced striking temporary remissions in the disease.^{-3, 39, 41}

The antifolic compounds are derived by substitutions in the folic acid molecule. The hydrogen atoms in the structure may be replaced, as may the hydroxyl on the pyrimidine ring, or the glutamic acid may be replaced in its entirety by another amino acid or polypeptide chain. Aminopterin is produced by substitution of an amino group for the hydroxyl group. A methopterin is formed when in addition to the amino group substitution a methyl group is substituted at position 10.

*Folic acid*

The mechanism by which the folic acid antagonists exert their effect is not understood completely. Folic acid is essential for the synthesis of nucleic acid as a result of its effect on formate metabolism. The antifolic acid compounds may inhibit the conversion of folic acid to citrovorum factor (folinic acid) and thus limit formate metabolism. Formate along with CO_2 , NH_3 , and glycine is essential for the synthesis of deoxyribonucleic acid and ribonucleic acid. The antifolic compounds may also interfere with the synthesis of thymine⁸ which is used in the synthesis of nucleic acid. It is probable that folic acid antagonists are effective because they disrupt the metabolic pathways that lead to the formation of nucleic acid.⁶ These drugs exert their greatest effect on cells which are dividing rapidly and have the greatest demand for nucleic acid. Ordinarily the cells of the bone marrow, lymph follicles, and gastrointestinal tract are the first that are affected. Leukemic cells which have an extremely high proliferative rate are affected to a greater extent than normal cells. It is only the difference in the rate of proliferation that makes leukemic cells more sensitive to these drugs than normal cells. Since normal cells are also affected there is a definite limit to the amount of the drug that can be administered.

A number of investigators have reported their results with the antifolic compounds.^{10, 19, 20, 24} Of a group of 425 children with acute leukemia, 68 per cent received some benefit and 30 to 50 per cent obtained good clinical and hematologic results. Since these preparations are beneficial in only about 14 per cent of the adults,¹⁶ their chief use is in the treatment of leukemia in children. A methopterin is usually preferred to aminopterin because there is a wider range of safety between the effective therapeutic dose and the dose that produces severe toxic effects.¹⁸ Both compounds are administered by the oral route.

Purine and Pyrimidine Analogs

Because investigations of nucleic acid synthesis revealed a close relationship between folic acid, purine, and thymine metabolism, efforts have been made to find analogs of purine and pyrimidine compounds which would block nucleic acid synthesis, particularly in malignant cells.^{6, 35} For years it was thought that dietary purines and pyrimidines could not enter into the formation of nucleic acids.¹ After the demonstration of the incorporation of adenine into nucleic acid in 1948, this concept was modified.⁷ This observa-

tion stimulated the search for purine analogs which might effectively interfere with cellular metabolism. Each of the naturally occurring purine and pyrimidine bases has been investigated systematically and new compounds have been produced by altering the basic chemical composition of the naturally occurring compounds.³ These compounds have been tested in microbiologic systems and those that showed promise have been tested against tumors or leukemia in rodents. These purine antagonists are believed to interfere with nucleic acid metabolism perhaps by becoming incorporated into nucleic acid and rendering it biologically ineffective.⁶ It has been suggested that a hypoxanthine containing compound that is an intermediate in the conversion of adenine to guanine may be the site of action.¹⁷

The first clinical trials with 6-mercaptopurine were encouraging. In 1953 it was reported that 15 of 45 children with acute leukemia underwent a good clinical and hematologic remission and another 10 had a partial remission. Resistance to therapy appeared to develop more rapidly than with the antifolic compounds but it was observed that patients who had become resistant to the antifolic acid compounds were still sensitive to treatment with 6-mercaptopurine.^{3, 9} A review of the results obtained with 6-mercaptopurine indicates that remission will occur in approximately one-third of the children with acute leukemia and in about one seventh of the adults. Remission may occasionally be obtained in children who have become resistant to steroid and antifolic acid compounds,³ but a response to 6-mercaptopurine therapy is not usual in children who fail to respond initially to steroids or antifolic acid therapy.^{11, 18} After relapse occurs the subsequent remissions that are obtained with any of these drugs are less complete and of shorter duration than the initial response.

8 Azaguanine

8-Azaguanine, a compound similar to guanine in chemical structure, has been reported to be effective in acute leukemia.¹⁹ The compound is interesting because it has been shown to inhibit adenosine deaminase *in vitro*.⁴ This observation suggests that compounds may interfere with nucleic acid metabolism by inhibiting essential enzymes. It appears that leukemic cells are much more sensitive to 8-azaguanine than are normal cells. Toxic manifestations such as dermatitis, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea have limited the amount of the drug that can be administered.

ADRENOCORTICAL STEROIDS

The initial report of the use of adrenocortical steroid compounds in the treatment of a child with acute leukemia was encouraging. Administration of the drug was followed by a remission that lasted two months.¹ In one series of cases, hematologic improvement was noted in 44 per cent of the patients with acute leukemia treated with adrenocorticotrophic hormone and 52 per cent of those treated with cortisone. From 60 to 70 per cent of the patients

obtained some improvement from both drugs but adults did not respond as well as children. Following relapse subsequent remissions became more difficult to achieve. Larger series have not revealed such good results. In a series of 425 patients only 30 per cent had a good remission and another 24 per cent obtained a partial remission. The remission rate was higher in patients with acute lymphoblastic or undifferentiated leukemia. Remissions were not observed in myeloblastic or monocytic leukemia and in some patients the disease seemed to be made worse. Others¹⁸ report that occasional remissions that do not differ from those seen in other forms are seen in the myeloblastic and monocytic leukemia. These preparations may be beneficial in the treatment of an associated bleeding tendency or hemolytic anemia even when they produce no striking change in the leukocyte count.

While adrenocortical steroids may occasionally produce a remission in diseases of the lymphoma group they are not as effective as ionizing radiation or the alkylating agents. They are particularly useful in the treatment of the autoimmune hemolytic anemias which may accompany these disorders.

Complications of steroid hormone therapy were more common when only cortisone and adrenocorticotrophic hormone were available. Electrolyte disturbances with excessive potassium loss and sodium retention were a constant problem. Dietary sodium restriction and the administration of oral potassium chloride minimized these dangers but did not remove them. With the advent of the newer adrenal steroid analogs the problem of electrolyte imbalance has ceased to be of clinical importance. However other dangers common to all of the adrenocortical hormones remain. These compounds may so alter the usual body responses to infection or to peritoneal soiling that the occurrence is masked. An increased incidence of peptic ulceration has been observed and in some patients severe gastrointestinal hemorrhage occurs. The development of serious systemic or local fungus infection is not unusual in patients receiving these compounds. Changes in mood are seen commonly and major psychotic reactions may occur. The administration of adrenocortical steroids will curtail endogenous steroid production and for this reason it is advisable to reduce the drugs slowly if therapy is terminated. Weeks or months after cessation of therapy with these preparations the severe stress of a surgical procedure or infection may precipitate an Addisonian crisis despite the adequacy of adrenal function for ordinary day to day activities.

The possible mechanisms by which these compounds might produce an effect on the hematopoietic system have received wide attention.²² Patients with adrenal insufficiency are known to have a lymphocytosis while those with adrenal hyperplasia have a lymphopenia. The administration of adrenocorticotrophic hormone or adrenocortical steroids will depress the lymphocyte count. Stress reactions in the intact animal produce a lymphopenia whereas the adrenalectomized animal responds to the same stimulus with a lymphocytosis.¹⁹ Evidence has been presented which suggests that the adrenal steroids exert a destructive effect on lymphoid tissue²⁴ and a cyto

lytic effect on the individual lymphocyte²⁸ or influence the distribution of the lymphocytes in the body²³ It is possible that all of these effects contribute to the lymphopenic state that is produced by these compounds The effect of the adrenal gland on myeloid activity is less clear While there have been reports that increased myeloid activity occurs as the result of the administration of adrenocortical steroids to humans⁴⁸ a decrease in myeloid activity during prolonged administration of these compounds to laboratory animals has also been observed²⁻³³ The mechanism through which the adrenocortical hormones favorably influence the bleeding tendency and hemolytic anemia which may occur in patients with leukemia and malignant lymphoma is likewise unknown

During the administration of these compounds a distinct elevation in the mood of the patient often occurs Appetite improves and a sense of well being is noted Fever tachycardia and toxicity⁷ diminish These improvements often allow time for one of the cytotoxic agents to exert an effect

REFERENCES

1. Abrams R Effect of x rays on nucleic acid and protein synthesis Arch Biochem 30 90 1951
2. Alexander H and Stacey K A Comparison of the changes produced by ionizing radiations and by the alkylating agents Evidence for a similar mechanism at the molecular level Ann NY Acad Sc 68 1225 1958
3. Bernard J and Schgmann M A study of 61 leukemias treated with 6 mercaptopurine Ann NY Acad Sc 60 385 1954
4. Bethell F H The relative frequency of the several types of chronic leukemia and their management J Chron Dis 6 403 1957
5. Bross I D J Statistical analysis of clinical results from 6 mercaptopurine Ann NY Acad Sc 60 369 1954
6. Brown G H The biosynthesis of nucleic acids as a basis for an approach to chemotherapy Ann NY Acad Sc 60 185 1954
7. Brown G H Roll P M Plentl A A and Cavalieri L F The utilization of adenine for nucleic acid synthesis and as a precursor of guanine J Biol Chem 172 469 1948
8. Brown W M C and Abbot J D The incidence of leukemia in ankylosing spondylitis treated with x rays Lancet 1 1243 1955
9. Burchenal J H et al 6 Mercaptopurine in the treatment of leukemia and allied diseases Blood 8 965 1953
10. Burchenal J H Clinical effects of analogs of folic acid purines pyridines and amino acids Fed Proc 13 760 1954
11. Burchenal J H et al Clinical evaluation of 6-mercaptopurine in the treatment of leukemia Am J M Sc 228 371 1954
12. Caspersson T Klein E and Ringertz N R Cytochemical studies on some effects of a radiation on three ascites tumors Cancer Res 18 857 1958
13. Dale W M The effects of ionizing radiations on enzymes in vitro Ciba Symposia on Ionizing Radiation and Cell Metabolism London J A Churchill Ltd 1956
14. Dameshek W Granville N B and Rubio F Jr Therapy of the myeloproliferative disorders with Myleran Ann NY Acad Sc 68 1001 1958
15. Doan C A Wiseman B K and Bouroncle B A Clinical evaluation of CB 1348 in leukemias and lymphomas Ann NY Acad Sc 68 979 1958
16. Dougherty T F Effect of hormones on lymphatic tissue Physiol Rev 32 379 1952
17. Elion G B Singer S and Hitchings G H The purine metabolism of 6 mercaptopurine resistant Lactobacillus casei J Biol Chem 204 35 1953
18. Ellison R R and Burchenal J H Therapy of acute leukemia in adults J Chron Dis 6 421 1957

- 19 Farber S, Diamond L K, Mercer R D, Sylvester H F and Wolff J A. Temporary remissions in acute leukemia in children produced by folic acid antagonist 4 aminopteroyl glutamic acid (Aminopterin). *New England J Med* 238 787 1948
- 20 Farber S. Ed. *Proceedings of the Second Conference on Folic Acid Antagonists in the Treatment of Leukemia*. Blood (suppl.) 7 97 1952
- 21 Farber S et al. In Mote J R. Ed. *Proceedings of the First Clinical ACTH Conference*. The Blakiston Co. Philadelphia 1950 p 328
- 22 Farber S. Summary of experience with 6 mercaptopurine. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60 412 1954
- 23 Farber S. The treatment of acute leukemia. *J Chron Dis* 3 455 1956
- 24 Fergelson P and Davidson J D. The inhibition of adenosine deaminase by 8 azaguanine in vitro. *J Biol Chem* 233 65 1958
- 25 Fessas P, Wintrobe M M, Thompson H B and Cartwright C E. Treatment of acute leukemia with cortisone and corticotropin. *Arch Int Med* 94 384 1954
- 26 Frank J A and Dougherty T F. Cytoplasmic budding of human lymphocytes produced by cortisone and hydrocortisone in in vitro preparations. *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 82 17 1953
- 27 Galton D A G, Till M and Wiltshaw E. Busulfan (1,4 dimethanesulfonyl oxybutane Myleran). Summary of clinical results. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 68 987 1958
- 28 Gilman A and Phelps J S. The biological actions and therapeutic applications of B chloroethyl amines and sulfides. *Science* 103 109 1946
- 29 Gjessing E C and Chanutin A. The effect of nitrogen mustards on the viscosity of thymonucleate. *Cancer Res* 6 393 1946
- 30 Goodman L S and Gilman A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 2nd Ed. The Macmillan Co. New York, 1955 p 1416
- 31 Goodman L S et al. Nitrogen mustard therapy. *JAMA* 132 146 1946
- 32 Gordon A S, Pihero S J and Landau D. The relation of the adrenal to blood formation in the rat. *Endocrinology* 49 497 1951
- 33 Gordon A S. Some aspects of hormonal influences upon the leukocytes. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 59 907 1955
- 34 Haut A, Altman S J, Cartwright C E and Wintrobe M M. The influence of chemotherapy on survival in acute leukemia. *Blood* 10 875 1955
- 35 Hitchings G H and Elion G B. The chemistry and biochemistry of purine analogs. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60 195 1954
- 36 Howard A. Influence of radiation on DNA Metabolism. *Ciba Symposium on Ionizing Radiations and Cell Metabolism*. London J A Churchill Ltd 1956
- 37 Israels L G, Galton D A G, Till M and Wiltshaw E. Clinical evaluation of CB 1348 in malignant lymphoma and related diseases. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 68 915 1958
- 38 Jacobson L O et al. Nitrogen mustard therapy. *JAMA* 132 463 1946
- 39 Karnofsky H A. Chemotherapy of neoplastic disease. *New England J Med* 259 248 1958
- 40 Karnofsky D A. Summary of results obtained with nitrogen mustard in treatment of neoplastic disease. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 68 899 1958
- 41 Kander J E. Histologic changes occurring in the hemopoietic organs of all mice rats after single injections of 2 chloroethyl vesicants. *Arch Path* 43 253 1947
- 42 Krebs H A. The effects of extraneous agents on cell metabolism. *Ciba Symposium on Ionizing Radiation and Cell Metabolism*. London J A Churchill Ltd 1956
- 43 Layla L G, Ohler R, Kumatori T and Ellis F. On the mechanism of radiation effect on DNA synthesis. *Radiation Research* 8 1 1958
- 44 Lawrence J H, Dobson H L, Low Beer B V A and Brown H H. Chronic myelogenous leukemia. A study of 129 cases in which treatment was with radioactive phosphorus. *JAMA* 136 67 1948
- 45 Low Beer B V A, Lawrence J H and Stone R H. The therapeutic use of artificially produced radioactive substances. *Radiology* 39 573 1942
- 46 Merner T B and Stenstrom K W. Roentgen therapy in Hodgkin's disease. *Radiology* 48 355 1947
- 47 Meyer O O. Treatment of Hodgkin's disease and the lymphosarcomas. *JAMA* 154 114 1954

lytic effect on the individual lymphocyte⁶ or influence the distribution of the lymphocytes in the body.³³ It is possible that all of these effects contribute to the lymphopenic state that is produced by these compounds. The effect of the adrenal gland on myeloid activity is less clear. While there have been reports that increased myeloid activity occurs as the result of the administration of adrenocortical steroids to humans,⁴⁸ a decrease in myeloid activity during prolonged administration of these compounds to laboratory animals has also been observed.^{3, 33} The mechanism through which the adrenocortical hormones favorably influence the bleeding tendency and hemolytic anemia which may occur in patients with leukemia and malignant lymphoma is likewise unknown.

During the administration of these compounds a distinct elevation in the mood of the patient often occurs. Appetite improves and a sense of well being is noted. Fever, tachycardia and toxicity diminish. These improvements often allow time for one of the cytotoxic agents to exert an effect.

REFERENCES

1. Abrams R. Effect of x rays on nucleic acid and protein synthesis. *Arch Biochem* 30:90 1951.
2. Alexander P. and Stacey K. A. Comparison of the changes produced by ionizing radiations and by the alkylating agents. Evidence for a similar mechanism at the molecular level. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 68:1225 1958.
3. Bernard J. and Sehgmann M. A study of 61 leukemias treated with 6 mercaptopurine. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60:385 1954.
4. Bethell F. H. The relative frequency of the several types of chronic leukemia and their management. *J Chron Dis* 6:403 1957.
5. Bross I. D. J. Statistical analysis of clinical results from 6 mercaptopurine. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60:369 1954.
6. Brown G. B. The biosynthesis of nucleic acids as a basis for an approach to chemotherapy. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60:185 1954.
7. Brown G. B., Roll P. M., Plentl A. A. and Cavaliere L. F. The utilization of adenine for nucleic acid synthesis and as a precursor of guanine. *J Biol Chem* 172:469 1948.
8. Brown W. M. C. and Abbot J. D. The incidence of leukemia in ankylosing spondylitis treated with x rays. *Lancet* 1:1243 1955.
9. Burchenal J. H. et al. 6 Mercaptopurine in the treatment of leukemia and allied diseases. *Blood* 8:985 1953.
10. Burchenal J. H. Clinical effects of analogs of folic acid, purines, pyridines and amino acids. *Fed Proc* 13:760 1954.
11. Burchenal J. H. et al. Clinical evaluation of 6 mercaptopurine in the treatment of leukemia. *Am J M Sc* 256:371 1954.
12. Caspersson T., Klem E. and Ringertz N. R. Cytochemical studies on some effects of x radiation on three ascites tumors. *Cancer Res* 18:857 1958.
13. Dale W. M. The effects of ionizing radiations on enzymes in vitro. *Ciba Symposia on Ionizing Radiation and Cell Metabolism*. London: J. A. Churchill Ltd. 1958.
14. Dameshek W., Granville N. H. and Rubio F. Jr. Therapy of the myeloproliferative disorders with Myleran. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 68:1001 1958.
15. Doan C. A., Wiseman B. K. and Bouroncle B. A. Clinical evaluation of CB 1348 in leukemias and lymphomas. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 68:979 1958.
16. Dougherty T. F. Effect of hormones on lymphatic tissue. *Physiol Rev* 32:379 1952.
17. Ehon G. B., Singer S. and Hitchings G. H. The purine metabolism of 6 mercaptopurine resistant *Lactobacillus casei*. *J Biol Chem* 204:35 1953.
18. Ellison R. R. and Burchenal J. H. Therapy of acute leukemia in adults. *J Chron Dis* 10:421 1957.

Leukemia

Historical Aspects

In 1845 Bennett⁴ Craigie¹⁶ and Virchow¹⁰¹ independently reported patients with undoubted leukemia. Bennett and Craigie attributed the remarkable numbers of white blood cells to the presence of "purulent matter in the blood." In 1846 Virchow, who introduced the term "leukemia," did not agree that the changes in the blood were the result of the invasion of the blood stream by a suppurative process and considered that the hematologic changes were part of a definite pathologic process that involved certain organs in the body. The conflicting claims regarding the priority of discovery of leukemia were reviewed by Osler⁶⁶ who concluded that Virchow deserves priority because he was the first to realize that the increase in white blood cells was an essential feature of the disease to which he gave the name "leukemia." Two forms of leukemia were recognized by Virchow. In one the small forms of white cells predominated and enlargement of the lymph nodes was common; in the second the large white cells were increased in number and marked splenomegaly occurred. Acute leukemia was first described by Friedrich in 1857¹⁰² and in 1913 the first case of monocytic leukemia was reported by Reschad and Schilling Torgau.

- 48 Palmer J G Cartwright G E and Wintrobe M M The effects of ACTH and cortisone on the blood of experimental animals In Mote J R Ed Proceedings of the Second Clinical ACTH Conference I 1951 The Blakiston Co New York 1951 p 438
- 49 Personal Observations
- 50 Peters M V A study of survivals in Hodgkins disease treated radiologically A J Roentgenol 63 299 1950
- 51 Plentl A A and Schoenheimer R Studies in the metabolism of purines and pyrimidines by means of isotopic nitrogen J Biol Chem 153 203 1944
- 52 Reinhard H H Moore C V Bierbaum O S and Moore S Radioactive phosphorus as a therapeutic agent A review of the literature and analysis of the results of treatment of 155 patients with various blood dyscrasias lymphomas and other malignant neoplastic diseases J Lab & Clin Med 31 107 1946
- 53 Rose W C J In vitro reactions of biological alkylating agents Ann NY Acad Sc 68 669 1958
- 54 Rundles R W Coonrad E V and Willard N L Summary of results obtained with TEM Ann NY Acad Sc 68 926 1958
- 55 Skipper H E A review On the mechanism of action of certain temporary anti cancer agents Cancer Res 13 545 1953
- 56 Skipper H E and Mitchell J H Effect of roentgen ray radiation on the biosynthesis of nucleic acids and nucleic acid purines Cancer 4 363 1951
- 57 Staacy K A Cobb M Cousens S F and Alexander P The reactions of the radiomimetic alkylating agents with macromolecules in vitro Ann NY Acad Sc 68 682 1958
- 58 Stokes J L Substitution of thymine for folic acid" in the nutrition of lactic acid bacteria J Bact 48 201 1944
- 59 Wintrobe M M and Huguley C M Nitrogen mustard therapy for Hodgkins disease lymphosarcoma the leukemias and other disorders Cancer 1 357 1948
- 60 Yoffey J M Metcalf W K Herdan G and Nairn V Effect of ACTH and suprarenal extract on the bone marrow Brit M J 1 660 1951

Although our knowledge of many essentials of the leukemic process remains inadequate a considerable body of information has accumulated relative to the production of leukemia by external agents and the genetic predisposition to leukemia. Much of this evidence has been derived from the study of laboratory animals but important deductions have also been drawn from consideration of the occurrence of the disease in man.

1 Ionizing Radiation

Evidence from a number of sources indicates that ionizing radiation can be a leukemogenic agent in man as well as in mice. The incidence of leukemia in physicians is twice that of the general population and the incidence in radiologists is from eight to nine times that in physicians in general.²⁰ An increased incidence of leukemia in survivors of atomic bombings in a frequency directly related to the severity of the exposure to radiation appears to be well established.²¹⁻²³ The therapeutic use of x ray for spondylitis in adults²⁴ and for thymic enlargement in children²⁵ has been reported to be responsible for leukemia. It is suspected that the incidence of leukemia particularly acute leukemia is higher in patients with polycythemia vera who have been treated with x ray or radioactive phosphorus than in those treated by other means.²⁴ Even the use of diagnostic x ray during pregnancy has been suspected as a factor in the development of leukemia in childhood.²¹⁻²³

2 Drugs

The evidence that exposure to benzol (benzene) may produce leukemia is circumstantial but a number of suspicious instances have been reported.²⁶ The individual response to this chemical appears to vary and both the concentration and length of exposure are probably important.

3 Infections

Severe infections of various types usher in some 50 per cent of the cases of acute leukemia in childhood.⁴ Some authors have suspected infection may cause leukemia but most workers have concluded that such infections occur as a consequence of the pre-existent leukemia.²⁷ While the chance that bacterial infection may be of etiologic significance seems remote the possibility that a virus may cause leukemia has received much support.

Studies of the role of viruses in leukemia have been carried out largely in mice and fowl and the relationship of the leukemia that occurs in these species to that of man is still uncertain.²⁸ Gross²⁹ has shown that leukemia may be transmitted to mice by the injection of a suspension of cells or cell free extracts. He has suggested that a causative virus might be transmitted from parent to offspring and remain dormant for some time. Cell free extracts of liver spleen or lymphatic tumors of AKR mice have produced leukemia

AKR trans-mice having a high incidence of spontaneous leukemia

The Incidence of Leukemia

It is reported that in the last 50 years there has been a threefold to sixfold increase in leukemia the greatest increase that has occurred in any disease except coronary thrombosis and carcinoma.⁴⁷ In England and Wales the incidence of leukemia has increased from 1.7/100 000 in 1900 to 5/100 000 in 1955⁴⁸ while in the United States comparable studies indicate an increase from 1/100 000 in 1900 to 11.3/100 000 in 1952. Despite such figures as these and the distinct impression of many workers interested in the subject that leukemia is increasing in frequency Dameshek and Gunz conclude that as yet an actual as opposed to an apparent rise has not been proved.⁴⁹ Others believe that such factors as improved diagnosis more frequent hospitalization improved treatment and the increased number of older persons in the general population do not explain the apparent increase.¹⁻⁴ In the period 1943-1952 the incidence of leukemia in males was 7.3/100 000 while that for females was 5.77/100 000.³⁸⁻⁴⁰ The disease is more common in Jews than in non Jews and is less common in Negroes than in Caucasians.¹ The incidence in Caucasians and Negroes is about the same if the Jewish population is excluded.

Approximately 60 per cent of patients with leukemia have the chronic form of the disease which occurs more commonly after middle age. Chronic myelocytic leukemia is slightly more common than chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Acute leukemia occurs most commonly in children and young adults but an increasing incidence in older persons has been reported.¹⁻⁴

ETIOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

In 1894 Osler wrote of leukemia "Notwithstanding most careful clinical study and thorough histological and bacteriological investigation the secret of the causative factor of this disease is as profound as it was half a century ago."⁶⁶ Unfortunately the "secret of the causative factor" of leukemia is still a mystery.

Although the cause of leukemia is unknown there is considerable evidence to support the view that leukemia is a neoplasm.^{9-31,4} The essential alteration is thought to reside in the leukemic cell and be responsible for the failure of the cell to respond to the forces which ordinarily control its reproduction and maturation. The autonomous uncontrolled behavior of these cells appears to be responsible for the clinical manifestations and course of the disease. Whether a single factor or multiple factors are responsible for the essential alteration of the cell is unknown. Because of ignorance on this point the question arises whether or not all of the clinically recognized forms of acute and chronic leukemia are the same disease. Different types of leukemia differ considerably in age distribution clinical manifestations survival time and response to various types of therapy. However these differences could be explained by a varied host response as well as by multiple causative factors.

The production of leukemia by the injection of cell free chromatin particles and microsomal fragments into mice has been reported.²⁷ It has been suggested that the chromatin particles enter normal cells and alter their function in some undefined manner. The significance of the reported transfer of the neoplastic character of a cell in this manner cannot be determined until further studies that utilize genetic markers are carried out.²⁸

The increased cell counts seen in leukemia have been interpreted as a failure of normal elimination of the leukocytes rather than an overproduction of these cells.⁹ It has been shown that the lungs, liver and gastrointestinal tract duly remove large numbers of cells from the circulation. Cross circulation experiments have demonstrated that the rate of removal of cells from the circulation is decreased in patients with leukemia as compared to the normal.⁹ The relationship of this defect to the pathogenesis of leukemia is not established.

In the concept that leukemia is a deficiency disease the immaturity of the white blood cells is considered to be the result of a maturation arrest similar to that seen in the red cell precursors in pernicious anemia. Thus far all attempts to establish leukemia as a deficiency disease have failed.⁹ While a number of metabolic differences between normal and leukemic cells have been demonstrated none has yet been established to be a cause rather than an effect of leukemia.

There is yet insufficient evidence to support more than speculation as to the nature and cause of human leukemia. However the evidence that a virus may play a causative role cannot be ignored. It seems reasonable that a virus like agent might significantly alter the metabolic activities and behavior of a host cell. Genetically determined host resistance must be of great importance and might well be influenced by ionizing radiation and chemical agents which would account for the demonstrated role of these factors in leukemia.

ACUTE LEUKEMIA

All types of acute leukemia myeloblastic lymphoblastic and monoblastic are much more severe diseases than any of the chronic leukemias. The illness may begin as acute leukemia or the acute form may develop as the terminal event in a patient who has had the chronic form of the disease for months or years. The presence of acute leukemia is characterized by the occurrence of appreciable numbers of young cells particularly the blast forms in the circulating blood and bone marrow. The different types of acute leukemia cannot be distinguished from one another with certainty on clinical grounds alone and because of the extreme immaturity of the cells it may be difficult to identify the cell type even after careful hematologic study. The lymphoblastic type is more common in children the myeloblastic is fairly evenly divided among the different age groups and the monocytic type occurs most often in middle age.^{14, 15, 16, 17, 18} All types of acute leukemia are more common in males.

and epitheliomas when injected into newborn mice of the C₃H† strain less than 16 hours old.³⁹ This observation suggests a relationship between leukemia and other malignancy in mice—a relationship that is well recognized in man.⁶⁴⁻¹⁰⁰ Other reports have indicated that injections of cell free extracts of brain from mice or human beings with leukemia cause the development of leukemia in a strain of mice not ordinarily susceptible to the disease.⁵⁻¹¹ These and other studies demonstrate that leukemia can be produced in both mammals and fowl by the injection of cell free filtrates. Should a virus be shown definitely to be the agent responsible for leukemia the relationship of the virus to continued neoplastic activity of the cell would remain to be clarified.¹⁹

4 Genetic Considerations

In certain highly inbred strains of mice leukemia develops spontaneously in from 60 to 70 per cent of the animals. This suggests that genetic factors are important under conditions of controlled breeding and that man may be protected by his varied ancestry. Some constitutional susceptibility to leukemia in man was suggested by the studies of Videbeck¹⁰⁰ but later studies have not confirmed his conclusions.⁴⁰ Reports of the occurrence of several instances of leukemia in the same family suggest a genetic influence but are not conclusive because some unrecognized factor in the family environment may be responsible for the disease.¹ Observations on the occurrence of leukemia in identical twins do not afford definite evidence of the existence of a hereditary factor in leukemia.¹⁹ In the rare instances of congenital leukemia that have been reported the disease has not been demonstrated in the mother.⁷⁴ There has been a recent report of the occurrence of leukemia in a nine month old child born of a leukemic mother.¹⁷ In all other reported instances of children born of leukemic mothers the offspring have remained free of the disease.⁸

5 Other Factors

It has been suggested that leukemia is the result of an imbalance in the hematopoietic equilibrium. This concept was suggested by the identification of two chemicals—myelokentric acid and lymphokentric acid—in the urine of patients with leukemia or lymphoma.⁶¹ Recently the same materials have been obtained from the sera of patients with these diseases.³⁰ It is reported that myelokentric acid produces hyperplasia of myeloid elements and lymphokentric acid produces hyperplasia of the lymphoid elements when injected into the guinea pig.⁶¹ It has been suggested that an imbalance in the production of these "humoral hormones" causes leukemia but the evidence is not convincing.

† C₃H strain—mice having a low incidence of spontaneous leukemia

The production of leukemia by the injection of cell free chromatin particles and microsomal fragments into mice has been reported.⁴⁷ It has been suggested that the chromatin particles enter normal cells and alter their function in some undefined manner. The significance of the reported transfer of the neoplastic character of a cell in this manner cannot be determined until further studies that utilize genetic markers are carried out.⁴⁸

The increased cell counts seen in leukemia have been interpreted as a failure of normal elimination of the leukocytes rather than an overproduction of these cells.⁴ It has been shown that the lungs, liver and gastrointestinal tract daily remove large numbers of cells from the circulation. Cross circulation experiments have demonstrated that the rate of removal of cells from the circulation is decreased in patients with leukemia as compared to the normal.⁴⁹ The relationship of this defect to the pathogenesis of leukemia is not established.

In the concept that leukemia is a deficiency disease the immaturity of the white blood cells is considered to be the result of a maturation arrest similar to that seen in the red cell precursors in pernicious anemia. Thus far all attempts to establish leukemia as a deficiency disease have failed.⁵ While a number of metabolic differences between normal and leukemic cells have been demonstrated, none has yet been established to be a cause rather than an effect of leukemia.

There is yet insufficient evidence to support more than speculation as to the nature and cause of human leukemia. However, the evidence that a virus may play a causative role cannot be ignored. It seems reasonable that a virus like agent might significantly alter the metabolic activities and behavior of a host cell. Genetically determined host resistance must be of great importance and might well be influenced by ionizing radiation and chemical agents which would account for the demonstrated role of these factors in leukemia.

ACUTE LEUKEMIA

All types of acute leukemia: myeloblastic, lymphoblastic and monoblastic are much more severe diseases than any of the chronic leukemias. The illness may begin as acute leukemia or the acute form may develop as the terminal event in a patient who has had the chronic form of the disease for months or years. The presence of acute leukemia is characterized by the occurrence of appreciable numbers of young cells, particularly the blast forms, in the circulating blood and bone marrow. The different types of acute leukemia cannot be distinguished from one another with certainty on clinical grounds alone, and because of the extreme immaturity of the cells it may be difficult to identify the cell type even after careful hematologic study. The lymphoblastic type is more common in children, the myeloblastic is fairly evenly divided among the different age groups, and the monocytic type occurs most often in middle age.^{44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49} All types of acute leukemia are more common in males.

Clinical Manifestations

The clinical characteristics of acute leukemia vary from case to case and depend mainly on the organ systems involved in the disease. The clinical manifestations in patients who have acute leukemia from the onset differ from those that are seen in patients who undergo a transformation from the chronic to the acute form of the disease.

In most children and young adults the disease is acute from the onset but the initial symptoms may give no hint of the seriousness of the underlying disease. In children especially the onset may be characterized by the development of listlessness, fretfulness, poor appetite, and pallor. In other instances aching in the extremities or pain from a pathologic fracture, particularly of a vertebra, may be the initial manifestation. The onset of the disease often resembles that of an acute respiratory infection with fever, malaise, fatigability, and sore throat, or may mimic some severe infection with high fever, headache, sweats, and severe prostration. Such episodes often occur as a result of infections that develop because of the lowered resistance of these patients, but also occur in the absence of demonstrable infection.^{14, 19, 23} Abnormal bleeding, such as epistaxis, bleeding gums, ecchymoses, or petechiae, occurs some time in the course of the illness in nearly all patients with acute leukemia and may be present from the onset.

The transformation of a chronic leukemia into the acute variety is seen most often in adults with chronic myelocytic leukemia. The change is usually accompanied by increasing weight loss, fever, progressive anemia, and the appearance of a hemorrhagic tendency. A change in type is recognized by a change in the morphology of the peripheral blood and bone marrow that consists of increased numbers of the more immature cells, myeloblasts, or promyelocytes. The hematologic changes may be noted in some patients before the changes in the clinical course are apparent.

Many of the clinical manifestations are the result of the involvement of specific organs by the leukemic process. Hemorrhage or infiltrations in the brain and other parts of the central nervous system occur frequently. The incidence of objective signs of neurologic involvement (other than retinal changes) was reported to be 20 per cent in one series of 334 cases.¹³ Convulsions, sensory disturbances, cranial nerve palsies, and signs of pyramidal tract involvement are not uncommon. Infiltration in other organs, such as the bladder and kidney, may produce pain and hematuria. Severe pain may develop about the joints and in the extremities as a result of involvement of the synovial membranes or as a result of subperiosteal infiltration or hemorrhage. Bleeding from the gastrointestinal tract occurs frequently and may be severe.

Physical examination generally reveals marked pallor of the skin and mucous membranes. Petechial hemorrhages and ecchymoses of different sizes occur commonly in all parts of the skin and mucous membranes. Leukemic infiltration of the skin, which has a characteristic purplish color, occurs occasionally but is less common than in chronic leukemia. Not infrequently the gums appear hypertrophic, swollen, and ulcerated, a finding that occurs

more often in monocytic leukemia than in the other types¹² The gums bleed easily when touched and continued spontaneous oozing develops in many patients Retinal hemorrhages are often present.

A soft spleen edge is usually but not invariably palpable a few centimeters below the left costal margin Splenomegaly occurs less often in adults than in children with acute leukemia⁴ In adults the observation that the spleen edge is very firm and extends as far down as the umbilicus suggests that the patient has had a chronic leukemia before the onset of the acute phase In acute leukemia enlargement of the liver is inconstant and hepatic tenderness is unusual¹³ Mild or moderate (0.5 to 1.5 cm) enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes is usually present but the enlargement may be so slight as to escape detection Tenderness on light pressure over the bones particularly the lower portion of the sternum is commonly demonstrable in acute leukemia

Chloromas tumors that consist of masses of myeloblasts occur most often in children and young adults They usually involve the bones of the face and cranium particularly the orbit¹⁴ The tumors have a characteristic green color that fades rapidly on exposure to air Hyposulfite and hydrogen peroxide restore the green color¹⁵

Laboratory Manifestations

Anemia which may result from blood loss decreased blood production increased hemolysis or a combination of these factors occurs in almost every patient with acute leukemia The anemia is often severe and hemoglobin levels as low as 2 to 3 grams per 100 ml are sometimes seen The erythrocyte count and hematocrit are reduced proportionally and the anemia is generally of the normocytic normochromic variety

The most important abnormality in acute leukemia involves the leukocytes The total leukocyte count varies from subnormal levels of a few hundred to several hundred thousand per cu mm Characteristically very immature cells occur in significant numbers Often in smears prepared with Wright's stain the identity of the young cells can only be surmised by a

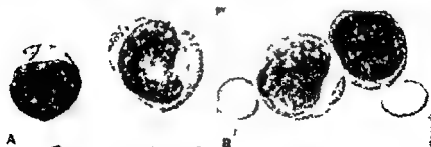


Figure 52 Blast cells with Auer bodies. A, Monoblasts from patient with acute monocytic leukemia. B, Myeloblasts from patient with acute myeloblastic leukemia.

Clinical Manifestations

The clinical characteristics of acute leukemia vary from case to case and depend mainly on the organ systems involved in the disease. The clinical manifestations in patients who have acute leukemia from the onset differ from those that are seen in patients who undergo a transformation from the chronic to the acute form of the disease.

In most children and young adults the disease is acute from the onset but the initial symptoms may give no hint of the seriousness of the underlying disease. In children especially the onset may be characterized by the development of listlessness, fretfulness, poor appetite and pallor. In other instances aching in the extremities or pain from a pathologic fracture particularly of a vertebra may be the initial manifestation. The onset of the disease often resembles that of an acute respiratory infection with fever, malaise, fatigability, and sore throat or may mimic some severe infection with high fever, headache, sweats, and severe prostration. Such episodes often occur as a result of infections that develop because of the lowered resistance of these patients but also occur in the absence of demonstrable infection.^{14, 19, 24} Abnormal bleeding, such as epistaxis, bleeding gums, ecchymoses, or petechiae, occurs some time in the course of the illness in nearly all patients with acute leukemia and may be present from the onset.

The transformation of a chronic leukemia into the acute variety is seen most often in adults with chronic myelocytic leukemia. The change is usually accompanied by increasing weight loss, fever, progressive anemia, and the appearance of a hemorrhagic tendency. A change in type is recognized by a change in the morphology of the peripheral blood and bone marrow that consists of increased numbers of the more immature cells, myeloblasts or promyelocytes. The hematologic changes may be noted in some patients before the changes in the clinical course are apparent.

Many of the clinical manifestations are the result of the involvement of specific organs by the leukemic process. Hemorrhage or infiltrations in the brain and other parts of the central nervous system occur frequently. The incidence of objective signs of neurologic involvement (other than retinal changes) was reported to be 20 per cent in one series of 334 cases.²⁵ Convulsions, sensory disturbances, cranial nerve palsies, and signs of pyramidal tract involvement are not uncommon. Infiltration in other organs such as the bladder and kidney may produce pain and hematuria. Severe pain may develop about the joints and in the extremities as a result of involvement of the synovial membranes or as a result of subperiosteal infiltration or hemorrhage. Bleeding from the gastrointestinal tract occurs frequently and may be severe.

Physical examination generally reveals marked pallor of the skin and mucous membranes. Petechial hemorrhages and ecchymoses of different sizes occur commonly in all parts of the skin and mucous membranes. Leukemic infiltration of the skin, which has a characteristic purplish color, occurs occasionally but is less common than in chronic leukemia. Not infrequently the gums appear hypertrophic, swollen, and ulcerated, a finding that occurs

Clinical Course

Acute leukemia is a uniformly fatal disease that usually runs a short course. Before the widespread use of transfusions and the introduction of antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents the survival time was usually from six days to six weeks. Although there is some difference of opinion as to the effectiveness of the newer methods of therapy in prolonging the survival time of the patient with the disease the course seems to be prolonged in some individuals for a matter of months and sometimes for years.⁴¹⁻⁴³ Practically complete clinical and hematologic remissions may be produced by the methods now used in treatment, but unfortunately the ultimate outcome remains the same and death usually occurs as the result of hemorrhage or infection.

Treatment

The treatment of acute leukemia involves the use of both supportive measures and specific therapy. Included in the former are the use of blood transfusions for the anemia, fresh blood collected in plastic bags for thrombocytopenia and bleeding, antibiotics for associated infection and analgesics for pain. Among the most important supportive measures is the attitude of the physician toward the patient and his family. The human interest stories in the press have made leukemia a tragic story known to nearly all. The physician's support of members of the family, his sympathetic understanding of their anxieties and his willingness to take the time to talk with them contribute greatly to their comfort. It is important that the parents of children with leukemia be urged to treat them during periods of remission as they would a normal child. The children should be allowed to return to school and play and normal discipline should be enforced. In this way the over all emotional impact of the disease on the family may be reduced.

Among the specific measures used in treatment are (1) folic acid antagonists (2) purine antagonists and (3) adrenocortical steroids. Adults do not respond nearly as well to these "specific measures" as children do. Even in children remissions are generally of short duration and it is necessary to change from one preparation to another or to administer several agents concurrently as the disease becomes refractory to the drug that is being used. Although all of the remissions to date have been temporary and relatively short the fact that they have occurred has encouraged the hope that more prolonged and lasting remissions will become possible with newer agents.

Methopterin. The anti folic acid agent of choice is methopterin (Methotrexate) which seems to have a higher therapeutic index than aminopterin. The average daily oral dose of methopterin for a child is 25 to 50 mg. The recommended initial dose for adults is 15 mg per day and if neither toxicity nor improvement occurs in four to five days it is increased gradually. The drug is administered continuously until the desired clinical effect is obtained or until evidence of toxicity

positive identification of the older cells that are seen. The use of the peroxidase stain is often helpful since the finding of peroxidase positive granules in the young cells indicates a myelogenous or monocytic origin of the cell. The presence of Auer bodies also places the young cells in the myelocytic or monocytic series. On occasions only very immature atypical blast cells are found and the type of leukemia cannot be identified with assurance; such cases are often classified as "stem cell" leukemia. When the total leukocyte count is low the examination of smears made from a concentrate of the leukocytic fraction after centrifugation of the peripheral blood is often useful in demonstrating the presence of immature cells. Study of the peripheral blood in this manner often makes it possible to distinguish between leukemia and aplastic anemia and is also helpful in identifying the type of leukemia. Numerous nucleated red cells are seen commonly in the peripheral blood in all types of acute leukemia.

Thrombocytopenia occurs sooner or later in nearly all types of acute leukemia. Usually the platelets are markedly reduced or absent when the patient is first seen.

Examination of the bone marrow generally reveals infiltration by the immature leukemic cells that are responsible for the disease. In all types of leukemia there is marked involvement of the bone marrow which may be filled with the abnormal cells at a time when there is but little or equivocal evidence of the disease in the peripheral blood.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of acute leukemia is generally made without difficulty when there is a marked increase in the immature leukocytes in the peripheral blood and bone marrow associated with anemia and thrombocytopenia. On occasion acute leukemia must be distinguished from infectious mononucleosis. The absence of anemia and thrombocytopenia, the absence of true blast cells in the peripheral blood, the varied morphologic appearance of the cells in the peripheral blood, the failure to find evidence of significant marrow involvement and the positive reaction with the heterophil agglutination test usually serve to distinguish infectious mononucleosis without much difficulty (see Fig. 51). Aplastic anemia offers more difficulty because anemia, leukopenia and thrombocytopenia, fever and abnormal bleeding may occur in both diseases. The presence of lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, the appearance of the bone marrow and the study of the smear of the peripheral blood made from a concentrate of the leukocytes nearly always enable one to make the correct diagnosis, but occasionally a period of observation is necessary before this can be done. Leukemoid reactions in infections usually cause no difficulty because the proportion of very immature cells in leukemia is generally out of all proportion to that seen in severe infections where there is a more orderly increase in the intermediate and immature forms.

Clinical Course

Acute leukemia is a uniformly fatal disease that usually runs a short course. Before the widespread use of transfusions and the introduction of antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents the survival time was usually from six days to six weeks. Although there is some difference of opinion as to the effectiveness of the newer methods of therapy in prolonging the survival time of the patient with the disease the course seems to be prolonged in some individuals for a matter of months and sometimes for years.^{44 45} Practically complete clinical and hematologic remissions may be produced by the methods now used in treatment but unfortunately the ultimate outcome remains the same and death usually occurs as the result of hemorrhage or infection.

Treatment

The treatment of acute leukemia involves the use of both supportive measures and specific therapy. Included in the former are the use of blood transfusions for the anemia, fresh blood collected in plastic bags for thrombocytopenia and bleeding, antibiotics for associated infection and analgesics for pain. Among the most important supportive measures is the attitude of the physician toward the patient and his family. The human interest stories in the press have made leukemia a tragic story known to nearly all. The physician's support of members of the family, his sympathetic understanding of their anxieties and his willingness to take the time to talk with them contribute greatly to their comfort. It is important that the parents of children with leukemia be urged to treat them during periods of remission as they would a normal child. The children should be allowed to return to school and play and normal discipline should be enforced. In this way the overall emotional impact of the disease on the family may be reduced.

Among the specific measures used in treatment are (1) folic acid antagonists (2) purine antagonists and (3) adrenocortical steroids. Adults do not respond nearly as well to these specific measures as children do. Even in children remissions are generally of short duration and it is necessary to change from one preparation to another or to administer several agents concurrently as the disease becomes refractory to the drug that is being used. Although all of the remissions to date have been temporary and relatively short the fact that they have occurred has encouraged the hope that more prolonged and lasting remissions will become possible with newer agents.

A Methopterin. The anti folic acid agent of choice is a methopterin (Methotrexate) which seems to have a higher therapeutic index than aminopterin. The average daily oral dose of a methopterin for a five year old child is 2.5 to 5 mg. The recommended initial dose for adults is 5 mg per day and if neither toxicity nor improvement occurs in four to five weeks it is increased gradually. The drug is administered continuously until the desired clinical effect is obtained or until evidence of toxicity forces dis-

continuance of the medication. If a remission is produced it is recommended that a maintenance dose be given until the patient becomes refractory or some complication develops.² If signs of toxicity force discontinuance of the drug it is restarted at a lower dose when the signs have cleared. It has been emphasized that a patient may have several episodes of toxicity before a remission occurs.

The toxic effects of these drugs include ulceration of the mouth, anorexia, ulceration and hemorrhage of the gastrointestinal tract, nausea, vomiting, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and pancytopenia. There may be loss of hair and rarely disturbance of liver function. The toxic effects seem to be more prominent in adults than in children.

¶ **Mercaptopurine** The most commonly used purine antagonist is 6-mercaptopurine. The recommended oral dose is 2.5 mg per kilo per day and is calculated to the nearest 25 mg. It is administered as a single dose at any time of the day. The average five year old child receives 50 mg per day while the average adult receives 100 to 200 mg per day. The time required for an initial effect of the drug is often between two and four weeks but at times a rapid fall in the number of leukocytes in the peripheral blood occurs within a few days and the leukocyte count should be followed carefully. If response has not occurred after the drug has been used for four weeks the dose should be increased to 3 to 5 mg per kilo per day.² If a remission is obtained a maintenance dose is continued.

6-Mercaptopurine is usually well tolerated and serious toxic reactions are unusual. The most important of these is depression of the bone marrow. However, the development of leukopenia does not always indicate that bone marrow depression has occurred since the leukopenia may be simply an early response to the drug. When bone marrow depression occurs it usually responds promptly to withdrawal of the drug.⁶ Megaloblasts are seen in marrow during therapy with anti-folate acid compounds but are not seen in the marrows of patients treated with 6-mercaptopurine. Anorexia, mild nausea, and occasional vomiting sometimes develop during the use of 6-mercaptopurine but oral lesions and severe gastrointestinal upsets are not produced.

Adrenocortical Steroids Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) or adrenocortical hormones have been more effective in the treatment of acute leukemia in childhood than in adults but remissions have been obtained in both. They are particularly useful when on admission the patient, adult or child, is extremely ill or has a bleeding tendency.

If there is great urgency 25 to 50 mg of ACTH may be given over a 24 hour period by continuous intravenous drip. Hydrocortisone may also be given intravenously in doses of 100 to 200 mg daily.

Among the oral preparations available prednisone has proved useful and is unlikely to produce electrolyte disturbances. The initial oral dose of prednisone is 60 to 80 mg per day. The drug should be given in divided doses at eight hour intervals. The dosage is reduced as improvement occurs and 15 to 20 mg per day is often sufficient for maintenance therapy.

Illustrative Case

This 44 year old surgeon reported that he was in his usual health until about two weeks prior to his visit when he first noted malaise and easy fatigue. Two or three days before his examination he noticed petechial lesions on the hands while he was scrubbing for an operation and this led him to seek medical advice.

Physical examination revealed no significant abnormality. The patient did not appear pale, had no significant lymphadenopathy, retinal hemorrhage or hepatomegaly. Roentgenogram of the chest was normal.

Laboratory Examinations Hematocrit was 36 per cent, erythrocyte count 3.7 mil. per cu mm, hemoglobin 12.1 gm. per 100 ml, leukocyte count 67,500 per cu mm. Study of the peripheral blood revealed that all of the leukocytes were blast cells, most of them gave a positive peroxidase reaction. Some cells were binucleated and others contained unusually large nucleoli. Examination of aspirated bone marrow revealed that the marrow was packed with early progranulocytes and myeloblasts. The platelets were markedly reduced, bleeding time was 8 minutes (normal 1 to 3 minutes) and the prothrombin time was 34 seconds (control of 15 seconds).

Course The patient was made acquainted with his diagnosis of acute myeloblastic leukemia. He decided to postpone any treatment until he had put his affairs in order and returned home the same day. On the following day he drew up his will, put his financial affairs in order and arranged for the care of his patients. Twenty-four hours afterward he became partially blind because of extensive bilateral retinal hemorrhages. He refused hospitalization and within a few hours massive gastrointestinal and intracranial bleeding occurred. On the following day, four days after the diagnosis was made and about three weeks after the onset of his first symptoms, the patient died.

Comment. The case illustrates the short fulminating course which acute leukemia sometimes takes with or without therapy. The hematologic abnormalities—anemia, thrombocytopenia and marked increase in leukocytes that consist nearly entirely of blast cells—are typical. Death in such patients is usually due to hemorrhage or septicemia.

CHRONIC LYMPHOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

In 1924 Minot and Isaacs⁴³ presented data on 98 patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. They noted that the disorder occurred most commonly between 45 and 55 years of age, a decade later than the peak incidence of chronic myelogenous leukemia. The disease occurred in males more than three times as often as in women. In 1953 Shulkin, Lucia, Appermann and Mettier⁴⁴ reviewed a series of 137 patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia and found that the peak incidence was 60 years. Males predominated in a ratio of 2.5 : 1. Scott⁴⁵ in 1957 reviewed a series of 227 patients and found the greatest number of cases occurring between the ages of 60 and 70 years. He noted that there seemed to be a growing number of women

continuation of the medication. If a remission is produced it is recommended that a maintenance dose be given until the patient becomes refractory or some complication develops. If signs of toxicity force discontinuance of the drug it is restarted at a lower dose when the signs have cleared. It has been emphasized that a patient may have several episodes of toxicity before a remission occurs.

The toxic effects of these drugs include ulceration of the mouth, anorexia, ulceration and hemorrhage of the gastrointestinal tract, nausea, vomiting, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia and pancytopenia. There may be loss of hair and rarely disturbance of liver function. The toxic effects seem to be more prominent in adults than in children.

6-Mercaptopurine. The most commonly used purine antagonist is 6-mercaptopurine. The recommended oral dose is 2.5 mg per kilo per day and is calculated to the nearest 25 mg. It is administered as a single dose at any time of the day. The average five year old child receives 50 mg per day while the average adult receives 100 to 200 mg per day. The time required for an initial effect of the drug is often between two and four weeks but at times a rapid fall in the number of leukocytes in the peripheral blood occurs within a few days and the leukocyte count should be followed carefully. If response has not occurred after the drug has been used for four weeks the dose should be increased to 3 to 5 mg per kilo per day. If a remission is obtained a maintenance dose is continued.

6-Mercaptopurine is usually well tolerated and serious toxic reactions are unusual. The most important of these is depression of the bone marrow. However the development of leukopenia does not always indicate that bone marrow depression has occurred since the leukopenia may be simply an early response to the drug. When bone marrow depression occurs it usually responds promptly to withdrawal of the drug. Megaloblasts are seen in marrow during therapy with anti-folic acid compounds but are not seen in the marrows of patients treated with 6-mercaptopurine. Anorexia, mild nausea and occasional vomiting sometimes develop during the use of 6-mercaptopurine but oral lesions and severe gastrointestinal upsets are not produced.

Adrenocortical Steroids. Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) or adrenocortical hormones have been more effective in the treatment of acute leukemia in childhood than in adults but remissions have been obtained in both. They are particularly useful when on admission the patient, adult or child, is extremely ill or has a bleeding tendency.

If there is great urgency 25 to 50 mg of ACTH may be given over a 24-hour period by continuous intravenous drip. Hydrocortisone may also be given intravenously in doses of 100 to 200 mg daily.

Among the oral preparations available prednisone has proved useful and is unlikely to produce electrolyte disturbances. The initial oral dose of prednisone is 60 to 80 mg per day. The drug should be given in divided doses at eight hour intervals. The dosage is reduced as improvement occurs and 15 to 20 mg per day is often sufficient for maintenance therapy.

leukemia either at the onset or later in the course of the disease.³³ Non specific lesions such as pruritus, areas of hyperpigmentation, macular and papular eruptions, exfoliative dermatitis, and herpes zoster occur without actual leukemic infiltration of the skin.³³ Specific lesions, the result of actual infiltration of the skin by leukemic cells, are usually discrete and bright red or purple in color. These lesions, which vary greatly in number, usually measure a few millimeters in diameter. Generalized leukemic involvement of the skin—leukemia cutis universalis—generally produces intense itching.

Rarer manifestations of chronic lymphocytic leukemia are massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage,⁶⁸ visual disturbances, and complaints referable to the skeletal system. Skeletal lesions, such as rarefaction of the bones, pathologic fracture, and collapse of vertebrae with cord compression, occur in 5 per cent of the patients with this disease.⁵⁸

On physical examination the most constant abnormality is enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes. In practically every patient some enlargement of at least a few of the superficial lymph nodes occurs. In most patients the individual nodes are moderately enlarged and measure from 2 to 3 cm in diameter. The nodes are moderately firm, freely movable, and non tender. Clusters of nodes may measure 10 cm or more in diameter. Splenomegaly occurs in nearly all patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Usually the spleen is moderately firm and extends several centimeters below the left costal margin, but occasionally it fills the entire left side of the abdomen. Hepatomegaly is also an almost constant finding. Retinal hemorrhages may

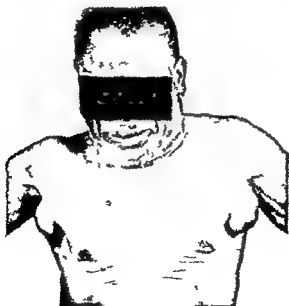


Figure 54 Greatly enlarged axillary and cervical lymph nodes in a patient with chronic lymphocytic leukemia

with chronic lymphatic leukemia. In 1929²⁹ a small series revealed a male female ratio of 4 : 1 in the two series quoted the ratios are 11 : 1 and 25 : 1 in Scott's more recent series the ratio was more nearly 2 : 1.

Clinical Manifestations

Chronic lymphocytic leukemia may make its appearance in a variety of ways. The onset is sometimes so insidious that the diagnosis is made before symptoms appear when an individual undergoes a routine examination or consults his physician for some unrelated complaint. In such circumstances the usual manifestations are previously unrecognized enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes and a moderate increase in the leukocyte count accompanied by an absolute increase in the small lymphocytes. Probably the most common complaint that leads the patient to seek medical advice is the accidental discovery of enlarged superficial nodes. Any group of nodes may be involved but enlargement of the cervical nodes is most often noted. At times the initial complaint is that of involvement of the lacrimal and salivary glands—Mikulicz's syndrome.⁴ Enlargement of the intra abdominal lymph nodes produces gastrointestinal or abdominal complaints while involvement of the mediastinal nodes may result in cough, hoarseness or dyspnea.

Abnormalities in the peripheral blood are responsible for the initial symptoms in some patients. If anemia is severe, easy fatigue, exertional dyspnea and weakness occur. Thrombocytopenia may cause bleeding gums, easy bruising, petechiae or gastrointestinal bleeding.

A variety of skin lesions have been observed in chronic lymphocytic

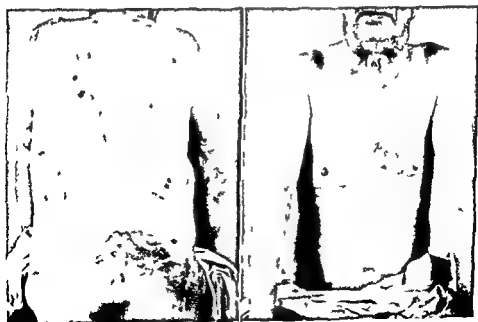


Figure 53 Leukemia cutis and herpes zoster in a patient with chronic lymphocytic leukemia.

Infectious mononucleosis is rare in persons over 40 years of age and lymphocytic leukemia is seen most frequently in older people. Abnormal appearing lymphocytes of various sizes particularly large cells are characteristic of infectious mononucleosis whereas in chronic lymphocytic leukemia the blood smear contains mainly small lymphocytes or smudge forms. The heterophil agglutination test which is almost invariably negative in leukemia is most helpful in younger patients. At times the differential diagnosis between lymphosarcoma and the early stage of chronic lymphocytic leukemia is difficult. If lymphocytosis in the peripheral blood is inconstant and involvement of the bone marrow is not striking lymphosarcoma should be suspected. The diseases cannot always be distinguished even after biopsy of a lymph node.

Clinical Course

The average survival time of the patient with lymphocytic leukemia is about 15 years⁵⁵ but some patients have survived almost 30 years⁵⁶ and died from other disorders. The three year survival rate is about 50 per cent and the five year survival is about 25 per cent.

Many patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia lead practically normal lives over a course of many years. Generally however the disease progresses the lymph nodes liver and spleen increase in size and other manifestations of the disease such as weakness loss of weight anemia, and bleeding appear. The appearance of anemia and thrombocytopenia is also associated with a relatively poor prognosis. Failure of the nodes to regress with therapy the appearance of skin lesions and the occurrence of serious bleeding are also signs of more rapid progression of the disease. Death is usually due to cachexia infection or hemorrhage.

The occurrence of auto-immune hemolytic anemia is a serious development.⁵⁷⁻⁵⁹ When the anemia is severe weakness palpitation fatigue and obvious jaundice may be present. Fortunately the hemolytic anemia usually responds to adrenocortical steroid therapy. Whether or not this type of anemia occurs more frequently in patients treated with radiation therapy is uncertain.

Patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia appear to be more susceptible to bacterial infections particularly pulmonary infection than patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia are.⁶⁰⁻⁶² The susceptibility to infection in lymphocytic leukemia is thought to be related to the poor response to antigenic stimuli that is manifested by patients with this disease.⁶³⁻⁶⁶

Therapy

Most reports indicate that treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia has not produced any increase in the life span of the patient.⁶⁷⁻⁶⁹ Osgood however reports that therapy with radioactive phosphorus has resulted in a longer life span than that expected from the natural history of the disease.⁶⁷ Although there may be some question whether or not any treatment can

occur without other evidence of abnormal bleeding or in association with ecchymoses petechiae and bleeding from the mucous membranes. Leukemic infiltration of the tonsil occurs in a small percentage of the patients and can usually be recognized by its reddish purple color. The leukemic infiltrations of the skin are usually recognized by the reddish purple color and discrete nature of the lesions. If severe pruritus and excoriation are present the underlying nature of the skin lesions may not be apparent.

Laboratory Manifestations

The most characteristic features of chronic lymphocytic leukemia are increases in the total leukocyte count and the absolute number of small lymphocytes. Severe leukopenia rarely occurs in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. The leukocyte count is nearly always above 15 000 per cu mm. and often reaches levels of from 200 000 to 400 000 per cu mm. The majority of the cells in the peripheral blood are small lymphocytes. These constitute 65 to 75 per cent of the cells in the early stage of the disease and usually amount to 95 to 98 per cent of the cells in the more advanced stages. A small number of larger lymphocytes occur at times but the presence of blast forms is unusual.

In some patients anemia is absent when the patient is first seen but in nearly every patient it develops some time during the course of the disease. The anemia may be the result of leukemic infiltration of the bone marrow, hemorrhage or hyperhemolysis. Unless there has been chronic blood loss the anemia is usually normocytic and normochromic in type. Severe anemia with the hemoglobin as low as 3 or 5 gm per 100 ml is sometimes seen but more often the hemoglobin is above 7.5 gm per 100 ml. If a hemolytic type of anemia is present it is usually associated with reticulocytosis, polychromatophilia, mild macrocytosis and the presence of nucleated red cells in the peripheral blood. The hemolytic anemia in chronic lymphocytic leukemia is most often of the autoimmune type and the Coombs test is usually positive. Circulating hemagglutinins are demonstrable in some patients.⁷⁷

Other abnormalities occur less commonly than the changes in the leukocytes and red cells. Among these is an elevation of the basal metabolic rate to plus 20 to 40 per cent which occurs frequently when the leukemic process is active. A minority of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia show disturbances in the plasma protein that resemble those seen in patients with myeloma. Although the platelet count is usually normal in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia, not infrequently thrombocytopenia develops late in the disease.⁸⁹

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of chronic lymphocytic leukemia is made without difficulty in most patients because generalized lymphadenopathy, leukocytosis and lymphocytosis are usually present. At times it may be difficult to distinguish between lymphocytosis due to leukemia and that due to some other cause.

body weight per day in a single daily dose. This dose is continued from three to six weeks or until a satisfactory response occurs. Treatment may then be discontinued until relapse occurs or maintenance therapy may be instituted. In the latter program the dose varies from 2 to 6 mg. per day to 3 mg. per week. The relative merits of these programs has not been established. Chlorambucil is not effective in all patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia but in our clinic it has appeared to be superior to TEM or nitrogen mustard.

Adrenocortical Steroids In one report adrenocortical steroid therapy with cortisone, ACTH, prednisone or prednisolone brought about a satisfactory remission in 50 per cent of the patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. However many of these patients do not respond significantly to these drugs and their greatest use is in the treatment of the complicating hemolytic anemia or thrombocytopenia. Prednisone is started in a dose of 40 mg. every eight hours for the first three or four days. The dose is then reduced gradually to the lowest dose that controls the hemolytic process or the abnormal bleeding. The maintenance dose varies widely. In one patient with chronic lymphocytic leukemia and hemolytic anemia under our observation for a long period a single dose of 25 mg. of prednisone every 24 hours eliminated the necessity of transfusions while complete omission of this preparation was followed by rapid increase in the anemia.

As in other forms of leukemia, the attitude of the physician is of great importance in the management of the patient. Other supportive measures include whole blood transfusions to replace blood loss from hemorrhage or infusions of packed red blood cells to correct anemia. Antibiotics should be employed as indicated in the treatment of infection. Splenectomy is rarely necessary to control hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia since these complications are usually effectively treated with the adrenocortical steroids.

Illustrative Case

This 56 year old male real estate broker was in good health until January 1948 when he consulted his physician because of the sudden onset of left upper quadrant pain which was made worse by inspiration or bending.

Physical examination revealed the patient to be well developed and nourished. Lymph nodes that measured 1 or 2 cm. in size were present in the left supraclavicular region in both posterior cervical regions and in both inguinal areas. A firm tender spleen edge extended 6 cm. below the left costal margin. The liver was not palpable and the remainder of the physical examination was non-contributory.

Laboratory Examination Leukocyte count was 140,000 per cu mm. practically all the cells were small lymphocytes. hemoglobin 13 gm. per 100 ml. erythrocyte count 3.8 mil per cu mm.

Treatment and Course. After the acute symptoms of splenic infarction subsided, the patient was treated by conventional roentgen ray therapy with 400 r to the splenic area. He improved promptly and two months later the

prolong the course of this disease in all patients it certainly appears to have that effect in some. For most patients treatment shortens the periods of incapacity and prolongs the "effective" life span.

In patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia who are asymptomatic and who have only mild enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes accompanied by a mild leukocytosis and lymphocytosis it seems advisable to defer specific treatment until progression of the disease occurs. Patients in this category may survive from 10 to 20 years and lead an entirely normal existence without therapy. More often the disease progresses and some form of therapy becomes necessary.

Radiation Therapy. Roentgen ray therapy has been used in chronic lymphocytic leukemia for many years. Therapy is most often directed to limited areas such as the spleen or lymph nodes because serious damage to the bone marrow may follow repeated spray irradiation. In chronic lymphocytic leukemia the sensitivity of the nodes to roentgen therapy varies greatly from patient to patient. In some patients the nodes regress promptly but in others they remain refractory despite large doses.

Radioactive phosphorus (P^{32}) which can be administered orally or intravenously is considered by many to be the best form of radiation therapy. From 20 or 25 per cent of the administered oral dose is lost in the feces and a comparable amount of the intravenous dose is excreted in the urine.¹ The recommended dose of radioactive phosphorus is 0.1 millicurie per kilogram of body weight, given in divided doses of 1 millicurie per day.⁶ Excellent results have been reported from therapy of this type administered regularly even when the patient is asymptomatic.

Alkylating Agents. The alkylating agents have a prominent place in the therapy of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. The drugs that are used most widely at the present time are triethylenemelamine (TEM) and *p* (di 2-chloroethylamino) phenylbutyric acid (chlorambucil, CB 1348 Leukeran).

TEM is initially administered in a dose of 2.5 to 5.0 mg. before breakfast and subsequent doses are adjusted to the needs of the patient. In our experience it has been difficult to treat patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia with TEM because some are extremely sensitive to small doses of the drug. Because of the variable response obtained with TEM the initial dose should be small and the patient carefully observed for evidence of bone marrow depression over a period of two to three weeks before a second dose is administered. Bethell recommends an oral dose of 2.5 mg. of TEM with 2 gm. of sodium bicarbonate by mouth two hours before breakfast for one, two or three consecutive days depending upon the extent of the disease as estimated from the leukocyte count, adenopathy, splenomegaly and bone marrow involvement.⁷ Treatment is then withheld for four weeks when another dose of 2.5 mg. is usually administered. Some patients are given additional doses of 2.5 mg. at intervals of four weeks or longer while others are treated in a more symptomatic fashion.

Chlorambucil is administered in doses of 0.1 to 0.2 mg. per kilogram of

dence of the disease. Visual disturbance due to retinal hemorrhages is at times the initial complaint. In some patients the initial symptoms are those due to anemia—dyspnea on exertion, dizziness, palpitation, easy fatigue and weakness.

The most striking abnormality on physical examination is splenomegaly. Enlargement of the spleen is present in nearly all patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia at the time of the initial examination. In one series of patients the lower border of the spleen extended below the umbilicus at the time of the initial visit in 70 per cent.¹ As the disease progresses the splenomegaly responds less to treatment and sometimes steadily increases in size until it eventually fills the entire left half of the abdomen and occasionally the right lower abdomen as well. The sudden appearance of hernia or uterine prolapse has been noted in some patients with such massive splenomegaly.² In most of the patients the splenomegaly is associated with marked enlargement of the liver. The liver is usually firm and non-tender. Mild degrees of enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes may be seen in patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia but the enlargement does not reach the degree seen in patients with lymphocytic leukemia. Frequently no significant lymphadenopathy is present. Retinal lesions such as engorgement of the veins and white-centered areas of hemorrhage are seen in a high percentage of the patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia.^{1, 17, 18} At times leukemic infiltration along the peripheral portion of the distended veins and blurring of the disc margin are present. The skin and mucous membranes are often pale and petechial lesions and ecchymoses are not unusual.¹ Light or moderate pressure on the lower portion of the sternum produces pain in many patients. This tenderness is present during the active phase of the disease and often subsides as the disease responds to treatment.

Röntgenologic examination may reveal osseous lesions in various parts of the skeleton. Subperiosteal new bone formation, osteolytic lesions and transverse bands of diminished density at the ends of the long bones are the commonest abnormalities.^{1, 19, 20} Osteosclerotic lesions are less common. Rarely the patient may develop acute pain in a joint because of involvement of the synovia by hemorrhage or infiltration with leukemic cells.⁴

Laboratory Manifestations

Anemia occurs at some time in practically all patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia but is not invariably present when the patient is first seen. The anemia tends to increase as the disease progresses and improves as the disease regresses in response to treatment. The anemia is usually normocytic and normochromic. The hemoglobin may be as low as 4 or 5 gm per 100 ml but is more often in the range of 7 to 9 gm per 100 ml when the patient is first seen. The reticulocyte count is usually normal or slightly elevated. The anemia may be the result of abnormal bleeding. In addition anemia may occur as the result of diminished erythropoiesis secondary to the encroachment on the erythropoietic tissue of the marrow by the leukemic cells and recent studies have shown that the erythrocytes of some patients

spleen was barely palpable and the leukocyte count was 12 000 per cu mm. Since this course of treatment the patient has felt well and has worked full time for the past 11 years. On several occasions while the patient remained asymptomatic the leukocyte count rose from 20 000 to 130 000 per cu mm and then returned to the lower level without treatment. In June 1956 the spleen again increased in size until it extended to the level of the umbilicus. Following another course of irradiation to the splenic area the spleen edge receded to the left costal margin. In the three years since that time the leukocyte count has varied between 16 000 and 20 000 per cu mm.

Comment: This case illustrates the commonly observed onset of chronic lymphocytic leukemia in later years and the relatively benign course which the disorder follows in some patients. Over a period of 11 years irradiation of the spleen on but two occasions has controlled his disease satisfactorily. Many patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia survive for the normal life span and die from causes other than leukemia.

CHRONIC MYELOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

Incidence

Chronic myelocytic (myelogenous) leukemia is found in all races and in both sexes and is primarily a disease of middle age. In 1924 Minot, Buchman, and Isaacs⁶ presented data on 130 patients with chronic myelogenous leukemia. In this series the commonest age of onset was from 35 to 45 years. Fifty-six per cent of the patients were males. In 1951 Shumkin, Mettier, and Bierman²¹ reviewed the incidence and distribution of chronic myelogenous leukemia, compared their data with those of Minot, Buchman, and Isaacs, and noted an increased incidence of the disease, particularly in women, and an increased age at onset.

Clinical Manifestations

The onset of chronic myelocytic leukemia is usually unobtrusive. At times the presence of chronic myelocytic leukemia is discovered during a routine examination.¹⁰³ The period between the appearance of symptoms and the time the patient seeks medical advice is usually from eight to nine months. The most common initial symptoms are the presence of discomfort in the left upper quadrant or the upper abdomen or the accidental finding of a mass in this area. The patient often complains of a sensation of fullness and gaseous eructations after eating. Not infrequently signs of active disease such as loss of weight, fever, and night sweats are present. Usually the persistence and progression of these relatively mild symptoms lead the patient to seek medical advice.

Less often the disease begins more abruptly. Massive gastrointestinal hemorrhage manifested by either hematemesis or melena may be the first definite indication of disease. Other individuals seek medical advice because of aching in the back and extremities or because of a pleuritic type of pain in the left upper quadrant and lower portion of the left chest. The occurrence of hemorrhages or infiltrative lesions in the skin may be the first evi-

with this disease have a shortened survival time which indicates that an element of hyperhemolysis is present

The most striking abnormality in myelocytic leukemia concerns the leukocytes. The total leukocyte count in different patients ranges from less than 1000 per cu mm to more than 1 000 000 per cu mm. The leukocyte count is commonly between 100 000 and 300 000 per cu mm. Such high values are the result of an increase in cells of the granulocytic series: segmented neutrophils, band cells, juveniles, and myelocytes. A few myeloblasts and promyelocytes may be present, but they do not constitute a large percentage of the cells in chronic myelocytic leukemia. The eosinophils and basophils are usually increased. When the cells are stained for alkaline phosphatase activity, very few positive cells are found. In a series of patients with known granulocytic leukemia studied by the authors, less than 3 per cent of the segmented and band forms showed appreciable evidence of alkaline phosphatase activity. This finding is in agreement with the results obtained previously by others.^{1,2}

The platelet count of the patient with chronic myelocytic leukemia is characteristically increased. Platelet counts over 1 000 000 cu mm are sometimes seen. However, when chronic myelocytic leukemia begins with a picture that resembles aplastic anemia, thrombocytopenia is often present.

Examination of the bone marrow usually reveals a marked increase in cellularity that is due chiefly to an increase in cells of the myeloid series. Often the percentage of the younger cells in this series is increased, but at times the differential count of the marrow falls within normal limits. Even in such circumstances the marked increase in the number of cells of the granulocytic series leaves little doubt about the diagnosis. Erythropoiesis is normoblastic in type and megakaryocytes usually are present in normal or increased numbers.

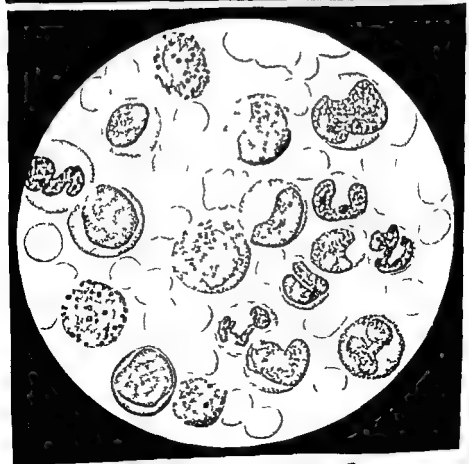
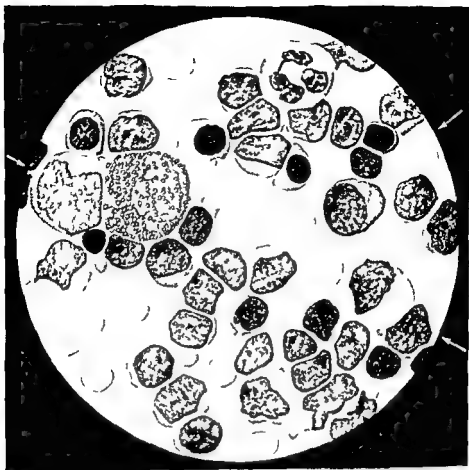
Other laboratory findings in this disease include the following: elevated basal metabolic rate with a normal radioactive iodine uptake,³ and elevated uric acid level.

Clinical Course and Prognosis

The average survival time of patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia from the time of the onset of symptoms to death is usually about three or four years.⁶⁻⁹ The five-year survival rate is about 15 to 20 per cent,¹⁰ and occasionally patients live for 15 to 20 years. The initial course of treatment may be followed by an excellent clinical remission, but relapse inevitably occurs. The development of relapse is usually manifested by loss of weight, fever, night sweats, increasing anemia, increasing size of the spleen, and the recurrence of sternal tenderness. The leukocyte count usually rises during

Figure 55 Chronic lymphocytic leukemia

Figure 56 Chronic myelocytic leukemia



missions and the patient ultimately becomes refractory to further treatment of this type. The major disadvantages of this form of therapy are the necessity of the patient's being near a hospital where the therapy can be administered and the not infrequent occurrence of radiation sickness with anorexia, nausea, and vomiting.

Radiation in the form of P^{32} has been used successfully in the treatment of chronic myelocytic leukemia. Radioactive phosphorus administered orally or intravenously is selectively concentrated in the rapidly dividing cells of the bone marrow and the leukemic tissue. It has a half life of 14.3 days and emits soft beta radiation that penetrates only a few millimeters in tissue.⁵¹ The dose must be individually determined and depends on the size of the patient, the amount of marrow involvement and the extent of the disease elsewhere. The usual initial dose varies from 4 to 8 millicuries. A second smaller dose 2 to 4 millicuries is given if the disease has not been controlled in six to nine weeks.⁵² After the disease has been brought under control the patient returns for periodic visits at intervals of from three to six months.⁵³ Osgood on the other hand feels that the patient should be treated as soon as the diagnosis is made. An initial dose of 0.5 to 2.5 millicuries of P^{32} is given intravenously and an effort is made to keep the disease under control by a plan of "titrated" therapy that consists of small individual doses of P^{32} at intervals of from four to twelve weeks.⁵⁴ Osgood reports that results with this technique are superior to those obtained with other therapeutic regimes in that patients so treated survive longer and spend about 85 per cent of their remaining life span at their usual activities.

Chemotherapy. Among the earlier treatments used for chronic myelocytic leukemia were the chemotherapeutic agents arsenic and benzol. These are used rarely if at all at the present time but newer chemotherapeutic agents have assumed an important place in the management of this disease. Among the most important of these are Myleran (1-4 dimethanesulfonyloxy butane) urethan (ethyl carbamate), Purmethol (6-mercaptopurine 6MP), TEM (triethylenemelamine) and colcemide (deacetyl methylcolchicine). All of these agents can produce serious bone marrow depression and for this reason blood counts at regular intervals are a necessary part of the routine when these drugs are employed.

MYLERAN is considered by many to be the drug of choice in the treatment of chronic myelocytic leukemia at the present time. It was developed at the Chester Beatty Institute during studies undertaken to develop alkylating agents other than nitrogen mustard.⁵⁵ The use of this drug was initially reported by Galton⁵⁶ and the good results that he reported have been amply confirmed.^{10, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62} The initial dose of the drug for the average adult is usually 2 mg. once or twice a day. When the leukocyte count has fallen to the range of 10,000 to 20,000 per cu mm the drug may be discontinued until a relapse occurs. Maintenance therapy of 2 mg. per day or 2 mg. two or three times a week is preferred by some authors.⁷

TEM, another alkylating agent is also effective in the treatment of chronic myelocytic leukemia. The drug has been administered in courses

relapse but clinical relapse does not invariably follow an increase in the leukocyte count. If the leukocyte count continues to rise over a period of several months a relapse is likely. Subsequent courses of therapy generally bring remissions of shorter duration and the response of the spleen and blood is usually not nearly so satisfactory as in the first remission. As the disease progresses splenomegaly and anemia become more or less constant features. The course of this disorder is sometimes accompanied by severe attacks of left upper quadrant pain and fever which are the result of splenic infarction or perisplenitis. A transformation into a myeloblastic leukemia is a common cause of death.⁶⁷ The terminal stages are usually characterized by cachexia, persistent fever, night sweats, the persistence of anemia, and the occurrence of hemorrhages. The final episode is usually either a bacterial pneumonia or a fungus infection. At times intracranial or gastrointestinal hemorrhage is the terminal event.

Treatment

Though chronic myelocytic leukemia may be discovered on a routine examination when the patient is asymptomatic, it is rare that more than a few months will elapse before the patient will need some form of treatment. Occasionally in such circumstances several years elapse before symptoms occur.¹⁰³ Both supportive and more specific measures are employed in the treatment of chronic myelocytic leukemia. Specific treatment may have one or two objectives. Treatment may be aimed at reducing the total extent of the disease in the hope that many of the manifestations of the disease will improve, or treatment may be more restricted in which case it is considered as a symptomatic measure directed toward more localized manifestations of the disease.

The most important supportive measures are the use of transfusions and the use of antibiotics. Anemia is treated by transfusion if it is severe or if it fails to respond as the disease improves with specific therapy. Antibiotics are used to treat infections when present; however, the possible emergence of resistant bacteria or fungus infection makes their prophylactic use dangerous. Patients with leukemia are prone to infections and all patients who present with what appears to be a febrile relapse of leukemia should be studied carefully for some superimposed infection such as pneumonia or pyelitis that may be treated successfully.

Radiation Therapy Roentgen therapy first used by Pusey in 1902³ was for many years the most widely used form of treatment for chronic myelocytic leukemia. Programs of therapy have varied both in the area of the body irradiated and in the amount of irradiation given. Irradiation is most often directed towards the spleen in single treatments of 100 r. A total of 600 to 1200 r is given over a period of several weeks. Such treatment usually produces a diminution in the size of the spleen, a decrease in the leukocyte count, and improvement in the anemia. The initial remission usually lasts from six to nine months. Subsequent therapy produces shorter re-

In October 1955 she was hospitalized because of a fever of 105° F roentgenographic evidence of an infiltrate or exudate in the hilar regions of both lungs hepatomegaly splenomegaly and a leukocyte count of 59 000 per cu mm. The fever and pulmonary abnormalities persisted unchanged for four weeks despite numerous antibiotics Myleran was then administered orally in a dose of 4 mg. each day. The fever declined gradually and after three weeks the patient was afebrile. At this time the leukocyte count was 10 000 per cu mm. and a roentgenogram revealed clearing of the lung densities. The patient continued active and felt well on a maintenance dose of Myleran 2 mg. two or three times a week for about two years.

In September 1957 it became necessary to give transfusions every few months because of recurrent anemia. Myleran was discontinued even though the bone marrow examination at this time revealed greatly increased granulocytic activity associated with hypoplasia of the erythroid series. Several examinations disclosed no reticulocytes in the peripheral blood. In November 1957 the leukocyte count had risen to 80 000 per cu mm. and the majority of the cells in the peripheral blood were myeloblasts. Because of the predominance of blast cells 6-mercaptopurine was administered in a daily dose of 2.5 mg. per kilo. The patient again responded well. at the end of one month the leukocyte count was 6000 per cu mm. and the myeloblasts had almost completely disappeared from the smear. Following a remission of several months relapse occurred and the disease was refractory to further treatment of all kinds. In July 1958 six years after the initial symptoms the patient died with cachexia anemia and pneumonia.

Comment The onset of the disease in this patient at middle age with vague symptoms of weakness abdominal discomfort, splenomegaly anemia and leukocytosis is the common one. At various times she had clinical remissions with the usual methods of therapy—roentgen ray, radiophosphorus and Myleran. As is often the case severe refractory anemia and the blood picture of myeloblastic leukemia developed in the later stages. At this time a brief remission followed the use of 6-mercaptopurine. In the terminal stage the disease was refractory to all measures and a fatal infection occurred.

MONOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

Monocytic leukemia was first described as a distinct clinical entity by Raschad and Schilling, Torgau in 1913. They reported a 33 year old patient who gave a history of exhaustion inflamed gums and loss of appetite of six weeks duration during the week prior to admission chills and epistaxis occurred. Physical examination disclosed marked pallor a papular rash, ulcerated bleeding gums and retinal hemorrhages. The erythrocyte count was 2.2 mil. per cu mm. and the leukocyte count was 15 000 per cu mm. Seventy two per cent of the leukocytes were large mononuclear and transitional cells many were large bizarre lobed cells with basophilic cytoplasm. The patient died in coma twenty days later on the day prior to death the leukocyte count was 56 000 cmm. and the erythrocyte count was 920 000 cmm. Postmortem

that consist of from two to ten doses of 5 mg each or as a continuous therapy with doses of 5 mg at intervals that vary from one week to one month.⁷ While good results can be obtained with TEM it has proved more unpredictable and less satisfactory than Myleran in our experience.

URETHAN has been used with some success in the treatment of this disease. It is administered in enteric coated capsules 0.3 gram three times a day after meals. The dose is increased gradually to 3.0 or 4.0 grams per day. When the leukocyte count has fallen to satisfactory levels the drug is stopped.⁸ Urethan although effective in some patients has been largely discarded because good results occur in only about one third of the patients⁹ while anorexia, nausea, and vomiting are frequently troublesome.

COLCEMIDE which blocks mitosis is sometimes useful in patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia who undergo a terminal myeloblastic transformation. The initial dose of the drug is 4 mg daily divided into two doses morning and evening. Larger doses are required in some patients. The maintenance dose varies with different individuals but is usually about one third of the initial dose.⁷ The maintenance therapy is started after a three or four day rest period which is allowed when the white count drops to 30,000 per cu mm. Although in general the response to this drug is less than with other forms of therapy it may be tried when radiation and the alkylating agents have become ineffective.

6-MERCAPTOPURINE will induce remissions in some patients with chronic myelocytic leukemia but appears to be inferior to Myleran in this type of disease.¹⁰ However it may be an effective form of therapy should a myeloblastic transformation occur in the terminal phase of the disease.⁷ This drug is usually given orally in a single daily dose of 2.5 mg per kilo.

Illustrative Case

A 43 year old white housewife enjoyed her usual health until the summer of 1952 when she first noticed increased fatigue, irregular fever, weight loss and vague abdominal discomfort. In October 1952 she consulted her physician who found her to be moderately pale. The spleen was palpable 2 finger breadths below the left costal margin. The erythrocyte count was 3 mil per cu mm, hemoglobin 9.5 gm per 100 ml, leukocyte count 57,000 per cu mm. Differential count (per cent): myelocytes 25, polymorphonuclears 52, lymphocytes 16, eosinophils 4, basophils 3.

A diagnosis of chronic myelocytic leukemia was made and the patient was treated with roentgen irradiation of the spleen. She responded well and a month later the leukocyte count had fallen to 19,000 per cu mm and the hemoglobin had risen to 11.5 gm per 100 ml. During the next two years the patient remained active and was treated with roentgen therapy at intervals.

Late in 1954 her symptoms increased and a hematologic relapse occurred. Because of the decreasing effectiveness of x-ray therapy she was treated with 81 millicuries of radioactive phosphorus in January 1955. Following this therapy the patient was asymptomatic for eight months.



Figure 57 Hypertrophied gums in a patient with acute monocytic leukemia

cytic type of anemia.¹⁸⁻²¹ The leukocyte count is nearly always increased but a normal total count is sometimes seen.¹⁸⁻²⁰ The initial count is usually in the range of 15 000 to 45 000 per cu. mm. but counts as high as 400 000 per cu. mm. are reported.¹⁸ counts of over 100 000 per cu. mm. are common in the terminal stages. Cells of the monocytic series are increased and constitute from 30 to 90 per cent of the total. Some appear to be normal adult monocytes but usually blast forms and promonocytes are present in addition there are usually large abnormal multilobulated cells that have folded nuclei and pseudopodia or vacuolation in the cytoplasm. The peripheral blood often contains nucleated red cells the platelet count is usually reduced. The bone marrow is hypercellular blast cells and older cells of the monocytic series predominate.

Acute monocytic leukemia generally runs a rapid course that terminates within two or three months. Some patients undergo a partial remission when treated with adrenocortical steroids the alkylating agents or 6 mercaptopurine but even in these patients life is rarely prolonged for more than six or eight months.²⁰

Illustrative Case This 41 year old woman was admitted to the obstetrical service of the hospital in the seventh month of pregnancy because of weakness easy fatigue and severe ulceration of the mucous membranes of the mouth.

She had had an uneventful gestation until six to eight weeks prior to admission when she noted the onset of mild migratory joint pains. Four weeks before admission the left elbow became swollen and extremely painful. She was admitted to another hospital where the physical examination revealed only a swollen left elbow with increased heat and the uterus enlarged to a size compatible with a six month pregnancy. Laboratory

examination revealed splenomegaly and infiltration of the marrow skin and liver with large mononuclear cells. The authors believed that the case represented a pure type of acute large mononuclear and transitional cell leukemia that was distinct from myeloid and lymphatic leukemia.

Although the existence of a third cell type of leukemia was questioned by hematologists who considered the reported cases to be only variant of the other types of leukemia, the occurrence of a monocytic type of leukemia is now accepted generally. The earlier cases that were reported were instances of the more common acute form of the disease; the chronic form was not described until 1934 by Doan and Wiseman.⁷

Monocytic leukemia is less common than myelocytic and lymphocytic leukemia. It has been reported to constitute from 2 to 16 per cent of all leukemias.^{4, 8} Apparently the diagnosis is made more frequently when supravital stained preparations are studied than when fixed smears stained with Wright's stain alone are examined. The chronic form of the disease has been variously defined as that in which the patient survives for six months and twelve months after onset of symptoms. About 25 or 30 per cent of the patients with monocytic leukemia have the chronic form of the disease.^{4, 7, 9, 10}

Acute Monocytic Leukemia

The acute form of the disease may be present from the onset or may occur as the terminal episode in patients with the chronic form. Males are affected more often than females; the proportion of males in one series being 65 per cent.⁴ A mean age of 44 years was found in one series,⁴ but the ages of the reported patients have varied from 11 months to 83 years.^{9, 10}

The first clinical manifestation of the disease is usually the gradual onset of weakness and easy fatigability, but in some patients there is an acute onset with high fever, abnormal bleeding, and prostration. Physical examination generally reveals pallor and slight generalized enlargement of the lymph nodes. The spleen is palpable in about three fourths of the cases;⁸ the lower border usually extends from 1 to 4 cm. below the left costal margin, but enlargement of the spleen may not be detected clinically even in the most fulminant cases.^{9, 10} Hepatomegaly is usually present. As was first emphasized by Forkner, often the most striking abnormalities on the physical examination are found in the gums and buccal mucosa.⁸ Relatively early in the disease the gums are swollen and pale, and later they become ulcerated and necrotic. When such lesions are present they are usually accompanied by moderate enlargement of the cervical lymph nodes. Gingival hyperplasia and other lesions of the oral cavity are seen occasionally in other types of acute leukemia but they are much more common in the monocytic type, where the frequency may be about 75 per cent (Fig. 57).^{9, 10} Anal fissure, sometimes associated with perirectal abscess, is found often enough in patients with this disease to warrant a special search for these lesions.^{9, 10} Involvement of the skin in the form of erythematous papular or infiltrative lesions occurs but is not common.

Laboratory examinations generally disclose a severe progressive normo-

At postmortem examination there was enlargement of the liver spleen lymph nodes and kidneys. The bone marrow was entirely replaced in the axial skeleton and partially in the femur by the leukemic cell which was a large mononuclear form with a moderate amount of dark cytoplasm and a notched or folded nucleus that contained two or three small nucleoli and a moderately dense chromatin. Microscopic leukemic infiltrates were present in the interstitial tissues of nearly all organs and appeared as gross nodules in the kidneys. The uterine cervix was heavily infiltrated by the leukemic cells as well as by hemorrhage. The uterine cavity contained a necrotic decidua lining in which there were many colonies of bacteria and bacteria had been disseminated throughout most of the other tissues. The kidneys showed the lesions of lower nephron nephrosis. The axial bone marrow contained broad areas of coagulative necrosis with some foci of acute hypoplasia and regeneration with reticulum cells.

COMMENT This patient presents many of the features commonly found in patients with acute monocytic leukemia. The onset of the illness with weakness easy fatigue and joint pain is not unusual in any type of acute leukemia but the early development of gingival hyperplasia and ulcerative stomatitis is more common in the monocytic type. Identification of the cell line involved in acute leukemia is often difficult and is particularly so in the monocytic type. It is not unusual for a large number of cells to be classified as belonging to the monocytic series on the initial examination while on subsequent examination the cells appear to belong to the granulocytic series. Postmortem examination confirmed the clinical diagnosis of monocytic leukemia in this patient. The effect of treatment is difficult to evaluate. At least the patient survived long enough to be delivered of a viable infant. Careful periodic examination of the child is indicated because the occurrence of leukemia in a nine months old infant born of a leukemic mother has been reported.

Chronic Monocytic Leukemia

Chronic monocytic leukemia is predominantly a disease of middle age. The ages of the reported patients have ranged from 17 to 68 but the mean age is about 56; the disease is unusual in persons less than 40 years of age.⁶¹⁻⁶⁶ Males are affected more often than females. In the reported series males have constituted from 75⁶¹⁻⁶⁶ to 84 per cent of the total.⁷

This form of the disease usually has an insidious onset characterized by weakness and easy fatigue. A history of repeated episodes of infection of the mucous membranes respiratory tract, and skin is common.⁶⁷ Physical examination is usually normal except for pallor and evidence of weight loss. Splenomegaly gingival lesions and skin lesions are less common than in the acute form of the disease; all are often absent when the patient is first seen but splenomegaly and hepatomegaly frequently appear later during the course of the disease.

An almost constant finding in these patients is anemia, which is often the

studies at that time revealed hematocrit 33 per cent erythrocyte count 3.3 mil per cu mm hemoglobin 9 gm per 100 ml platelets 81 000 per cu mm and leukocyte count 7200 Differential count (per cent) myelocytes ("monocytoid") 28 juvenile 2 bands 9, segmented 28 lymphocytes 28 monocytes 4 eosinophils 1 Many of the young forms contained Auer rods Examination of the aspirated bone marrow revealed 12 per cent blast cells and 56 per cent young monocytes of bizarre form

A diagnosis of acute monocytic leukemia had been made Over the next ten days the leukocyte count rose to 16 000 per cu mm and the patient developed hypertrophy of the gums and severe ulcerative stomatitis Therapy was then instituted with 6 mercaptopurine 75 mg daily by mouth Over the next ten days the leukocyte count fell to 3000 per cu mm the platelets to 40 000 per cu mm and petechiae appeared over the dependent portions of the body 6 Mercaptopurine was discontinued and the leukocyte count rose to 15 000 per cu mm and the petechiae disappeared though the platelet count persisted at 31 000 per cu mm The patient was discharged to her home under the care of her physician

While at home during the week prior to final admission she was weak nauseated and continued to have migratory joint pains The ulcerative stomatitis worsened and she began to vomit intermittently

Physical examination on admission revealed an acutely ill woman with fever of 101° and pulse rate of 124 There was marked pallor of skin and mucous membranes Several ecchymoses were noted over the lower legs There was a foul ulcerative stomatitis which was associated with marked hypertrophy of the gums There was moderate anterior and posterior cervical adenopathy The fundus was four fingerbreadths below the nuchoid Fetal heart rate was 140 per minute

Laboratory examination hematocrit 17 per cent leukocyte count 3 100 per cu mm and differential count (per cent) blast cells 1 promyelocytes 17 myelocytes 5 juvenile 0 bands 5 segmented 17 lymphocytes 46 monocytes 4 Platelets were 15 000 per cu mm The patient was treated symptomatically Transfusions of whole blood and packed cells over the next eight days brought the hematocrit to 35 per cent The leukocyte count rose gradually during this period to 12 000 per cu mm and the platelet count rose to 38 000 per cu mm The differential count remained essentially unchanged

Adrenocortical steroid therapy was started on the fourteenth hospital day The patient went into labor that night and was delivered of a viable premature female infant of 1400 gm Following delivery her condition deteriorated She continued to vomit and had several gastrointestinal hemorrhages Her leukocyte count decreased progressively over the next six days to 400 per cu mm and no platelets were seen on smear She expired seven days following delivery about three months after the appearance of the first symptoms of her disease

Microscopic examination of the placenta and umbilical cord revealed no evidence of leukemic infiltration

monocytic leukemia when the patient is seen in the "preleukemic" phase which probably occurs in nearly one half of the patients and may last for months or even years.²⁸ The presence of the disease can sometimes be suspected in patients who appear to have aplastic anemia because of the presence of a hypercellular marrow with a "megaloblastoid" type of erythropoiesis. The presence of unidentified young cells, an increase in cells of the monocytic series in the peripheral blood or in the marrow, the presence of giant platelets, and the occurrence of splenomegaly should also arouse suspicion. At times the diagnosis can be established definitely only after a prolonged follow up period and frequent examinations.

When the patient presents with anemia, splenomegaly, and leukocytosis the diagnosis is usually not difficult because of the presence of increased numbers of cells of the monocytic series of various stages of maturity in the peripheral blood and bone marrow. Even in this circumstance difficulty in classifying the leukemia arises occasionally. In some patients with leukemia the initial examination of the peripheral blood reveals a large percentage of cells that appear to belong to the monocytic series associated with blasts and young cells of the granulocytic series. In some patients this blood picture persists but in others later in the course of the disease only cells of the granulocytic series are seen. Such cases which at necropsy have no evidence of hyperplasia of the reticulum have been classified as the "Naegeli" type of monocytic leukemia to distinguish them from the "Schilling" type that is associated with hyperplasia of the reticulum. Cases of the Naegeli type appear to belong to the chronic myelocytic group and the existence of such cases has been advanced as evidence that in some circumstances monocytes are derived from myeloblasts.²⁹

The treatment of chronic monocytic leukemia is unsatisfactory. Irradiation and splenectomy are of no value; the alkylating agents and the anti-metabolic drugs usually produce but little if any benefit. Transfusions are usually necessary for the anemia which is refractory to other measures.

REFERENCES

1. Anderson R C. Familial leukemia. A report of leukemia in five siblings with a brief review of the genetic aspects of this disease. *Am J Dis Child* 81:313 1951.
2. Beck W S and Vakutine W N. The carbohydrate metabolism of leukocytes. A review. *Cancer Res* 13:309 1953.
3. Bedwell G A and Dawson A M. Chronic myeloid leukaemia in a child presenting as acute polyarthritis. *Arch Dis Child* 29:78 1954.
4. Bennett J H. Case of hypertrophy of the spleen and liver in which death took place from suppuration of the blood. *Edinburgh M & Surg J* 64:413 1847.
5. Berha N I, Lawrence J H, and Lee H C. The pathogenesis of the anemia of chronic leukemia. Measurement of the life span of the red blood cell with glycine-2-¹⁴C. *J Lab & Clin Med* 44:560 1954.
6. Bernard J and Seligmann M. A study of 61 leukemias treated with 2-mercapto-purine. *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60:385 1954.
7. Bethell F H. The relative frequency of the several types of chronic leukemia and their management. *J Chron Dis* 6:403 1957.



Figure 58 Leukemia cutis Both infiltrative and hemorrhagic lesions are present

presenting complaint. The anemia, which is usually at least moderately severe, is either normocytic or macrocytic. Hemoglobin levels of 5 to 7 gm per 100 ml are common. The anemia is accompanied by leukopenia early in the course of the disease in most patients and thrombocytopenia generally occurs sooner or later. The granulocytes are usually reduced while the cells of the monocytic series are increased. As the disease progresses the leukocyte count rises, cells of the monocytic series increase, and in the terminal stage the picture of acute monocytic leukemia occurs.

The appearance of the bone marrow varies in different patients. In some the marrow is hypocellular and erythrocytic hypoplasia is evident; in others the appearance is that of erythrocytic hyperplasia associated with cells that have an abnormal appearance and somewhat resemble megaloblasts because of an increase in the parachromatin of the nuclei. An increase in cells of the monocytic series is sometimes evident early, but massive invasion by the cells usually occurs only late in the disease.

The recognition of chronic monocytic leukemia is often difficult when the patient is first seen. Not infrequently patients with this disease are misdiagnosed as aplastic anemia because of the occurrence of anemia associated with leukopenia and thrombocytopenia that is refractory to treatment other than transfusion. Patients are also misdiagnosed as "hypersplenism" because of the association of splenomegaly with anemia or pancytopenia and an apparently active cellular marrow.⁹⁶ In such patients even the histologic study of the spleen removed at operation may not disclose the correct diagnosis.⁹⁶ It is usually not possible to make a definite diagnosis of chronic

- 39 Gross L. A filterable agent recovered from Ak leukemia extracts causing salivary gland carcinomas in C3H Mice *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 83 414 1953
- 40 Guasch J *Heredite des Leucemies Le Sang* 25 384 1954
- 41 Gunz F W Borthwick R A and Rolleston G L Acute leukemia in an infant following excessive intrauterine irradiation *Lancet* 2 190 1958
- 42 Gunz F W and Hough R F Acute leukemia over the age of fifty *Blood* 11 852 1958
- 43 Haddow A and Timmis G M Myleran in chronic myeloid leukemia *Lancet* I 207 1953
- 44 Haut A Altman S J Cartwright G E and Wintrobe M M The influence of chemotherapy on survival in acute leukemia *Blood* 10 875 1955
- 45 Holm E *Leukemia in animals Oliver and Boyd Edinburgh* 1942 (English translation)
- 46 Hueper W C *Occupational Tumors and Allied Diseases Charles C Thomas Springfield, Ill* 1942, pp 594 599
- 47 Kaplan H S On the etiology and pathogenesis of the leukemias A review *Cancer Res* 14 535 1954
- 48 Kelley J J and Wassman H A Quantitative plasma amino acid values in leukemic blood *Blood* 12 635 1957
- 49 Lange R D Moloney W C and Yamawaki T Leukemia in atomic bomb survivors *Blood* 9 574 1954
- 50 Law L W Recent advances in experimental leukemia research *Cancer Res* 14 695 1954
- 51 Lawrence J H Dobson R L Low Beer B V A and Brown B R Chronic myelogenous leukemia A study of 129 cases in which treatment was with radioactive phosphorus *JAMA* 136 672 1948
- 52 Leavell B S Chronic leukemia A study of the incidence and factors influencing the duration of life *Am J M Sc* 196 329 1938
- 53 Louis J Lamarzi L R and Best W R Treatment of chronic granulocytic leukemia with Myleran *Arch Int Med* 97 299 1958
- 54 Lynch M J Monocytic leukemia *Canad MAJ* 70 670 1954
- 55 McCavran C W Lymphatic leukemia of twenty five years duration *Ann Int Med* 12 398 1938
- 56 MacMahon B and Clark D Incidence of the common forms of human leukemia *Blood* 11 871 1956
- 57 MacMahon B and Koller E L Ethnic differences in the incidence of leukemia *Blood* 12 1 1957
- 58 Maloney W C and Hastenbaum M A Leukemogenic effects of ionizing radiation on atomic bomb survivors in Hiroshima City *Science* 121 308 1955
- 59 March H C Leukemia in radiologists in a twenty year period *Am J M Sc* 20 282 1950
- 60 Marlow A A and Bartlett C B Survival for 2 years in chronic lymphocytic leukemia *JAMA* 152 1033 1953
- 61 Miller F R and Turner D L The action of specific stimulants on the hemato-poietic system *Am J M Sc* 206 146 1943
- 62 Minot G R Buckman T E and Isaacs R Chronic myelogenous leukemia *JAMA* 82 1459 1924
- 63 Minot G R and Isaacs R Lymphatic leukemia Age incidence duration and benefit derived from irradiation *Boston M & S J* 191 1 1924
- 64 Moertel C C and Hagedorn A H Leukemia or lymphoma and coexistent primary malignant lesions A review of the literature and a study of 120 cases *Blood* 12 788 1957
- 65 Neshit J H and Roth R E Solitary lytic bone lesion in an adult with chronic myelogenous leukemia *Radiology* 64 724 1955
- 66 Oliver W *System of Practical Medicine by American Authors Edited by Pepper Wm Vol 11 p 15 Philadelphia* 1894
- 67 Osgood E E and Seaman A J Treatment of chronic leukemias Results of therapy by titrated regularly spaced total body radioactive phosphorus or roentgen irradiation *JAMA* 150 177 1955
- 68 Palmer H D Leukemia gastroduodenal ulcer and the problem of massive upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage *Cancer* 8 122 1955

- 8 Bierman H R Aggeler P M Thelander H Kelly A H and Cordes F L
Leukemia and pregnancy *JAMA* 161 220 1956
- 9 Bierman H R Byron R L Kelly A H and Cordes F The behavior of leukemic cells during continuous cross transfusions between patients with leukemia and other neoplastic diseases *Cancer Res* 11 236 1951
- 10 Blackburn E K King G M and Swan H T Myleran in treatment of chronic myeloid leukemia *Brit M J* 1 835 1956
- 11 Block M Jacobson L O and Bethard W F Preleukemic acute human leukemia *JAMA* 152 1018 1953
- 12 Borgeson E J and Wagener H P Changes in the eye in leukemia *Am J M Sc* 177 663 1929
- 13 Burchenal J H et al Clinical evaluation of a new antimetabolite 6 mercaptopurine in the treatment of leukemia and allied diseases *Blood* 8 965 1953
- 14 Clough P W Monocytic leukemia *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 51 148 1932
- 15 Cooke J V The occurrence of leukemia *Blood* 11 340 1954
- 16 Craigie D Case of disease of the spleen in which death took place in consequence of the presence of purulent matter in the blood *Edinburgh M & Surg J* 64 400 1845
- 17 Cramblett H G Friedman J L and Najjar S Leukemia in an infant born of a mother with leukemia *New England J Med* 259 727 1958
- 18 Dameshek W Acute monocytic leukemia Review of the literature and case reports *Arch Int Med* 46 718 1930
- 19 Dameshek W The outlook for eventual control of leukemia *New England J Med* 250 131 1954
- 20 Dameshek W and Gunz F Leukemia Grune & Stratton New York and London 1958
- 21 Diamond H D Craver L F Woodard H Q and Parks C H Radioactive phosphorus I In the treatment of lymphatic leukemia *Cancer* 3 779 1950
- 22 Doan C and Wacman B The monocyte monocytosis and monocytic leukosis *Ann Int Med* 8 383 1934
- 23 Ellison R R and Burchenal J H Therapy of acute leukemia in adults *J Chron Dis* 6 421 1957
- 24 Evans T S Monocytic leukemia *Medicine* 21 421 1942
- 25 Farber S et al The action of ACTH and cortisone on children with disseminated cancer In Mote J R Ed Proceedings of the Second Clinical ACTH Conference The Blakiston Co Philadelphia 1951
- 26 Farber S Summary of experience with 6 mercaptopurine *Ann NY Acad Sc* 60 412 1954
- 27 Folley J H Borges W and Yamawaki T Incidence of leukemia in survivors of the atomic bomb in Hiroshima and Nagasaki Japan *Am J Med* 19 311 1952
- 28 Forkner C E Clinical and pathological differentiation of the acute leukemias with special reference to acute monocytic leukemia *Arch Int Med* 53 1 1934
- 29 Forkner C E Leukemia and allied disorders The Macmillan Co New York 1938
- 30 Foster C G and Miller E R Presence of myelokentric and lymphokentric acid in sera of patients with lymphomatous diseases *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 75 633 1950
- 31 Furth J Recent studies on the etiology and nature of leukemia *Blood* 6 964 1951
- 32 Galton H A G Myleran in chronic myeloid leukemia *Lancet* 1 208 1953
- 33 Gaten O Cutaneous tumors in leukemia and lymphoma *Arch Dermat & Syph* 37 1015 1938
- 34 Gauld W R Innes J and Ribson H N A survey of 647 cases of leukemia 1938 1951 *Brit M J* 1 585 1953
- 35 Gelfand M L Herpes zoster with a varicelliform eruption and parotitis in chronic leukemia *JAMA* 145 560 1951
- 36 Cillum A G Age sex and race selection at death from leukemia and the lymphoma *Blood* 8 693 1953
- 37 Goldbach L J Leukemic retinitis *Arch Ophthal* 10 808 1933
- 38 Cross L Mouse leukemia *Ann NY Acad Sc* 54 1184 1952

- 98 Stewart, A. Webb J. Giles D., and Hewitt, D. Malignant disease in childhood and diagnostic irradiation in utero. *Lancet*, 2:447 1956
- 99 Tixey H. The natural history of untreated acute leukemia. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 60:322, 1954
- 100 Videbæk, A. Heredity in Human Leukemia. H. K. Lewis & Co. London, 1947
- 101 Vuchow R. Weisses Blut und Milztumoren. *Med. Ztg* 15:157 163 1848
- 102 Wilshaw E. and Moloney W. C. Histochemical and biochemical studies on leukocyte alkaline phosphatase activity. *Blood*, 10:1120 1955
- 103 Wintrobe M. M., and Hasenbush, L. L. Chronic Leukemia. *Arch. Int. Med* 64:701 1939

- 69 Panton P N and Valentine F C O Chronic lymphoid leukemia *Lancet* 216 914 1929
- 70 Paterson E Haddow A Thomas I A and Watkinson J M Leukaemia treated with urethane (compared with deep x ray therapy) *Lancet* 250 677 1946
- 71 Paul J T and Lumarzi L R Specific cutaneous lesions in chronic myeloid leukemia *Arch Dermat & Syph* 45 897 1942
- 72 Poncher H G Wasiman H A Richmond J H Horak O A and Lumarzi L R Treatment of acute leukemia in children with and without folic acid antagonists *J Pediat* 41 377 1952
- 73 Fusey W A Report of cases treated with roentgen rays *JAMA* 38 911 1902
- 74 Reumann H I Clemmens R L and Pillsbury W A Congenital acute leukemia *J Pediat* 46 415 1955
- 75 Reschad H and Schilling Torgau V Ueber eine neue Leukämie durch echte Uebergangsformen (Splenozytenleukämie) und ihre Bedeutung für die Selbständigkeit dieser Zellen *Munch med Wchnschr* 60 1981 1913
- 76 Riddle M C and Sturgis C C Basal metabolism in chronic myelogenous leukemia *Arch Int Med* 39 255 1927
- 77 Rosenthal M C Pisciotto A V Koninos Z D Goldenberg H and Dameshek W The autoimmune hemolytic anemia of malignant lymphocytic disease *Blood* 10 197 1955
- 78 Rosenthal N and Harris W Leukemia Its diagnosis and treatment *JAMA* 104 702 1935
- 79 Ross R R Chloroma and chloroleukemia *Am J Med* 18 671 1955
- 80 Sacks M S and Seeman I A statistical study of mortality from leukemia *Blood* 2 1 1947
- 81 Schilling R F and Meyer O O Treatment of chronic granulocytic leukemia with 14 dinitroethane sulfonyloxybutane (Myleran) *New England J Med* 254 980 1956
- 82 Schoolman H M Spurner W Schwartz S O and Szanto P B The induction of leukemia in Swiss mice by means of cell free filtrates of leukemic mouse brain *Blood* 12 694 1957
- 83 Schwab R S and Weiss S Neurologic aspects of leukemia *Am J M Sc* 189 766 1935
- 84 Schwartz S O and Ehrlich L The relationship of polycythemia vera to leukemia A critical review *Acta haemat* 4 129 1950
- 85 Schwartz S O Etiology of leukemia A case for the virus theory *Blood* 11 1045 1956
- 86 Schwartz S O Schoolman H M and Szanto P B The acceleration of the development of AKR lymphoma by means of cell free filtrates *Cancer Res* 16 559 1956
- 87 Scott R B Leukaemia *Lancet* 1 1099 1957
- 88 Scott R B Leukaemia *Lancet* 1 1053 1957
- 89 Scott R B Leukaemia *Lancet* 1 1102 1957
- 90 Shunkin M B Lucia E L Oppermann K C and Mettier S R Lymphatic leukemia An analysis of frequency distribution and mortality at the University of California Hospital 1913 1947 *Ann Int Med* 39 1254 1953
- 91 Shunkin M B Mettier S R and Bierman H R Myelocytic leukemia An analysis of incidence distribution and fatality *Ann Int Med* 35 194 1951
- 92 Silver H T Beal C A Schneiderman M A and McCullough N B The role of the mature neutrophil in bacterial infections in acute leukemia *Blood* 11 814 1957
- 93 Silver R T Utz J P Frei F III and McCullough N B Fever infection and host resistance in acute leukemia *Am J Med* 24 25 1958
- 94 Silverman F N The skeletal lesions in leukemia *Am J Roentgenol* 59 819 1948
- 95 Simpson C L Hempelmann L H and Fuller L M Neoplasia in children treated with x rays in infancy for thymic enlargement *Radiology* 64 840 1955
- 96 Sinn C M and Dick I W Monocytic leukemia *Am J Med* 20 558 1956
- 97 Stasney J Cantarow A and Paschalis K E Production of neoplasms by injection of fractions of mammalian neoplasms *Cancer Res* 10 775 1950

tory tests and special procedures such as a biopsy. The investigation is directed toward the "probable" diseases first and specific tests for "possible" but "unprobable" disorders are deferred.

Enlarged lymph nodes which provide the focal point of the diagnostic study in certain patients occur in a number of different diseases. Probably the commonest causes are regional infections such as infected wounds, dermatitis, pharyngitis, sinusitis, and abscessed teeth. Lymphadenopathy also occurs with relatively benign systemic infections such as rubella, infectious mononucleosis, and viral hepatitis, and with more serious infections such as tuberculosis, brucellosis, syphilis, fungus diseases, and tularemia. Enlargement of lymph nodes may be due to the presence of neoplastic disease such as metastatic carcinoma, leukemia, lymphosarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, reticulum cell sarcoma, and giant follicular lymphosarcoma. Mild degrees of enlargement occur in serum sickness and hyperthyroidism. Moderate enlargement occurs in disseminated lupus erythematosus and Boeck's sarcoid.

History

As is true with nearly all diagnostic problems, an accurate history is almost essential. Even the age of the patient is helpful information because the more benign systemic infections such as rubella and infectious mononucleosis are common in children and young adults but are rare in middle-aged and older persons. Both the duration of the adenopathy and the presence or absence of various symptoms help in deciding which of the possible diagnoses are more probable. The recent development of adenopathy does not exclude a neoplasm from consideration, but the persistence of enlargement for some months makes an acute infection unlikely. Localizing symptoms such as pain and tenderness in the gland, and evidence of associated inflammation, such as pharyngitis, favor infection. A history of weight loss, recurrent fever, night sweats, and pruritus suggests the presence of systemic disease, most often one of the lymphoma group.

Physical Examination

The physical examination, particularly the characteristics of the superficial nodes, generally gives helpful information. The distribution, size, consistency, and mobility of the nodes are important, as is the presence or absence of tenderness. Probably the most important observation is whether the adenopathy is generalized or localized. If the involvement is generalized, some systemic disease becomes the primary consideration and regional adenitis can be excluded. If the involvement appears to be localized, the presence of systemic disease is not excluded but the first consideration is given to a careful search for some associated disease, either infection or neoplasm, in the area drained by the enlarged lymph nodes. In any patient with enlarged nodes, the size is estimated carefully and is best recorded in centimeters rather than in less accurate terms such as "pea sized" and "egg sized." An estimate of the size of the nodes gives some indication of the

Other Disorders of the Lymphoid Tissue and Bone Marrow

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE PATIENT WITH ENLARGED LYMPH NODES

THE MOST ACCURATE clinical diagnoses are made either by histologic study of diseased tissue or by the demonstration of the presence of the agent responsible for the disease. In clinical practice the physician usually begins his diagnostic examination with the history and physical examination. With the recognition of some particular sign or symptom complex such as lymphadenopathy the physician proceeds with the differential diagnosis by an orderly consideration of the different diseases that are known to produce the manifestations that have been observed. The probability of the presence of one or more of the diseases under consideration increases as other evidence is found that supports those particular possibilities. This evidence is obtained by a systematic study of the patient that includes various labora-

the level of the umbilicus or below it is probable that the patient has some chronic disorder such as a disease of the lymphoma group rather than an acute infection such as infectious mononucleosis or viral hepatitis.

Laboratory Examination

Laboratory examinations sometimes establish the diagnosis in patients with large lymph nodes and at other times permit the exclusion of certain diseases from further consideration. The routine studies of the blood such as the hematocrit, leukocyte count and differential count, are indicated. By such means leukemia usually can be detected if present and the diagnosis of other diseases such as infectious mononucleosis can be provisionally established or excluded. An increase in the granulocytes favors bacterial infection or Hodgkin's disease and an increase in "pathologic" lymphocytes favors infectious mononucleosis or a viral infection. Monocytosis suggests Hodgkin's disease, tuberculosis or brucellosis. The presence of anemia indicates that the patient probably has more than a localized acute infection. More definitive information is provided by specific examinations such as the heterophil agglutination test and agglutination tests for brucellosis and tularemia. Skin tests for tuberculosis and fungus diseases are sometimes helpful. Repeated attempts may be necessary to demonstrate the presence of "lupus erythematosus cells." In certain patients other studies such as the electrophoretic study of the serum proteins and aspiration of bone marrow to obtain material for culture and cytologic study are important.

Röntgenographic Examination

Röntgenographic examinations often give valuable information about the nature of the process that is manifested by enlargement of the superficial nodes. A roentgenogram of the chest is usually necessary in order to detect disease in the lungs and determine the presence of involvement of the nodes in the hilar areas or mediastinum. The location, number and appearance of the lesions in the lung may indicate the probability of tuberculosis, fungus disease, primary or metastatic carcinoma or other disease. Details of the appearance and location of the involved nodes in the hilar areas and mediastinum may help to distinguish between Boeck's sarcoid and one of the lymphoma group. Examination of the gastrointestinal tract may reveal the presence of a primary carcinoma that was first suggested by the presence of Virchow's node behind the origin of the left sternocleidomastoid muscle. Radiologic evidence of diffuse infiltration of the stomach and hypertrophied rugal folds favors lymphosarcoma over Hodgkin's disease and other disorders that may present with superficial adenopathy. Evidence of skeletal involvement indicates that the adenopathy is part of a serious disorder even though the roentgenographic appearance of the osseous lesion may not permit the differentiation between the several possibilities.

Lymph Node Biopsy

If the diagnosis is not made by other means, biopsy of a lymph node is often necessary. The decision as to the need for a biopsy is reached after an

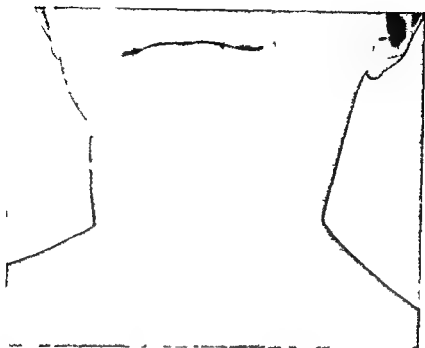


Figure 59 Enlargement of cervical lymph node in a patient with Hodgkin's disease

probability of the presence of certain diseases. The nodes in hyperthyroidism and serum sickness are rarely more than 0.5 or 1.0 cm in diameter and in disseminated lupus they seldom measure more than 1.0 to 3.0 cm. In the diseases of the lymphoma group the nodes are sometimes greatly enlarged. Careful estimations of the size of the nodes and the constancy of the size are helpful in following the progress of the disease while the patient is under observation. The presence of tenderness in a node usually indicates that infection is present but marked tenderness also occurs in the nodes of some patients with other diseases, particularly Hodgkin's disease. Fixation of a node to the skin or deeper tissues indicates that the infection or neoplasm has involved the surrounding area. Sinus tracts or scars over an area of adenopathy suggest tuberculosis or fungus disease. A relatively small node that is stony hard in consistency suggests metastatic carcinoma, but extremely hard nodes that measure several centimeters in diameter also occur with calcification in sarcoma and in tuberculosis. In diseases of the lymphoma group characteristically the nodes are moderately firm, rubbery, and somewhat resilient but many exceptions occur. The normal bean-shaped contour of the node is more apt to be maintained with infection than with neoplasm.

Other details of the physical examination are also important. The detection of a focus of infection in an area related anatomically to the adenopathy usually warrants a diagnosis of regional adenitis. The presence of splenomegaly and hepatomegaly suggests some generalized infectious process or a disease of the lymphoma group. If the spleen is firm and extends halfway to

tinguished from each other by their clinical manifestations. An accurate diagnosis is made only by microscopic study of a specimen of involved tissue usually a lymph node. Although of unknown etiology the diseases are generally considered to be neoplastic in nature.

The term malignant lymphoma is a convenient one for various reasons. In clinical practice it provides a designation for a provisional diagnosis until a more accurate one can be made. In addition the histologic study of biopsy material sometimes makes it possible to place a disorder in this group of diseases even though a more precise diagnosis cannot be made with certainty. In this circumstance the patient often can be treated properly without benefit of an accurate diagnosis because the same principles of therapy and the same therapeutic agents are used in the management of the different diseases. It is convenient to group these diseases for the purpose of a clinical discussion because of the similarities in clinical manifestations, methods of diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis.

Hodgkin's disease is named after Thomas Hodgkin who first described the disorder in 1832.¹ In 1893 Kundrat recognized lymphosarcoma as a disease entity different from leukemia.² Giant follicular lymphoma, sometimes called "Brill-Symmers disease," was described by Brill, Baehr, and Rosenthal in 1925 and by Symmers in 1927.³ Roulet has been given credit for first clearly identifying reticulum cell sarcoma as a distinct type of tumor.⁴

CLASSIFICATION

Numerous classifications have been proposed for this group of diseases that involve the lymphoid tissue primarily.^{4, 1, 18, 20, 48, 53, 5} The classification shown here, which divides the lymphomas into four main groups, is a useful one for clinical purposes.

Classification of Malignant Lymphoma

1. Hodgkin's disease
2. Lymphosarcoma
3. Reticulum cell sarcoma
4. Giant follicular lymphoma (Brill-Symmers disease)

Some idea of the relative frequency of these diseases is given by the diagnoses made in one series of 618 cases of "lymphoma." When classified according to the above system the various forms of Hodgkin's disease constituted 37 per cent, lymphosarcoma 35 per cent, reticulum cell sarcoma 20 per cent, and giant follicle lymphoma 8 per cent.¹⁸

Although a specific diagnosis can usually be made by the histologic study of involved tissue, at times the pathologist may have difficulty in identifying the disease from the study of material obtained by biopsy. Different nodes from the same patient have been diagnosed as different diseases and changes considered to be characteristic of Hodgkin's disease, sarcoma, and giant follicle lymphoma have been reported in the same lymph node.⁷ The apparent transition of giant follicle lymphoma into the other

evaluation of each patient individually. In one situation it may be apparent at the initial examination that a biopsy should be done promptly. In another circumstance it may be decided that biopsy can be deferred for further observation and the performance of other tests. If an undiagnosed enlargement of the lymph node in an adult does not subside significantly within a few weeks, biopsy is nearly always indicated.

Although no fast rules can be made for the performance of the biopsy, the observance of some simple guides is helpful to both the pathologist and the clinician. Although the pathologist bases his diagnosis on the histologic appearance of the specimen, it is helpful if pertinent clinical data are submitted along with the biopsy specimen. It is important that the pathologist receive representative tissue that is suitable for study. If more than one node is enlarged, the selection of the one to be biopsied is important. In general, cervical or supraclavicular nodes are preferable to axillary nodes; nodes from all of these sites are preferable to nodes from the femoral area because the latter often have undergone alteration as a result of previous infection in the lower extremities. When the patient has a disease that involves the lymph nodes without significant enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes, frequently the diagnosis can be established by a supraclavicular biopsy, particularly if pulmonary or mediastinal involvement is present. Whenever possible, the biopsy is performed and the diagnosis established before the patient receives any specific therapy, because both irradiation and chemotherapy can so change the appearance of the node that histologic diagnosis is difficult or impossible. Even careful handling of the node at the time of operation is important because trauma can distort the histologic appearance of the lesion. When the diagnosis is uncertain and infectious processes do not seem to be excluded with reasonable certainty, it is always advisable to send part of the node for histologic examination and part for bacteriologic study. Unless this is done, even tuberculosis or a fungus infection may pass unrecognized. If the biopsy of a node does not provide a definite diagnosis, a second biopsy may be indicated if no suitable node is available at the time. Periodic examination for the appearance of such a node is advisable.

MALIGNANT LYMPHOMAS

Lymphoma, Lymphoblastoma

Malignant lymphoma is a term used to designate a group of diseases—Hodgkin's disease, lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma, and giant follicle lymphoma—that have certain features in common. These diseases, which involve mainly the lymphoid structures of the body, cannot be dis-

ness, loss of weight, and fever.^{6, 7} Cough, dyspnea, and pruritus occur less often but are not rare.

Fever occurs sometime during the course of the disease in nearly every patient with Hodgkin's disease. The fever may be continuous, intermittent, or cyclic. An irregular type of fever that rises to 100° to 103° F at night occurs frequently and generally signifies that the disease is not confined to the superficial lymph nodes. The well known "Murchison" or "Pel-Ebstein" type of fever occurs in only a minority of patients.^{6, 7} In this syndrome the temperature curve shows successive daily rises over a period of about a week until it reaches a peak of 103° to 105°, then subsides gradually to normal. After an interval of ten days to two months another febrile episode appears. The periods of remission gradually shorten unless the course of the disease is changed by therapy. When this type of fever occurs it generally signifies mediastinal or intra-abdominal disease. A remittent type of fever similar to that seen in septicemia occurs in some patients with the acute fulminating type of Hodgkin's disease, even in the absence of demonstrable infection.

The variety of clinical manifestations that Hodgkin's disease may produce has been emphasized.^{6, 7} Pruritus or exfoliative dermatitis may be the first manifestation of the disease. Disease in the intrathoracic region may present as an asymptomatic mediastinal tumor found on the roentgenogram or with evidence of the superior mediastinal syndrome (Fig. 60). Intrathoracic



Figure 60. Infra-red photograph demonstrating collateral circulation in a patient with Hodgkin's disease and superior vena caval obstruction.

diseases in the group is well known¹. In one series of 84 patients with malignant lymphoma biopsies were repeated after intervals that varied from one month to 15 years (average 23 years) and a histologic diagnosis different from the initial one was made in 23 per cent in most instances the lesion had become less differentiated in appearance¹⁶. In another series a transition from the biopsy material was found in 39 per cent of the autopsied cases in over one half of the autopsies lesions of more than one of the lymphoma group occurred¹. Although many pathologists consider that the histologic features of these diseases with the exception of giant follicle lymphoma remain relatively constant the inconstancy that has been noted in some cases has led to the suggestion that the whole lymphoma group is but a single neoplastic entity that has a number of variants¹⁷.

CLINICAL FEATURES

1 *Hodgkin's Disease*

The extensive literature on Hodgkin's disease that appeared prior to 1948 has been the subject of several excellent reviews⁴⁻⁸. The clinical manifestations histologic appearance methods of diagnosis and variable natural history of the disease are well established. Despite the numerous attempts that have been made to solve the problem the cause (or causes) of Hodgkin's disease has not been established. A recent review indicates that the data suggestive of a viral etiology are increasing^{6,33}. Although the occurrence of Hodgkin's disease in association with other diseases notably tuberculosis and fungus infections has suggested more than a chance association all efforts to establish tuberculosis the avian tubercle bacillus diphtheroids and other bacilli and fungi as causes of Hodgkin's disease have proved unsuccessful^{6,4,33}.

The varied clinical manifestations of Hodgkin's disease may appear at any age and in either sex. The disease occurred most frequently in the third decade in one series¹ but in another study an even distribution was found in the first seven decades³. Males are affected more commonly than females the ratio being about two to one^{16,7,1}.

The clinical manifestations of Hodgkin's disease are varied because virtually any organ in the body may be involved by the disease process. The incidence of lesions in various locations noted either during life or at autopsy in two series that totaled 485 patients^{9,9} are as follows: lungs 33 per cent mediastinum 33 per cent liver and spleen 50 per cent and 70 per cent skin "common" and 38 per cent bones 20 per cent and 7 per cent. Involvement of the nervous system occurred in 12 per cent of another series³. The disease is rarely found in the tonsils and gastrointestinal tract.

Although nearly any sign or symptom may be the presenting one the commonest initial symptom is painless enlargement of one or more lymph nodes. An initial manifestation of this sort usually in the cervical nodes occurs in about 85 per cent of patients with Hodgkin's disease^{11,9}. The next most frequent symptoms are pain in the back abdomen or chest weak

splenomegaly anemia and other abnormalities in the peripheral blood are the principal manifestations of the disease

Abnormalities that are demonstrable by physical examination depend on the presence of the disease in various organs or systems in different parts of the body Most commonly the lymph nodes spleen and liver are involved The degree of lymphadenopathy which is usually greatest in the cervical region varies from slight to marked The nodes are usually firm and rubbery in consistency but may be either soft or stony hard They are rarely tender and usually are not fixed to the skin or underlying structures Occasionally the size of the nodes especially in the cervical and submandibular areas varies spontaneously from day to day Palpable splenomegaly occurs in about from 50 to 70 per cent of patients at some stage of the disease⁸⁰ The degree of enlargement found in different patients varies from a barely palpable spleen to one that nearly fills the entire left half of the abdominal cavity usually the lower edge of the spleen is above the level of the umbilicus Less commonly the examination reveals evidence of ascites pleural effusion pericardial effusion superior vena caval obstruction and neurologic involvement

Laboratory examinations often disclose abnormalities particularly in the peripheral blood Normocytic anemia of some degree occurs in nearly all patients at some time during the course of the disease The anemia is usually the result of diminished erythropoiesis but in some patients increased hemolysis is the important factor The total and differential leukocyte counts are often normal early in the disease but a transitory increase in lymphocytes sometimes occurs An increase in blood platelets and an absolute increase in monocytes have been reported to be constant throughout the disease⁸ In the more advanced stages of the disease leukocytes counts often rise to levels of 15 000 to 20 000 per cu mm or more The leukocytosis is associated with an increase in cells of the granulocytic series and a decrease in lymphocytes⁸ Eosinophilia of considerable degree occurs in some patients Toxic granulation is often prominent and large bizarre platelets are often present The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is usually elevated when the disease is active The electrophoretic pattern of the serum proteins may reveal a reduction in albumin associated with an increase in globulin in the moderately advanced cases Abnormalities in the proteins similar to those found commonly in multiple myeloma sometimes occur in Hodgkins disease when there is an increase in plasma cells^{1 20} Reed Sternberg cells can be found in bone marrow smears only rarely⁴ but the diagnosis has been made in 25 per cent of patients when aspirated bone marrow was studied in paraffin sections⁴

2 *Lymphosarcoma and Reticulum Cell Sarcoma*

Lymphosarcoma and reticulum cell sarcoma occur at any age but the highest incidence is found in the fifth and sixth decades^{18 6} The incidence in males is about twice that in females^{18 7}

The first evidence of disease is usually visible and palpable enlargement

disease may also be responsible for an unproductive cough, dyspnea, or pleural effusion. The first evidence of the disease sometimes appears in the abdominal region in the form of a retroperitoneal tumor, splenomegaly, or hepatomegaly. Skeletal involvement, which is most likely to occur in the vertebrae, is usually associated with pain that may be present for weeks before an osseous lesion is demonstrable in the roentgenograms. The presence of disease in the nervous system most often becomes evident because of pressure on the spinal cord or the fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, or ninth cranial nerve.³ When involvement of the brain occurs, it is generally associated with disease of the cranial bones. The epidural tumor that causes cord compression is nearly always an extension from a lesion in a vertebra or from the adjacent mediastinal or retroperitoneal lymph nodes.³ Peripheral neuritis in the lower extremities is a troublesome symptom in some patients.³⁹ It appears likely that the attacks of herpes zoster, which are fairly common, are caused by involvement of the ganglia by the herpes virus rather than by Hodgkin's disease, because the herpetic lesions disappear spontaneously without treatment (Fig. 61). Hodgkin's disease is often found to be the cause of a persistent fever of undetermined origin. In still other patients



Figure 61 Herpes zoster in a patient with Hodgkin's disease

more frequently in reticulum cell sarcoma than in lymphosarcoma^{16 20}

Abnormalities occur in both the peripheral blood and bone marrow of many patients with lymphosarcoma and reticulum cell sarcoma. Lymphocytosis of the peripheral blood which is sometimes due partly to an increase in the large lymphocytes is seen more often in these disorders than in Hodgkin's disease. Some patients who are diagnosed as having lymphosarcoma later develop the peripheral blood picture of lymphocytic leukemia. Eosinophilia and polymorphonuclear leukocytosis sometimes occur but are less frequent than in Hodgkin's disease. Hemolytic anemia of the autoimmune type occurs in some patients and at times is accompanied by thrombocytopenia. The anti-globulin (Coombs) test is positive in at least half of the patients with malignant lymphoma who develop severe hemolytic anemia^{28 30} in some reports on the association of autoimmune hemolytic disease and lymphoma only patients with positive tests are included.⁴⁰ Abnormalities in the serum protein such as moderate decreases in albumin and gamma globulin and moderate increases in the alpha 1 and alpha 2 fractions occur commonly; the occurrence of myeloma type proteins is not rare.¹ An increased percentage of lymphocytes and an increase in the number of large mononuclear or reticulum cells in the bone marrow suggest the diagnosis of lymphosarcoma or reticulum cell sarcoma. When material obtained by aspiration of the marrow is studied by the paraffin section method a positive diagnosis may be made in about half the patients with reticulum cell sarcoma. In lymphosarcoma and giant follicle lymphoma a positive diagnosis can be made less often in this way.⁴

3 Giant Follicular Lymphoma

Giant follicular lymphoma (follicular lymphoblastoma Brill-Symmers disease) is about two and a half times as common in males as in females and occurs most often in the fifth or sixth decade.^{16 17} Less than 5 per cent of the cases occur in individuals under 20 years of age. This disorder has a more benign course than the other members of the lymphoma group but its tendency to undergo transition to lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma, Hodgkin's disease and lymphocytic leukemia is recognized.^{1 14 16 17 18}

The most common initial manifestation is enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes or spleen. The involvement of the nodes is usually more or less generalized but localized disease also occurs. Enlargement of the mediastinal nodes may produce marked impairment of respiration. Enlargement of the retroperitoneal mesenteric and mediastinal nodes is common. The presence of the disease in these locations is often associated with ascites or hydrothorax and the frequent occurrence of chylous ascites has been reported.¹⁵ The incidence of splenomegaly in giant follicular lymphoma is reported to be 33 per cent.¹⁷ Fever, cachexia and other constitutional manifestations are rare.¹ Although anemia is said to be unusual until late in the disease,^{2 17} the frequent development of hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenic purpura and leukopenia in patients with splenomegaly has been reported.¹¹ Involvement of the skin, nervous system and skeleton is rare.^{16 17 24}

of superficial lymph nodes. In one series of 196 patients the disease made its appearance in this way in 65 per cent.¹⁵ The cervical nodes were involved in 59 per cent and the axillary, inguinal and abdominal nodes were each involved in about 12 per cent. mediastinal involvement was much less common. In 40 per cent of the patients the lymph node enlargement was confined to one area; in 32 per cent it was generalized; and in the remainder two or three regions were involved. The involved nodes, which are generally moderately firm and resilient, are movable unless local invasion has occurred.

Although lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma, and Hodgkin's disease cannot be distinguished from each other by the clinical manifestations in the individual patient, the diseases follow somewhat different patterns. Splenomegaly is less common in lymphosarcoma than in Hodgkin's disease (20 per cent compared to 50 to 70 per cent).¹⁵ Fever occurs less often¹⁶ and anemia develops later. The "Murchison-Pel-Ebstein" type of fever curve, which was observed during the course of the disease in 16 per cent of one group of patients with Hodgkin's disease, is rare in other members of the lymphoma group.¹⁶ Lesions of the gastrointestinal tract occur more commonly in lymphosarcoma and reticulum cell sarcoma than in Hodgkin's disease.^{10, 17, 18} The stomach, small intestine or colon may be involved. The gastric lesion most often consists of a diffuse infiltration that may be recognized on the roentgenologic examination of the stomach because of the presence of exaggerated, stiffened rugae and diminished peristalsis. The most frequent site of disease in the small bowel is the terminal ileum, where the lesion may produce bleeding or intestinal obstruction. Involvement of the nasopharynx and tonsillar areas is rare in Hodgkin's disease but occurs oftener in lymphosarcoma. Lesions of the nervous system and skeleton occur



Figure 62. Chest roentgenograms in a patient with lymphosarcoma showing mediastinal adenopathy and hydrothorax before therapy (A); appearance after irradiation (B).

In the majority of patients the distinction between lymphosarcoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia is made without difficulty because of the increases in total leukocyte count and percentage of lymphocytes that are found in most patients with leukemia. However in the occasional patient this differential diagnosis is not easy because there seems to be a close relationship or overlapping between the two diseases. It is known that some patients who are diagnosed as having lymphosarcoma from a node biopsy at a time when the blood and bone marrow appear entirely normal later develop the hematologic features of lymphocytic leukemia. The term "leukosarcoma" has been used to designate these transitional cases. In some such patients the classic features of leukemia develop later but in others the abnormalities in the peripheral blood prove to be transient and at necropsy months or years later there is no evidence of widespread invasion of the various organs that usually occurs in leukemia.³⁹ In still others the abnormalities in the blood, such as a mild absolute lymphocytosis, persist but a frankly leukemic picture does not develop.

Management of the Patient with Malignant Lymphoma

It is important to establish a diagnosis histologically before treatment is started, and unless the biopsy suffices at least to place the diagnosis in this group of diseases treatment is best deferred, except in unusual circumstances. The decision regarding the type and amount of treatment must be based on a careful evaluation of the individual patient which takes into consideration the condition of the patient as well as the type, extent, and location of disease. An evaluation of this sort is important because any treatment can prove deleterious or even fatal to the patient if given injudiciously. Regular periodic follow up examinations constitute an important part of the therapeutic program. Not only do these visits provide the best means for the physician to follow the course of the disease but they can be an important part of the supportive treatment. The psychologic aspect of the management becomes even more important when the disease is relapsing or progressing despite treatment. A moderately aggressive and hopeful attitude toward therapy is most likely to produce the best results at any stage of the disease and is usually the best attitude for the patient's morale.

The same therapeutic agents are employed in the treatment of patients with the different diseases of the lymphoma group and the same general plan of therapy can be followed in each disease. In the treatment of diseases that have such varied clinical manifestations it is important to have a basic plan of therapy that can be followed through the variety of different symptoms that may develop. In formulating or following a plan for a patient with any disease of the lymphoma group we have found it very convenient to classify the patient according to the severity or extent of the disease as Peters recommends for Hodgkin's disease.⁴⁰ Such a classification shown herewith is also helpful in estimating the prognosis in an individual patient.

1 *Mycosis Fungoides*

Mycosis fungoides is a form of malignant lymphoma of the skin. At varying stages the lesions may be erythematous, exfoliative, infiltrative with nodules or plaques, or atrophic with ulceration. Although the prognosis is generally serious for those with this disorder, patients with localized lesions sometimes remain essentially well for decades and die from some other cause. As a rule the disorder terminates as one of the malignant lymphomas⁴³ particularly reticulum cell sarcoma.¹⁰

DIAGNOSIS

The presence of one of these diseases is suggested by the clinical manifestations but the antemortem diagnosis can be made only by biopsy. A suitable superficial node is usually available. Preference is given to cervical, supraclavicular and axillary nodes; femoral and inguinal nodes are used only if no other is suitable. When none of the superficial lymph nodes is significantly enlarged the diagnosis can sometimes be made by a supraclavicular biopsy, particularly if disease is present in the lung or mediastinum. At times the diagnosis can be made by the biopsy of a local tumor mass or by needle aspiration of an enlarged liver. Study of stained smears made from material obtained by needle aspiration of a lymph node is also a helpful procedure in experienced hands.⁴¹ The diagnosis can be made only rarely by a study of stained smears made from aspirations of the bone marrow,^{3, 7} but examination of either a surgical biopsy of the marrow or paraffin sections made from aspirated material is more likely to yield the diagnosis. This type of examination of the bone marrow may be a very helpful procedure when the diagnosis is obscure.⁴ Cell blocks made from pleural or ascitic fluid rarely provide a positive diagnosis in diseases of the lymphoma group.³⁰

A "negative" report of a biopsy does not mean that the presence of one of these diseases has been excluded. If the pathologist can make no diagnosis on the specimen other than lymphoid hyperplasia or "hyperplastic lymphadenitis" another biopsy should be performed. If no suitable nodes are available the patient should be examined periodically in the expectation that a lesion suitable for biopsy will develop later.

Hodgkin's disease, lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma and giant follicle lymphoma must be distinguished from other diseases that may produce similar clinical manifestations. The possibility of one of the lymphoma group is suggested by enlargement of superficial lymph nodes, splenomegaly, prolonged fever, mediastinal tumors, hemolytic anemia, exfoliative dermatitis and spinal cord compression. Infectious mononucleosis, tuberculosis, brucellosis, sarcoidosis, disseminated lupus erythematosus and carcinomatosis often present problems in differential diagnosis. The difficulty can be resolved only by demonstrating the presence of one of the lymphoma group histologically or by satisfying the diagnostic criteria for the other disease under consideration.

Stage II

In cases which are classified as Stage II surgical treatment is rarely employed and irradiation is usually the treatment of choice. Therapy is directed toward the involved lymph nodes generally beginning in the most important area first. Irradiation is started cautiously in low daily dosage levels (about 100 r in air to one or two portals the HVL depending on the site of the lesions). Therapy is aimed at local symptomatic relief and the amount of treatment is increased slowly. As little as 600 r tumor dose may produce



Figure 63 . Chest roentgenograms of a patient with Hodgkin's disease. The diagnosis of the intrathoracic tumor (A) was established by biopsy. The patient responded unusually well to irradiation and had no evidence of recurrence twelve years later (B).

the desired result and the total seldom exceeds 3000 r.² Excessively rapid resolution of large masses and severe damage to the skin areas are avoided if possible. If constitutional symptoms such as fever, sweats, weight loss, and anemia are present, treatment with one of the alkylating agents is usually employed. If systemic symptoms are severe, chemotherapy may be given first and followed by irradiation. Chemotherapy may also be employed if the response to irradiation is poor.

Nitrogen mustard intravenously in a total dose of 0.4 mg. per kilo of body weight appears to be the drug of choice in Hodgkin's disease.^{1, 30, 31, 60} It is often effective in the other diseases of the lymphoma group.

Chemotherapeutic agents that can be administered orally have obvious advantages for ambulatory patients. Chlorambucil, which is usually given in a dose of 0.1 to 0.2 mg. per kilo per day, is preferred to TEM because of its lower toxicity and greater predictability. It may be the alkylating agent of choice in the treatment of lymphosarcoma and giant follicle lymphoma.^{13, 60} Good responses may not occur until after from six to ten weeks of treatment. TEM is a difficult drug to regulate because patients vary a great deal in responsiveness and the effect of a single tablet cannot be evaluated for two or three weeks.³¹ The drug is administered until the desirable clinical result is

*Clinical Classification of Malignant Lymphoma
According to Extent of Disease*

Stage I	Involvement of only one lymph node region or a single lesion elsewhere with no constitutional symptoms
Stage II	Involvement of two or more proximal lymph node regions confined to either upper or lower trunk with or without constitutional symptoms
Stage III	Involvement of multiple lymph node regions with or without constitutional symptoms or acute Hodgkin's disease with no obvious lymphatic involvement

Stage I

Patients with Hodgkin's disease lymphosarcoma reticulum cell sarcoma or giant follicle lymphoma which is classified as Stage I should be considered for surgical attempts at eradication of the disease. The results of surgical treatment are best if the disease is confined to the stomach or the superficial nodes in the cervical region. This approach is based on the concept that the disease in question originates in one focus. Reports of the results obtained with surgical treatment of all diseases of the lymphoma group¹⁸ suggest that a radical surgical approach may be justified in selected patients. The results reported in 55 patients treated in this manner indicate a median survival time of over five years and relatively frequent survival of eight to ten years in all types of lymphoma. The average survival time of these diseases treated by other methods is probably two or three years. The results of surgical treatment are difficult to evaluate because the surgically treated group is a selected one in which the disease appeared localized and includes no instances of extensive disease which might be expected to have a poor prognosis. Nevertheless the frequency of long term survival in patients with lymphosarcoma of the gastrointestinal tract treated by surgical methods with or without irradiation indicates that in some patients at least the disease tends to remain localized for relatively long periods.^{9, 64} In such a situation the disease is amenable to surgical treatment. An attempt at surgical cure appears to be a more logical approach for reticulum cell sarcoma lymphosarcoma and giant follicle lymphoma than for Hodgkin's disease but it has been recommended in selected cases of Hodgkin's disease.¹¹

Whether or not a surgical cure is attempted in a patient who is classified as Stage I an intensive course of irradiation is given. Patients with Hodgkin's disease receive 3000 to 3500 r tumor dose in two or three weeks the half value layer depending on the location of the lesion. Patients with lymphosarcoma and reticulum cell sarcoma are given 4000 to 5000 r tumor dose in four to six weeks if possible.⁹ Blocks of tissue that include the lymphatic chain for a generous distance beyond the obvious involvement are irradiated. Whether or not chemotherapy should be administered routinely because of the possibility that the disease is present in other parts of the body is still undetermined. It is not our policy to administer chemotherapy routinely.

Patients with masses in the superior mediastinum compression of the spinal cord or involvement of the central nervous system are treated cautiously and kept under close supervision. Serious consequences may follow any increase in pressure in the lesion or adjacent tissues that occurs as a reaction to treatment. When a lesion of this type is irradiated only small dosage is employed. A steroid drug is often given in this situation in an effort to reduce or prevent the inflammatory reaction in the lesion that is sometimes produced by irradiation. The use of nitrogen mustard or TEM has been recommended in these situations because of the belief that the effects of these chemicals are different from those of x rays and induce regression of the lesion without producing active congestion or edema.⁹ However at least one patient with Hodgkin's disease who had signs and symptoms of spinal cord compression developed temporary paraplegia twice after courses of nitrogen mustard.³⁹ No form of treatment eliminates the need for caution and careful observation in patients of this type during the initial stages of therapy.

Prognosis

The survival time in patients with Hodgkin's disease who are treated varies from a few months to more than twenty years.³ The outlook is poorest in Hodgkin's sarcoma where the average survival time has been found to be about one year.^{16, 17} Even in this type of disease survivals of ten and twenty years have been reported.¹⁵ The prognosis is better in the other types of Hodgkin's disease and the average survival time is from 2.5 to 3.2 years.^{18, 19, 1}

Jackson and Parker recognized three different types of Hodgkin's disease histologically—paragranuloma (10 per cent) granuloma (78 per cent) and sarcoma (12 per cent). They reported a relationship between the prognosis and the histologic appearance of the lesion. The prognosis was best in patients with paragranuloma and poorest in those with sarcoma.⁹ Some authors have agreed with this opinion and others have considered this viewpoint true in general but not applicable to the individual patient.¹⁸ When no distinction has been made between the histologic types of Hodgkin's disease the five year survival has been reported to be 10 per cent,⁹ 17 per cent³⁴ and 23.6 per cent.³ A ten year survival rate of 13.9 per cent has been reported.¹ The prognosis is less favorable in patients who have a generalized form of disease,^{11, 10} fever,³⁶ leukocytosis,^{38, 34} anemia,⁴⁶ and rapid recurrences after therapy.¹⁰ The sex of the patient has little influence on the prognosis.¹ Although there is no definite correlation between age and survival patients under 40 years of age appear to tolerate the disease better than older individuals.¹

It is difficult to gain an accurate picture of the prognosis in lymphosarcoma and reticulum cell sarcoma because of the different histologic and clinical classifications that have been used. In the report of Minot and Lattes the term lymphoblastoma was used to include Hodgkin's disease lymphosarcoma and other forms of sarcoma involving the lymphatic system.

obtained or undesirable depression of the bone marrow occurs. According to one schedule 25 mg is administered daily for two or three days and the maintenance dose is varied according to the initial sensitivity as judged by the effect on the leukocyte count and appetite.⁹ In the majority of patients with lymphoma the subsequent schedule of 25 or 50 mg per week is satisfactory during the initial course of therapy. However leukocyte counts are performed each week and the decision about treatment is withheld until the count is known. If the leukocyte count falls to less than 3500 per cu mm it is advisable to defer further drug administration for at least three weeks in most circumstances.

Stage III

Some patients whose disease is classified in Stage III are free of constitutional symptoms and may be managed by irradiation directed at the involved areas. Most patients in this category sooner or later develop marked constitutional symptoms and receive chemotherapy one or more times. The usual course of nitrogen mustard consists of four intravenous injections of 0.1 mg per kilo each,⁹ but a fifth dose from three to six days later has been recommended.¹¹ In order to shorten the patient's hospital stay and reduce the number of gastrointestinal reactions some physicians administer the total amount of nitrogen mustard in a single intravenous injection of 0.4 mg per kilo.⁹ Courses of nitrogen mustard are not repeated in less than six or eight weeks unless urgently needed.⁹ In the lymphomatous diseases excellent responses often follow chemotherapy and sometimes the remission persists for a year or more. Treatment of patients with advanced disease aims at palliation not cure and irradiation is employed mainly to treat lesions that are producing symptoms.

The adrenal corticosteroids are useful in the treatment of selected patients. Although the lymph nodes rarely show much decrease in size as a result of treatment with these compounds regression of splenomegaly, tumor masses and hepatomegaly has been observed in both lymphosarcoma and Hodgkin's disease.⁴⁵ More often the patient improves symptomatically. In many patients there is an improvement in appetite associated with a diminution in fever and pain and in some there is an increase in hematopoiesis.⁴⁵ These preparations are particularly useful in patients who develop thrombocytopenic purpura or hemolytic anemia. When one of the steroid drugs is given in addition to more specific measures to patients with lymphoma who have autoimmune hemolytic anemia an excellent response can be expected in about one half the patients; in about 15 per cent the response is poor.³⁹

Splenectomy is sometimes performed on selected patients with these diseases when severe leukopenia, thrombocytopenia or hemolytic anemia occurs and fails to respond to other measures. The procedure appears to be particularly effective in patients with giant follicle lymphoma.¹⁴ The response to splenectomy in patients with lymphoma who have autoimmune hemolytic anemia is unpredictable; probably less than half of such patients respond to this procedure but in some the results are excellent.³⁹

interpreted as "hyperplastic lymph node." Two months later the patient developed night sweats pleural effusion and ascites. A repeat biopsy of a cervical node at this time was interpreted as "Hodgkin's disease."

During the next 12 years the patient received therapy at intervals that varied from six months to three years. She was usually treated with high voltage radiation but at various times was treated with nitrogen mustard, TEM and chlorambucil. On nine occasions courses of x ray therapy were given to the mediastinum spleen and various superficial nodes. During all this time she was managed on an ambulatory basis and led an active life.

In the spring of 1958 the patient developed anemia (hematocrit of 27 per cent) thrombocytopenia (platelet count 20 000 to 40 000 per cu mm) and leukopenia (white cells 1000 to 1500 per cu mm). It was thought that the pancytopenia was the result of splenomegaly associated with Hodgkin's disease or a combination of this factor and the effect of treatment on her bone marrow. She was treated with prednisone frequent transfusions and small doses of chlorambucil and was only slightly incapacitated until October 1958. At this time she was admitted to the hospital with a history of severe frontal and occipital headache of eight days duration. Six days prior to admission she noticed ecchymoses around the eyes and complained of diplopia. She also reported transient weakness and numbness of the left hand and wrist. The hematocrit was 21 per cent white count 1400 per cu mm and platelets 3000 per cu mm. Marked weight loss was apparent. It was thought that the patient had advanced Hodgkin's disease and that she had suffered an intracranial hemorrhage because of the thrombocytopenia. When lumbar puncture was performed the opening pressure was found to be 600 mm. The fluid contained 250 red cells and 80 neutrophils per cu mm. The spinal fluid protein was 10 and the sugar was 48. Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid revealed numerous *Torula* organisms. Despite treatment with prednisone amphotericin B and other measures the patient's condition deteriorated rapidly, generalized convulsions developed and she died a few days later twelve years and two months after the onset of the first symptoms.

Postmortem examination revealed splenomegaly and enlargement of the lymph nodes. The presence of Hodgkin's disease was identified in the lymph nodes. However the striking finding was the severe generalized systemic infestation with *Torula* organisms which were present throughout the lungs kidneys brain and meninges.

Comment. This patient is somewhat unusual in that she survived for over twelve years with Hodgkin's disease. She responded well to different forms of treatment on numerous occasions even though the disease was generalized when first diagnosed. She illustrates the fact that generalized disease at onset does not necessarily mean a poor prognosis. As sometimes happens in diseases of the lymphoma group the initial node biopsy did not reveal the diagnosis. The final episode was generalized torulosis with meningitis. Death appeared to be due to this infection rather than the progression of the Hodgkin's disease. Torulosis which is not an uncommon development

The duration of disease in this series of 163 patients who were not treated with irradiation was 2.45 years.⁴³ In lymphosarcoma the average survival time has been reported to be 2.3 years ("lymphoblastic lymphoma" 1.4 years "lymphocytic lymphoma" 3.3 years)¹⁶ 1.5 years⁹ and 2.3 years.⁴² The five year survival rate has been found to be 26.3 per cent¹⁰ and 19 per cent. In one series the ten year survival rate was 17 per cent.⁶ In a series of 182 patients with "lymphosarcoma" (a diagnosis that included "lymphoblastic" "lymphocytic" "clasmatocytic" and "reticulum cell" sarcoma) the five year survival rate was 24 per cent.⁴ In the group of 95 patients with disease largely confined to the peripheral lymph nodes the mean duration of illness was 2.8 ± 0.3 years and the five year survival rate was 23.2 per cent. In a group of 52 patients whose clinical manifestations were caused mainly by masses in the thorax or abdomen the mean duration was 1.4 ± 0.2 years and the five year survival was 19 per cent. In a special group of 44 patients with clinical evidence of disease limited to one organ (gastrointestinal tract oropharynx skin bone) the mean duration of illness was 3.4 years and the five year survival rate was 38.6 per cent.⁴¹ Average survival times of 1.8 years⁴ and 1.9 years ("stem cell lymphoma" and "clasmatocytic lymphoma")¹⁶ have been reported in reticulum cell sarcoma.

It is generally agreed that giant follicle lymphoma has a better prognosis than the other diseases in the lymphoma group. Average survival times of 3.5 years,⁵ 5.6 years¹⁰ and 6.0 years¹ and a mean duration of 4.4 ± 0.5 years¹ have been reported. Five year survival rates of 50 per cent¹⁷ and 45.8 per cent¹¹ and ten year survival rates of 11 per cent¹ and 8.3 per cent¹¹ have been reported.

It is virtually impossible to predict accurately the survival time of an individual patient. In general the prognosis is best when the disease is apparently limited to a group of superficial lymph nodes and is unaccompanied by constitutional symptoms such as fever sweating fatigue weight loss changes in the peripheral blood or splenomegaly. Although exceptions occur patients with generalized disease especially those with constitutional symptoms and marked changes in the peripheral blood have a worse prognosis. Patients with lymphosarcoma confined to the stomach who are treated surgically with or without irradiation have a better than average prognosis.¹ In the other types of lymphoma it has not been shown that therapy prolongs life significantly^{18, 43} although it appears to be life saving in certain patients.

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Hodgkin's Disease

This patient was 21 years old in 1946 when it was noted that her abdomen did not return to normal size following delivery of a normal child. One month later she was found to have enlargement of the inguinal nodes cervical nodes and right axillary nodes. Biopsy of a lymph node at this time was

interpreted as "hyperplastic lymph node." Two months later the patient developed night sweats, pleural effusion and ascites. A repeat biopsy of a cervical node at this time was interpreted as "Hodgkin's disease."

During the next 12 years the patient received therapy at intervals that varied from six months to three years. She was usually treated with high voltage radiation but at various times was treated with nitrogen mustard, TEM and chlorambucil. On nine occasions courses of x-ray therapy were given to the mediastinum, spleen and various superficial nodes. During all this time she was managed on an ambulatory basis and led an active life.

In the spring of 1958 the patient developed anemia (hematocrit of 27 per cent), thrombocytopenia (platelet count 20,000 to 40,000 per cu mm) and leukopenia (white cells 1000 to 1500 per cu mm). It was thought that the pancytopenia was the result of splenomegaly associated with Hodgkin's disease or a combination of this factor and the effect of treatment on her bone marrow. She was treated with prednisone, frequent transfusions and small doses of chlorambucil and was only slightly incapacitated until October 1958. At this time she was admitted to the hospital with a history of severe frontal and occipital headache of eight days duration. Six days prior to admission she noticed ecchymoses around the eyes and complained of diplopia. She also reported transient weakness and numbness of the left hand and wrist. The hematocrit was 21 per cent, white count 1400 per cu mm and platelets 3000 per cu mm. Marked weight loss was apparent. It was thought that the patient had advanced Hodgkin's disease and that she had suffered an intracranial hemorrhage because of the thrombocytopenia. When lumbar puncture was performed the opening pressure was found to be 600 mm. The fluid contained 250 red cells and 60 neutrophils per cu mm. The spinal fluid protein was 10 and the sugar was 48. Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid revealed numerous *Torula* organisms. Despite treatment with prednisone, amphotericin B and other measures the patient's condition deteriorated rapidly, generalized convulsions developed and she died a few days later, twelve years and two months after the onset of the first symptoms.

Postmortem examination revealed splenomegaly and enlargement of the lymph nodes. The presence of Hodgkin's disease was identified in the lymph nodes. However the striking finding was the severe generalized systemic infestation with *Torula* organisms which were present throughout the lungs, kidneys, brain and meninges.

Comment. This patient is somewhat unusual in that she survived for over twelve years with Hodgkin's disease. She responded well to different forms of treatment on numerous occasions even though the disease was generalized when first diagnosed. She illustrates the fact that generalized disease at onset does not necessarily mean a poor prognosis. As sometimes happens in diseases of the lymphoma group the initial node biopsy did not reveal the diagnosis. The final episode was generalized torulosis with meningitis; death appeared to be due to this infection rather than the progression of the Hodgkin's disease. Torulosis which is not an uncommon development

in patients with lymphoma was apparently present in this patient for some months without being recognized

Reticulum Cell Sarcoma

This 53 year old white male reactor was admitted to the hospital three weeks after an attack of "flu" that was characterized by malaise and mild fever. Two weeks prior to admission he developed progressive dyspnea. He was found to have a right hydrothorax and thoracentesis was performed on several occasions with removal of 1 to 1.5 liters of fluid. Because the fluid reaccumulated rapidly he was referred to the hospital for study.

Physical examination revealed the signs of hydrothorax on the right. In addition the right axillary nodes measured 2 to 3 cm and the left axillary nodes measured 1 to 2 cm. Examination of the cell blocks prepared from pleural fluid was inconclusive on several occasions. Biopsy of an axillary lymph node revealed lymphosarcoma. The remainder of the physical and laboratory examinations were normal.

This patient received a course of x ray therapy totalling 1800 r to each side of the chest in August 1949. In addition he received 0.4 mg per kilogram of nitrogen mustard intravenously. He responded well symptomatically but irradiation was necessary in August 1950 in October 1950 and again in September 1951. Nitrogen mustard was administered in August 1952 and in September 1952. In the fall of 1952 cortisone was administered.

At the end of January 1953 the cervical and submental lymph nodes enlarged rapidly, the appetite failed and the patient lost weight and was readmitted to the hospital. Examination disclosed generalized enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes, right and left hydrothorax, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly and numerous other intra abdominal masses. The hemoglobin was 6 gm per 100 ml, the red count was 2.0 per cu mm, the white count was 2800 per cu mm and the differential count was normal. The blood urea nitrogen was 100 mg per 100 ml. Other laboratory studies were essentially normal. Despite treatment with transfusions and other measures the patient's condition deteriorated steadily and he died three weeks after admission, three and one half years after the onset of his symptoms. It was thought that the terminal episode was pneumonia.

Postmortem examination revealed large retroperitoneal tumors which were obstructing the ureters. There was generalized enlargement of the lymph nodes, liver and spleen. Areas of tumor were present in the kidneys, ribs, lungs and vertebrae. Areas of pneumonia were present in both lungs. The bone marrow was partly fatty but areas of hyperplasia were present. The final diagnosis at autopsy was reticulum cell sarcoma.

Comment. This case illustrates many of the usual features of the lymphoma. The disease first appeared in middle age. Several regions were involved when the patient first consulted his physician. Histologic study of the pleural fluid did not establish a diagnosis but a diagnosis of lymphosarcoma was made on a biopsy of an axillary lymph node. The patient's disease responded well to irradiation and nitrogen mustard for several years.

However in the last few months of his life the tumor progressed rapidly and his illness terminated with an episode of pneumonia. The initial biopsy was interpreted as lymphosarcoma and at autopsy a diagnosis of "reticulum cell sarcoma" was made. Distinction between the two is often difficult and at times the biopsy diagnosis differs from the autopsy diagnosis even when the sections are reviewed by the same pathologist as was true in this patient. Fortunately such differences in diagnosis usually have little effect on the management of the patient.

Giant Follicular Lymphoblastoma

This 54 year old white housewife consulted her physician in November 1957 because of an enlarged lymph node in the left side of the neck. The patient reported that six months earlier she had noticed the transient enlargement of a node in the left supraclavicular area at the time of an upper respiratory infection. Swelling of the node recurred several months later during an attack of "bronchitis." The enlargement again subsided but reappeared a month prior to examination and persisted during the interval. Physical examination revealed moderately firm nodes that measured 1 to 2 cm. in the left submandibular area, left supraclavicular area, left axilla and right inguinal area. The remainder of the physical examination was normal. Urinalysis, hematocrit, leukocyte count and differential leukocyte count were normal. A left supraclavicular node was excised for study and was reported to be "giant follicular lymphoblastoma."

The patient received no treatment but felt well until November 1958 when she had an episode characterized by fever, malaise and abdominal discomfort. The fever subsided and she improved somewhat but continued to have abdominal distention, mild right lower quadrant pain, and irregular attacks of mild diarrhea. During this time she noted progressive weakness but lost no weight. The physical examination appeared unchanged but the leukocyte count increased gradually until March, 1959 when it was 22,600 per cu. mm. At the same time the hematocrit was 37 per cent. Roentgenographic studies of the chest, stomach, small bowel and colon were all considered to be normal. Because of her continued symptoms she was referred to the University Hospital.

At the time of admission a moderately firm, slightly tender, ill defined mass was palpable in the right lower quadrant. Moderately firm lymph nodes that measured 2 cm. in diameter were felt beneath the left mandible, in the left supraclavicular area, and in both axillary and inguinal regions. The liver and spleen were not palpable. The remainder of the examination was non-contributory.

Laboratory examinations: hematocrit 37 per cent, white count 22,000 per cu. mm., differential count (per cent): bands 6, segmented 76, lymphocytes 16, monocytes 1, eosinophils 1. The platelets were 374,000 per cu. mm. Urinalysis was normal. Bone marrow examination revealed marked generalized hyperplasia.

Laparotomy was performed because it was thought that the mass in the

right lower quadrant was a tumor of lymphomatous origin probably Hodgkin's disease. At operation it was found that the mass that had been palpated consisted entirely of omentum. Both the colon and small intestine were free of obstruction. However, greatly enlarged lymph nodes were found in the root of the mesentery and in the periaortic area. Histologic study of the omental mass revealed chronic inflammation and a lymph node biopsy was interpreted as Hodgkin's disease.

The patient's postoperative course was uneventful. She was treated with irradiation to the abdominal areas and two months later was given a course of nitrogen mustard intravenously 0.4 mg per kilo of body weight.

Comment. This patient's course illustrates the transformation of the histologic picture of giant follicular lymphoblastoma or Brill-Symmers' disease into that of Hodgkin's disease. Although some patients with giant follicular lymphoblastoma follow a relatively benign course for many years, not infrequently the clinical manifestations of the disease change when the histologic picture alters to that of Hodgkin's disease, lymphosarcoma, or lymphocytic leukemia. When the diagnosis of giant follicular lymphoblastoma is made, the patient is usually treated with irradiation or chemotherapy as is customary with the other diseases in this group. When the diagnosis of Hodgkin's disease was made in this patient, she was treated with irradiation to the abdominal region because of the major involvement of this area and with an alkylating agent because of the widespread nature of the disease.

Lymphosarcoma

This 65-year-old white saleslady was well until December 1955 when she noticed small purpuric lesions on the palms of the hands. During the next month the cutaneous lesions increased and became generalized. These lesions persisted and during the following six weeks the patient noticed cramping pains and edema in the legs, mild anorexia, and weight loss of 10 pounds. She was admitted to the hospital on March 17, 1956.

Physical Examination. Signs of hydrothorax were present bilaterally. The spleen was palpable three fingerbreadths below the left costal margin and multiple orange-sized masses were palpable throughout the abdomen. Pitting edema was present in both legs. The trunk, back, and upper arms were covered with maculopapular hemorrhagic rash. The remainder of the examination was essentially normal.

Laboratory Examination. Hematocrit, white count, differential count, urinalysis, blood urea, stool examination, and prothrombin times were normal. Roentgenogram of the chest revealed small bilateral pleural effusions. Bone marrow examination disclosed the normoblastic type of erythropoiesis associated with a moderate increase in lymphocytes, a pattern that was thought to be consistent with lymphosarcoma or lymphocytic leukemia. Biopsy of an axillary lymph node was diagnosed as "lymphosarcoma."

Course. She was treated with a total of 12.5 mg of TEM in three doses and was discharged from the hospital. She was readmitted three weeks after

the last dose of TEM and four weeks after the first dose with a four day history of fever unproductive cough pain in the left chest and dyspnea. The intra abdominal masses had become much smaller and the skin lesions had cleared almost completely. On admission the hematocrit was 35 per cent, white count 250 per cu mm and the platelet count 136 000 per cu mm. Thoracentesis was performed on several occasions and penicillin was administered because of the granulocytopenia and pneumonia. She improved promptly and ten days after admission the white count had risen to 2200 per cu mm. One month later two months after the last dose of TEM the hematocrit was 40 per cent the white count 4000 per cu mm. and the differential count was normal.

The patient was largely asymptomatic and received no treatment for a year when enlargement of the supraclavicular lymph nodes and intra abdominal nodes recurred. The patient was given 5 mg of TEM and developed nausea, vomiting and diarrhea despite the fact that she had taken chlorpromazine before the TEM. The patient's abdominal nodes decreased in size remarkably. The patient felt well for five months at which time the superficial and intra abdominal lymph nodes again increased in size. At this time a prolonged course of TEM consisting of a total of 57.5 mg was administered over a six month period. At the end of this time the axillary and supraclavicular nodes measured about 2 cm in diameter the intra abdominal masses remained but the patient was largely asymptomatic and continued to work.

Five months after her last dose of TEM (eighteen months after her first admission) swelling of the legs and marked enlargement of the superficial and intra abdominal nodes recurred. Treatment with chlorambucil 6 mg a day was started when the leukocyte count was 3000 per cu mm. One month later there was less swelling in the abdomen the superficial nodes were no longer enlarged the intra abdominal masses appeared smaller and the dose of chlorambucil was reduced to 4 mg per day. Two months after beginning chlorambucil no enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes could be detected and the intra abdominal masses were just palpable. Four and a half months after chlorambucil was started the patient reported that she was entirely asymptomatic. Examination at this time revealed no enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes liver spleen or any detectable intra abdominal masses. This excellent remission lasted for six months without further treatment.

Comment The course of the lymphosarcoma in this patient illustrates many instructive features (1) the onset with skin lesions and generalized involvement of the lymph nodes (2) the decision to treat the patient with an alkylating agent rather than irradiation because of the widespread distribution of the disease (3) the occurrence of severe granulocytopenia three to four weeks after the administration of TEM (4) the excellent remissions obtained with small amounts of TEM early in the course of the disease (5) the variable incidence of toxic manifestations after administration of different amounts of this drug (6) the increasing resistance of the

lymphosarcoma to TEM (7) the excellent remission obtained with chlorambucil after the patient had become resistant to TEM (8) the time required to obtain the remission with chlorambucil (four and one half months) (9) the relatively good prognosis of some patients with lymphosarcoma that is already widespread when the patient is first seen

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

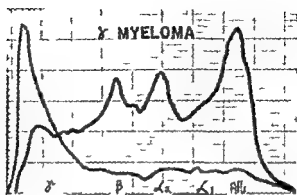
Multiple myeloma is an unusual and interesting disease in many respects. The symptomatology is extremely varied and striking abnormalities are often apparent on the physical and roentgenologic examinations. The introduction of the needle aspiration of the bone marrow has made the tumor cells easily available for histologic study and a number of different cellular abnormalities have been observed. The disease has been of wide interest to investigators because it is characterized by a number of metabolic disturbances particularly in protein metabolism. Although multiple myeloma is a rare disease it is important because a better understanding of the abnormalities in protein metabolism that occur in this disease will probably contribute to a better understanding of normal protein metabolism and antibody formation.

HISTORICAL

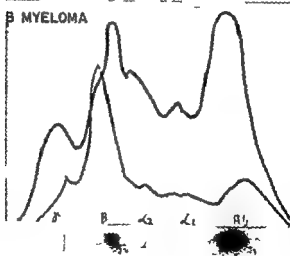
Multiple myeloma was first reported in 1847 in a tradesman who presented with "mollities ossium" (soft bones) and urine containing large quantities of animal matter. The patient was studied by Drs MacIntyre and Watson and a urine specimen was sent to Dr Henry Bence Jones who described the peculiar characteristics of the unusual protein found in the urine.⁶ The protein which he described is still known as Bence Jones protein. The name multiple myeloma was given to the disorder by von Rustizky in 1873.¹⁴ Prior to 1900 it was thought that different cellular types were responsible for the tumor in different individuals. In 1900 Dr James H Wright established that the myeloma cell is related to the plasma cell and concluded that the neoplasm arises from an abnormal proliferation of these cells.⁹ These conclusions have been confirmed many times particularly since the introduction of marrow aspiration by Arinkin in 1929.⁶

PATHOGENESIS AND PATHOLOGIC PHYSIOLOGY

Multiple myeloma is considered to be a malignant neoplasm that arises in the bone marrow and involves the skeleton primarily. The clinical features



A



B

Fig. 61 Paper electrophoresis of serum and urine in multiple myeloma. In A the abnormal protein is found in the urine but is not apparent in serum. In B the abnormal protein is found in both the urine and the serum.

of the disease are attributable to the location of the tumor and to abnormalities in protein metabolism. While multiple myeloma appears to be primarily a widespread disorder of the bone marrow, solitary osseous tumors and extraskeletal nests of myeloma cells are found occasionally. Whether these lesions are metastatic from some skeletal site or arise from precursors in situ in response to some stimulus is unknown.⁴⁰ A tumor which has many of the characteristics of multiple myeloma has been established in a strain of mice. Studies of the behavior and metabolic characteristics of this tumor will probably give additional information about multiple myeloma in man.⁴¹ Multiple myeloma has also been studied in tissue culture.⁴ These studies provide evidence that both Bence Jones protein and gamma globulin are produced by myeloma cells grown in vitro.

Myeloma cells are apparently responsible for the production of the abnormal proteins that are found in the serum and urine of patients with the disease. Recent evidence indicates that the abnormal urinary and serum proteins that occur in any one case of multiple myeloma are separate and distinct from all other myeloma proteins as well as from the normal serum proteins.⁴²⁻⁴⁴ The most common protein abnormalities are the occurrences of Bence Jones protein, a marked increase in the gamma globulin and the occasional presence of cryoglobulin. Less often a form of primary amyloidosis is seen.

The Bence Jones protein in the urine is not a derivative of the abnormal serum proteins but is formed *de novo* in the body from amino acid precursors at a rate that exceeds the rate of production of the abnormal serum proteins. As much as 20 or 30 gm. of Bence Jones protein may be excreted in the urine each day. When it is recalled that from 70 to 90 gm. of protein is available in the daily diet of the adult, it is apparent that the amount excreted as Bence Jones protein constitutes a considerable diversion of protein from the usual metabolic needs. This remarkable excretion of protein continues independently of any exogenous source of protein.⁴⁵ The prolonged excretion of Bence Jones protein in the urine may produce renal insufficiency. Apparently the protein is not specifically toxic to the renal tissue but is precipitated in the tubular lumen and in this way it leads to the eventual loss of the proximal nephron unit.⁴⁶ Vacuolization and precipitation of protein have been observed within the tubular epithelium⁴⁷ and it has been suggested that these tubular lesions may be the cause of renal tubular reabsorption defects like those of the adult Fanconi syndrome.⁴⁸ For some obscure reason nitrogen retention which results from renal lesions in multiple myeloma is rarely accompanied by the hypertension usually seen in other forms of renal disease severe enough to produce azotemia.

As a result of the increased production of protein the level of the serum protein, particularly the globulin fraction, is usually increased in multiple myeloma. The increase usually involves the gamma globulin but in some instances the alpha and beta fractions are most affected. Despite the large amount of gamma globulin that is often present in the circulating blood these patients are usually able to respond with only a poor antibody response to

antigenic challenge.⁶⁰ It is not known whether this deficiency is the result of the diversion of protein needed for antibody formation into other channels or of a disorganization of antibody formation in the plasma cells. The increased susceptibility of patients with multiple myeloma to pulmonary infection may be a consequence of the increase in serum protein which causes an increase in the blood viscosity and leads to thrombosis of the small pulmonary vessels. Pulmonary infection is also favored by the subnormal antibody response and the decreased pulmonary ventilation that is secondary to painful fractures of the ribs or vertebrae.⁶⁰

Another example of the profound alteration in protein metabolism in this disease is the occasional occurrence in the serum of a cold precipitable globulin. This protein known as cryoglobulin is found most often in multiple myeloma but may also occur in other diseases. When it is present in large quantities the cryoglobulin may precipitate in the blood in areas of lower temperature such as the ears, nose, fingers or toes and in this way produce thrombosis, ulceration or gangrene. Raynaud's phenomenon may occur in these circumstances.⁶¹ As the amount of cryoglobulin increases the critical temperature rises with the result that precipitation sometimes occurs in deeper structures in the body.

An unusual abnormality of protein metabolism, a form of amyloidosis is seen in approximately 5 or 10 per cent of the patients with multiple myeloma.⁶²⁻⁶⁵ The distribution of amyloid material is similar to that seen in primary amyloidosis. It has been found in the bones, voluntary muscles, skin, liver, spleen, gastrointestinal tract, adrenal glands, kidneys, tongue, heart and synovial tissues. In the latter circumstance clinical features that resemble rheumatoid arthritis may occur.

Hypercalcemia is not unusual in multiple myeloma.^{66-68, 80-82} It may occur as the result of hyperproteinemia which affords the plasma a greater calcium binding capacity or is the result of bone destruction with a release of more calcium into the blood than can be excreted by the kidneys. The decreased renal function often found in multiple myeloma may also contribute to the hypercalcemia.⁶⁷ Serum calcium levels as high as 10 or 18 mg per 100 ml occur without any significant disturbance in the levels of the serum phosphorus or alkaline phosphatase. Gastrointestinal dysfunction, weakness, anapathia, polydipsia and polyuria are found in association with moderate increases of serum calcium while very high levels of serum calcium may lead to vascular collapse and death.⁶⁷

The anemia in multiple myeloma is due mainly, if not entirely, to decreased erythropoiesis. It is interesting that a disease characterized by such marked disturbance of protein metabolism is so rarely associated with the autoimmune type of hemolytic anemia.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Multiple myeloma occurs in all races and is about twice as common in males as in females.⁸³ Prior to the introduction of sternal biopsy, it was re-

ported to constitute 0.03 per cent of all malignancies.⁴ It is characteristically a disease of older persons. The disease has been reported in patients less than 20 years of age⁶⁶ but 95 per cent of the patients in one series were over the age of 40 years.⁶⁹ In a group of 50 patients reviewed by the authors all were past 40 years of age and 80 per cent were over 50 years of age.⁶⁹

The commonest presenting symptom is pain which occurs some time during the course of the disease in nearly all patients. Unfortunately it is often disabling and difficult to control. The pain is due to involvement of the bones and to pressure on the adjacent nerves. Compression fractures of vertebrae which occur in about one half of the patients are most likely to be found in the upper lumbar and lower dorsal vertebrae.⁶⁴ ⁴ ⁶⁹ Pathologic fractures of the ribs are common and fractures of the femur, sternum, ilium, humerus, clavicle, and pubic bones are not rare. In some patients the discomfort is mild and poorly localized but in others the occurrence of a fracture is accompanied by the sudden onset of severe girdle like pain in the chest or abdomen. Pain with and without fracture occurs commonly in the hips, legs, shoulders, and arms but is rare in the neck and head. At times pain is not a prominent feature and the history is mainly that of recurring attacks of fever or pneumonia. The diagnosis of such episodes may be puzzling if other manifestations of multiple myeloma are not evident. Attacks of this nature which were seen in 50 per cent of one series are most likely to occur in patients with greatly elevated serum globulin levels.⁴ ⁶⁹ Whether these transient pulmonary manifestations are episodes of pulmonary infarction or pneumonia is uncertain. The clinical picture is usually that of fever, cough, mucopurulent sputum, and roentgenologic evidence of patchy infiltration in the lungs.

The frequent occurrence of radicular pain and evidence of cord compression in multiple myeloma is well known but the occurrence of peripheral neuritis without compression is not so widely recognized. The frequency of all types of neurologic involvement in multiple myeloma has been placed at 10 per cent,⁸ 14 per cent,⁶⁴ 18 per cent,⁸ and 40 per cent.⁴ ⁶⁹ In the last series cord compression with or without paraplegia was seen in about 14 per cent of the patients, all of whom had roentgenologic evidence of compression fracture of the spine. Thirty per cent of those with neurologic manifestations evidenced involvement of the spinal roots or peripheral nerves in the absence of vertebral collapse. Involvement of a nerve was manifested by radicular pain or other evidence of peripheral neuritis such as foot drop, hypesthesia, paraesthesia, weakness, or muscular atrophy. Cranial nerve involvement appears to be unusual.

Renal insufficiency occurs not infrequently in multiple myeloma and may dominate the clinical picture.⁶⁴ ⁶ ⁸ ⁶⁹ Renal failure which is secondary to involvement of the kidney by the disease is unusual in the absence of Bence Jones proteinuria.⁶⁹ Hypertension is usually absent in these cases even when severe azotemia is present. The occurrence of azotemia without hypertension should arouse the suspicion of multiple myeloma.

Other less common manifestations of multiple myeloma are psychotic episodes often associated with marked elevation of the serum calcium, arthri-

is associated with deposits of amyloid in synovial membranes and the presence of palpable tumors overlying the involved bones

Significant loss of weight during the course of the disease was observed in 63 per cent of one series⁸

Physical examination may disclose nothing more than is usually found in patients of the same age group. Probably the most frequent finding is tenderness on pressure over the areas of osseous involvement. Palpation should be gentle in these patients. One of the authors once had the experience of producing a fracture of the sternum while testing for sternal tenderness and then produced another in the humerus when he helped the patient change position. Among the commonest signs on physical examination are those associated with compression of the spinal cord and involvement of the peripheral nerves. Palpable tumor masses are seen in a minority of patients and then usually only in the later stages of the disease.⁹¹ Moderate enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes is seen frequently. Palpable enlargement of the liver occurs in from 11 to 40 per cent of the patients and in from 2 to 25 per cent the spleen is moderately enlarged.⁸⁹

Abnormalities of the skeleton that are demonstrable by x ray constitute one of the most characteristic features of multiple myeloma. The most typical changes are the presence of multiple clearly defined punched out lesions



Fig. 65 Roentgenogram of a patient with multiple myeloma showing the characteristic "punched out" lesions

that involve several different bones (Fig 65) The size of the lesions varies from a diameter of 1 or 2 mm to areas as large as 10 to 12 cm the lesions are characterized by the absence of any osteoblastic reaction⁸² In some patients such definite lesions are absent and roentgenograms show only generalized demineralization similar to that seen in senile or postmenopausal osteoporosis In both types of lesions pathologic fractures particularly compression fractures of the vertebral bodies are common Since the advent of sternil puncture and more detailed study of the plasma proteins as diagnostic measures it has become evident that some patients perhaps 5 to 12 per cent with undoubted myeloma have no demonstrable abnormalities in the roentgenograms at the time the diagnosis is made^{61 7 80 89 90} Demonstrable lesions occur most commonly in the spine ribs sternum and clavicle lesions of the skull extremities pelvic girdle and shoulder girdle occur about half as often^{4 82} Lesions of the mandible occur less often

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Many abnormalities occur in the peripheral blood in patients with multiple myeloma Anemia is one of the commonest features and is rarely absent throughout the course of the disease In one series the hemoglobin ranged from 8 to 10 gm per 100 ml and the erythrocyte count ranged from 2 to 4 mil per cu mm⁸⁹ The anemia is usually normocytic but when severe it may be macrocytic The leukocyte count is usually normal but in one large series 20 per cent of the patients had leukocytosis and 40 per cent had leukopenia⁸⁸ Examination of a smear of the peripheral blood may suggest the diagnosis because of the presence of rouleau formation or plasma cells or other abnormal mononuclear cells that resemble the abnormal cells found in the bone marrow These cells may become so numerous in the peripheral blood that a diagnosis of "plasma cell leukemia" is made Normoblasts and myelocytes appear in the peripheral blood not infrequently but are most likely to be seen in the advanced stage of the disease The platelet count is normal in most patients but thrombocytopenia has been reported to occur in about 25 per cent⁸⁹

Examination of bone marrow obtained by aspiration reveals a diagnostic or suspicious cell pattern in approximately 80 per cent of the cases of multiple myeloma⁹ The most characteristic finding is the presence of "myeloma" cells which may constitute from 4 to 98 per cent of the cells present^{67 9} These cells which vary from 15 to 40 microns in diameter usually have a single eccentrically placed nucleus The chromatin pattern of the nucleus is finely divided and often contains several small nucleoli or a single large nucleolus Various types of inclusions are sometimes seen in the cytoplasm of myeloma cells Some cells appear vacuolated (Mott cell) and others contain protein particles that are thought to originate in the cell One such protein forms the Russell bodies which appear eosinophilic with Wright's stain and sometimes resemble whole erythrocytes or fragments of erythrocytes Other cells contain protein particles and have a bluish color when stained with Wright's stain and still others contain definite protein



Figure 66 A and B Plasma cells containing Mott bodies bone marrow aspiration multiple myeloma.

crystals. In many patients the typical "myeloma" cells are not seen but instead there is a large increase in cells that appear to be mature plasma cells. It is extremely rare for such cells to constitute more than 30 or 40 per cent of the total cells in the marrow in any disease other than multiple myeloma. Less pronounced increases in the marrow plasma cells occur in a number of disorders such as hypersensitivity states, collagen diseases, disseminated carcinomatosis, chronic infection (particularly the granulomatous types) and cirrhosis of the liver.^{68, 69, 77, 78, 79} Multinucleated plasma cells are seen commonly both in myeloma and in other disorders.

A serum protein abnormality that is demonstrable by electrophoresis

that involve several different bones (Fig 65). The size of the lesions varies from a diameter of 1 or 2 mm to areas as large as 10 to 12 cm. The lesions are characterized by the absence of any osteoblastic reaction.⁶⁰ In some patients such definite lesions are absent and roentgenograms show only generalized demineralization similar to that seen in senile or postmenopausal osteoporosis. In both types of lesions pathologic fractures, particularly compression fractures of the vertebral bodies, are common. Since the advent of sternal puncture and more detailed study of the plasma proteins as diagnostic measures it has become evident that some patients, perhaps 5 to 12 per cent with undoubted myeloma, have no demonstrable abnormalities in the roentgenograms at the time the diagnosis is made.⁶¹⁻⁷⁰ Demonstrable lesions occur most commonly in the spine, ribs, sternum, and clavicle. Lesions of the skull, extremities, pelvic girdle, and shoulder girdle occur about half as often.⁷¹⁻⁸² Lesions of the mandible occur less often.

LABORATORY EXAMINATION

Many abnormalities occur in the peripheral blood in patients with multiple myeloma. Anemia is one of the commonest features and is rarely absent throughout the course of the disease. In one series the hemoglobin ranged from 0 to 10 gm per 100 ml and the erythrocyte count ranged from 2 to 4 mil per cu mm.⁸³ The anemia is usually normocytic but when severe it may be microcytic. The leukocyte count is usually normal but in one large series 20 per cent of the patients had leukocytosis and 40 per cent had leukopenia.⁸⁴ Examination of a smear of the peripheral blood may suggest the diagnosis because of the presence of rouleau formation or plasma cells or other abnormal mononuclear cells that resemble the abnormal cells found in the bone marrow. These cells may become so numerous in the peripheral blood that a diagnosis of plasma cell leukemia is made. Normoblasts and myelocytes appear in the peripheral blood not infrequently but are most likely to be seen in the advanced stage of the disease. The platelet count is normal in most patients but thrombocytopenia has been reported to occur in about 25 per cent.⁸⁵

Examination of bone marrow obtained by aspiration reveals a diagnostic or suspicious cell pattern in approximately 80 per cent of the cases of multiple myeloma.⁸⁶ The most characteristic finding is the presence of "myeloma cells" which may constitute from 4 to 99 per cent of the cells present.⁸⁷⁻⁹⁰ These cells, which vary from 15 to 40 microns in diameter, usually have a single eccentrically placed nucleus. The chromatin pattern of the nucleus is finely divided and often contains several small nucleoli or a single large nucleolus. Various types of inclusions are sometimes seen in the cytoplasm of myeloma cells. Some cells appear vacuolated (Mott cell) and others contain protein particles that are thought to originate in the cell. One such protein forms the Russell bodies, which appear eosinophilic with Wright's stain and sometimes resemble whole erythrocytes or fragments of erythrocytes. Other cells contain protein particles and have a bluish color when stained with Wright's stain, and still others contain definite protein



Figure 66 A and B Plasma cells containing Mott bodies bone marrow aspiration multiple myeloma

crystals In many patients the typical "myeloma" cells are not seen but instead there is a large increase in cells that appear to be mature plasma cells It is extremely rare for such cells to constitute more than 30 or 40 per cent of the total cells in the marrow in any disease other than multiple myeloma Less pronounced increases in the marrow plasma cells occur in a number of disorders such as hypersensitivity states collagen diseases disseminated carcinomatosis chronic infection (particularly the granulomatous types) and cirrhosis of the liver^{68 6 7 6 91} Multinucleated plasma cells are seen commonly both in myeloma and in other disorders

A serum protein abnormality that is demonstrable by electrophoresis

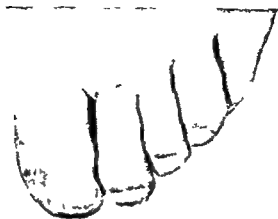


Figure 67 Purpuric lesions on toes of patient with multiple myeloma and cryoglobulinemia

occurs in about 75 per cent of patients with myeloma.⁸² An additional 18 per cent of patients who fail to show characteristic changes on serum electrophoresis have Bence Jones protein in the urine. If electrophoresis of urine protein is performed in addition to the serum electrophoresis diagnostic abnormalities are found in over 93 per cent of patients with multiple myeloma.⁸¹ In the majority of patients the abnormality consists of a sharp peak in the gamma fraction of the serum protein but occasionally the increase is found only in the alpha or beta fraction.⁸³ While a pattern of this type indicates the presence of a protein abnormality that is most likely associated with multiple myeloma, such changes are not diagnostic of multiple myeloma because they have been described in patients with lymphoma, leukemia and amyloid disease. Myeloma cannot be excluded by the occurrence of a normal electrophoretic pattern because on rare occasions a patient with multiple myeloma may have a normal serum protein pattern.^{67, 78, 83, 84} The total protein is found to be over 8.0 gm per 100 ml in about 72 per cent of patients.^{61, 69} The increase occurs in the globulin fraction which may amount to 10 or 11 gm per 100 ml. Cryoglobulinemia, the presence in the circulating blood of a globulin that precipitates at temperatures lower than 37° C, occurs in only a small percentage of patients with multiple myeloma. Multiple myeloma is probably responsible for most instances of cryoglobulinemia particularly if the globulin is present in large amounts but such globulins are not diagnostic of multiple myeloma for they occur in other diseases particularly those of the lymphoma group as well.

The protein originally described by Bence Jones is found in the urine of 40 or 50 per cent of the patients with multiple myeloma when the urine is examined in the usual fashion by differential heating and acidification. When precipitation tests and electrophoresis are employed the abnormal protein can be demonstrated in virtually every case.^{60, 83}

Other abnormalities are often found in the peripheral blood. The com

monest of these is a greatly elevated sedimentation rate which occurs in the vast majority of patients with multiple myeloma, particularly if the serum protein is increased. When rouleau formation is prominent in the blood smear the sedimentation rate is usually greatly increased. Hypercalcemia with values of 12 to 18 mg. per 100 ml. has been reported in from .0 to .9 per cent of patients.^{44, 45} Even when the calcium is markedly elevated the levels of the serum phosphorus and the alkaline phosphatase are normal or slightly elevated. As is usually true in patients with any type of chronic renal disease marked elevation of the urea nitrogen and other changes occur when renal failure develops in patients with multiple myeloma.

DIAGNOSIS

The classic case of multiple myeloma is usually recognized without difficulty. In a middle aged or elderly individual the occurrence of pain particularly radicular pain associated with compression fractures of the spine and anemia suggests the diagnosis. If an increase in the level of serum globulin and Bence Jones proteinuria are demonstrated multiple myeloma is very probable. The diagnosis is established by finding "myeloma" cells or greatly increased numbers of plasma cells in the bone marrow, the presence of a sharp gamma peak on plasma electrophoresis usually has the same significance.

When many of the commoner features of the disease are absent or when some particular manifestation dwarfs the other features the diagnosis may be more difficult. In older persons multiple myeloma must be considered in the differential diagnosis of any unexplained anemia. The diagnosis also should be considered in patients whose roentgenograms show osteoporosis or lytic lesions of the skeleton, the absence of osteoblastic changes, involvement of multiple vertebral bodies, involvement of the skull, and particularly the mandible are all points that favor the diagnosis of multiple myeloma. Some patients with multiple myeloma come under observation first because of renal insufficiency, uremia, anemia, and proteinuria, and for this reason the diagnosis should be considered in all patients with these manifestations who are middle aged or older, especially if hypertension is absent. Not infrequently the patient consults a physician because of radicular pain, paraplegia, or some other neurologic difficulty and attention may first be focused on the nervous system. Perhaps the diagnosis of multiple myeloma is most likely to be missed in patients who present with fever and roentgenologic evidence of pneumonia and in those whose complaints are particularly suggestive of peripheral neuritis or arthritis. In such patients difficulties usually arise because of the failure to consider multiple myeloma in the differential diagnosis. If multiple myeloma is present the diagnosis can nearly always be established by careful study of the bone marrow and the electrophoretic pattern of the protein in the serum and urine. All three of these examinations are usually abnormal if multiple myeloma is present, failure to find evidence of multiple myeloma in any of the three practically excludes the disease from further consideration.

COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

Multiple myeloma is a fatal disease with an average survival time of less than two years from the onset of symptoms^{64 67 74 8 81 89} The median survival time in one series was 13 months⁷⁸ and in another 15 months⁶⁴ Although some patients succumb to the disease within a few weeks after onset of symptoms others occasionally survive for eight, eleven or more years^{67 70 8} The three year survival rate appears to be only from 5 to 15 per cent^{70 78} The prognosis is better if the disease appears to be localized^{64 70} in one group of 18 such patients 10 survived for more than two years and 3 survived from 38 to 98 years⁶⁷ The status of the solitary myeloma is uncertain At best it seems to be exceedingly rare because prolonged observation of patients suspected of belonging in this category almost invariably reveals widespread disease sooner or later sometimes after six to ten years have elapsed^{64 67 74 8 80 89} The prognosis in an individual case bears little relationship to the apparent degree of maturity of the tumor cells in the marrow^{79 89} Methods of treatment so far available have had little influence on the survival rate in the disease^{64 78} but undoubtedly there are individual exceptions⁶⁷

A small percentage of patients with multiple myeloma lead active lives relatively free from symptoms for a period of years Unfortunately the vast majority have a very distressing course characterized by pain fractures disability progressive weakness and cachexia Remissions sometimes occur but these are usually short and the disease soon resumes its relentless painful and crippling course

TREATMENT

The treatment of multiple myeloma is unsatisfactory at best Non specific measures such as immobilization of fractures body braces for vertebral involvement, and analgesics for pain add greatly to the comfort of the patient If anemia is marked blood transfusions may be necessary because the anemia rarely responds to other measures Laminectomy is often necessary in patients with paraplegia and other surgical procedures may be warranted if the disease appears to be localized

The actual disease process responds poorly to more specific therapy Nitrogen mustard TEM radioactive phosphorus and stilbamidine have all proved ineffective^{6 7 9} Urethan is probably the most widely used form of treatment at the present time It is administered in a daily dose of from 2 to 5 gm for a period of six to ten weeks (total dose 90 to 300 gm)⁸⁷ or in a large initial dose of 6 gm a day for three to six days following which a maintenance dose of 3 gm daily is kept up indefinitely⁷⁸ Symptomatic improvement generally of relatively short duration probably occurs in from 20 per cent⁸ to 30 per cent⁷⁹ of the patients so treated In a smaller number of patients objective evidences of improvement such as improvement in the anemia decrease in the serum globulin and improvement in the radiologic

appearance of the bone lesions have occurred.^{6, 7} No prolongation of the survival time of patients with multiple myeloma treated with urethan has been reported.^{8, 9} Disadvantages of this form of treatment are the frequent occurrence of nausea and vomiting and the occasional development of severe leukopenia or hepatic damage.¹⁰ If prednisone or cortisone is administered along with urethan the symptomatic improvement seems to be enhanced. When given alone adrenocortical steroids usually produce but slight symptomatic improvement, but occasionally there is relief of bone pain and a decrease in the abnormal globulin component in the serum and urine.¹¹

Röntgen irradiation has an important place in the treatments of some patients with multiple myeloma. When therapy is directed toward specific lesions pain is often relieved promptly and spontaneous fractures may heal more rapidly. It has also been observed in some patients with relatively localized disease that therapy directed toward specific lesions may eradicate the evidence of disease in those locations.⁴

Should hypercalcemia occur a high fluid intake should be administered to provide urinary excretion of calcium and by lowering urinary calcium concentration prevent nephrocalcinosis.¹² The diet should be low in calcium. Adrenocortical steroids have proved helpful in reducing the high calcium levels though their mechanism of action is unknown.¹³ Sodium ethylene diamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA) a chelating agent, has been used successfully in the treatment of hypercalcemia. The results are transient and it may produce serious nephrototoxic effects and further renal impairment.^{14, 15}

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Case 1

A 55 year old white male barber enjoyed excellent health until six weeks before admission to the hospital when he first noticed a nagging non-radiating pain in the lower portion of the back. The pain was aggravated by bending, coughing and sneezing. Two weeks prior to admission the pain suddenly became much more severe and radiated into the right leg. The patient had noticed no weakness, numbness or paresthesias in the legs.

Physical examination disclosed pain on motion of the spine. The liver was palpable 2 cm. below the right costal margin. The right knee jerk and right ankle jerk were diminished and there was a slight diminution of sensation to pin prick over the right calf and foot. The physical examination was otherwise normal.

Laboratory Examination. Admission blood studies: hct. 39 per cent, wbc 7500 per cu mm. Urinalysis was negative except for a weakly positive test for Bence Jones protein. The differential leukocyte count and blood urea were normal. The sedimentation rate was 23 mm. at the end of one hour (normal 8 to 10). Serum calcium was 10.5 mg. per 100 ml. alkaline phosphatase 4.1. Total protein was 8.8 gm. per 100 ml. and plasma electro-

phoresis showed the following composition: albumin 35%, alpha 1 globulin 6.2%, alpha 2 globulin 12.3%, beta globulin 6.9%, beta prime globulin 6.3%, and gamma globulin 31.9%. The gamma fraction was greatly increased and formed a sharp peak in abnormality which was considered characteristic of myeloma. Bone marrow examination revealed that about 67 per cent of the cells were myeloma cells. Many had finely divided nuclear chromatin and contained one or more nucleoli. Roentgenogram of the spine revealed a destructive lesion in the anterior half of the fourth lumbar vertebra which was associated with some wedging.

Course. A diagnosis of multiple myeloma was made. Roentgen ray therapy 4000 r in air was administered through two portals to the spinal lesion. In addition the patient was given 3 gm of urethan a day. This drug was discontinued at the end of two weeks because of nausea and vomiting. Irradiation afforded moderate symptomatic relief initially but the pain soon recurred and the patient required opiates for relief. His condition continued to deteriorate and he died six months after his initial admission, eight months after the initial symptom of back pain.

Comment. This patient illustrates many features that occur commonly in multiple myeloma. The onset was in the sixth decade and the initial symptom was back pain. The roentgenogram revealed an osteolytic lesion in a lumbar vertebra, the commonest site for this type of lesion. The occurrence of Bence Jones protein in the urine, the marked increase in gamma globulin in the serum protein, and the presence of "myeloma cells" in the bone marrow confirmed the diagnosis. The radiation of the pain and the alterations in the tendon reflexes and sensory perception indicated involvement of the nerve roots. As so often happens, the patient responded poorly to treatment with a ray and urethan and died less than one year after symptoms first appeared.

Case 2

A 71 year old white ship inspector was in excellent health until six months prior to his admission when he had a febrile illness associated with malaise. The fever subsided within a week or ten days but weakness continued. Three months later the patient again developed fever accompanied by a non-productive cough and pain in the right chest that was aggravated by coughing. Roentgenogram of the chest at that time revealed infiltration of the right lung. The pain and fever subsided and the lesion in the right lung cleared but anorexia and epigastric discomfort and loss of weight continued until admission.

When admitted to the hospital the patient appeared slightly pale and chronically ill but the physical examination revealed no other significant abnormalities.

Laboratory Examination. Urinalysis: specific gravity 1.020, albumin trace, otherwise negative (no Bence Jones protein was demonstrated). Hematocrit 29 per cent, hemoglobin 9.0 gm per 100 ml, rbc 3.2 mil per

count 3800 per cmm differential count (per cent) segmented 46 bands 2 lymphocytes 32 monocytes 18 eosinophils 2 The serum albumin was 3.6 gm per 100 ml and the serum globulin 6.8 gm per 100 ml Blood urea was 34 mg and the uric acid 7.3 mg per 100 ml Bone marrow obtained by aspiration consisted almost entirely of cells of the plasmacytic series 98 per cent of the cells were of this type In some the nuclear chromatin was finely divided and nucleoli were present Roentgenograms of the skeleton revealed no significant lesions either lytic or osteoporotic

Course A diagnosis of multiple myeloma was made Urethan was administered in an initial dose of 0.3 gm three times a day the dose was increased gradually to a total of 4.0 gm per day The patient also received blood transfusions The symptoms subsided but improvement was short lived About a month after leaving the hospital he developed severe girdle pain which was rapidly followed by paraplegia Laminectomy was performed but the patient did not improve He died eight months after the onset of symptoms

Comment This patient was elderly at the time of onset of symptoms and survived for less than one year His illness was characterized by pain normocytic anemia hyperproteinemia and great numbers of plasma cells in the bone marrow An onset with symptoms that suggest recurrent pulmonary infections occurs in a number of patients with myeloma but as was true with this patient diagnosis of multiple myeloma was not suspected The course of the disease in this patient was unusual in that roentgenograms of the spine revealed no significant abnormalities only a few months before compression fracture of a vertebra and paraplegia occurred As is true in about half the patients with this disease Bence Jones protein was not demonstrated in the urine by the usual tests it can be demonstrated in nearly all cases by special tests

REFERENCES

MALIGNANT LYMPHOMA

1. Azar, H. A., Hill, W. T. and Ottensmeyer, E. F. Malignant lymphoma and lymphatic leukemia associated with myeloma type serum proteins. *Am J Med* 23:239 1957
2. Ellis, C. The clinical and pathological picture of follicular lymphoblastoma. *Tr A. N. Phys.* 47:330 1932
3. Bayre, E. D., Paulson, G. B. and Hargraves, M. M. Hodgkin specific cells in bone marrow aspirations. A critical review and report of two cases. *Blood* 9:46 1954
4. Bennett, L. Malignant lymphomas. Their classification and relation to leukemia. *Blood* 8:195 1953
5. Bethel, F. H., Andrew, C. A., Veligh, R. B. and Meyer, M. C. Treatment of Hodgkin disease with roentgen irradiation and nitrogen mustards. *Am J Roentgenol* 64:61 1950
6. Black, W. I. Evidence for the virus etiology of Hodgkin's disease. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 79:307 1958
7. Bill, N. F., Baehr, C. and Rothal, N. Generalized giant lymph follicle hyperplasia of lymph nodes and spleen. *JAMA* 84:668 1925
8. Bunting, C. H. Blood platelets and megakaryocytes in Hodgkin's disease. *Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull* 2:114 1911

- 9 Cooper G Personal Communication
- 10 Craver L F Value of Early Diagnosis of Malignant Lymphomas and Leukemia American Cancer Society New York 1952
- 11 Craver L F Some aspects of the treatment of Hodgkin's disease Cancer 7 927 1954
- 12 Custer H P and Bernhard W C The interrelationship of Hodgkin's disease and other lymphatic tumors Am J M Sc 216 625 1948
- 13 Doan C A Wiseman B A and Bouroncle H A Clinical evaluation of CB 1348 in leukemias and lymphomas Ann N Y Acad Sc 68 979 1958
- 14 Evans T M and Doan C A Giant follicle hyperplasia A study of its incidence histopathologic variability and the frequency of sarcoma and secondary hyper splenic complications Ann Int Med 40 851 1954
- 15 Finkbeiner J A Craver I F and Diamond H D Prognostic signs in Hodgkin's disease JAMA 156 472 1954
- 16 Gall E A and Mallory T B Malignant lymphoma A clinico pathologic survey of 618 cases Am J Path 18 381 1942
- 17 Gall E A Morrison H R and Scott A T The follicular type of malignant lymphoma A survey of 63 cases Ann Int Med 14 2073 1941
- 18 Gall E A The surgical treatment of malignant lymphoma Ann Surg 118 1064 1943
- 19 Gellhorn A and Collins V P A quantitative evaluation of the contribution of nitrogen mustard to the therapeutic management of Hodgkin's disease Ann Int Med 35 1250 1951
- 20 Goldman L B Hodgkin's disease An analysis of 212 cases JAMA 114 1611 1940
- 21 Goodman L S et al Nitrogen mustard therapy JAMA 132 126 1946
- 22 Hall C A and Olson K B Prognosis of malignant lymphomas Ann Int Med 44 687 1956
- 23 Hodgkin T On some morbid appearances of the absorbent glands and spleen Medico Chirurg Tr London 17 68 1832 Quoted from Major R H Classic Descriptions of Disease Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1955
- 24 Hoster H A and Dratman M B Hodgkin's disease—Part I 1832 1947 Cancer Research 8 1 1948
- 25 Israels L G Galton D A G Till M and Wiltshaw E Clinical evaluation of CB 1348 in malignant lymphoma and related diseases Ann N Y Acad Sci 68 915 1958
- 26 Jackson H Jr The classification and prognosis of Hodgkin's disease and allied disorders Surg Gynec & Obst 64 465 1937
- 27 Jackson H Jr Hodgkin's disease and allied disorders New England J Med 220 26 1939
- 28 Jackson H Jr and Parker F Jr Hodgkin's Disease and Allied Disorders Oxford University Press New York 1947
- 29 Jackson H Jr and Parker F Jr Hodgkin's disease New England J Med I General considerations 230 1 1944 II Pathology 231 35 1944 III Symptoms and course 231 639 1944 IV Involvement of certain organs 232 547 1945 233 369 1945
- 30 Jacobson L O et al Nitrogen mustard therapy JAMA 132 263 1946
- 31 Karnofsky D A et al Triethylene melamine in the treatment of neoplastic disease Arch Int Med 87 477 1951
- 32 Karnofsky D A Summary of results obtained with nitrogen mustard in the treatment of neoplastic disease Ann N Y Acad Sc 68 899 1958
- 33 Kassel R Etiological considerations in Hodgkin's disease Ann N Y Acad Sc 73 335 1958
- 34 Kindred J E Histological changes occurring in the hemopoietic organs of albino rats after single injections of 2 chloroethyl vesicants Arch Path 43 253 1947
- 35 Krumbhaar E B Role of the blood and the bone marrow in certain forms of gas poisoning I Peripheral blood changes and their significance JAMA 72 39 1919
- 36 Krumbhaar E B The present status of Hodgkin's disease Symposium on the blood University of Wisconsin Press Madison 1939 p 148

- 37 Kundrat Ueber Lympho-Sarkomatosis Wien klin Wchnschr 6 211 1893 6 234 1893
- 38 Kyle, R A Kitch J M and Stuckney J M Acquired hemolytic anemia in chronic lymphocytic leukemia and the lymphomas Arch Int Med 101 61 1959
- 39 Leavell H S and Thorup O A Personal Observations
- 40 Lockwood, I H Lymphosarcoma of the gastro intestinal tract JAMA 150 435 1952
- 41 Lucas P F Lymph node smears in the diagnosis of lymphadenopathy A review Blood 10 1030 1955
- 42 Middleton W S Some clinical caprices of Hodgkins disease Ann Int Med 11 448 1937
- 43 Minot, G R and Isaacs R Lymphoblastoma (malignant lymphoma) Age and sex incidence duration of disease and the effect of roentgen ray and radium irradiation and surgery JAMA 5C 1187 1958
- 43a Moore R A A Textbook of Pathology 2nd Ed W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1951
- 44 Peters M V A study of survivals in Hodgkins disease treated radiologically Am J Roentgenol 63 299 1950
- 45 Pettit J P Pease G L and Cooper T An evaluation of paraffin sections of a purged bone marrow in malignant lymphomas Blood 10 850 1955
- 46 Rosenthal, M C Pisciotto A V Kuminos Z D Goldenberg H and Dameshek, W The auto-immune hemolytic remia of malignant lymphocytic disease Blood, 10 197 1955
- 47 Rosenthal, M C et al The use of adrenocorticotrophic hormone and cortisone in the treatment of leukemia and leukosarcoma Blood 6 804 1951
- 48 Rosenthal V The lymphomas and leukemias Bull N Y Acad Med 50 583 1954
- 49 Roulet F Das primäre Retothelsarkom der Lymphknoten Virchows Arch path Anat 277 15 1930
- 50 Rundles R W., Conrad E V., and Willard V L Summary of results obtained with TEM Ann N Y Acad Sc 68 956 1958
- 51 Shurkin M B Oppermann A C Low Beer B V A and Mettuer S R Lymphosarcoma An analysis of frequency distribution and mortality at the University of California Hospital 1913 1948 Ann Int Med 40 1095 1954
- 51a. Shurkin M B Oppermann A C Bostick W I and Low Beer B V A Hodgkins disease An analysis of frequency distribution and mortality at the University of California Hospital 1914 1951 Ann Int Med 42 138 1955
- 52 Slaughter D P and Craver L F Hodgkins disease five year survival rate value of early surgical treatment notes on 4 cases of long duration Am J Roentgenol 47 596 1946
- 53 Sparling H J Jr Adams R D and Parker F Jr Involvement of the nervous system by malignant lymphoma Medicine 28 265 1947
- 54 Spillberg M A and Zavin S Lymphosarcoma of the gastrointestinal tract With a report of twenty one cases Arch Int Med 83 135 1949
- 55 Sugarbaker E D and Craver L F Lymphosarcoma A study of 196 cases with biopsy JAMA 115 17 1940
- 56 Symmers D Follicular lymphadenopathy with plasmomegaly Arch Path 3 816 1927
- 57 Symmers D Giant follicular lymphadenopathy with or without splenomegaly Its transformation into polymorphous cell sarcoma of the lymph follicles and its association with Hodgkins disease lymphatic leukemia and an apparently unique disease of the lymph nodes and spleen A disease entity believed heretofore undescribed Arch Path 26 603 1938
- 57a Twyman J H Hodgkins disease with unusual findings on sternal marrow study Report of a case Virginia M Monthly 84 342 1957
- 58 Warren S and Picena J P Reticulum cell sarcoma of lymph nodes Am J Path 17 385 1941
- 59 Wintrobe M M Cartwright G E Fessas P Haut A and Altman S J Chemotherapy of leukemia Hodgkins disease and related disorders Ann Int Med 41 447 1954

- 60 Wintrobe M M and Huggins C M Nitrogen mustard therapy for Hodgkins disease lymphosarcoma the leukemias and other disorders *Cancer J* 3:7 1948

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

- 61 Adams W S and Skoog W A The management of multiple myeloma *J Chron Dis* 11 446 1957
- 62 Arinkin M I Die intravitale Untersuchungsmethodik des Knochenmarks Folia haemat 38 233 1929
- 63 Baker W H Abnormalities in calcium metabolism in malignancy Effects of hormone therapy *Am J Med* 21 714 1956
- 64 Bayrd E D and Heck J F Multiple myeloma A review of eighty three proved cases *JAMA* 133 147 1947
- 65 Bence Jones H Paper on chemical pathology *Lancet* 2 88 1847
- 66 Berkheiser E J Multiple myeloma of children *Arch Surg* 8 853 1924
- 67 Carson C F Ackerman L V and Maltby J D Plasma cell myeloma A clinical pathologic and roentgenologic review of ninety cases *Am J Clin Path* 25 849 1955
- 68 Carter J R Plasma cell hyperplasia and hyperglobulinemia in trichinosis The duration of larviposition *Am J Path* 25 309 1949
- 69 Clark H and Murhead E E Plasmacytosis of bone marrow *Arch Int Med* 94 425 1954
- 70 Collier F C and Jackson I The precipitin test for Bence Jones protein *New England J Med* 218 409 1953
- 71 Cross R J (Ed) Multiple myeloma (combined staff clinic) *Am J Med* 23 283 1957
- 72 Engle R L and Wallis L A Multiple myeloma and the adult Fanconi syndrome I Report of a case with crystal like deposits in the tumor cells and in the epithelial cells of the kidney *Am J Med* 22 5 1957
- 73 Forbus W O Perlzweig W A Parfentjev I A and Burwell J C Jr Bence Jones protein excretion and its effects upon the kidney *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 57 47 1935
- 74 Geschickter C F and Copeland M M Multiple myeloma *Arch Surg* 16 807 1928
- 75 Heiser H and Schwartzman J Variations in the roentgen appearance of the skeletal system in myeloma *Radiology* 58 178 1952
- 76 Holland J F Daniehon E and Sahagian Edwards A Use of ethylene diamine tetra acetic acid in hypercalcemic patients *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 84 359 1953
- 77 Jarrold T and Vilter R W Hematologic observations in patients with chronic hepatic insufficiency Sternal bone marrow morphology and bone marrow plasmacytosis *J Clin Invest* 28 286 1949
- 78 Kenny J J and Moloney W C Multiple myeloma Diagnosis and management in a series of fifty seven cases *Ann Int Med* 46 1079 1957
- 79 Personal Observation
- 80 Lichtenstein L and Jaffe H L Multiple myeloma *Arch Path* 44 407 1947
- 81 Meacham G C Plasma cell myeloma *Ann Int Med* 38 1035 1953
- 82 Meyer F C ¹⁴lysine incorporation into Bence Jones protein by cultures of myeloma bone marrow *Fed Proc* 16 222 1957
- 83 Oserman F F and Laylor D I Abnormal serum and urine proteins in thirty five cases of multiple myeloma as studied by filter paper electrophoresis *Am J Med* 18 462 1955
- 84 Potter M Fabry J and Pilgrim H G Abnormal serum proteins and bone destruction in transmissible mouse plasma cell neoplasm (multiple myeloma) *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 94 327 1957
- 85 Putnam F W Aberrations of protein metabolism in multiple myeloma Inter relationships of abnormal serum globulins and Bence Jones proteins *Physiol Rev* 37 512 1957

that is withdrawn are usually best because the specimen is largely undiluted with blood. Some hematologists prefer to withdraw a larger specimen from the marrow and eject the material from the syringe into a watch glass. Particles of marrow are then picked up on an applicator stick or some other instrument and touched to various areas of the clean slide. Such imprints give a better picture of the marrow architecture and of the fixed cells. However, preparations made in this manner usually contain a large number of

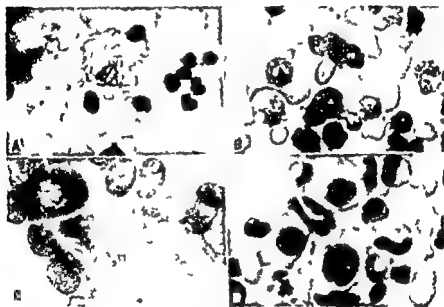


Figure 68 Bone marrow aspiration Wright's stain in various diseases. A Lymphoma B Reticulum cell sarcoma C Metastatic carcinoma D Hodgkin's sarcoma

damaged and unrecognizable cells. Bone marrow obtained by aspiration can be stained supravitaly with Wright's stain, with May-Grunwald-Giemsa stain, or by the peroxidase method. Marrow particles obtained by aspiration can also be fixed in paraffin and stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

A differential count is often performed on the nucleated cells in the marrow preparation. For a reproducible result it is usually necessary to count from 300 to 500 cells. The range of the different cells varies in normal marrows and the values given by different authors differ somewhat, as shown in Table 20. An accurate differential count is helpful in diagnosis on some occasions. It is also an excellent discipline for those in training because it forces a decision as to the identity of each cell. However, it is time consuming and after a moderate amount of experience it is usually possible to gain the same information from a careful systematic study of the smear without actually doing a differential count.

In examining the bone marrow it is desirable to follow a definite plan

- 60 Wintrobe M M and Huguley C M Nitrogen mustard therapy for Hodgkin's disease lymphosarcoma the leukemias and other disorders *Cancer* 1 357 1948

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

- 61 Adams W S and Sloog W A The management of multiple myeloma *J Chron Dis* 11 446 1957
- 62 Arrkin M I Die intravitale Untersuchungsmethodik des Knochenmarks *Folia haemat* 38 233 1929
- 63 Baker W H Abnormalities in calcium metabolism in malignancy Effects of hormone therapy *Am J Med* 21 714 1956
- 64 Bayrd E D and Heel J I Multiple myeloma A review of eighty three proved cases *JAMA* 133 147 1947
- 65 Bence Jones H Papers on chemical pathology *Lancet* 2 88 1847
- 66 Burkheiser E J Multiple myeloma of children *Arch Surg* 8 853 1924
- 67 Carson C P Ackerman J V and Malby J D Plasma cell myeloma A clinical pathologic and roentgenologic review of ninety cases *Am J Clin Path* 25 849 1955
- 68 Carter J R Plasma cell hyperplasia and hyperglobulinemia in trichinosis The duration of larviposition *Am J Path* 25 309 1949
- 69 Clark H and Murchard E E Plasmacytosis of bone marrow *Arch Int Med* 94 425 1934
- 70 Collier F C and Jackson P The precipitin test for Bence Jones protein *New England J Med* 248 409 1953
- 71 Cross R J (Ed) Multiple myeloma (combined staff clinic) *Am J Med* 23 283 1957
- 72 Engle R L and Wallis L A Multiple myeloma and the adult Fanconi syndrome I Report of a case with crystal like deposits in the tumor cells and in the epithelial cells of the kidney *Am J Med* 22 5 1957
- 73 Forbus W O Perlzweig W A Pinfenica I A and Burwell J C Jr Bence Jones protein excretion and its effects upon the kidney *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 57 47 1935
- 74 Geschickter C F and Copeland M M Multiple myeloma *Arch Surg* 16 607 1928
- 75 Heimer S and Schwartzman J Variations in the roentgen appearance of the skeletal system in myeloma *Radiology* 58 178 1952
- 76 Holland J F Danielson E and Sahagian Edwards A Use of ethylene diamine tetra acetic acid in hypercalcemic patients *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 84 359 1953
- 77 Jureld T and Vilter R W Hematologic observations in patients with chronic hepatic insufficiency Sternal bone marrow morphology and bone marrow plasmacytosis *J Clin Invest* 28 266 1949
- 78 Kenny J J and Moloney W C Multiple myeloma Diagnosis and management in a series of fifty seven cases *Ann Int Med* 46 1079 1957
- 79 Personal Observation
- 80 Lichtenstein I and Jaffe H L Multiple myeloma *Arch Path* 44 207 1947
- 81 Metcalf C C Plasma cell myeloma *Ann Int Med* 38 1035 1953
- 82 Meyer F ¹⁴C lysine incorporation into Bence Jones protein by cultures of myeloma bone marrow *Fed Proc* 16 222 1957
- 83 Osserman E F and Laylor D I Abnormal serum and urine proteins in thirty five cases of multiple myeloma as studied by filter paper electrophoresis *Am J Med* 18 462 1955
- 84 Potter M Fabry J and Pilgrim H T Abnormal serum proteins and bone destruction in transmissible mouse plasma cell neoplasm (multiple myeloma) *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 94 327 1957
- 85 Putnam F W Aberrations of protein metabolism in multiple myeloma Inter relationships of abnormal serum globulins and Bence Jones proteins *Physiol Rev* 37 512 1957

is classified as normal or abnormal and the abnormality is specified. The megakaryocytes and platelet formation are classified as normal, reduced, or increased. Similarly the number and maturity of the lymphocytes, plasma cells, and reticulum cells are recorded. These observations form the basis for the conclusions that can be drawn from the marrow examination.

The Value of Bone Marrow Examination

Examination of the bone marrow may establish a diagnosis of certain diseases with assurance; it may render some particular diagnosis very unlikely; or it may give helpful information that is of indirect or limited value. The ease with which bone marrow can be obtained for examination has led to the use of this procedure in circumstances when other simpler procedures, such as a careful study of a smear of peripheral blood, would suffice for a diagnosis. The decision as to the desirability of a bone marrow examination is based on the circumstances in the individual case.

Although the marrow examination may not be necessary in order to establish the diagnosis, the following diagnoses can usually be made by this method:

- 1 Multiple myeloma
- 2 Leukemia, all types
- 3 Untreated or partially treated vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid deficiency
- 4 Storage disease, such as Gaucher's disease
- 5 Metastatic malignancy (if positive cells are found)
- 6 Fungus disease (if positive cells are found)

In certain other diseases, when taken in conjunction with the peripheral blood, the bone marrow examination can often provide helpful information that is not diagnostic when taken alone. Among these are:

- 1 Aplastic anemia
- 2 Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
- 3 Lymphosarcoma
- 4 Hypersplenism
- 5 Agranulocytosis

It is sometimes difficult to exclude a diagnosis from further consideration because of the result of the bone marrow examination. "Myeloma cells" or a definite increase in plasma cells may not be found in multiple myeloma. Some patients with "aplastic" anemia have cellular marrows. Patients with pernicious anemia sometimes forget to relate that they have taken vitamin tablets that contain folic acid or have received an injection of vitamin B₁₂ from another physician. Aspiration occasionally yields only a hypocellular or aplastic marrow in patients with leukemia. When the diagnosis remains in doubt and only very hypocellular preparations are obtained from different sites, a surgical biopsy of the marrow is usually obtained. If abnormal bleeding is expected with this procedure, the biopsy is best performed in the iliac crest because bleeding is controlled at this site more easily than in the sternum or rib.

Table 20 Normal Adult Differential Marrow Cell Counts by Various Authors

CELL TYPE	WINTROBE (%) (RANGE)	CLUSTER (%) (RANGE)	ISHAELS-3 (%) (RANGE)	LEITNER 4 (%)	YOUNG AND OSGOOD-5 (%) (RANGE)
Myeloblasts	03-50	00-35	03-20	12	00-12
Progranulocytes	10-80	05-50	10-80	22	00-78
Myelocytes					
Neutrophils	50-180	70-346	50-200	126	00-26
Eosinophils	05-30	03-30		14	00-04
Basophils	00-05	00-05		002	
Metamyelocytes	130-320	151-370	130-320	110	18-118
Band Cells				240	158-330
Segmented					
Neutrophils	70-300	30-198	70-300	284	74-252
Eosinophils	05-40	01-30	05-40	18	00-10
Basophils	00-07	00-10	00-10	002	00-02
Lymphocytes	30-170	00-68	30-200	76	48-160
Plasmacytes	00-20	00-12	00-20	10	00-10
Monocytes	05-50	01-32	05-50	14	00-42
Reticulum Cells	01-20	03-26		20	
Megakaryocytes	003-30	005-15	Ocas	08	00-02
Ironnormoblasts	10-80	00-00	05-40	08	
Normoblasts (baso philic polychromatic and orthochromatic)	70-320	175-420	190-350	276	54-242
Myeloid Erythroid Ratio	about 3 1-4 1	2 1-6 1	4 1-20 1	3 1	2 1-8 1

The slide is first examined with the low power objective. The cellularity of the specimen is noted, the number of megakaryocytes is estimated, and a search for sheets of malignant cells and other unusual cells is made particularly near the edges of the preparation. The more suitably stained portions of the slide are examined under oil immersion. The erythrocyte precursors are studied and the type of erythropoiesis is noted as megaloblastic or normoblastic. Attention is also paid to the number and maturity of these cells. Next the granulocytic series is studied with particular reference to number and any increase in the younger forms, particularly myeloblasts and progranulocytes. The presence of any macropolyocytes or giant metamyelocytes is also noted. Megakaryocytes are studied for number, maturity, and evidence of platelet formation. The plasma cells, reticulum cells, histiocytes, and other cells are studied similarly for number and immaturity, and for cytoplasmic inclusions. The number of lymphocytes is estimated, and the presence of any tumor cells or other abnormal or unidentified cells is noted.

After the marrow preparation has been studied in this fashion the different observations can be noted in the report. The cellularity is classed as normal, increased, or decreased. Erythropoiesis is classified according to the type of maturation as normoblastic or megaloblastic, and according to activity as normal, hypoplastic, or hyperplastic. The granulocytic maturation

0.5 gm mercuric chloride
 5.0 gm sodium sulfate
 1.0 gm sodium chloride
 200 ml distilled water

2 Hemacytometer and red blood cell diluting pipette

Method

1 Either freshly collected heparinized venous blood (75 mg heparin/5 ml blood) or free flowing blood from a finger puncture may be used. If heparinized blood is used it should be mixed well by inverting the container 20 to 30 times.

2 Draw blood up to the 0.5 mark of the erythrocyte counting pipette. The pipette should be clean and dry. Wipe all blood from the outside of the pipette and make needed adjustments in the height of the column of blood within the pipette by touching the end to blotting paper or cotton sponge.

3 Keeping the pipette as nearly horizontal as possible draw Hayem's solution into the pipette until the column reaches the 101 mark (1 to 200 dilution).

4 Shake pipette and contents by hand or with mechanical shaker for one minute.

5 Expel $\frac{1}{2}$ of contents and immediately thereafter load both sides of the counting chamber by placing a drop of cell suspension on the chamber at the edge of the cover glass. The suspension fills the ruled area by capillary attraction.

6 Should the chamber flood or bubbles occur the results will be inaccurate. The chamber must then be cleaned and reloaded.

7 Allow three minutes for settling then count the cells in the 16 smallest squares (0.0025 mm^2 each) of three corners of two sides of the chamber. Discard the first count and add the other five. Multiply by 10,000 to obtain the number of red blood cells per cu mm.

Calculation (Reference 2)

The dilution of the blood with Hayem's solution is 1:200. The distance between the cover slip and the chamber is 0.1 mm . The smallest squares have an area of 0.0025 sq mm and 80 of them are counted. The total area in which cells are counted is 0.2 mm^2 and the volume ($0.2 \text{ mm}^2 \times 0.1 \text{ mm}$) is 0.02 cu mm . To determine the number of cells in 1 cu mm the number of cells found in 0.02 cu mm must be multiplied by 50 ($1/0.02$). The result is then multiplied by 200 to correct for dilution.

The factor then is $50 \div 200 = 10,000$. If the number of red blood cells counted in a total area of 0.02 cu mm is multiplied by 10,000 the result will be the number of red blood cells per cubic millimeter of whole blood.

LABORATORY PROCEDURES IN HEMATOLOGY

HEMATOCRIT

Method (Reference 1)

- 1 Collect 5 ml of venous blood with a dry syringe and needle. Place in a small bottle containing 75 mg heparin and mix well by inverting bottle at least 20 times.
- 2 Fill a Wintrobe hematocrit tube to the 10 cm mark with fresh heparinized blood using a Wintrobe pipette.
- 3 Centrifuge at 3000 r p m for 30 minutes.
- 4 The volume of packed red cells multiplied by 10 gives the volume per 100 ml blood.

Calculations

Normal	Females	42.0 ± 5.0
	Males	47.0 ± 7.0

Note

It should be noted that marked alteration in the tonicity of the plasma will alter the volume of the red blood cell. The hematocrit is a more accurate procedure than the red blood cell count and in many laboratories has replaced the latter as a routine procedure. This method is accurate within 0.5 per cent (reference 2).

References

- 1 Wintrobe M M : Macroscopic examination of the blood. *Am J M Sc* 185:58 1933
- 2 Wintrobe M M : Blood of normal young women residing in a subtropical climate. *Arch Int Med* 45:287 1930

ERYTHROCYTE COUNT

Equipment

- 1 Hayem's Solution

- 0.5 gm mercuric chloride
- 50 gm sodium sulfate
- 10 gm sodium chloride
- 200 ml distilled water

2. Hemacytometer and red blood cell diluting pipette

Method

1. Either freshly collected heparinized venous blood (75 mg heparin/5 ml blood) or free flowing blood from a finger puncture may be used. If heparinized blood is used it should be mixed well by inverting the container 10 to 30 times.
2. Draw blood up to the 0.5 mark of the erythrocyte counting pipette. The pipette should be clean and dry. Wipe all blood from the outside of the pipette and make needed adjustments in the height of the column of blood within the pipette by touching the end to blotting paper or cotton sponge.
3. Keeping the pipette as nearly horizontal as possible draw Hayem's solution into the pipette until the column reaches the 101 mark (1 to 200 dilution).
4. Shake pipette and contents by hand or with mechanical shaker for one minute.
5. Expel a drop of contents and immediately thereafter load both sides of the counting chamber by placing a drop of cell suspension on the chamber at the edge of the cover glass. The suspension fills the ruled area by capillary attraction.
6. Should the chamber flood or bubbles occur the results will be inaccurate. The chamber must then be cleaned and reloaded.
7. Allow three minutes for settling then count the cells in the 16 smallest squares (0.0025 mm each) of three corners of two sides of the chamber. Discard the first count and add the other five. Multiply by 10,000 to obtain the number of red blood cells per cu mm.

Calculation (Reference 2)

The dilution of the blood with Hayem's solution is 1:200. The distance between the cover slip and the chamber is 0.1 mm. The smallest squares have an area of 0.0025 sq mm and 60 of them are counted. The total area in which cells are counted is 0.2 mm and the volume (0.2 mm \times 0.1 mm) is 0.02 cu mm. To determine the number of cells in 1 cu mm the number of cells found in 0.02 cu mm must be multiplied by 50 (1/0.02). The result is then multiplied by 200 to correct for dilution.

The factor then is $50 \times 200 = 10,000$. If the number of red blood cells counted in a total area of 0.02 cu mm is multiplied by 10,000 the result will be the number of red blood cells per cubic millimeter of whole blood.

LABORATORY PROCEDURES IN HEMATOLOGY

HEMATOCRIT

Method (Reference 1)

- 1 Collect 5 ml of venous blood with a dry syringe and needle. Place in a small bottle containing 75 mg heparin and mix well by inverting bottle at least 20 times.
- 2 Fill a Wintrobe hematocrit tube to the 10 cm mark with fresh heparinized blood using a Wintrobe pipette.
- 3 Centrifuge at 3000 rpm for 30 minutes.
- 4 The volume of packed red cells multiplied by 10 gives the volume per 100 ml blood.

Calculations

Normal Females 42.0 ± 5.0
Males 47.0 ± 7.0

Note

It should be noted that marked alteration in the tonicity of the plasma will alter the volume of the red blood cell. The hematocrit is a more accurate procedure than the red blood cell count and in many laboratories has replaced the latter as a routine procedure. This method is accurate within 0.5 per cent (reference 2).

References

- 1 Wintrobe M M Macroscopic examination of the blood. Am J M Sc 185:58 1933.
- 2 Wintrobe M M Blood of normal young women residing in a sub-tropical climate. Arch Int Med 45:287 1930.

ERYTHROCYTE COUNT

Equipment

- 1 Hayem's Solution

0.5 gm mercuric chloride
 5.0 gm sodium sulfate
 1.0 gm sodium chloride
 200 ml distilled water

2. Hemacytometer and red blood cell diluting pipette

Method

1. Either freshly collected heparinized venous blood (7.5 mg heparin/5 ml blood) or free flowing blood from a finger puncture may be used. If heparinized blood is used it should be mixed well by inverting the container 20 to 30 times.

2. Draw blood up to the 0.5 mark of the erythrocyte counting pipette. The pipette should be clean and dry. Wipe all blood from the outside of the pipette and make needed adjustments in the height of the column of blood within the pipette by touching the end to blotting paper or cotton sponge.

3. Keeping the pipette as nearly horizontal as possible draw Hayem's solution into the pipette until the column reaches the 101 mark (1 to 200 dilution).

4. Shake pipette and contents by hand or with mechanical shaker for one minute.

5. Expel $\frac{1}{2}$ of contents and immediately thereafter load both sides of the counting chamber by placing a drop of cell suspension on the chamber at the edge of the cover glass. The suspension fills the ruled area by capillary attraction.

6. Should the chamber flood or bubbles occur the results will be inaccurate. The chamber must then be cleaned and reloaded.

7. Allow three minutes for settling then count the cells in the 16 smallest squares (0.0025 mm each) of three corners of two sides of the chamber. Discard the first count and add the other five. Multiply by 10,000 to obtain the number of red blood cells per cu mm.

Calculation (Reference 2)

The dilution of the blood with Hayem's solution is 1:200. The distance between the cover slip and the chamber is 0.1 mm. The smallest squares have an area of 0.0025 sq mm and 50 of them are counted. The total area in which cells are counted is 0.2 mm² and the volume (0.2 mm² \times 0.1 mm) is 0.02 cu mm. To determine the number of cells in 1 cu mm the number of cells found in 0.02 cu mm must be multiplied by 50 (1/0.02). The result is then multiplied by 200 to correct for dilution.

The factor then is $50 \times 200 = 10,000$. If the number of red blood cells counted in a total area of 0.02 cu mm is multiplied by 10,000 the result will be the number of red blood cells per cubic millimeter of whole blood.

Note

With so large a factor there is little wonder that the accuracy of the red blood cell count is so poor. The standard error for a single erythrocyte count has been determined to be 7.8 per cent (reference 1). Such an error is even more significant when compounded by the calculation of indices.

References

1. Berkson J, Magath T B and Hurn M. The error of estimate of the blood cell count as made with the hemocytometer. *Am J Physiol* 128:309, 1940.
2. Bray W E. Clinical laboratory methods. C V Mosby Co. St. Louis, 1957.

TOTAL HEMOGLOBIN (CYANMETHEMOGLOBIN METHOD)*Reagents and Equipment*

1. Drabkin's Solution (Diluent)

NaHCO ₃	1 gm
KCN	52 mg
K ₃ Fe(CN) ₆	198 mg
Distilled water	To make 1 liter

While there is but a small amount of cyanide in this solution and it would take some 4 liters to be lethal to man, it is a poison and should be handled with care. Inhalation of fumes should be avoided. Any of the salts spilled during preparation should be wiped up with a damp cloth and disposed of in a suitable container. Pipettes should be filled by using suction bulbs to avoid the possibility of getting the solution in the mouth. The salts should be kept in a locked cupboard. The solution should be stored in a brown bottle in the refrigerator (reference 2).

2. Standardized cuvettes

3. Standardized blood diluting pipettes (Sahlb 0.02 ml.)

4. Cyanmethemoglobin standards *

5. Spectrophotometer or colorimeter

Method

1. Exactly 5 ml. of Drabkin's solution is measured into each of two matched cuvettes.

2. To one tube 0.02 ml. of whole blood is added; the pipette rinsed and the blood and solution mixed by swirling.

3. Allow to stand 10 minutes.

Standards may be obtained from the College of American Pathologists, 203 North Wabash Avenue, Chicago, Illinois.

4. Using the blank tube set the spectrophotometer at 540 wave length and adjust to 100 per cent light transmittance

E Substitute the tube containing hemoglobin solution and read the per cent of light transmitted

6 Multiply the value by the conversion factor of the pipette

7 The result is translated into grams per 100 ml blood by reference to standard graph

Note

In view of the many known physical and chemical reactions of hemoglobin it is strange that a completely satisfactory standard has not been developed. Poor stability of the solutions employed and difficulty of matching colors whether by mechanical or visual means have plagued all methods.

The basic reaction in the production of the cyanmethemoglobin standard is the conversion of hemoglobin to methemoglobin by ferricyanide and the subsequent combination of methemoglobin with potassium cyanide to form the pigment cyanmethemoglobin. Solutions of this pigment are relatively stable. After 3 years storage at refrigerator temperatures the standards faded only 1 per cent (reference 3). Stored at room temperature the standard faded more rapidly and 3 per cent was lost.

After preliminary trials by the Army Medical Service Graduate School, the National Academy of Sciences and the National Research Council proposed the adoption of a National Standard for hemoglobinometry (reference 1). The method recommended was the cyanmethemoglobin one. Should the program prove successful, truly comparable hemoglobinometry will be possible for the first time.

Macfarlane et al (references 4 and 5) have reviewed extensively the problems attending hemoglobinometry and the reader interested in such a review is referred to their excellent articles.

References

1. Cannon H. L. Proposal for the distribution of a certified standard for use in hemoglobinometry. *Am J Clin Path* 25:376 1955
2. Crosby W. H., Munn J. I. and Furth F. W. Standardizing a method for clinical hemoglobinometry. *US Armed Forces Med J* 5:693 1954
3. Crosby W. H. and Houchens D. N. Preparing standard solutions of cyanmethemoglobin. *Blood* 12:1132 1957
4. King E. J. et al. Determination of haemoglobin. V. Precision of colorimetric methods. *Lancet* 2:563 1949
5. Macfarlane R. F., King E. J., Wootton I. D. P. and Gilchrist, M. Determination of haemoglobin. III. Reliability of clinical and other methods. *Lancet*, 1:282 1948

LEUKOCYTE COUNT

(Reference 2)

Reagents and Equipment

- 1 0.1 N hydrochloric acid
- 2 Hemacytometer and white blood cell diluting pipette

Method

1 Either freshly collected heparinized venous blood or free flowing blood from a finger puncture may be used. If heparinized blood is used mix well by inverting container 20 to 30 times.

2 Draw blood up to the first mark in the leukocyte counting pipette. Wipe blood from outside of pipette and make necessary adjustments in the column of blood by touching the end of the pipette to blotting paper or cotton sponge.

3 Keeping pipette as nearly horizontal as possible draw sufficient 0.1 N hydrochloric acid into the pipette to raise the column of liquid to the 11 mark (1:20 dilution).

4 Shake pipette by hand or mechanical shaker for one minute.

5 Expel $\frac{1}{2}$ of the contents and immediately thereafter load the counting chambers by placing a drop of cell suspension on the chamber at the edge of the cover slip.

6 Should the chamber flood or bubbles occur the results will be inaccurate. The chamber must be cleaned and reloaded.

7 Allow three minutes for settling and count the cells in three corner square millimeter areas on each of the two sides of the preparation. Obtain the average and multiply by 200 to determine the number of leukocytes per cu mm of whole blood.

Calculations

The total area over which the leukocytes are counted is 5 mm². The distance between the cover slip and the chamber is 0.1 mm and the dilution of blood is 1:20.

The number of cells in five of the 1 mm² squares is counted and the average number is multiplied by 0.1 to obtain the number of leukocytes in 0.1 mm³ and by 10 to determine the number of cells in 1.0 cu mm. The result is then multiplied by 20 to correct for dilution.

The factor is then $10 \times 20 = 200$. Multiplication of the number of leukocytes counted in the average 1 mm² area gives the number of leukocytes in one cubic millimeter of whole blood.

Note

The error in leukocyte counting is approximately 10 per cent (reference

- 1) If the count is very high as in leukemia the dilution should be made

in an erythrocyte counting pipette and appropriate corrections made in the calculations

References

1. Berkson J, Magath T B and Hum M. The error of estimate of the blood cell count as made with the hemocytometer. *Am J Physiol* 129:309 1940
2. Bray W E. *Clinical Laboratory Methods* C V Mosby Co St Louis 1957

STAINING OF PREPARED BLOOD FILMS

Reagents

- 1 Wright's stain

0.2 gm dry Wright's stain

97.0 ml methanol (C P A C S Acetone free)

3.0 ml glycerol (C P)

Mix alcohol and glycerol add stain

Allow to stand at least 24 hours with occasional shaking. A longer period of aging is desirable for consistent staining results

Filter before using

Method

- 1 Fresh smears are preferable
- 2 Place the air dried blood film on a level support
- 3 Completely cover the blood smear with stain and allow to remain for one minute. This serves to fix the smear
- 4 The stain is then diluted with an equal amount of distilled water
- 5 After five or six minutes the stain is washed off with water and the smear is blotted gently or is allowed to dry

DIFFERENTIAL COUNT

Reagent

- 1 Wright's stain (see previous procedure)

Method

- 1 The smear is made by placing a medium sized drop of blood near one end of a clean dry glass slide and immediately smearing it along the length of the slide by means of a second slide tilted at a 45 degree angle
- 2 The smear is allowed to dry and is stained with Wright's stain
- 3 The desired number (usually 100 to 200) of leukocytes are counted on the thinnest portion of the smear

Calculation

Schilling's hemogram for normal blood

0	Myelocytes
0-1%	Juveniles
3-5%	Bands
58-66%	Segmented cells
21-35%	Lymphocytes
4-8%	Monocytes
2-4%	Eosinophils
0-1%	Basophils

The number of platelets is estimated as "normal," "increased," or "decreased."

The red cells are studied for the presence or absence of anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, and polychromatophilia, hypochromia, stippling, and other abnormalities. They should be studied only in those areas of the slide where they just touch one another.

Note

Only practice will enable the operator to make smears which are satisfactory. Clean dry slides are imperative. It is helpful to remove the corners of the slide used to smear the blood by rubbing them against a piece of screen mesh. This keeps the smear from extending to the edge of the slide in preparation. Swift motion is not necessary but a smooth even pace with gradual release of pressure will result in a smooth smear and a feather edge.

WHITE BLOOD CELL CONCENTRATION*Apparatus*

1. Clean centrifuge tube or hematocrit tube

Method

1. Fill tube with fresh anticoagulated blood
2. Centrifuge at low speed for 5 minutes then at high speed for 10 minutes or until the white cell layer is clearly defined
3. Pipette off the plasma and smear the white cell layer
4. Stain with Wright's stain

Note

Such a preparation while useful in searching for immature cells is not suitable for a differential count because of the uneven distribution of the cells.

If the patient's white count is extremely low a larger amount of blood may be centrifuged, the white cell layer placed in a hematocrit tube and recentrifuged

SEDIMENTATION RATE

Method

1 Five ml of venous blood is collected with a dry syringe and needle and mixed in a small bottle containing 1 mg solid potassium oxalate and 6 mg solid ammonium oxalate as an anticoagulant

2 This blood should be used for the determination of sedimentation rate within two hours of its time of collection

3 Fill a hematocrit tube to the 10 cm mark. The tube should be kept in an exact vertical position during the sedimentation of the blood corpuscles and the room temperature should be not less than 24° C nor more than 27° C

4 Read the distance the corpuscles have fallen in one hour

Calculation

Normal Females 0 to 15 mm /one hour

Males 0 to 65 mm /one hour

Note

The rate at which blood sediments depend for the most part on the concentration of fibrinogen in the plasma. Variation in the concentration of other globulins will result in an altered sedimentation rate as well. Alterations of these proteins during the course of infection is probably responsible for the elevated sedimentation rate

Reference

- 1 Wintrobe M M and Landsberg J W A standardized technique for the blood sedimentation test Am J M Sc 169 102 1935

STAIN FOR RETICULOCYTES

Reagents

- 1 Brilliant Cresyl Blue

13 gm sodium oxalate

10 gm brilliant cresyl blue

100 ml distilled water

Let stand a few days and filter

Store in dark bottle

Method

- 1 Use either fresh anticoagulated (heparin or oxalate) venous blood or blood from finger puncture
- 2 On a clean dry slide place a small drop of blood and an equal amount of brilliant cresyl blue staining solution Mix with the corner of another slide and allow to stand two or three minutes
- 3 Mix again and make a fairly thin smear
- 4 When smear is dry counterstain with Wright's stain
- 5 Count the number of reticulated red cells per thousand red cells and express as the number of reticulated cells per 100 red cells (per cent)

Note

The normal number of reticulocytes is from 0.1 to 1.0 per cent They are increased at times of rapid regeneration and release of red cells from the marrow

References

- 1 Osgood E E and Wilhelm M M Reticulocytes J Lab & Clin Med 19 1129 1934

DEMONSTRATION OF THE LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS CELL PHENOMENON

Reagents and Equipment

- 1 Clean dry sterile test tube
- 2 3 x 3 cm square piece of wire mesh
- 3 Wright's stain

Method

- 1 10 ml of blood is placed in clean dry sterile test tube and allowed to clot at room temperature of 28° C or in a water bath at 37° C for 2 hours
- 2 The serum is discarded and the clot is forced through the mesh screen to defibrinate it
- 3 The fluid portion of the clot is collected in a clean sterile Petri dish and then transferred to a small test tube or hematocrit tube for centrifugation
- 4 Tubes are centrifuged at 1500 to 1800 r p m for five minutes
- 5 Serum is discarded and the buffy layer is collected and a drop is placed on a clean dry slide and smeared in usual fashion
- Stain with Wright's stain

Note

The L E cell is defined as a phagocytic cell that contains an inclusion body consisting of nuclear material that has undergone lysis. The phagocytic cell is usually the polymorphonuclear leukocyte but eosinophils may also play this role. The inclusion body is a smooth homogeneous nuclear mass which has been released from a neutrophil or lymphocyte affected by the L E factor (reference 2). In normal blood no typical L E cells are found. The L E cell is formed when the polymorphonuclear leukocyte engulfs an amorphous nuclear remnant. The tart cell differs from the L E in that some structure may be seen in the nuclear remnant which has been engulfed.

A "rosette" consists of a group of polymorphonuclear leukocytes which have surrounded an amorphous protein mass. The finding of "tart" cells, rosettes, or a free amorphous mass of protein is not "positive" of the L E phenomenon.

The phenomenon is not seen in smears made directly after the aspiration of blood or bone marrow because a period of incubation *in vitro* is required (reference 2). The lupus cell phenomenon probably depends on a reaction between the L E factor found in the serum of patients with lupus erythematosus and the cell nucleus. This reaction results in the morphologic changes in the nuclear material. The second step is that of phagocytosis. Evidence has been presented that a heat labile factor present in normal serum is required for the phagocytosis. The L E factor does not have to be present for the ingestion of the altered nuclear material (reference 1).



Figure 69 L E cells from peripheral blood of a patient with disseminated lupus erythematosus

References

- 1 Aisenberg A C Studies on the mechanism of the lupus erythematosus (L E) phenomenon J Clin Invest. 38 325 1959
- 2 Hargraves M M The L E Cell Phenomenon In Dock W and Snapper I Eds Advances in Internal Medicine Vol ■ Year Book Publishers Chicago 1954 p 133

PEROXIDASE STAIN FOR LEUKOCYTES*Reagents*

- 1 0.3 gm benzidine base
99.0 ml ethyl alcohol
Grind adding a little of the alcohol at a time When dissolved add
- 2 Sodium nitroprusside 1.0 ml (saturated 36%)
This solution keeps several months
- 3 Hydrogen peroxide 3% (fresh) 5 drops in 25 ml water Make fresh each test
- 4 Wright's stain

Method

- 1 Use fresh blood smears either from finger puncture or from venous blood collected in heparin
- 2 Place about 10 drops of benzidine solution on the smear and let stand 1 to 1½ minutes
- 3 Without pouring off the benzidine solution add 5 drops of freshly diluted hydrogen peroxide (5 drops in 25 ml of water) and let stand three or four minutes
- 4 Wash with water and allow to dry
- 5 Stain with Wright's stain

Note

This stain is used to distinguish the myelocytic cells from the other leukocytes. The myelocytic cells show large blue green granules with the eosinophils being more deeply blue. The cells of the lymphocyte series and myeloblasts do not take the stain. Monocytes may show a few small irregular and discrete granules. Basophiles are peroxidase negative.

References

- 1 Osgood E E and Ashworth C M Atlas of Hematology J W Stacey Inc San Francisco 1937 p 208
- 2 Washburn A H A combined peroxidase and Wright's stain for routine blood smears J Lab & Clin Med 14 246 1928

LABORATORY PROCEDURES IN HEMATOLOGY

LEUKOCYTE ALKALINE PHOSPHATASE STAIN

1 MODIFICATION OF COMORI PROCEDURE

(References 1 and 4)

Reagents

A STOCK

- 1 2% Calcium chloride solution
- 2 3% Sodium β glycerophosphate solution
- 3 10% Magnesium sulfate solution
- 4 10% Sodium barbital solution
- 5 1% Cobalt nitrate solution

These solutions are stable but should be stored in refrigerator to discourage mold growth

- 6 Dilute ammonium sulfide solution

B INCUBATING SOLUTION

- 5-10 ml 3% sodium β glycerophosphate solution
- 20-25 ml 2% calcium chloride solution
- 10 gtt 10% magnesium sulfate solution
- 10 ml 10% sodium barbital solution

Distilled water to 50 ml total volume

The incubation solution must be made fresh daily

Method

- 1 Fix smears of peripheral blood or bone marrow in 95% ethyl alcohol within 30 minutes of their preparation Dry
- 2 Place slides in incubation solution at 37° for 1 to 1½ hours Remove and wash in 2% calcium chloride solution Dry
- 3 Immerse slides for 5 minutes in 1% cobalt nitrate solution Wash in tap water and dry
- 4 Immerse slides for 5 minutes in dilute ammonium sulfide solution Wash in tap water and dry
- 5 Counter stain with Wright's stain

Calculations

- 1 Count 100 neutrophils assigning to each a score

0 — no stain

± — faint gray tinge in cytoplasm

1+ — distinct but infrequent granules

2+ — granules more dense

3+ — intensity of staining and number of granules greater

4+ — densely stained cytoplasm

- 2 Control slide should be run with each unknown

II IZO DYE METHOD*(References 2 and 3)***Reagents****STOCK PROPANEDIOL BUFFER 0.2 M**

10.5 gm 2-amino-2-methylpropane (1.3) diol

500 ml distilled water

WORKING BUFFER 0.05 M pH 9.75

25 ml stock buffer

5 ml 0.1 N hydrochloric acid

70 ml distilled water

SUBSTRATE MIXTURE35 mg sodium α -naphthyl phosphate

35 mg Brentamine Fast Garnet

35 ml working 0.05 M propanediol buffer

This mixture is made up fresh each time the procedure is done and should be used within 3 minutes of preparation

FIXATIVE

10 ml 40% formaldehyde

90 ml absolute methyl alcohol

Keep in refrigerator at 0 to 5°C

COUNTERSTAIN

2 gm methyl green

100 ml distilled water

After the methyl green has gone into solution approximately one half of its volume of chloroform is added. The chloroform extracts methyl violet impurities from the methyl green. After 48 hours the solution is poured into a separatory funnel. The chloroform settles to the bottom and can be run off and discarded. The supernatant fluid is then ready for use.

Method

Blood and bone marrow smears for this purpose should be stained on the day of collection and preferably fixed within an hour of collection.

1 Fix smears for 30 seconds at 0 to 5°C in formaldehyde-methyl alcohol solution

2 Wash in tap water

3 Make up substrate solution mix and filter directly onto the slides

4 Leave at room temperature for 5 to 10 minutes

5 Wash in tap water for 10 seconds

6 Counterstain with methyl green for 10 to 15 minutes

7 Wash in tap water

8 Dry and mount in glycerin jelly or other water soluble mount. Mounting is necessary as smears fade after 2 or 3 days.

9 Examine under oil. Red cells and nuclei are stained green. Alkaline phosphatase stains are brown black granules within the cytoplasm of the neutrophils.

Calculation

Proceed to examine 100 neutrophils assigning to each the following score

- 0—negative or colorless
- 1—occasional small granules
- 2—moderate granule formation
- 3—intense granule formation
- 4—dense precipitate of granules filling whole cytoplasm of cell

Add up the scores for the 100 individual cells normal range 14–100

Note

The role of alkaline phosphatase activity in the leukocyte remains a mystery. The significance of the difference in the alkaline phosphatase activity of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in chronic myelogenous leukemia and leukemoid reactions is not understood. However these differences are striking and have been exploited by the tests described. Three major categories may be defined

- 1 Low Range
 - a Chronic myelogenous leukemia
- 2 Normal Range
- 3 High Range

0–24 total score

14–100 total score

100–400 total score

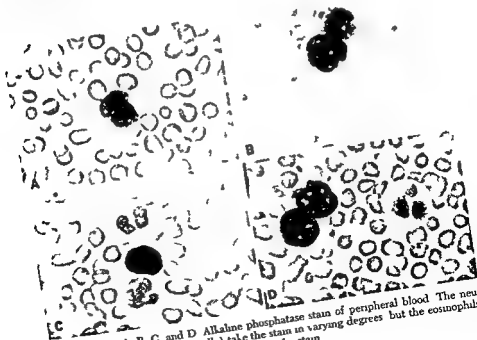


Figure 70 A B C and D Alkaline phosphatase stain of peripheral blood. The neutrophils (band and segmented cells) take the stain in varying degrees but the eosinophils, monocytes and lymphocytes are negative for the stain.

- a Leukemoid reaction
- b Infectious leukocytosis
- a Polycythemia
- d Hodgkin's disease
- e Myelofibrosis

While there is an overlap between the normal range and that of chronic myelogenous leukemia, there is none between chronic myelogenous leukemia and leukemoid reactions. It is in the differentiation of these conditions that the test is most helpful.

References

- 1 Brodell H and Swisher S N. Studies of leukocyte alkaline phosphatase determined by a clinically applicable histochemical method. *Clin Res Proc* 2:58 1954
- 2 Hayhoe F G J and Quaglino D. Cytochemical demonstration and measurement of leukocyte alkaline phosphatase activity in normal and pathological states by a modified azo dye coupling technique. *Brit J Haemat* 4:375 1958
- 3 Kaplow L S. A histochemical procedure for localizing and evaluating leukocyte alkaline phosphatase activity in smears of blood and marrow. *Blood* 10:1023 1955
- 4 Wiltshaw E and Moloney W C. Histochemical and biochemical studies on leukocyte alkaline phosphatase activity. *Blood* 10:1120 1955

SICKLE CELL TEST

Reagents

1 Two per cent sodium bisulfite solution. 500 mg sodium bisulfite is dissolved in distilled water the total volume being brought to 25 ml. As the solution must be made fresh, it is convenient to store 500 mg lots of sodium bisulfite in large capsules until needed.

Method

1 The preparations may be made directly from a finger puncture or freshly drawn anticoagulated blood.

2 Equal amounts of blood and sodium bisulfite are mixed on a glass slide and covered with a cover slip. Slight pressure on the cover slip will rid the preparation of air bubbles and the desired thinness may be obtained.

3 Inspect the preparation after 10 to 15 minutes for sickled cells. The number of sickled red cells per 1000 red blood cells are determined and expressed in per cent.

Note

Sickling is the result of the formation of rigid tactoids of hemoglobin molecules. These structures distort the stroma and result in the formation

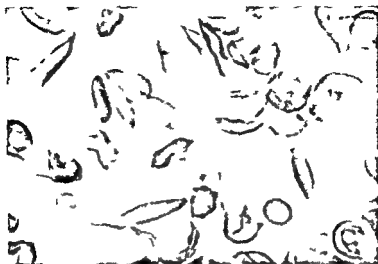


Figure 71 Moist preparation sickle cell anemia

of the classic sickle cell. At least 20 per cent of the hemoglobin must be of the "S" type for sickling to occur. Because of the high percentage of fetal hemoglobin present at birth, blood cells from infants seldom sickle. By the age of 4 to 6 months the level of fetal hemoglobin falls and is replaced by one of the adult forms of hemoglobin. If that form of hemoglobin is of the "S" type, as its percentage increases, sickling of the erythrocytes will be seen.

All of the cells from a patient with AS hemoglobin (heterozygote) will sickle if the blood is left long enough without oxygen. While there are some morphologic differences between sickle cells of the heterozygote and homozygote, they are not consistent enough to be diagnostic.

Reference

1. Daland G. A. and Castle W. H. A simple and rapid method for demonstrating sickling of the red blood cells. The use of reducing agents. *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.* 33:1062, 1948.

OSMOTIC FRAGILITY

Reagents and Equipment

1. A chemically pure 0.75 per cent solution of sodium chloride is required. The saline solution must be kept in a glass stoppered, tightly closed bottle.
2. Eighteen small test tubes (Wassermann tubes).

Method

1. Eighteen small test tubes are set up in a rack and numbered from left to right 48, 46, 44 through 14.

2 Into the first tube is measured 48 ml of the sodium chloride solution into the second 46 ml and so on in amounts corresponding to the numbers on the tubes

3 To each tube there is added the amount of distilled water required to bring the total in each tube to 5 ml

4 The concentration of sodium chloride in each tube will be from left to right 0.72 per cent 0.69 0.66 \rightarrow 0.21 The concentration of sodium chloride may be calculated by multiplying the number on each tube by 1.5 and setting off two decimal places

5 Five ml of venous blood is collected with a dry syringe and needle and mixed in a bottle with 75 mg of heparin The blood is mixed and aerated well before use

7 Exactly 0.2 ml of blood is measured into each tube and the tubes are gently shaken to insure mixing

8 A control series of tubes must also be set up using normal blood

9 The racks containing the tubes are then placed in a refrigerator at 4° C for two to three hours

10 The tubes are examined and the point at which hemolysis begins and that at which it is complete are recorded The slightest trace of red color in the supernatant fluid indicates the destruction of the least resistant cells Complete hemolysis is indicated by a clear red solution and the absence of a residue in the bottom of the tube or of any cloudiness on gently shaking the tube

11 The tubes are then incubated for 24 hours at 37° C and reexamined

Calculations

Normal	Slight hemolysis	Complete hemolysis
Normal Blood	0.45-0.39%	0.33-0.30%

Note

The susceptibility of the red blood cell to rupture when placed in hypotonic solutions is determined primarily by the ratio of cell size to surface area The classic spherocyte has the smallest possible surface area Any increase in the content of this cell results in rupture As these cells behave as perfect osmometers water gains access to the cell in hypotonic solutions It is this added volume which brings about rupture

At the other end of the scale is the large flat cell of thalassemia or the flattened irregular cell of sickle cell anemia In both the surface area is increased relative to the cell size and more water may enter these cells with out their rupture They are more resistant to hypotonic solutions than normal cells

Metabolic activity within the cell plays a role in the structural integrity of the cell also It is this feature that becomes important on incubation

References

- 1 Emerson C P Shen S C Ham T H and Castle W H The mechanism of blood destruction in congenital hemolytic jaundice J Clin Invest 26 1180 1947
- 2 Young L E Hereditary spherocytosis Am J Med 18 486 1955

SERUM BILIRUBIN

Reagents

- 1 Diazo Blank 15 ml concentrated HCl made up to one liter with distilled water
- 2 Solution "A" 1 gm sulfanilic acid dissolved in 15 ml concentrated HCl and diluted to one liter with distilled water
- 3 Solution B 0.5 per cent solution of sodium nitrite (must be made fresh weekly)
- 4 Diazo Test Reagent 10 ml solution "A" and 0.3 ml solution "B" (must be made fresh daily)
- 5 Absolute methyl alcohol

Method

A INDIRECT

- 1 Two colorimeter tubes are set up as follows

Indirect Blank

- a 50 ml absolute methyl alcohol
- b 10 ml Diazo blank solution

Indirect Test

- a 50 ml absolute methyl alcohol
 - b 10 ml Diazo test reagent
- 2 1 ml serum (or plasma) is diluted to 10 ml with distilled water and 40 ml of this mixture is added to each of the above tubes
 - 3 Mix carefully by inversion taking care not to trap bubbles
 - 4 Allow both tubes to stand 30 minutes and then read in the colorimeter using a filter #540 Tube #1 is used for the initial adjustment of the colorimeter
 - 5 If the galvanometer reading is less than 10 both tubes are diluted immediately with 10 ml of 50 per cent methyl alcohol and read again The final answer in mg per 100 ml must then be multiplied by 2

B DIRECT

Method is the same as that for indirect except that distilled water is used instead of methyl alcohol and the sample is read against the blank exactly 60 seconds after the addition of the plasma or serum

2 Into the first tube is measured 4.8 ml of the sodium chloride solution into the second 4.6 ml and so on in amounts corresponding to the numbers on the tubes

3 To each tube there is added the amount of distilled water required to bring the total in each tube to 5 ml

4 The concentration of sodium chloride in each tube will be from left to right 0.72 per cent 0.69 0.66 → 0.21 The concentration of sodium chloride may be calculated by multiplying the number on each tube by 15 and setting off two decimal places

6 Five ml of venous blood is collected with a dry syringe and needle and mixed in a bottle with 75 mg of heparin The blood is mixed and aerated well before use

7 Exactly 0.2 ml of blood is measured into each tube and the tubes are gently shaken to insure mixing

8 A control series of tubes must also be set up using normal blood

9 The racks containing the tubes are then placed in a refrigerator at 4°C for two to three hours

10 The tubes are examined and the point at which hemolysis begins and that at which it is complete are recorded The slightest trace of red color in the supernatant fluid indicates the destruction of the least resistant cells Complete hemolysis is indicated by a clear red solution and the absence of a residue in the bottom of the tube or of any cloudiness on gently shaking the tube

11 The tubes are then incubated for 24 hours at 37°C and reexamined

Calculations

Normal	Slight hemolysis	Complete hemolysis
Normal Blood	0.45-0.39%	0.33-0.30%

Note

The susceptibility of the red blood cell to rupture when placed in hypotonic solutions is determined primarily by the ratio of cell size to surface area The classic spherocyte has the smallest possible surface area Any increase in the content of this cell results in rupture As these cells behave as perfect osmometers water gains access to the cell in hypotonic solutions It is this added volume which brings about rupture

At the other end of the scale is the large flit cell of thalassemia or the flattened irregular cell of sickle cell anemia In both the surface area is increased relative to the cell size and more water may enter these cells without their rupture They are more resistant to hypotonic solutions than normal cells

Metabolic activity within the cell plays a role in the structural integrity of the cell also It is this feature that becomes important on incubation

Method

1 All fecal material is collected for four days. It should be kept in a dark bottle and weighed. Record weight.

2 Homogenize the feces in a Waring blender slowly, adding distilled water in multiples of 100 ml as needed. Usually 100 ml is adequate.

3 Weigh out duplicate 10 gm samples of homogenized feces in paper cups. Perform the following procedure in duplicate.

4 Pour the sample into a dark bottle to which the freshly prepared 100 ml of 20% ferrous sulfate solution has been added.

5 The paper cup is rinsed with a total of 200 ml distilled water to make sure all stool is transferred.

6 Mix by shaking.

7 100 ml of 10% NaOH is added slowly to the flask.

8 Mix thoroughly.

9 Incubate in dark for one hour or longer if the supernatant is not almost colorless.

10 In order to determine the proper dilution to be used in the remainder of test, a 2 ml portion of solution is now filtered and to it is added 2 ml Ehrlich's reagent and 6 ml saturated aqueous sodium acetate. Depending on the intensity of the color formed, from 4 to 50 ml of filtrate is used in the rest of the procedure.

intense red color—4 ml filtrate

pale red—10 ml of filtrate

faint pink—25 ml of filtrate

no color—50 ml of filtrate

11 Filter the amount required and place in a separatory funnel. Record the amount used. If 4 or 10 ml samples are used, make up to 25 ml with distilled water.

12 Add 50 ml petroleum ether.

13 Acidify with 5 ml glacial acetic acid.

14 Shake well and allow to separate.

15 Extract the aqueous portion twice again with 25 ml petroleum ether.

16 Wash combined petroleum ether solution twice with 5 ml aliquots of distilled water.

17 Add 2 ml Ehrlich's reagent and shake vigorously.

18 Add 6 ml saturated aqueous solution of sodium acetate and shake. The colored solution is drawn off into a graduated cylinder after complete separation.

19 The petroleum ether is extracted again with Ehrlich's reagent followed by addition of sodium acetate and removal after vigorous shaking of the colored aqueous fraction.

20 Repeat extractions until there is no further development of color in the aqueous solution.

Calculation

The bilirubin concentration in mg per 100 ml of serum is obtained from the formula

$$x = \frac{2 - \log G \times 100}{6.72}$$

x = bilirubin/100 ml serum

G = galvanometer reading

Normal Indirect (total)—below 1.0 mg %

Direct—below 0.4 mg %

Note

It is now known that the difference between the direct acting and the indirect type is the glucuronide conjugation of the former which renders it water soluble. Conjugation of bilirubin with glucuronide is brought about in the liver by the enzyme transferase located in the microsomal fragment of the cells. Uridine diphosphoglucuronic acid is the source of the glucuronide.

Calibration of the galvanometer may be carried out using pure bilirubin as noted in the method described by Malloy and Evelyn (reference 1). A modification of the above method has recently been introduced (reference 2).

Reference

1. Malloy, H. T. and Evelyn, K. A. The determination of bilirubin with the photoelectric colorimeter. *J. Biol. Chem.* 119:481, 1937.
2. O'Hagen, J. E., Hamilton, T., Le Breton, E. G. and Shaw, A. E. Human serum bilirubin. An immediate method of determination and its application to the establishment of normal values. *Clin. Chem.* 3:609, 1957.

FECAL UROBILINOGEN

Reagents

1. Sodium acetate. Add sodium acetate to distilled water until the solution is saturated. Remove supernatant for use.

2. Ehrlich's Reagent

0.7 gm para dimethyl aminobenzaldehyde

100.0 ml distilled water

150.0 ml concentrated HCl

3. 20% ferrous sulfate

20 gm ferrous sulfate in 92 ml H₂O. May require heating to go into solution.

"Evans Blue and the spectrophotometer *J Clin Invest* 16 301 1937

- 2 Gramck S Iron metabolism *Bull NY Acad Med* 30 81 1954
- 3 Miller E B Singer K and Dameshek W Use of the daily fecal output of the urobilinogen and the hemolytic index in the measurement of the hemolysis *Arch Int Med* 70 722 1942
- 4 Schwartz S Sborov V and Watson C J Studies of urobilinogen IV The quantitative determination of urobilinogen by means of the Evelyn photoelectric colorimeter *Am J Clin Path* 14 598 1944
- 5 Watson C J Schwartz S Sborov V and Bertie E Studies of urobilinogen V A simple method for the quantitative recording of the Ehrlich reaction as carried out with urine and feces *Am J Clin Path* 14 605 1944
- 6 Watson C J and Hawkinson V Studies of urobilinogen VI Further experience with the simple quantitative Ehrlich reaction Corrected calibration of the Evelyn colorimeter with a Pontacyl Dye mixture in terms of urobilinogen *Am J Clin Path* 17 109 1947

ELECTROPHORESIS

General

Electrophoresis has come to play an important role in clinical medicine Its aid in the study of the dysproteinemias and in sorting the various hemoglobinopathies is indispensable

The behavior of the protein molecule during electrophoresis depends on a number of complex and interrelated forces The protein molecules in the plasma and those in the red blood cell hemolysate may vary in size shape and their net electrostatic charge Electrophoretic analysis makes use of such variations to separate and classify these proteins The degree of resolution of these proteins obtained by electrophoresis is influenced by the environment and by the character of the electrical field

In most clinical laboratories electrophoresis is carried out using paper starch grain agar or starch gel as the supporting medium and an electric field supplied from a constant voltage power pack In the accompanying diagram the basic design of the commonly used apparatus is seen.



Boxes A usually contain a sodium chloride solution and boxes B a buffer solution The supporting medium going between the B boxes contains the same buffer A great many variations on this basic design have been published For an excellent and detailed discussion of these and related problems the reader is referred to the book *A Manual of Paper Chromatography and Paper Electrophoresis* (reference 1)

Apparatus of varied design may be obtained commercially

21 The colored solution is made to a convenient volume. The color should be pink. Record total volume.

22 Read 10 ml of final solution in colorimeter using filter #565 against blank of 9 ml saturated sodium acetate and 3 ml Ehrlich's reagent.

Calculation

$$\frac{500 \text{ (H}_2\text{O, FeSO}_4 \text{ and NaOH)}}{10 \text{ (gm of stool)}} \times \frac{\text{Vol of final dilution}}{\text{Vol of filtrate used}} \times$$

$$\% \text{ of color standard} \times \frac{\text{Wt of four day collection}}{100} \times$$

$$\frac{1}{\text{No of days of collection}} = \text{mg of urobilinogen per day}$$

Normal 156–195 mg fecal urobilinogen

Note

Normally 65 gm of hemoglobin is destroyed daily and this should result in 156 to 195 mg urobilinogen. It is recognized that the measure of fecal urobilinogen is not an accurate measure of daily hemoglobin breakdown. There are a number of sources of error. Hemoglobin is not the sole source of bile pigment as myoglobin, catalase, cytochromes and peroxidases may contribute. Dietary porphyrins do not alter the fecal urobilinogen as they are not broken down in the intestinal tract (reference 2). Constipation, diarrhea, the use of antibiotics (reducing intestinal flora) and incomplete collections will all add to inaccuracies. However, an increase in the fecal urobilinogen output indicates an increase in blood destruction.

Since there are marked differences in fecal urobilinogen dependent on the circulating mass of hemoglobin, a formula was devised to take this into account (reference 3):

Hemolytic Index =

$$\frac{\text{average daily (of 4 days) output of fecal urobilinogen (mg)} \times 100}{\text{total hemoglobin (gm/100 ml)} \times \frac{\text{total blood volume}^*}{100}}$$

Normal 11.1–20.8 mg

NB

To standardize the colorimeter a mixture of Pontacyl Dyes is available (DuPont). The method is given by Watson and Hawkinson (reference 6).

References

1. Gibson J. G. II and Evans W. A. Jr. Clinical studies of the blood volume. I. Clinical application of a method employing the azo dye. May use expected total blood volume (reference 1).

Buffers

Barbiturate Buffer 18.1 gm diethylbarbituric acid (barbital) and 10.30 gm sodium barbital are made up to one liter in distilled water. The ionic strength of this buffer = 0.05 and the pH is 8.6. It is excellent for runs of six to eight hours duration.

For runs of 10 to 12 hours duration better resolution is obtained using buffer of 0.1 ionic strength. 27.6 gm diethylbarbituric acid (barbital) and 15.45 gm sodium barbital are made up to one liter in distilled water.

Stains Used in Connection with Paper Electrophoresis

Bromphenol Blue staining is most commonly employed.

0.1 gm bromphenol blue

50 gm zinc sulfate

50 ml glacial acetic acid

The dry paper is immersed in the dye solution for 12 to 16 hours. It is removed and rinsed three times in 2% acetic acid and finally in a solution of 10% acetic acid and 2% sodium acetate. It is then blotted and dried in the oven.

STARCH GEL ELECTROPHORESIS

The use of starch gel as a supporting medium for electrophoresis has gained widespread acceptance since its introduction by Smithies (reference 1). Excellent resolution of serum and red blood cell hemolysate proteins is obtainable. The gels take a wide variety of stains. In most instances they may be stored in large test tubes without loss or distortion of staining characteristics.

Preparation of Starch Gels (Smithies Modified Slightly)

1. 200 ml of gel buffer is mixed with 25 gm hydrolyzed starch.*

2. The mixture is gently heated over a Bunsen burner in a flask to which a negative pressure may be applied from either a vacuum pump or a water pump.

3. Heating is continued as the gel becomes more viscous and finally thin once again. As the gel becomes less viscous it will begin to clear. At this point negative pressure is applied and the liquid allowed to degas vigorously. The length of time allowed the mixture to degas should be constant as it affects the water content of the gel and variations will affect the constancy of the results from day to day.

4. The gel is poured into plastic boats (reference 1) and some of which the pH is later determined into a small beaker.

5. Filter paper wicks are cut so that they may be inserted into the gel.

Hydrolyzed starch may be obtained from the Connaught Laboratories, Toronto.

Reference

- 1 Block R J Durrum E L and Zweig C A Manual of Paper Chromatography and Paper Electrophoresis 2nd Ed Academic Press Inc New York 1958

PREPARATION OF RED BLOOD CELL HEMOLISATE FOR ELECTROPHORESIS

- 1 Fresh anticoagulated (heparin or oxalate) blood is centrifuged to separate the plasma from the cells
- 2 The plasma is discarded and the cells washed three times with 0.9% NaCl and centrifuged between each washing. The supernatant is discarded
- 3 12 to 18 volumes of distilled water is then added to the cells and the solution shaken vigorously
- 4 0.3 to 0.4 ml of toluene is then added and again the mixture is agitated
- 5 Filter and adjust the hemoglobin solution to approximately 5 gm per 100 ml with distilled H₂O
- 6 Refrigerate the filtrate if not used immediately

Note

Should it be desirable not to add toluene the ghosts may be removed by centrifugation in a high speed head

PREPARATION OF SERUM FOR ELECTROPHORESIS

- 1 Fresh blood is obtained in a dry syringe and allowed to drip from the syringe into a clean dry test tube after removal of the needle
- 2 After clot retraction takes place the serum is removed and placed in the refrigerator until used

PAPER ELECTROPHORESIS

Paper has been widely used as a supporting medium in electrophoresis. Usually a good grade of paper such as Whatman 3 MM is used though heavier paper may be used when larger volumes are to be run. Most commonly the paper is enclosed in a plastic box or sandwiched between glass plates to prevent drying. Paper may be employed on a horizontal plane or may hang from a central supporting rod in the shape of an inverted V.

After each run it is important that the wick ends are cut off immediately to prevent shifting of the position the proteins achieved during the run as the wicks lose fluid. The paper should be dried rapidly in a horizontal position in an oven at 100° C for 20 to 30 minutes. Drying the proteins brings about their denaturation and fixes them on the paper. Staining may then be carried out if the proteins are not pigmented. It is usually unnecessary to stain hemoglobin as its position is clearly visible.

BRIDGE. Citric acid 0.1 M and NaHPO_4 0.2 M are mixed in the amounts needed to provide proper volume and pH and used full strength

Outer Boxes

NaCl is made up to the same molarity as that of the buffer being used

Protein Stain for Use with Starch Gel Electrophoresis

Amidoschwarz 10B. A solution of methyl alcohol distilled water and glacial acetic acid is made up 50:50:10 v/v/v. Amidoschwarz 10B is added until the solution is saturated. The same solution without the dye is used as a wash.

The cut strips of gel are immersed in the dye solution for 30 seconds and then removed to the wash solution. Three washes generally clear the gel enough to allow definition of protein fractions. Further clearing will take place if gel is left over night in the solution.

Gels may be stored in the same solution.

Reference

1. Smithies O. G. Zone electrophoresis in starch gels. Group variations in the serum proteins of normal human adults. *Biochem J.* 61:629, 1955.

DETECTION OF FETAL HEMOGLOBIN BY THE ALKALI DENATURATION TECHNIQUE

(References 1 and 4)

Reagents

1. N/12 KOH or NaOH (pH 12.7) in paraffin lined bottle—kept in refrigerator.
2. Precipitating solution: 800 ml 50% saturated $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ plus 2 ml 10 N HCl .

Method

1. Centrifuge fresh anticoagulated blood (heparin or oxalate) and discard plasma.
2. Wash remaining cells three times with three or four volumes of normal saline discarding the washings.
3. Add 1.2 to 1.8 volumes of distilled H_2O . Shake vigorously for three minutes.
4. Add 0.4 volumes of toluene and again shake for three minutes.
5. Centrifuge at 3000 r.p.m. for 20 minutes and discard upper two layers.

at either end. A piece of thin polyethylene sheeting is cut to fit the surface then placed over the boat and pressure applied evenly. Excess gel will be extruded.

6 After cooling the application of protein is made by cutting the gel with a razor blade and inserting a piece of filter paper carrying the substance to be examined. The filter paper should be slightly smaller in both dimensions than the cross section of the gel.

7 The plastic is replaced and the wicks dipped into the boxes (B) containing the buffer and filter paper wicks arranged to bridge from these boxes to those containing the electrodes (A).

8 Current is applied at 5 ma/boat and 56 volts/cm for six to eight hours.

9 After six to eight hours has elapsed the gels are loosened from their boats by running a spatula between the gel and the edge of the boat. They may then be gently removed.

10 The gels are then placed in a plastic trough the width of which is the same as that of the gel, the length somewhat greater than that of the gel and the height of the sides exactly half that of the thickness of the gel. By placing half of a double edged razor blade across the trough the gel may be easily cut lengthwise into two identical halves. The inner surfaces are stained and examined. It is the inner surface of the gel on which protein migration is least affected by distortion.

Buffers

A number of buffers have been employed in starch gel electrophoresis. We have used Sorensen's phosphate buffer, phosphate-citric acid buffer and borate buffer with success. The gels behave well at low and high pH. The molarity of the gel buffer should be between 0.02 and 0.03. Since the starch itself alters the pH of the buffer, the final pH of the gel must be determined after it has cooled sufficiently.

The bridge buffer should be at the same pH as that of the gel and approximately 0.3 M.

Borate Buffer GEL 1.42 gm H_3BO_3 is dissolved in a liter of distilled water. The desired pH is obtained by the addition of NaOH solution.

BRIDGE 18.55 gm of H_3BO_3 is dissolved in a liter of distilled water. The desired pH is obtained by the addition of NaOH solution. We have found it convenient to add 40% NaOH dropwise until the desired pH is reached.

Sorensen's Buffer GEL M/15 Na HPO_4 and M/15 KH PO_4 are mixed in proportions needed to obtain the proper pH and the solution then diluted $\sqrt{v/v}$ with distilled water.

BRIDGE M/15 Na HPO_4 and M/15 KH PO_4 are mixed in proportions needed to obtain desired pH and used full strength.

Citric Acid Buffer GEL Citric acid 0.1 M and Na HPO_4 0.2 M are made and mixed in proportions needed to obtain the desired pH. 20 ml of the solution is then made up to 200 ml with distilled water.

- 2 Itano H A Bergren W R and Sturgeon P The abnormal human hemoglobins *Medicine* 35 121 1956
- 3 Jacob G F and Raper A B Hereditary persistence of foetal haemoglobin production and its interaction with sickle cell trait *Brit J Haemat* 4 138 1958
- 4 Singer K Chernoff A I and Singer L Studies on abnormal hemoglobins 1 Their demonstration in sickle cell anemia and other hematologic disorders by means of alkali denaturation *Blood* 6 413 1951
- 5 White J C and Beavan G H Foetal haemoglobin *Brit Med Bull* 15 33 1959

BLEEDING TIME

I DUKE METHOD

Apparatus

- 1 Sterile Bard Parker blade
- 2 Filter paper 8 inches in diameter

Method

- 1 Make a skin puncture in the lobe of the ear
- 2 Blot with filter paper (without touching the skin) every 1/2 minute until bleeding stops

Calculation

Normal 1-3 minutes

II ILY METHOD

Apparatus

- 1 Spring lancet
- 2 Filter paper
- 3 Sphygmomanometer

Method

A sphygmomanometer cuff is fixed about the arm and the pressure raised to 40 mm Hg. With a spring lancet the blade set at 2.5 mm three wounds are made on the extensor surface of the forearm care being taken to avoid scars and superficial veins.

Using three filter paper discs each wound is gently blotted every 15 seconds until bleeding stops.

The average of the time taken for bleeding to stop is computed by adding the total number of blots on the papers and dividing by twelve.

6 Filter the clear red solution and adjust to a concentration of 9 to 11 gm per 100 ml hemoglobin by adding appropriate amounts of distilled H₂O (Solution A)

7 Place 1.6 ml of the alkali reagent in a serologic test tube and keep in a water bath at 20° C for several minutes

8 0.1 ml of the hemoglobin solution is added with a blow out pipette. The pipette is rinsed several times and the tube gently shaken for 10 seconds

9 Start stop watch at the moment the hemoglobin solution is introduced and in exactly one minute add 3.4 ml of the precipitating solution

10 Invert six times and immediately filter through a double layer of filter paper into a clean test tube (Solution B)

Calculation (References 1 and 4)

The amount of fetal hemoglobin in the original hemoglobin solution is determined by comparing the optical density of solution A with solution B in a colorimeter at 540 millimicrons. Solution B is a 1:50 dilution of solution A and this dilution factor must be considered when comparing the two hemoglobin solutions.

If a Beckman spectrophotometer is used 0.02 ml (Sahlb pipette) of solution A may be diluted with 4 ml of distilled water (Solution C) and its optical density determined without dilution. The percentage of fetal hemoglobin is then determined

$$\frac{1/4 \text{ optical density solution B}}{\text{optical density solution C}} \times 100 = \% \text{ Fetal hemoglobin}$$

Comment

The resistance of fetal hemoglobin to alkali denaturation is well known. However, the alkali resistant fraction in this test is a mixture of undenatured fetal hemoglobin and dissolved denatured hemoglobin. The precipitated material is also a mixture consisting of denatured hemoglobin and a small amount of adsorbed, undenatured fetal hemoglobin (reference 2).

As normal adult bloods give one minute residues between 0.5 to 1.7% only those above 2% are considered as positive evidence of the presence of fetal hemoglobin (reference 4). The presence of fetal hemoglobin indicates a continuation of the production of the pigment beyond the usual age limit or a reactivation of its production. The mechanism of its formation and its significance is not clear (reference 5). It has been found in the blood of patients with hereditary hemoglobinopathies, thalassemia and pernicious anemia. It is not present in the acquired hemolytic anemias (reference 5). There has been a suggestion that fetal hemoglobin may persist to adult life unassociated with any other hematologic abnormality (reference 3).

References

- 1 Chernoff A. I. The human hemoglobins in health and disease. New England J Med 253:322-365, 416, 1955

It has been noted by Macfarlane (reference 2) that there is a linear increase in the degree of clot retraction as packed cell volume decreases. The relationship between decreased clot retraction and the presence of jaundice and pneumonia is not clear. The abnormal proteins present in myeloma are known to interfere with clotting and may affect clot retraction as well.

References

- 1 Ackroyd J F A simple method of estimating clot retraction with a survey of normal values and the changes that occur with menstruation Clin Sc 7 231 1948-49
- 2 Macfarlane R G A simple method for measuring clot retraction Lancet I 1199 1939

THE TOURNIQUET TEST OF CAPILLARY FRAGILITY

Method (Reference 4)

1 A small circle 2.5 cm in diameter is drawn on the inner aspect of the forearm about 4 cm below the crease of the elbow. Any skin blemishes which might be confused with petechiae are marked.

2 A manometer cuff is elevated to midway between diastolic and systolic pressure and held for five to ten minutes.

3 Five minutes after the pressure is released the number of petechiae within the circle are counted.

4 If there is excessive discomfort or if petechiae appear the test is terminated. It should not be repeated in under seven or eight days.

Calculation

Normal 0-10

Marginal 10-20

Abnormal 20+

Note

This procedure first described by Hess in 1914 (reference 3) provides a measure of the ability of the vascular endothelium to withstand trauma and recover from it. It is thought that small breaks occur frequently in the capillary walls and that these breaks are normally plugged by platelets and perhaps by fibrin. The test when positive indicates a defect in the vascular endothelium, its supporting structures, or perhaps some plasma factor or cellular element important to the maintenance of vascular integrity. Marked thrombocytopenia, for example, may result in a positive test.

Tests of capillary resistance are not entirely satisfactory since there is considerable variation in the results on the same person at different times and indeed in different arms (reference 2).

Calculation

Normal 3-4 minutes (some accept 7 minutes)

Note

This test was originally described by Duke in 1910 and depends on the normal function of small vessels as well as the presence of adequate numbers of normal platelets

References

- 1 Duke W W The relation of blood platelets to hemorrhagic disease
JAMA 55 1185 1910
- 2 Ivy A C Shapiro P F and McNick P The bleeding tendency in
jaundice Surg Gynec & Obst 60 781 1935

CLOT RETRACTION**Apparatus**

- 1 Graduated centrifuge tubes (must read to 0.1 ml)
- 2 Wire of diameter 1 to 1.5 mm so coiled that there are six turns to the inch Spiral should be two inches long

Method

- 1 Something over 5 ml of blood is drawn and after removing the needle the blood is allowed to flow gently into the centrifuge tube to the 5 ml mark
- 2 The wire spiral is put in place in the tube
- 3 The tube is then incubated at 37° C in a waterbath After the blood has clotted firmly the tube is left undisturbed for an additional hour
- 4 The wire spiral is then removed allowing for drainage
- 5 The volume of the remaining serum and cells expressed from the clot is read directly in the tube and the volume expressed as a percentage of the original 5 ml

Calculation

Normal Retraction between 48 and 64% with mean of 54.7%

Note

The rate and the completeness of clot retraction are affected by

- a The quantity and quality of the platelets
- b The red blood cell volume
- c The presence of such disorders as myeloma pneumonia and jaundice

INDIRECT PLATELET COUNT**Method**

- 1 Make a blood smear immediately from needle after venipuncture or from finger puncture
- 2 Stain with Wright's stain
- 3 Count the number of platelets per 1000 red cells
- 4 Determine red blood cell count
- 5
$$\frac{\text{Platelets/1000 RBC} \times \text{RBC/cu mm}}{1000} = \text{platelets/cu mm}$$

Calculation

Normal 250 000-600 000 per cu mm

Note

Quantitative and perhaps qualitative changes in the platelets may be of importance in coagulation. A quantitative measure of the platelets may be obtained by a direct chamber count or indirectly by relating the number of platelets to the number of red blood cells present on a blood film. A markedly diminished platelet count indicates a failure to produce platelets at a sufficient rate and/or their increased destruction. A quantitative decrease in platelets is known as thrombocytopenia.

References

- 1 Bray W C. Synopsis of Clinical Laboratory Methods 3rd Ed. C V Mosby Co. St Louis 1948 p 113
- 2 Brecher G and Cronkite E P. Morphology and enumeration of human blood platelets. J Appl Physiol 3:365 1950

COAGULATION TIME**Apparatus**

- 1 Four test tubes 2½ by ¾ inches
- 2 Waterbath at 37° C

Method

- 1 Venous blood is drawn into a clean dry all glass syringe with a tightly fitting sharp 18 gauge needle
- 2 Detach the needle and gently deliver 1 ml volumes of blood into each of four 2½ by ¾ inch test tubes. If possible keep tubes in waterbath at 37° C
- 3 A stop watch is started at the moment the blood first enters the syringe

A small suction cup as described by Dalldorf (reference 1) may also be used to determine capillary resistance

References

- 1 Dalldorf G A sensitive test for subclinical scurvy in man *Am J Dis Child* 46 794 1933
- 2 Greene D Evaluation of the capillary resistance test in the diagnosis of subclinical scurvy *JAMA* 103 4 1934
- 3 Hess A F and Fish M Infantile scurvy The blood the blood vessels and the diet *Am J Dis Child* 8 385 1914
- 4 Wright I S and Lihenfeld, A Pharmacologic and therapeutic properties of crystalline vitamin C *Arch Int Med* 57 241 1936

PLATELET COUNT

DIRECT PLATELET COUNT WITH PHASE MICROSCOPE

Reagent and Apparatus

- 1 Diluent for platelet counts—1 per cent ammonium oxalate in distilled H₂O
- 2 Phase contrast microscope
- 3 Red blood cell counting chamber and pipettes

Method

1 Make a deep finger puncture Discard the first drop of blood then draw blood to 1 mark on the red cell pipette avoiding touching the end of the pipette on the skin Draw diluent to 101 mark making a 1:100 dilution Using another pipette make a duplicate preparation

2 Rotate the pipettes to mix the contents well then place in a mechanical shaker for 20 minutes

3 Discard $\frac{1}{2}$ of contents of one pipette and fill both sides of the red cell counting chamber Repeat with second pipette and chamber

4 Let both chambers stand for 15 minutes in a covered Petri dish A piece of wet cotton placed in each dish will prevent evaporation

5 Counting is done using 43X dry phase contrast objective and count mg chamber with a flat bottom Platelets will be seen to have a faint halo Shadows of red cells may be seen in the background

Calculation

Count at least 300 platelets

$$\frac{\text{Total no of platelets counted} \times 10 \times \text{dilution}}{\text{no of 1 mm sq counted}} = \text{platelets per cu mm}$$

Counts must be completed within 8 hours after collection of the blood

- b Centrifuge at 1500 r p m for 10 minutes
- c Separate platelet containing plasma into silicone centrifuge tubes
- d Centrifuge at 3000 r p m for 15 minutes
- e Clear supernatant = used as substrate plasma
- f Platelets deposited in button at bottom of tube are fragmented with wooden stick and washed twice with 0.85% NaCl
- g Resuspend in 0.85% saline to $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ original volume of plasma

Method

- 1 Measure 0.1 ml amounts of substrate plasma in Lee and White clotting tubes and place in waterbath at 37 °C
- 2 Pipette into a Lee and White clotting tube
 - 0.3 ml 1/5 dilution of normal adsorbed plasma
 - 0.3 ml 1/10 dilution of normal serum
 - 0.3 ml 1/100 dilution of chloroform extract of brain
- 3 Place in waterbath at 37 °C
- 4 Add 0.3 ml M/40 CaCl₂ to the mixture and start stop watch. Agitate with 0.1 ml pipette
- 5 At one minute add 0.1 ml of initial mixture and 0.1 ml M/40 CaCl₂ to a tube of substrate plasma. Start stop watch and time clot
- 6 Repeat at minute intervals until minimum clotting time is recorded. Repeat at 12 minutes to confirm minimum clotting time
- 7 Repeat test substituting in turn patient's serum and plasma for normal and then both the patient's plasma and serum together
- 8 The test may be done using a suspension of platelets from normal control and from the patient which are substituted in turn for the brain extract

Note

As has been noted thromboplastin activity is thought to develop in the intrinsic (blood) system when there are present in the incubation mixture antihemophilic factor plasma thromboplastin component plasma thromboplastin antecedent Stuart factor platelets Factor V and ionized calcium. The thromboplastin generation test provides a method by which a specific deficiency of one of these factors may be discovered.

Normal plasma treated with Al(OH)₃ provides AHF PTA Factor V and Hageman factor but does not contain Factor VII Stuart factor or PTC. Serum should contain Stuart factor Factor VII PTA PTC and Hageman factor while Factor V and AHF which are consumed in clotting are lacking. (Factor VII is not essential for development of thromboplastin activity in the intrinsic system.) If the three reagents Al(OH)₃ adsorbed plasma normal serum and platelets or brain extract are incubated in the presence of CaCl₂ there is developed a labile but powerful thromboplastin activity. The efficiency of the thromboplastin activity is then measured by

4 The four tubes are tilted in turn at half minute intervals until each can be tilted through an angle greater than 90 degrees without spilling

5 The clotting time of each tube is measured separately and the average of the four times reported

Calculation

Normal 5 to 10 minutes As the normal range for the Lee and White test varies in different laboratories and from time to time in the same laboratory a normal control should be run once a week

Note

The whole blood coagulation time was described late in the nineteenth century but was standardized by White and Lee in 1913 (reference 1) The test is a measure of the adequacy of the various factors which take part in the intrinsic system to bring about coagulation The technique must be scrupulous in order that admixture with tissue juices does not occur during collection of the blood The test is insensitive and may fail to expose serious defects in coagulation It may for example be normal in the presence of severe AHF deficiency

Reference

- 1 White P D and Lee Roger I A clinical study of the coagulation time of blood *Am J M Sc* 145 495 1913

THE THROMBOPLASTIN GENERATION TEST

Reagents

1 Normal adsorbed plasma diluted 1/5 with 0.85% NaCl This must stand for at least 10 minutes

2 Patient's adsorbed plasma diluted 1/5 with 0.85% NaCl This must stand for at least 10 minutes

3 Normal serum diluted 1/10 with glyoxaline buffer This must stand for 1 hour

4 Patient's serum diluted 1/10 with glyoxaline buffer This must stand for 1 hour

5 Chloroform extract of brain diluted 1/100 with saline

6 1/40 CaCl₂

7 Substrate plasma

8 Platelet suspension

NORMAL SUBSTRATE AND PLATELET SUSPENSIONS

- 1 Twenty ml of whole normal blood is collected into two silicone treated 10 ml graduated centrifuge tubes each of which contains 1 ml of 3.8% sodium citrate

- b Centrifuge at 1500 r p m for 10 minutes
- c Separate platelet containing plasma into silicone centrifuge tubes
- d Centrifuge at 3000 r p m for 15 minutes
- e Clear supernatant is used as substrate plasma
- f Platelets deposited in button at bottom of tube are fragmented with wooden stick and washed twice with 0.85% NaCl
- g Resuspend in 0.85% saline to $\frac{1}{5}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ original volume of plasma

Method

- 1 Measure 0.1 ml amounts of substrate plasma in Lee and White clotting tubes and place in waterbath at 37° C
- 2 Pipette into a Lee and White clotting tube
 - 0.3 ml 1/5 dilution of normal adsorbed plasma
 - 0.3 ml 1/10 dilution of normal serum
 - 0.3 ml 1/100 dilution of chloroform extract of brain
- 3 Place in waterbath at 37° C
- 4 Add 0.3 ml 1/40 CaCl₂ to the mixture and start stop watch. Agitate with 0.1 ml pipette
- 5 At one minute add 0.1 ml of initial mixture and 0.1 ml 1/40 CaCl₂ to a tube of substrate plasma. Start stop watch and time clot
- 6 Repeat at minute intervals until minimum clotting time is recorded. Repeat at 12 minutes to confirm minimum clotting time
- 7 Repeat test substituting in turn patient's serum and plasma for normal and then both the patient's plasma and serum together
- 8 The test may be done using a suspension of platelets from normal control and from the patient which are substituted in turn for the brain extract

Note

As has been noted thromboplastin activity is thought to develop in the intrinsic (blood) system when there are present in the incubation mixture antihemophilic factor plasma thromboplastin component plasma thromboplastin antecedent Stuart factor platelets Factor V and ionized calcium. The thromboplastin generation test provides a method by which a specific deficiency of one of these factors may be discovered.

Normal plasma treated with Al(OH)₃ provides AHF PTA Factor V and Hageman factor but does not contain Factor VII Stuart factor or PTC. Serum should contain Stuart factor Factor VII PTA PTC and Hageman factor while Factor V and AHF which are consumed in clotting are lacking (Factor VII is not essential for development of thromboplastin activity in the intrinsic system). If the three reagents Al(OH)₃ adsorbed plasma normal serum and platelets or brain extract, are incubated in the presence of CaCl₂, there is developed a labile but powerful thromboplastin activity. The efficiency of the thromboplastin activity is then measured by

placing aliquots of the incubation mixture in a tube containing a substrate of normal platelet free citrated plasma. Normally coagulation will occur within 10 seconds. By serially substituting the patient's serum $\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$ treated plasma or platelets in this test specific deficiencies of the early phase of coagulation may be revealed.

It is important to note that though the substrate plasma contains factors that may be missing from test fractions the time that would be required for them to react in the substrate tube would be in excess of the 10 second limit defining normality in this test. The development of thromboplastin activity normally requires 3 to 5 minutes. What is measured when the incubation mixture is transferred to the second tube containing the substrate plasma is the rate of conversion of prothrombin to thrombin and the subsequent conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin. If the substrate plasma is normal the end point is dependent solely on the amount of thromboplastin activity that was developed during the incubation period. The fibrinogen and prothrombin in the substrate are constant while the potential variables are in the incubation mixture. The variables may then be separated by performing the classic one stage prothrombin time test.

Reference

1. Biggs R and Douglas A S. The thromboplastin generation test. *J Clin Path* 6:23 1953

ONE STAGE PROTHROMBIN TIME

Reagents

1. Normal plasma. Obtain 45 ml blood by venipuncture and immediately add to tube containing 3.8% sodium citrate. Centrifuge at 1800 rpm for 10 minutes and withdraw clear supernatant plasma.
2. Patient's test plasma. Obtain as above.
3. Brain thromboplastin. Prepared from lyophilized acetone extracted rabbit brain available commercially.
4. $\text{M}/40 \text{ CaCl}_2$

Method

1. Pipette into a clotting tube
0.1 ml normal plasma
0.1 ml brain thromboplastin
2. Place tubes in waterbath at 37°C for one to two minutes.
3. Add 0.1 ml $\text{M}/40 \text{ CaCl}_2$ trigger stop watch and time the clot.
4. Repeat with patient's plasma.
5. The test is usually done in duplicate and the results expressed as a ratio of the normal.

Note

This test described by Quick in 1935 was designed to measure prothrombin in the blood. Brain was supplied as a thromboplastin progenitor and fibrinogen and Ca^{++} were constant factors. When it was first introduced it was felt that prothrombin was the only variable. It is now recognized that Factor VII, Factor V and Stuart factor are also important to the coagulation of fibrinogen under these conditions. A deficiency of any one will affect the prothrombin time as will a deficiency of fibrinogen. The test has been and still is extremely useful in the study of coagulation defects. For the control of Dicumarol therapy many prefer Owren's modification (reference 1). In order to determine quantitatively the prothrombin concentration a two stage procedure may be used (reference 5).

References

1. Owren P. A. and Ans. A. The control of Dicumarol therapy and the quantitative determination of prothrombin and proconvertin. *Scandinavian J Clin & Lab Invest* 3:201 1951
2. Quick A. J. The prothrombin in hemophilia and obstructive jaundice. *J Biol Chem* 109:73 1935
3. Quick A. J. Interpretation of the one stage method for determining prothrombin time. *New England J Med* 248:624 1953
4. Quick A. J. and Hussey C. V. Prothrombin and the one stage prothrombin time. *Brit M J* 1:934 1955
5. Ware A. G. and Seegers W. H. Two stage procedure for the quantitative determination of prothrombin concentration. *Am J Clin Path* 19:471 1949

MODIFIED THROMBOPLASTIN GENERATION TEST

Reagents

1. Normal adsorbed plasma diluted 1/5 with 0.85% NaCl. This must stand for at least 10 minutes.
2. Normal serum diluted 1/10 with glycocaline buffer. This must stand for one hour.
3. Chloroform extract of brain diluted 1/100 with saline.
4. M/40 CaCl_2 .
5. Substrate normal plasma.
 - a. Ten ml of whole normal blood is collected in a silicone treated centrifuge tube containing 1 ml of 3.8% sodium citrate.
 - b. Centrifuge at 300 r.p.m. for 15 minutes.
 - c. Use clear supernatant plasma.
- Substrate test plasma. Obtain whole blood from patient and prepare as in 5 above.

Method

- 1 Measure 0.1 ml amounts of substrate normal and test plasmas in Lee and White clotting tubes and place in waterbath at 37° C
- 2 Pipette into Lee and White clotting tube
 - 0.3 ml 1/5 dilution of normal adsorbed plasma
 - 0.3 ml 1/10 dilution of normal serum
 - 0.3 ml 1/100 dilution of chloroform extract of brain
- 3 Place in waterbath at 37° C
- 4 Add 0.3 ml M/40 CaCl_2 to the mixture and start stop watch. Agitate with 0.1 ml pipette
- 5 At the end of 4, 6 and 8 minutes add 0.1 ml of M/40 CaCl_2 and 0.1 ml of incubation mixture to both the test and normal plasma. Start stop watch and time the appearance of clot in each tube

Note

If the fibrinogen content of the substrate plasmas are normal and there is no anticoagulant present, the rate of clot formation will depend on prothrombin alone. Factor VII, which is essential for the normal evolution of thromboplastic activity in the Quick one stage prothrombin time test, is not essential to this modification of the thromboplastin generation test. This test then may be used to differentiate between prothrombin deficiency and Factor VII deficiency (references 1 and 2).

References

- 1 Hougie C, Barrow E M and Graham J B. Stuart clotting defect I. Segregation of an hereditary hemorrhagic state from the heterogeneous group heretofore called "stable factor" (SPCA proconvertin Factor VII) deficiency. *J Clin Invest* 36:485 1957
- 2 Raccuglia G, Duff I F and Bethell F H. The detection of defects of first stage of coagulation. *J Lab & Clin Med* 53:789 1958

THROMBIN TIME AND TITER

Reagents

- 1 Normal and patient's platelet free citrated plasma. Whole citrated blood spun at 2000 r.p.m. for 15 minutes will provide plasma sufficiently free of platelets
- 2 Thrombin (human thrombin or commercially available bovine thrombin)
- 3 Lee and White clotting tubes

Method

1 0.5 ml of platelet free citrated plasma from both normal and patient is serially diluted in doubling dilutions from 1/2 to 1/128

2 To each tube is added 0.1 ml human thrombin (36 units/ml) or bovine thrombin

3 The thrombin titer is the highest dilution containing a visible clot Normal titer 1/64-1/128

4 The thrombin time may be obtained by ascertaining the clotting time of the 1/2 dilution This should be determined for the normal and the patient

Note

If bovine thrombin is used in this test lower thrombin titers and longer clotting times are to be expected Bovine thrombin will frequently be available in the operating room as a hemostatic agent This may be made up to 100 units/ml in saline The thrombin concentration should be adjusted as to give a clotting time for normal plasma of 10 to 12 seconds The test presented is a modification (reference 2) of one presented by Schneider (reference 1)

References

- 1 Schneider C L Rapid estimation of plasma fibrinogen concentration and its use as a guide to therapy of intravascular defibrination *Am J Obst & Gynec* 64 141 1952
- 2 Sharp A A Howie B Biggs H and Methuen D T Defibrination syndrome in pregnancy Value of various diagnostic tests *Lancet* 2 1309 1958

FIBRINOGEN ASSAY

Reagents

- 1 Half saturated solution of ammonium sulfate (Dissolve 26 gm $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ in 50 ml distilled water and then make to 100 ml with distilled H_2O)
- 2 Citrated plasma from patient and normal control
- 3 Esbach's centrifuge tubes (Hopkins type of vaccine tube Gallenkamp)

Method

- 1 Place 2 ml of patient's plasma in one modified Esbach centrifuge tube and 2 ml of control plasma in another
- 2 Add 2 ml half saturated ammonium sulfate to each of the tubes

3 Mix and allow to stand at room temperature for 10 minutes

4 Centrifuge at 2000 r p m for 10 minutes and compare volume of precipitate

Calculation

$$\frac{\text{Vol of patient's precipitate} \times 100}{\text{Vol of normal precipitate}} = \% \text{ of normal fibrinogen}$$

Note

This test is designed to estimate quickly the quantity of fibrinogen. It cannot be relied upon to determine accurately the extent of "effective" fibrinogen deficiency in surgical and obstetrical defibrination since the fibrinogen (or precipitate) measured in these cases may not be physiologically active. A thrombin titer or time should be used as well.

Reference

- 1 Biggs R and Macfarlane R G Human Blood Coagulation and Its Disorders 2nd Ed Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1957

IMIDAZOLE BUFFER

Reagents

- 1 Imidazole (glyoxaline)
- 2 0.1 N HCl
- 3 Distilled water

Method

- 1 Dissolve 1.72 gm imidazole in 90 ml of 0.1 N HCl
- 2 Dilute with water to 100 ml
- 3 pH should be 7.25

Note

This is an excellent buffer for use in coagulation studies. It is isosmotic with 0.9% NaCl.

Reference

- 1 Mertz E T and Owen C A Imidazole buffer Its use in blood clotting studies Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 43:204 1940

ADSORPTION OF PLASMA

Plasma (or serum) may be adsorbed with a number of inorganic precipitating agents. Most commonly used are BaSO_4 and $\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$.

Use of BaSO₄

BaSO₄ must be treated to remove very fine particles which would otherwise remain in the plasma despite centrifugation. One method (reference 1) of preparing it is as follows:

- 1 One pound of x ray quality BaSO₄ is suspended in 4000 ml of 0.005 M trisodium citrate (Na₃C₆H₅O₇·3H₂O) overnight
- 2 Pour off supernatant and discard
- 3 Resuspend in another 4000 ml of 0.005 M trisodium citrate overnight
- 4 Collect sediment on filter paper and dry in hot air oven
- 5 Powder the dry material

Use of Al(OH)₃

Al(OH)₃ may be prepared by suspending 1 gm of alumina gel in 4 ml of water (reference 1)

To adsorb a small amount of plasma

- 1 To 1 ml plasma add 0.1 ml Al(OH)₃. Mix and incubate at 37° C for two minutes
- 2 Centrifuge at 2000 r p m for seven minutes
- 3 Remove and save supernatant

For larger amounts

- 1 To 1000 ml plasma add 50 ml Al(OH)₃. Mix and incubate at 37° C for 15 minutes
- 2 Centrifuge at 2000 r p m for seven minutes
- 3 Remove and save supernatant

Reference

- 1 Biggs R and Macfarlane R G. Human Blood Coagulation and Its Disorders. 2nd Ed. Charles C Thomas, Springfield, Ill. 1957

DETECTION OF GLUTATHIONE INSTABILITY BY COMPARING HEINZ BODY FORMATION IN VITRO

Reagents

- 1 Buffer solution pH 7.6

M/15 KH ₂ PO ₄	13 parts
M/15 NaH ₂ PO ₄	87 parts
200 mg glucose/100 ml	

- 2 Acetylphenylhydrazine solution

100 mg acetylphenylhydrazine in 100 ml of buffer solution

3 Crystal violet solution

2 gm crystal violet in 100 ml of 0.73% NaCl solution Shake 5 minutes and filter To the filtrate is added an equal volume of 0.73% NaCl Stable at room temperature at least five months

Method

1 Mix 0.1 ml heparinized blood (75 mg heparin/5 ml blood) and 2.0 ml acetylphenylhydrazine solution Blood must be used within one hour of the time sample is drawn Aerate suspension by blowing air through pipette two or three times

2 Incubate in uncapped tube in waterbath at 37° C for two hours

3 Aerate suspension again

4 Incubate for a second two hour period at 37° C

5 Agitate suspension and then mix a small drop of the suspension with a slightly larger drop of crystal violet solution on a microscope slide and cover with cover slip

6 After 5 or 10 minutes determine the percentage of cells having five or more Heinz bodies Field should be selected in which cells are not crenated or overlapping and in which there is no hemolysis

Comment

Normal (insensitive cells) 0-28%

Abnormal (sensitive cells) 45-98%

Reference

- 1 Beutler E, Dern R J and Alving A S The hemolytic effect of primaquine J Lab & Clin Med 45:40 1955

REFERENCES

BLOOD GROUPS

- 1 Andresen P H The Human Blood Groups Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1952
- 2 DeGowin E L Hardin R C and Alvear J H Blood Transfusion W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1949
- 3 Kabat E A Blood Group Substances Their Chemistry and Immunology Academic Press Inc New York 1955
- 4 Landsteiner K Zur Kenntnis der antifermentativen lytischen und agglutinierenden Wirkungen des Blutserums und der Lymphe Zentralbl f Bakt 77:357 1900
- 5 Landsteiner K and Levine P A new agglutinable factor differentiating individual human bloods Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 24:600 1927
- 6 Landsteiner K and Wiener A S An agglutinable factor in human blood recognized by immune sera for rhesus blood Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 43:223 1940
- 7 Levine P and Stetson R E An unusual case of intragroup agglutination JAMA 113:126 1939

- 8 Manuella A Blood groups and disease Hard facts and delusions JAMA 167 2047 1958
- 9 Miller S E Textbook of Clinical Pathology 5th ed Williams and Wilkins Co Baltimore 1955 p 299
- 10 Mourant A E The Distribution of the Human Blood Groups Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1954
- 11 Race R R and Sanger H Blood Groups in Man 3rd Ed Charles C Thomas Springfield, Ill 1958
- 12 Race R R and Sanger H The inheritance of blood groups Brit M Bull 15 99 1959
- 13 Roberts J A P Some associations between blood groups and disease Brit M Bull 15 129 1959
- 14 Wiener A S and Wexler I B Heredity of the Blood Groups Grune and Stratton, New York, 1958

BLOOD TRANSFUSION

- 15 Brittingham T E and Chaplin H Jr Sensitivity to buffy coat A cause of "nonspecific" transfusion reactions J Clin Invest., 36 877 1957
- 16 Committee of the Joint Blood Council and American Association of Blood Banks Standards for a Blood Transfusion Service Joint Blood Council Washington D C and American Association of Blood Banks Chicago Ill 1958
- 17 DeGowin E L Hurdin R C and Alsever J B Blood Transfusion W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1949
- 18 Editorial Abuse of transfusion therapy New England J Med 245 745 1951
- 19 Hampton A G Crockett C I and Leavell H D Dangers of blood transfusions Virginia M Monthly 82 217 1955
- 20 Mollison P L Blood Transfusion in Clinical Medicine 2nd Ed Charles C Thomas Springfield, Ill 1956
- 21 Moore C V Medical problems created by a national blood program JAMA 149 1613 1952

EXAMINATION OF THE BONE MARROW

- 22 Custer R F An Atlas of the Blood and Bone Marrow W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1949
- 23 Isaacs M C G An Atlas of Bone Marrow Pathology Grune and Stratton New York, 1948
- 24 Leichter S J Bone Marrow Biopsy J A Churchill, Ltd London 1949
- 25 Wintrobe M M Clinical Hematology 4th Ed Lea and Febiger Philadelphia 1958
- 26 Young R H and Osgood F E Sternal marrow aspirated during life Arch Int Med 55 186 1935

INDEX

Numbers in *italic type* refer to illustrations As used in this index the abbreviation *vs* means differential diagnosis

- AB blood group 431
- Abdominal disease acute *vs* sickle cell anemia, 170
- ABO blood groups 431
- ABO incompatibility erythroblastosis fetalis due to 158
 - hemolytic disease of newborn due to See *Erythroblastosis fetalis*
- ABO system 431
- Absorption defective as factor in nutritional deficiency 73
- AC globulin See *Factor V*
- Accelerator globulin See *Factor V*
- prothrombin See *Factor VII*
 - serum prothrombin conversion See *Factor VII*
- Acetylcholinesterase erythrocyte 29
- ACC See *Factor V*
- Acid phosphatase activity in leukocytes 7
- ACTH effect on circulating leukocytes 312
 - in acquired hemolytic anemia 197
 - in acute leukemia 382
- Addison, Thomas 105
- Addison's anemia See *Anemia pernicious*
- Adolescence anemia of hypochromic See *Anemia iron deficiency*
- Adrenocortical steroids in acute leukemia, 362
 - in acquired hemolytic anemia 196
 - in aplastic anemia, 134
 - in chronic erythrocytic hypoplasia 134
 - in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 369
 - in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura 367
 - in leukemia 348
 - in malignant lymphomas 348 404

- Adrenocortical steroids in multiple myeloma 423
in myeloid metaplasia 143
- Agglutinin(s) anti A 431
anti B 431
in ABO blood groups 431
- Agglutininogen(s) A 431
B 431
in ABO blood groups 431
- Agranulocytosis 318
clinical manifestations 321
differential diagnosis 322
historical aspects 319
illustrative case 323
laboratory examination in 321
mechanism 319
prognosis 322
synonyms for 318
treatment 322
- AHF See *Factor antihemophilic*
- Aleukia hemorrhagica See *Anemia aplastic*
- Alkali denaturation technique of fetal hemoglobin detection 465
- Alkaline phosphatase activity in granulocytes 6
stain of leukocytes technique; azo dye method 452
Gomori procedure; modification 451
- Alkylating agents
in leukemia 343
in malignant lymphoma 343
- Allergies eosinophilia in 317
- Amidopyrine agranulocytosis and 319
- Amyloidosis in multiple myeloma 415
- Androgens in myeloid metaplasia 143
- Anemia(s)
achrestic 112
Addison's See *Anemia pernicious*
adynamic See *Anemia aplastic*
aplastic 128 138
causative agents 129
clinical course 135
clinical manifestations 131
differential diagnosis 132
hemolytic aspects of 131
idiopathic 75 130
illustrative cases 136
laboratory examination in 90 132
macrocytic anemia in 92
mechanism 129
prognosis 135
treatment 133
aregenerative See *Anemia aplastic*
associated with deficient absorption from gastrointestinal tract 118 119
with enlarged lymph nodes 391
Biermer's See *Anemia pernicious*
Anemia(s) blood loss and 76
chlorotic See *Anemia iron deficiency*
chronic blood transfusion in 433
classification 69 72
by cell size and hemoglobin content 71 90
by mechanism of production 71
morphologic 70
clinical syndromes associated with 104 219
Cooley's See *Thalassemia*
definition 69
diagnosis 69 103
history in 88
laboratory studies in 87 89 90
treatment in relation to 99
diminished erythropoiesis and 72
drepanocytic See *Anemia sickle cell*
erythroblastic See *Thalassemia*
hematocrit determination in diagnosis 87
hemoglobin determination in diagnosis 87
hemolytic
acquired, 191 199
ACTH in 197
clinical manifestations 193
diagnosis 195
history 191
illustrative case 198
laboratory examination in 194
pathogenesis 193
prognosis 196
treatment 196
auto-immune 82
classification 82
in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 367 373
in lymphoma 397 399
burns causing 84
chemical agents causing 84
congenital See *Spherocytosis hereditary*
due to extracorporeal defects 82
due to infectious agents 84
due to intracorporeal defects 77
due to physical agents 84
hemopathic 85
idiopathic See *Anemia hemolytic*
acquired
in infectious mononucleosis 331
in splenomegaly 85
in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura 269
laboratory procedures in 90
liver disease and 86
macrocytic anemia in 93
normoblastic hyperplasia in 21
primaquine and 81
types determination of 95

- Anemia(s) hemolytic types: miscellaneous 85
 vegetable poisons causing 85
 hypochromic
 idiopathic See Anemia iron deficiency
 microcytic 98
 iron deficiency in 98
 pyridoxine deficiency in 61
 of adolescence See Anemia iron deficiency
 of pregnancy See Anemia iron deficiency
 of prematurity See Anemia iron deficiency
 hypoplastic See Anemia aplastic
 macrocytic due to unknown cause
 See Anemia aplastic
 normocytic due to unknown cause
 See Anemia aplastic
 in acute leukemia 359
 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 366
 in chronic monocytic leukemia 381
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia 371
 in lymphoma 398
 in multiple myeloma 415 418
 increased hemolysis and 76
 iron deficiency 98 143-158 See also
 Anemia microcytic hypochromic
 causes 98
 clinical manifestations 150
 course 152
 differential diagnosis 151
 illustrative cases 154
 in malabsorption syndrome 118
 in pregnancy 120
 iron absorption in 50
 laboratory examination in 150
 mechanism 149
 normocytic anemia in 97
 prognosis 152
 treatment 152
 types 150
 laboratory studies in diagnosis 89 90
 Lederer's See Anemia hemolytic acquired
 leukoerythroblastic See Metaplasia myeloid
 macrocytic 91
 hypoplastic due to unknown cause
 See Anemia aplastic
 in aplastic anemia 92
 in cirrhosis of liver 202
 in folic acid deficiency 91
 in hemolytic anemia 83
 in myxedema, 93
 in pregnancy 121
 in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency 91
 mechanisms 69 103
 Mediterranean See Thalassemia
- Anemia(s) megaloblastic following anti
 convulsant drug treatment 108
 in fish tapeworm infections 107
 in impaired vitamin B absorption
 107
 in pregnancy 121
 microcytic
 hypochromic 98
 iron deficiency in 98
 pyridoxine deficiency in 61
 simple 98
 normocytic 93
 hypoplastic due to unknown cause
 See Anemia aplastic
 in acute blood loss 97
 in deficient blood production 97
 in Hodgkin's disease 397
 in hyperhemolysis 93
 of acute blood loss 143-148
 illustrative case 147
 of chronic liver disease 102 103
 of erythroblastosis fetalis 183 187 See
 also Erythroblastosis fetalis
 mechanism 185
 of myxedema 124 128
 diagnosis 127
 illustrative case 127
 laboratory examinations in 126
 mechanism 125
 prognosis 147
 of newborn See Erythroblastosis fetalis
 of renal disease 122-124
 factors in 124
 of thalassemia mechanism 179 See also
 Thalassemia
 of uremia 123
 paralytic toxic See Anemia aplastic
 pernicious 104 118
 blood in peripheral 110
 bone marrow in 109 110
 carcinoma of stomach and 115
 clinical manifestations 108
 course 115
 diagnosis 91 111
 differential diagnosis 111
 erythrocyte findings in 109
 gastric secretion in 109
 history 103
 illustrative cases 116
 laboratory examination in 109
 leukocyte findings in 109
 megaloblastic hyperplasia in 21
 prognosis 115
 treatment, 113
 vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in mechanism
 110
 vs aplastic anemia 133
 physical examination in diagnosis 89
 pregnancy 120 122

- Adrenocortical steroids in multiple myeloma 423
in myeloid metaplasia 143
- Agglutinin(s) anti A 431
anti B 431
in ABO blood groups 431
- Agglutininogen(s) A 431
B 431
in ABO blood groups 431
- Agranulocytosis 318
clinical manifestations 321
differential diagnosis 322
historical aspects 319
illustrative case 323
laboratory examination in 321
mechanism 319
prognosis 322
synonyms for 318
treatment 322
- AIIF See *Factor antihemophilic*
- Aleukia hemorrhagica See *Anemia aplastic*
- Alkali denaturation technique of fetal hemoglobin detection 465
- Alkaline phosphatase activity in granulocytes 6
stain of leukocytes technique azo dye method 452
Gomori procedure modification 451
- Alkylating agents
in leukemia 343
in malignant lymphoma 343
- Allergies eosinophilia in 317
- Amidopyrine agranulocytosis and 319
- Amyloidosis in multiple myeloma 415
- Androgens in myeloid metaplasia 143
- Anemia(s)
achrestic 112
Addison's See *Anemia pernicious*
adynamic See *Anemia aplastic*
aplastic 128-139
causative agents 129
clinical course 135
clinical manifestations 131
differential diagnosis 132
hemolytic aspects of 131
idiopathic 75 130
illustrative cases 136
laboratory examination in 90 132
macrocytic anemia in 92
mechanism 129
prognosis 135
treatment 133
aregenerative See *Anemia aplastic*
associated with deficient absorption from gastrointestinal tract 118 119
with enlarged lymph nodes 391
Bermer's See *Anemia pernicious*
Anemia(s) blood loss and 76
chlorotic See *Anemia iron deficiency*
chronic blood transfusion in 433
classification 69 72
by cell size and hemoglobin content 71 90
by mechanism of production 71
morphologic 70
clinical syndromes associated with 104 219
Cooley's See *Thalassemia*
definition 69
diagnosis 69 103
history in 88
laboratory studies in 87 89 90
treatment in relation to 99
diminished erythropoiesis and 72
drepanocytic See *Anemia sickle cell*
erythroblastic See *Thalassemia*
hematocrit determination in diagnosis 87
hemoglobin determination in diagnosis 87
hemolytic
acquired 191 199
ACTH in 197
clinical manifestations 193
diagnosis 195
history 191
illustrative case 198
laboratory examination in 194
pathogenesis 192
prognosis 196
treatment 196
auto immune 82
classification 82
in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 367 373
in lymphoma 397 399
burns causing 84
chemical agents causing 84
congenital See *Spherocytosis hereditary*
due to extracorporeal defects 82
due to infectious agents 84
due to intracorporeal defects 77
due to physical agents 84
hemopathic 85
idiopathic See *Anemia hemolytic*
acquired
in infectious mononucleosis 331
in splenomegaly 85
in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura 269
laboratory procedures in 90
liver disease and 66
macrocytic anemia in 93
normoblastic hyperplasia in 21
primaquine and 81
types determination of 95

- Bleeding gastrointestinal in iron deficiency anemia 149
in polycythemia vera 224
throat in AIF deficiency treatment 53
- Bleeding diathesis. *See Hemorrhagic diathesis*
- Bleeding response in in myxedema 125
normal 125
- Bleeding time determination in hemorrhagic diathesis 251
technique 407
Duke method 467
Ivy method 467
prolonged with inherited autosomal hemorrhagic diathesis. *See Von Willebrand's disease*
- Blood
cells
chemistry 1
classification 1
erythrocytic series 19
termology 19
function 1
granulocytic series 2
lymphocytic series 8
monocytic series 12
morphology 1
origin 1 18
plasmacytic series 17
red. *See Erythrocytes*
relationship 18
thrombocytic series 14
white. *See Leukocytes*
- Changes in pregnancy hemodilution in 140
- Coagulation. *See Coagulation*
- Complications in infectious mononucleosis 331
- Disorders leukoagglutination in 318
- Films prepared staining of technique 445
- Findings in Hodgkin disease 397
- Group(s) 430
A 431
subgroups
A₁ 431
A₁B 431
A₂ 431
A B 431
AB 431
ABO a r bodies in serum 431
antigens in r d cells 431
incidence 431
antigenic systems 431
B 431
O 431
incompatible hemolytic reactions following transfusions 434
diagnosis 434
loss acute anemia due to "B 145-148
- Blood loss acute anemia due to illustrative case 147
monocytic anemia in, 97
anemias due to "B
classification 71
chronic anemias due to "B
iron deficiency in 98 149
peripheral, erythrocytes in 24
hypochromic microcytes in 24
in pernicious anemia 110
macrocytes in 24
ovalocytes in 24
platelet. *See Platelet*
production deficient normocytic anemia in 97
response to acute hemorrhage 146
to iron therapy in iron deficiency anemia 153
transfusion. *See Transfusion*
types Rh 432
values in pregnancy 120
vessels abnormalities hemostatic disorders due to 460
function and blood coagulation disorders of 299
- Bodies Auer 3
blast cells with 359
Cabot ring 23
Henz, 20
formation in vitro comparison "glutathione instability detection by technique 479
Howell Jolly 20
Mott in multiple myeloma 418 419
Russell, in multiple myeloma, 418
Bone marrow. *See Marrow*
- Brill Symmers disease. *See Lymphoma germ follicular and Lymphomas malignant*
- Buchanan 240 244
- Burns hemolytic anemia due to 84
- CABOT 221
Cabot rings 25
Cahn 105
Calcium in blood coagulation 244 246
Capillary fragility tourniquet test of technique 469
Carcinoma metastatic bone marrow in 497
lymph nodes in 390
of stomach pernicious anemia and, 115
Carcinomatosis vs aplastic anemia 133
Cardiovascular symptoms in polycythemia vera 2-3
Castle 103
Castles factor 5 62
Catalase, erythrocyte 28
CB 1348. *See Chlo ambucal*
CDE system 432

- Anemia(s) pregnancy diagnosis 122
 hypochromic See *Anemia iron deficiency*
 treatment 122
 types 120
 primary See *Anemia pernicious*
 refractory See *Anemia aplastic*
 secondary See *Anemia iron deficiency*
 sickle cell 163 175
 body habitus in 171
 cell destruction in increased
 mechanism 80
 clinical manifestations 165
 course 170
 differential diagnosis 170
 heredity in 60
 history 163
 laboratory examination in 168
 mechanism 163
 prognosis 170
 transfusions in 172
 effects of 172
 treatment 172
 vs sickle cell trait 95
 spherocytic See *Spherocytosis hereditary*
 syndromes associated with 104 219
 treatment in relation to diagnosis 99
- Angina agranulocytic See *Agranulocytosis*
 monocytic See *Mononucleosis infectious*
- Anhydrous carbonic erythrocyte 29
- Anisocytosis 25
- Antibiotics in agranulocytosis 323
 in aplastic anemia 135
 in leukemia 361 369 374
 in sickle cell anemia crisis 173
- Antibody(ies) leukocyte agranulocytosis
 and 320
 as mechanism in neutropenia 317
 opsonic function of 8
 production in plasmaocytes 19
 lymphocytes in 11
- Anticoagulants circulating 287
 clinical findings 288
 pathologic physiology 288
 treatment 288
 physiologic fibrinolysis and 246
- Anticonvulsants as cause of hematologic
 abnormalities 321
 treatment with macrocytic anemia fol
 lowing 108
- Antigen(s) A 431
 H 431
 blood group incompatibility 83
 D(Rh_c) 432
- Antigenic systems of erythrocytes 431
- Antiglobulin tests in acquired hemolytic
 anemia 194
- Antihemophilic factor See *Factor anti
 hemophilic*
 A See *Factor antihemophilic*
 H See *Plasma thromboplastin com
 ponent*
- Antihemophilic globulin See *Factor anti
 hemophilic*
- Antimetabolites in leukemia 348
- Antimicrobial drugs as cause of hema
 tologic abnormalities 321
- Antithrombin 246
- Antithyroid drugs as cause of hematologic
 abnormalities 321
- Apo ferritin 53
- Arthus 240
- Ascorbic acid in erythropoiesis 62
- Auer bodies 3
 blast cells with 369
- Auto-antibodies in hemolytic anemia
 mechanism of formation 82
- Auto immune hemolytic disease See *Ano
 mia hemolytic acquired*
- Autoprothrombin I See *Factor VII*
- Autoprothrombin II See *Plasma thrombo
 plastin component*
- 8 Azaguanine in leukemia 348
- BAND cell morphology 4
- Basophil(s) count 315
 life span of 312
 morphology II
- Basophilus diffuse 23
 punctate 23
- Basophilic normoblast morphology 22
- Bean fava hemolytic anemia due to 80
- von Behring 19
- Bence Jones Henry 412
- Bence Jones protein 412
 in urine in multiple myeloma 414
 420
- Bennett 353
- Beta thromboplastin See *Plasma thrombo
 plastin component*
- Biermer 105
- Biermer's anemia See *Anemia pernicious*
- Bilirubin 48
 serum level in erythroblastosis fetalis
 187
 in kernicterus 186
 test technique
 direct 457
 indirect 457
- Biopsy lymph node in diagnosis of pa
 tient with enlarged lymph nodes
 391
 in malignant lymphomas 400
- Blast cells with Auer bodies 359
- Bleeding acute hematologic response 146
 neutrophilic leukocytosis in 316
 anemias due to 76

Differential count 315
technique 445

di Guglielmo syndrome 231 232

Diphyllobothrium latum infestation meg
aloblastic anemia in 107

DNA synthesis folic acid in 107
vitamin B₁₂ in 107

D(Rh) antigen 432

Drugs as cause of hematologic abnor
malities 321

as factor in bone marrow depression "4
130

as leukemogenic agents 305

thrombocytopenia due to 264

Duke method of bleeding time determina
tion 407

Echymoses in idiopathic thrombocyto
penic purpura 266

Edema in erythroblastosis fetalis 156

pulmonary following transfusions 434

EDTA in multiple myeloma 423

Fürch 1 105 128

Electrophoresis hemoglobin "8
in sickle cell anemia 95 1"0

of serum technique 46

paper of serum and urine in multiple
myeloma 413

technique 462

tarch gel technique 463

technique 461

Elliptocytes 25

Emotional state leukocytosis due to 315

Endocarditis bacterial subacute "1
agranulocytosis 322

Endocrine factors in bone marrow de
pression 75

Enzymes erythrocyte 28

Eosinophil(s) count 315

morphology 5

life span of 312

Eosinophilia causes 317

in Hodgkin's disease 397

in infectious mononucleosis 313

Erythemia See Polycythemia vera

Erythremic myelosis 231 232

Erythroblastemia 231 232

Erythroblastosis fetalis 83 184 191

clinical manifestation 187

diagnosis 187

exchange transfusions in indications
189

history 184

illustrative case 190

laboratory examination in 187

mechanism 185

prognosis 190

Rh system in importance 432

treatment 189

Erythrocyte(s) chemistry 27

count technique 440

destruction of extracorporeal factors
in 77 82

intracorporeal factors in 77
mechanism "6

enzymes 28

function 30

glucose metabolism by 28

hemoglobin content determination 70
anemia classification by 71 90

in disease states 24

in peripheral blood 24

in pernicious anemia 109

in sickle cell anemia 169

maturation factor 106

morphology 19 23

normal in peripheral blood 24

origin 26

pencil forms 25

sedimentation rate technique for de
termining 447

size determination "0 90

anemia classification by 71

stroma 30

Erythrocytic series 19

Erythroleukemia 231 232

Erythropoiesis 26 38 51

ascorbic acid in 62

cobalt in 61

control of 38 39 40 41

copper in 61

defective in aplastic anemia 129

diminished anemias due to 72

classification 71

bone marrow failure in 74

in anemia of uremia 123

nutritional deficiency in "2

excessive demands for as factor in nu
tritional deficiency "3

factors needed for 61

folic acid in 61

pyridoxine in 61

types "0

vitamin B₁₂ in 61

Erythropoietin 39

production in uremia 124

Exchange transfusions in erythroblastosis

fetal indications 189

Exercise leukocytosis following 315

Extrinsic factor 62

Extrinsic system in thromboplastin activity

development 248

Factor(s)

antithemophilic concentrated use in

AHIF deficiency 283

deficiency 277

carriers of 278

clinical aspects 281

dental extractions in 283

- Celiac disease anemia associated with 118
- Cell(s) band morphology 4
- blast with Auer bodies 359
- blood See *Blood cells*
- juvenile 3
- morphology 4
- lupus erythematosus 449 449
- phenomenon demonstration of technique 448
- Marschalko's plasma See *Plasmacyte*
- Mexican hat 25
- Mott in multiple myeloma 418 419
- myeloma in multiple myeloma 418
- morphology 17
- plasma See *Plasmacyte*
- Reed Sternberg in Hodgkins disease 397
- segmented morphology 4
- pernicious anemia type 5
- sickle See *Sickle cell* and *Anemia sickle cell*
- stab morphology 4
- target 25
- Charcot 124
- Chauffard 156 192
- Chemicals bone marrow depression due to 75
- hemolytic anemia due to 84
- Chemotaxis 7
- Chemotherapy in acute leukemia 316
- in agranulocytosis 323
- in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
- in chronic myelocytic leukemia 375
- in malignant lymphomas 403
- in multiple myeloma 422
- in polycythemia vera 228
- Chlorambucil in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
- in leukemia 346
- in malignant lymphoma 346 403
- Chlorosis See *Anemia iron deficiency*
- Cholelithiasis in hereditary spherocytosis 158
- Christmas factor See *Plasma thromboplastin components*
- Cirrhosis of liver macrocytic anemia in 202
- Clot retraction estimation in hemorrhagic diathesis 251
- measurement technique 468
- Coagulation 238-258
- abnormalities of 277
- genetic disorders 277
- clinical applications 238
- historical aspects 240
- prothrombin conversion to thrombin, 244
- stages of 241
- first 241
- disorders affecting 277
- first and second disorders affecting 289
- second 244
- Coagulation stages of second disorders affecting 291
- illustrative case 295
- third 244
- disorders affecting 298
- theory 238
- classic summarization 240
- current 241
- thromboplastin activity development in 241
- thromboplastin generation test of 251
- time determination in hemorrhagic diathesis 251
- technique 471
- in antihemophilic factor deficiency 282
- vessel function and disorders of 299
- Cobalt in erythropoiesis 81
- Cobaltous chloride in aplastic anemia 134
- Co-factor of thromboplastin See *Factor V*
- Co factor I, platelet See *Factor anti hemophilic*
- Colcemide in chronic myelocytic leukemia 376
- in polycythemia 228
- Combe 105
- Convulsions leukocytosis due to 315
- Cooley's anemia See *Thalassemia*
- Coombs test in acquired hemolytic anemia 194
- Copper in erythropoiesis 81
- Coproporphyrin 45
- Coproporphyrin I 45
- Coproporphyrin III 45
- Corticosteroids See *Adrenocortical steroids*
- Cortisone See *Adrenocortical steroids*
- Co thromboplastin See *Factor VII*
- Craigie 353
- Crisis in hereditary spherocytosis 158
- in sickle cell anemia 168
- antibiotics in, 173
- Cryoglobulin in multiple myeloma 415
- Cyanmethemoglobin method of determining total hemoglobin 442
- Cystinosis bone marrow in 437
- D INCOMPATIBILITY method of sensitization 185
- Davidsohn differential adsorption test in infectious mononucleosis 333
- Denis 240 245
- Dental extractions in AHT deficiency management 283
- Deoxyribonucleic acid synthesis folic acid in 107
- vitamin B₁₂ in 107
- Dialysis by artificial kidney in transfusion reactions 435
- Diathesis hemorrhagic See *Hemorrhagic diathesis*
- Dict faulty as factor in nutritional deficiency 73

- Gastrointestinal symptoms in polycythemia vera 223-224
in sickle cell anemia 168
- Gastrointestinal tract absorption from defective anemias associated with 118-119
iron absorption and 51
lesions in lymphosarcoma 398
in megaloblastic anemia 107
in pernicious anemia 108-115
in reticulum cell sarcoma 398
- Genetic factors in leukemia 350
- Genitourinary tract symptoms in sickle cell anemia 168
- Genotypes CDE 43
Rh 432
- Geoffrey 148
- Glandular fever See Mononucleosis infectious
- Globulin AC See Factor V
accelerator See Factor V
antithromphic See Factor antithromphic
fraction increase in multiple myeloma 414
gamma increase in multiple myeloma 414
- Glucose metabolism by erythrocytes 28
by granulocytes 8
- Glutathione erythrocyte 29
inability detection by comparing
Heinz body formation in vitro technique 479
peroxidase in erythrocytes 29
- Glycogen content of granulocytes 8
- Glycolysis in glucose metabolism by erythrocyte 28
- Granulocytes 310
alkaline phosphatase activity in 8
chemistry 8
decrease in counts 317
distribution of 310
extravascular function 310
location 310
function 7
glucose metabolism by 8
glycogen content of
in acute leukocytes source of 311
in evolution level of control of 311
increase in associated with enlarged lymph nodes 391
life span of 31
morphology 2
origin 8
quantity of 310
- Granulocyte series 2
early cells 3
- Granulocytopenia See Aggranulocytosis
- di Gligliano syndrome 231-232
- Guillain-Barre syndrome in infectious mononucleosis 330
- Gums hypertrophied, in acute monocytic leukemia 379
- HAGEMAN factor deficiency vs PTA deficiency 262
in thromboplastin activity development 243
- Hammarsten 40
- Hayem 149-192-240
- Heart abnormalities as factor in polycythemia 30
in sickle cell anemia 166
involvement in infectious mononucleosis 330
- Heinz bodies 25
formation in vitro comparison "glutathione in stability" detection by technique 479
- Hemaphysos in AHF deficiency treatment 283
- Hematocrit determination in anemia diagnosis 87
technique 440
level effect of osmotic pressure on 88
- Hematologic techniques 430-481 See also Laboratory procedures in hematology techniques
- Hematology laboratory procedures in 440-480 See also Laboratory procedures in hematology techniques
terminology 2
- Hematopoiesis 28
- Hematuria in infectious mononucleosis 331
in sickle cell anemia 168
- Heme 44
formation 47-47
- Hemodilutor blood changes due to in pregnancy 120
- Hemoglobin (s) abnormal 79
clinical syndromes associated with 175-178
disease states of increased cell destruction in mechanism 60
hemoglobin A and chemical differences 79
catabolism 47
chemistry 43
concentration mean corpuscular determination 70
of erythrocytes anemia classification by 71-90
- Electroplacenta 79-481
in sickle cell anemia 92-170
- Fecal urobilinogen in dark amount formula 94

- Factor(s) antihemophilic deficiency genetic transfer of 277 278 279 280 281
 hemarthroses in 283
 hemorrhage in throat 283
 illustrative case 284
 in inherited autosomal hemorrhagic diathesis See *Von Willebrand's disease*
 operations in management 283
 pathologic physiology 277
 treatment 282
 in thromboplastin activity 242 281
 synonyms for 239
 antihemophilic A See *Factor antihemophilic*
 antihemophilic B See *Plasma thromboplastin component*
 Castle's 62
 Christmas See *Plasma thromboplastin component*
 erythrocyte maturation 106
 extrinsic 82 106
 Hageman deficiency vs PTA deficiency 252
 in thromboplastin activity development 243
 intrinsic 62 106
 action of method 106
 identity of 106
 labile See *Factor V*
 leukocytosis promoting 311
 Rh 432
 stable See *Factor VII*
 Stuart deficiency 253 290
 clinical findings in 291
 illustrative case 295
 pathologic physiology 290
 treatment 291
 in thromboplastin activity development 243
 synonyms for 239
 Stuart Prower See *Factor Stuart*
 V deficiency 253 289
 clinical findings 289
 pathologic physiology 289
 treatment 290
 in thromboplastin activity development 243
 synonyms for 239
 VII deficiency 253 291
 clinical findings in 292
 pathologic physiology 292
 treatment 292
 in thromboplastin activity development 242
 synonyms for 239
 VIII See *Factor antihemophilic*
 IX See *Plasma thromboplastin component*
 X See *Factor Stuart*
 Fanconi's syndrome 129
 Favism 85
 Fecal urobilinogen test technique 458
 Ferritin mucosal block theory 53 54
 Ferrous salts in iron deficiency anemia 152
 Fever glandular See *Mononucleosis infectious*
 in Hodgkin's disease 395
 in lymphosarcoma 398
 Fibrin chemistry of 245
 conversion from fibrinogen 244
 Fibrinogen assay technique 477
 chemistry 245
 conversion to fibrin 244
 deficiency 233
 acquired, 297
 clinical examination in 297
 illustrative case 298
 pathologic physiology 297
 treatment 298
 congenital, 296
 clinical examination in 296
 pathologic physiology 296
 treatment 296
 Fibrinolysin 247
 Fibrinolysis 247
 physiologic anticoagulants and 246
 Fish tapeworm infestations megaloblastic anemia in 107
 Fisher Race nomenclature for Rh blood types 432
 Folic acid absorption in malabsorption syndromes 118
 antagonists in leukemia 346
 deficiency laboratory procedures in 90
 macrocytic anemia in 91
 vs pernicious anemia 112
 in erythropoiesis 61
 in nucleic acid metabolism 106
 in pregnancy 121
 structural formula 347
 Food iron in absorption of 55
 Formulae Wintrobe's for determination of size and hemoglobin content of erythrocytes 70
 Fragility capillary tourniquet test of technique 469
 osmotic test, in hereditary spherocytosis 96
 technique 455
 Friedrich 353
 Fungus disease large lymph nodes in 390
 GAMMA globulin increase in multiple myeloma 414
 Gastrectomy partial iron deficiency following 149
 total megaloblastic anemia following 73
 Gastric analysis in differentiation of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid deficiency 91
 Gastric secretion in pernicious anemia 109

- Hyperthyroidism lymph nodes in 390
 Hypohemogenemia acquired 254
 Hypoplasia erythrocytic chronic 92
 cortisone in 134
 Hypoproliferative anemia See Proliferative
 deficiency
 Icterus gravis neonatorum See Erythro-
 blastosis fetalis
 hemolytic acquired See Anemia hemo-
 lytic acquired
 congenital See Spherocytosis heredi-
 tary
 Imidazole buffer technique of composition
 478
 Index hemolytic 94
 Infection(s) as leukemogenic agents 355
 bacterial in chronic lymphocytic leu-
 kemia 367
 fungus in lymphoma 349 407
 hemolytic anemia due to 84
 leukocytosis of 311 316
 lymphocytosis in 317
 monocytosis in 317
 neutropenia in 318
 neutrophilic leukocytosis in 318
 Inflammation acute neutrophilic leuko-
 cytosis in 318
 reaction in, 13
 Intoxications neutrophilic leukocytosis in
 318
 Intrinsic factor 6...
 Intrinsic system in thromboplastin activity
 development 242
 Iron absorption of 51
 in iron deficiency anemia 53
 mucosal block theory 53 54
 deficiency abnormalities in 149
 anemia of See Anemia iron de-
 ficiency
 causes 149
 differential diagnosis 98
 in hypochromic microcytic anemia 98
 laboratory procedures in 90
 normocytic anemia in 97
 excretion of 59
 in adults values 58
 in food absorption of 53
 latent binding capacity and case 57
 metabolic pathways of elemental repre-
 sentation 60
 metabolism 51 61
 plasma level 58 57
 utilization 58
 quantity of regulation 52
 serum levels 58 57
 in disease 57
 sources of 51
 storage of 58
 deficiency of 59
 excess of 59
 iron therapy in iron deficiency anemia 152
 hematologic response 153
 transp. of 55
 Irradiation See Radiation
 Ivy method of bleeding time determina-
 tion 467
 JALANICE, acholuric See Spherocytosis
 hereditary
 hemolytic congenital See Spherocytosis
 hereditary
 in erythroblastosis fetalis 187
 in hereditary spherocytosis 159
 joint symptoms in sickle cell anemia 187
 juvenile cell 3
 morphology 4
 Jarrow test in infectious mononucleosis 334
 Kermierus in erythroblastosis fetalis 186
 187
 Kidney artificial, dialysis by in transfusion
 reactions 435
 damage following hemolytic reactions to
 transfusions, 434
 diabetic chronic anemia associated with
 122 124
 anemia in factors in 124
 insufficiency in multiple myeloma 416
 Kocher 124
 Kolliker 20
 Krauss 265
 Landrat 293
 LABILE factor See Factor 1
 Labor leukocytosis in 315
 Laboratory procedures in hematology
 techniques 440-450
 bleeding time 467
 Duke method 467
 Ivy method 467
 capillary fragility tourniquet test of
 469
 clot retraction 468
 coagulation time 471
 differential count 445
 electrophoresis 461
 erythrocyte count 440
 fetal urobilinogen test, 458
 fetal hemoglobin detection by alkali
 denaturation 465
 fibrinogen as ay 477
 "glutathione in lability" detection by
 comparing Heinz body formation in
 vitro 479
 hematocrit determination 440
 hemoglobin, total 442
 imidazole buffer composition, 478
 leukocyte alkaline phosphatase stain
 azo dye method 452
 Comori procedure modification 451

- Hemoglobin(s) fetal detection by alkali denaturation technique 465
 formation 41
 level 42
 determination in anemia diagnosis 87
 mean corpuscular determination 70
 quantity determination of 42
 role of 41
 sickle cell 163
 total determination technique 442
- Hemoglobin A hemoglobin S and chemical differences 79
- Hemoglobin C disease homozygous 175
 —sickle cell disease 176
- Hemoglobin D disease homozygous 178
 —sickle cell disease 177
- Hemoglobin E disease homozygous 178
- Hemoglobin F in thalassemia 78 182
- Hemoglobin H disease 177
- Hemoglobin S disease homozygous See *Anemia sickle cell*
 hemoglobin A and chemical differences 79
- Hemoglobinopathies 78
- Hemoglobinuria 199 201
 cold paroxysmal 83 200
 nocturnal paroxysmal 81 201
- Hemolysate red blood cell preparation for electrophoresis 462
- Hemolysis cause of in transfusion reactions determination of 435
 increased See also *Hyperhemolysis*
 anemias due to 76
 classification 72
 intravascular following transfusions 434
 diagnosis 434
- Hemolytic anemia idiopathic See *Anemia hemolytic acquired*
- Hemolytic disease auto immune See *Anemia hemolytic acquired iso immune* 83
- Hemolytic icterus acquired See *Anemia hemolytic acquired*
- Hemolytic index 94
- Hemolytic reactions following transfusions 434
 cause of determination 435
 diagnosis 434
- Hemophilia 277 See also *Factor anti hemophilic deficiency*
- Hemorrhage See *Bleeding*
- Hemorrhagic diathesis examination of patient 247
 history in 247
 laboratory examination in 250
 laboratory tests in choice of 254
 physical examination in 249
 thromboplastin generation test in 251
- Hemostasis 238
 biochemical phase 239
 defects of See *Hemorrhagic diathesis*
- Hemostasis disorders of 259 308
 classification 259
 thrombocytes in 16
 vascular phase 239
- Henoch Schoenlein syndrome See *Purpura allergic*
- Heparia 246
- Hepatitis in infectious mononucleosis 330
- Hepatomegaly enlarged lymph nodes and 390
- Herpes zoster in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 364
 in Hodgkin's disease 396
- Heterophil agglutination test in infectious mononucleosis 333
- Heuck 139
- Hewson William 309
- Hodgkin Thomas 383
- Hodgkin's disease See also *Lymphomas malignant*
 chest roentgenograms in 403
 clinical features 394
 collateral circulation in 395
 enlarged cervical lymph nodes in 390
 histologic types prognosis and 405
 illustrative case 406
 irradiation in 402
 laboratory examination in 397
 location of lesion incidence 394
 lymph nodes in 390
 nitrogen mustard in 345 403
 physical examination in 397
 prognosis 405
 symptoms and signs 394
- Hodgkin's sarcoma bone marrow in 437
- Hormones effect on circulating leukocytes 312
- Howell Jolly bodies 25
- Hydrocortisone in acute leukemia 362
- Hydrops fetalis See *Erythroblastosis fetalis*
- Hypercalcemia in multiple myeloma 415
 treatment 423
- Hyperhemolysis fecal urobilinogen excretion in 94
 in anemia of uremia 123
 in aplastic anemia 135
 in erythroblastosis fetalis 185
 in hemoglobinopathies 164 175 180
 in hereditary spherocytosis 157
 in leukemia 367 373
 in lymphoma 397 399
 in pernicious anemia 111
 in splenomegaly 85
 normocytic anemia in 93
- Hyperplasia megaloblastic in pernicious anemia 21
 normoblastic in hemolytic anemia 21
- Hypersplenism 85 203 205
 definition 203

- Leukoagglutinins in hematologic disorders 318
- Leukocyte(s) 309-340
 acid phosphatase activity in 7
 alkaline phosphatase stain technique and dye method 452
 Gomori procedure modification 451
 antibodies agranulocytosis and 3-0
 as mechanism in neutropenia 317
 circulating decrease in 317
 concentration determination technique 440
 counts
 differential 315
 normal values for 314
 technique 445
 fluctuations in spontaneous 315
 technique 444
 total 315
 in acute leukemia 359
 normal values for 314
 findings in pernicious anemia 109
 function 7
 in acute leukemia 359-379
 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia 373
 life span of 312
 normal values of 314
 peroxidase stain for technique 450
 removal from circulation 313
 response to leukopheresis 310
 variations due to disease 318
 physiologic 315
- Leukocytosis 309-310
 causes 315
 in infectious mononucleosis 331
 neutrophilia 311
 causes 316
 of infection 311
- Leukocytosis promoting factor 311
- Leukopheresis leukocyte response to 310
- Leukopoiesis 310
- Leukosarcoma 401
- Leukotaxine 7
 versus leukocytosis promoting factor 312
- Levine 105
- Lipodystrophy intestinal anemia associated with 118
- Lupus hereditary telangiectasia involving 2-6
 live damage in infectious mononucleosis 3-9
 disease chronic anemia associated with 202-203
 hemolytic anemia and 86
 function tests in infectious mononucleosis 330-333
- Lupus disseminated lymph nodes in 390
- Lupus erythematosus cell 440-449
 phenomenon demonstration of technique 448
- Lymph nodes
 biopsy in diagnosis of patient with enlarged lymph nodes 391
 in malignant lymphomas 400
 cervical enlarged in Hodgkin's disease 390
 enlargement diagnosis of patient with 388
 biopsy of lymph nodes in 391
 history in 389
 laboratory examination in 391
 physical examination in 389
 roentgenographic examination in 391
 in giant follicular lymphoma 399
 in Hodgkin's disease 394
 in lymphosarcoma 398
 in reticulum cell sarcoma 398
 in Hodgkin's disease 397
 superficial enlargement in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 365
- Lymphadenitis acute See Mononucleosis infectiosa
- Lymphoblast morphology 8
- Lymphoblastoma See Lymphomas malignant and Lymphoma giant follicular
- Lymphoblastosis acute benign See Mononucleosis infectiosa
- Lymphocytes 313
 chemistry 10
 circulation of 314
 count 315
 total normal values for 314
 function 10
 in antibody formation 11
 life span of 313-314
 mitoses in 11
 morphology 8-9
 origin of 10
 pathologic in infectious mononucleosis types 332-332
 in secondary thrombocytopenic purpura 2-0
 phagocytosis in 11
 quantity of 313
 small 11-12
- Lymphocytic series 8
- Lymphocytosis causes 317
- Lymphoid tissue disorders of 388-429
- Lymphoma(s)
 diseases vs agranulocytosis 322
 giant follicular See also Lymphomas malignant
 clinical features 399
 illustrative case 409
 prognosis 408
 lymph nodes in 390
 malignant 390-412

- Laboratory procedures in hematology techniques leukocyte concentration 446
 leukocyte count 444
 differential 445
 lupus erythematosus cell phenomenon demonstration 448
 modified thromboplastin generation test 475
 one stage prothrombin time 474
 osmotic fragility test 455
 peroxidase stain for leukocytes 450
 plasma adsorption 478
 platelet count 470
 direct with phase microscope 470
 indirect 471
 prothrombin time one stage 474
 sedimentation rate 447
 serum bilirubin test direct 457
 indirect 457
 sickle cell test 454
 stain for reticulocytes 447
 staining of prepared blood films 445
 thrombin time and titer 470
 thromboplastin generation test 472
 modified 475
 touriquet test of capillary fragility 469
 white blood cell concentration, 446
- Ladd 105
 Lardstener 430
 Lange Johannes 148
 L E cell 449 449
 phenomenon demonstration of 448
 Lomery 148
 Leptocytosis hereditary See *Thalassemia*
 in *thalassemia* 78
 Leukemia See *Metaplasia myeloid*
 Leukemia 353 387
 acute 326 357
 adrenocortical steroids in treatment 362
 clinical course 361
 clinical manifestations 358
 diagnosis 360
 folic acid antagonists in 346
 illustrative case 363
 laboratory manifestations 359
 6 mercaptopurine in treatment 362
 transformation from chronic leukemia 358
 treatment 361
 a methopterin in 361
 types 357
 vs agranulocytosis 332
 chronic transformation into acute leukemia 358
 cutis 382
 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 361
 etiology 354
 factors in 356
 Leukemia etiology genetic considerations
 in 358
 factors in drugs 355
 infections 355
 ionizing radiation 355
 historical aspects 353
 incidence 354
 lymphocytic chronic 363 372
 adrenocortical steroids in 369
 clinical course 367
 clinical manifestations 364
 diagnosis 366
 herpes zoster in 364
 illustrative case 369
 laboratory manifestations 369
 leukemia cutis in 364
 radiation therapy in 369
 therapy 367
 vs infectious mononucleosis 367
 vs lymphosarcoma 367 401
 monocytic 377
 acute 378
 clinical course 379
 laboratory examination in 378
 clinical manifestations 378
 hypertrophied gums in 379
 illustrative case 379
 monoblasts in 359
 chronic 381
 diagnosis 382
 laboratory manifestations 381
 treatment 383
 Naegeli type 383
 Schilling type 383
 myeloblastic acute myeloblasts in 359
 myelocytic chronic 370 372
 chemotherapy in 375
 clinical course 373
 clinical manifestations 370
 illustrative case 376
 incidence 370
 laboratory manifestations 371
 prognosis 373
 radiation therapy in 374
 treatment 374
 vs polycythemia vera 226
 vs myeloid metaplasia 142
 pathogenesis 354
 treatment adrenocortical steroid in 348
 agents used in 341 352
 alkylating agents in 343
 antimetabolites in 346
 8 azaguanine in 348
 chlorambucil in 348
 irradiation in 341
 nitrogen mustard in 344
 purine analogs in 347
 pyrimidine analogs in 347
 TAM in 345
 vs aplastic anemia 132

- Leukoagglutinins in hematologic disorders 318
- Leukocyte(s) 309-340
 acid phosphatase activity in 7
 alkaline phosphatase stain technique and dye method 452
 Common procedure modification 451
 antibodies agranulocytosis and 320
 as mechanism in neutropenia 317
 circulating decrease in 317
 concentration determination technique 448
 counts
 differential 315
 normal values for 314
 technique 445
 fluctuations in portaneous 315
 technique, 444
 total 315
 in acute leukemia 359
 normal values for 314
 findings in pernicious anemia 109
 function 7
 in acute leukemia 359-379
 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia 373
 life span of 312
 normal values of 314
 peroxidase stain for technique 450
 removal from circulation 313
 response to leukopheresis 310
 variations due to disease 316
 physiologic 315
- Leukocytosis 309-310
 causes 315
 in infectious mononucleosis 331
 neutrophilic, 311
 causes 316
 of infection 311
 Leukocytosis promoting factor " 311
 Leukopheresis leukocyte response to 310
- Leukopoiesis 310
- Leukosarcoma 401
- Leukotaxine 7
 versus leukocytosis promoting factor " 311
- Levine 105
- Lipodystrophy intestinal anemia associated with 118
- Lips hereditary telangiectasia involving 278
- Liver damage in infectious mononucleosis 329
 disease chronic anemia associated with 202-203
 hemolytic anemia and 86
 function tests in infectious mononucleosis 330-333
- Lupus disseminated lymph nodes in 390
- Lupus erythematosus cell 449-449
 phenomenon demonstration of technique 448
- Lymph nodes
 biopsy in diagnosis of patient with enlarged lymph nodes 391
 in malignant lymphomas 400
 cervical enlarged in Hodgkins disease 390
 enlargement diagnosis of patient with 388
 biopsy of lymph nodes in 391
 history in 381
 laboratory examination in 391
 physical examination in 389
 roentgenographic examination in 391
 in giant follicular lymphoma 399
 in Hodgkins disease 394
 in lymphosarcoma 398
 in reticulum cell sarcoma 398
 in Hodgkins disease 397
 superficial enlargement in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 385
- Lymphadenosis acute See Mononucleosis infectious
- Lymphoblast morphology 8
- Lymphoblastoma See Lymphomas malignant and Lymphoma giant follicular
- Lymphoblastosis acute benign See Mononucleosis infectious
- Lymphocytes 313
 chemistry 10
 circulation of 314
 count 315
 total normal values for 314
 function 10
 in antibody formation 11
 life span of 313-314
 mitoses in 11
 morphology 8-9
 origin of 10
 pathologic in infectious mononucleosis types 332, 332
 in secondary thrombocytopenic purpura 270
 phagocytosis in 11
 quantity of 313
 small 11-11
- Lymphocytic series 8
- Lymphocytosis causes 317
- Lymphoid tissue disorders of 388-409
- Lymphoma(s)
 diseases vs agranulocytosis 322
 giant follicular See also Lymphomas malignant
 clinical features 399
 illustrative case 409
 prognosis 408
 lymph nodes in 390
 malignant, 392-412

- Lymphoma(s) : malignant classification** 393
 clinical classification according to extent of disease 402
 clinical features 394
 diagnosis 400
 histologic difficulties in 393
 illustrative cases 406
 incidence of types 393
 management 401
 prognosis 405
 stage I treatment 402
 stage II treatment 403
 stage III treatment 404
 treatment
 adrenocortical steroids in 346
 agents used in 341-352
 alkylating agents in 343
 chlorambucil in 346
 irradiation in 341
 nitrogen mustard in 344
 TLN in 345
- Lymphosarcoma anemias associated with** 118
 blood abnormalities in 399
 chest roentgenograms in 398
 clinical features 397
 illustrative case 410
 irradiation in 402
 laboratory examination in 399
 prognosis 405
 symptoms and signs 397
 vs chronic lymphocytic leukemia 367 401
- MACROCYTES** 25
 in peripheral blood, 24
- Macrophages function** 14
 tissue origin of 13
- Macropolycytes** 5
- Malabsorption syndrome anemias associated with** 118 119
- Marchiafava Micheli syndrome** 81 201
- Marrow abnormalities in lymphosarcoma** 399
 in reticulum cell sarcoma 399
 agranulocytosis and 3-0
 aspiration See *Marrow examination*
 cell count differential 437 438
 damage in aplastic anemia causes 130
 neutropenia in 318
 depression associated disease as factor in 74
 chemicals as factor in 75
 chronic See *Anemia aplastic*
 drugs as factor in 74 130
 idiopathic 75
 in diminished erythropoiesis 74
 ionizing radiation as factor in 75
 disorders of 388-429
- Marrow examination** 436
 diagnoses made by 439
 observations in report 438
 plan for 437
 technique 436
 value of 439
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia 373
 in cystinosis 437
 in metastatic carcinoma 437
 in pernicious anemia 109 110
 in reticulum cell sarcoma 437
- Marschalko's plasma cell** See *Plasmacyte*
- Masius** 156
- Measles thrombocytopenic purpura** see
 secondary to pathologic lymphocyte in 270
- Mediterranean anemia** See *Thalassemia*
- Megakaryoblast morphology** 14
- Megakaryocyte** 15
 morphology 15
- Megaloblast(s) definition** 20
 hyperplasia in pernicious anemia 21
- Menadione in prothrombin deficiency** 294
- Mesococytosis** See *Anemia sickle cell*
- Menstruation iron deficiency and** 99
- 6-Mercaptopurine in acute leukemia** 348 362
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia 376
- von Mering** 105
- Mesoporphyrin** 45
- Metabolism diseases of lymphocytosis in** 317
 hemoglobin 41-48
 iron 51-61
 pathways of schematic representation 60
- Metamyelocyte** 3
 morphology 4
- Metaplasia agnogenic myeloid** See *Metaplasia myeloid*
- myeloid** 138-145
 clinical manifestations 140
 course 143
 differential diagnosis 142
 illustrative case 144
 laboratory examination in 141
 primary 139
 secondary 139
 symptomatic 139
 treatment 143
- Metarubricyte morphology** 22
- Metathrombin** 246
- Metchnikoff** 7
- Methemoglobin reductase in erythrocytes** 29
- Methemoglobinemia congenital** 30
- A Methopterin in acute leukemia** 361
- Methotrexate in acute leukemia** 361
- Mexican hat cells** 25
- Microcytes** 25
 hypochromic 25
 in peripheral blood, 24

- Microspherocytes 25
- Mikulicz's syndrome in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 365
- Minkowski 158 192
- Minot 103
- Mitoses in lymphocytes 11
- MNS system 431
- Monoblast(s) in acute monocytic leukemia 359
- morphology 12
- Monocytes 314
- chemistry 14
- count 315
- function 14
- life span of 314
- morphology 12 13
- origin of 13
- quantity of 314
- Monocytic series 12
- Monocytosis associated with enlarged lymph nodes 391
- causes 317
- Mononucleosis infectious 325 396
- cardiac involvement in 330
- clinical manifestations 328
- course 335
- diagnosis 334
- Guillain Barre syndrome in 330
- hematologic complications in 331
- hematuria in 331
- historical aspects 325
- illustrative case 335
- liver damage in 329
- mechanism 327
- prognosis 335
- skin lesions in 329
- splenic rupture in 331
- symptoms and signs incidence 329
- synonyms 325
- treatment 335
- types 328
- vs agranulocytosis 322
- vs chronic lymphocytic leukemia 367
- Morowitz, 240
- Mott cells in multiple myeloma 418 419
- Mucosa gastrointestinal regulation of iron absorption by 53 54
- Mucosal block theory of iron absorption 53 54
- Murchison fever in Hodgkin's disease 395
- in malignant lymphomas 398
- Murphy 105
- Mutard nitrogen in Hodgkin's disease 403
- in leukemia and malignant lymphoma 344
- in malignant lymphomas 404
- Mycosis fungoides clinical features 400
- Myeloblast(s) 3
- in acute myeloblastic leukemia 359
- morphology 4
- Myelocyte early 3
- morphology 4
- Myelofibrosis See Metaplasia myeloid
- Myeloid metaplasia See Metaplasia myeloid
- Myeloma cells in multiple myeloma 418
- morphology 17
- Myeloma multiple 412-425
- blood abnormalities in 420
- clinical manifestations 415
- course, 422
- diagnosis 421
- electrophoresis of serum and urine in 413
- historical aspects 412
- illustrative cases 423
- laboratory examination in 418
- pathogenesis 412
- pathologic physiology 412
- prognosis 422
- skeletal lesions in 417 417
- treatment 422
- Myeloclerosis See Metaplasia myeloid
- Myelosis aleukemic See Metaplasia myeloid
- erythemic 231 232
- non leukemic chronic See Metaplasia myeloid
- Mykran in chronic myelocytic leukemia, 375
- in leukemia 346
- in polycythemia, 2-8
- Myxedema anemia associated with 124
- 128
- bleeding response in, 125
- clinical manifestations 126
- macrocytic anemia in 93
- NAEGLI type of monocytic leukemia 383
- Necroin versus leukocytosis promoting factor 312
- Necrosis cellular neutrophilic leukocytosis in 316
- Neoplasms eosinophils in 317
- lymphocytosis in 317
- monocytosis in 317
- neutrophilic leukocytosis in 316
- Neumann 28
- Neurologic findings in pernicious anemia 108
- prognosis 115
- vitamin B₁₂ in 114
- Neurologic involvement in infectious mononucleosis 330
- in multiple myeloma 416
- in sickle cell anemia 167
- Neutropenia causes 317 318
- cyclic 324
- leukocyte antibodies as mechanism in 317
- malignant See Agranulocytosis

- Neutropenia sequestration in tissues as mechanism in 318
splenomegaly as mechanism in 318
- Neutrophils count 315
life span of 312
morphology 5
- Newborn mumm of See *Erythroblastosis fetalis*
hemolytic disease of due to Rh and ABO incompatibility See *Erythroblastosis fetalis*
- Nitrogen mustard in Hodgkins disease 403
in leukemia and malignant lymphoma 344
in malignant lymphomas 404
- Node lymph See *Lymph node*
- Normoblast(s) basophilic morphology 22
hyperplasia in hemolytic anemia 21
orthochromatic morphology 22
polychromatic morphology 22
- Nucleic acids metabolism folic acid in 106
vitamin B₁₂ in 106
- Nutritional deficiency absorption in defective 73
as factor in diminished erythropoiesis 72
erythropoiesis in excessive demands for 73
faulty diet in 73
neutropenia in 318
- OPERATIONS in AHH deficiency management 283
in malignant lymphomas 402
- Opsonic function of antibody 8
- Orthochromatic normoblast morphology 22
- Osler 221 354
- Osler's disease See *Polycythemia vera*
- Osmotic fragility test in hereditary spherocytosis 96
technique 455
- Osmotic pressure effect on hematocrit level 88
- Osteosclerosis See *Metaplasia myeloid*
- Ovalocytes 25
in peripheral blood 24
- PAGE, 240
- Pain in multiple myeloma 416
- Panmyelophthisis See *Anemia aplastic*
- Paper electrophoresis of serum and urine in multiple myeloma 413
technique 462
- Parahemophilia See *Factor V deficiency*
- Parasites infestation eosinophils in 317
- Paul Bunnell test in infectious mononucleosis 333
- Febrile fever in Hodgkins disease 395
in malignant lymphomas 398
- Pencil forms of erythrocytes 25
- Penicillin in granulocytosis 323
- Peptic ulcer in polycythemia vera 224
- Pernicious anemia 104 118 See also *Anemia pernicious*
- Peroxidase stain for leukocytes technique 450
- Petechiae in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura 266
- Pfeiffer 325
- Phagocytosis 7
in lymphocytes 11
surface 8
- Phosphorus radioactive in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
in chronic myelocytic leukemia 375
in leukemia and malignant lymphoma 343
in polycythemia vera 227
effect on survival time 225
- Physical agents hemolytic anemia due to 64
- Plasma
adsorption technique 478
cell See *Plasmacyte*
iron levels 56 57
prothrombin component in thromboplastin activity development 242
thromboplastin antecedent deficiency 286
clinical aspects 287
pathologic physiology 286
treatment 287
vs Hageman factor deficiency 252
in thromboplastin activity development 243
thromboplastin component deficiency 285
clinical findings 285
pathologic physiology 286
treatment 286
synonyms for 239
use in antihemophilic factor deficiency 282
- Plasmablast in multiple myeloma 418
morphology 17
- Plasmacyte(s) antibody production in 19
chemistry 19
function 19
in multiple myeloma 419
morphology 17
origin 17
- Plasmacytic series 17
- Plasminogen 247
- Platelet(s) abnormalities hemostatic disorders due to 260
chemistry 16

- Platelet(s) co-factor I See *Factor anti hemophilic*
 count, in chronic myelocytic leukemia 373
 in hemorrhage diathesis 250
 technique 470
 direct with phase microscope 470
 indirect 471
 decrease in thrombocyte penia 263
 function, 18
 in hemostasis 18
 in thromboplastin activity development 243
 morphology 14 15
 origin 18
 reduction of in thrombotic thrombocyto-
 penic purpura 269
- Poikilocytosis 3
- Poisons vegetable hemolytic anemia due to 85
- Polychromatic normoblast morphology 22
- Polycythemia 20-37
 absolute 20
 primary See *Polycythemia vera*
 relative 20
 rubra See *Polycythemia vera*
 secondary 229 231
 cardiac malformations as factor in 230
 low barometric pressure as factor in 230
 pulmonary disorders as factor in 230
 vascular lesions as factor in 230
- vera*, 221 229
 chemotherapy in 228
 clinical manifestations 221
 course 24
 diagnosis 28
 historical, 231
 laboratory findings in 220
 pathogenesis 21
 primary vs secondary polycythemia 26
 prognosis 224
 radioactive phosphorus in 227
 subcutaneous hemorrhage in 225
 treatment 26
 plan of 28
 venesection in 227
- Polymorphonuclear morphology 4
 pernicious anemia type 5
- Porphobilinogen formation 46 46
 Porphobilinogenase 46
- Porphyria erythropoietica 49
- Porphyria hepatica, 50
 cutanea tarda type 50
 intermittent acute type 50
 mixed type 50
- Porphyrins chemistry 44
 metabolism abnormal 49
 diseases of 49
- Porphyria 50
- Prednisone, See *Adrenocortical steroids*
- Pregnancy anemia in See *Anemia ; pregnancy*
 blood changes due to hemodilution 10
 blood values 11 10
 iron deficiency and 99
 macrocytic anemia in 121
 megaloblastic anemia in, 121
- Prematurity anemia of hypochromic See *Anemia iron deficiency*
- Pressure osmotic, effect on hematocrit level 89
- Primaquine sensitivity 9 81
- Pro-accelerin See *Factor V*
- Pro-converter See *Factor VII*
- Progranulocyte 3
 morphology 3
- Polymorphocyte morphology 11
- Promegakaryocyte morphology 15
- Promonocyte morphology 13
- Promyelocyte 3
 morphology 3
- Pronormoblast morphology 20
- Proplasmacyte morphology 17
- Prothrombin morphology 22
- Protamine 246
- Protein abnormalities in Hodgkin's disease 397
 in lymphosarcoma 399
 in multiple myeloma 414
 in reticulum cell sarcoma 399
- Bence Jones 412
 in urine in multiple myeloma 414 40
 serum in multiple myeloma, 419
 stain in starch gel electrophoresis 465
- Prothrombin
 accelerator See *Factor VII*
 chemistry of 244
 conversion to thrombin 244
 deficiency 253 293
 clinical examination in 294
 pathologic physiology 293
 treatment, 294
 vitamin K and 293
 serum conversion accelerator See *Factor VII*
 time one stage determination in hemorrhagic diathesis 251
 technique 474
- Protoporphyrin 45
- PTA See *Plasma thromboplastin antecedent*
- PTC See *Plasma thromboplastin component*
- Pulmonary disorders as factor in polycythemia 230

- Pulmonary edema following transfusions 434
- Urine analogs in leukemia 347
- Purpura(s) 260
 - allergic 249 273
 - clinical examination 273
 - mechanism 274
 - treatment 274
 - infectious 274
 - treatment 274
 - non thrombocytopenic 273
 - types 275
 - senile 275
 - thrombocytopenic 260
 - clinical examination in 261
 - clinical syndromes 262
 - idiopathic 265
 - clinical examination in 265
 - course 266
 - ecchymoses in 266
 - illustrative case 271
 - incidence 265
 - mechanism 265
 - petechiae in 266
 - prognosis 266
 - treatment 267
 - in infectious mononucleosis 331
 - laboratory examination in 262
 - neonatal 268
 - mechanisms 268
 - treatment 268
 - secondary 262
 - causes 263
 - illustrative case 269
 - management 264
 - mechanisms 263
 - pathologic lymphocyte in 270
 - tourniquet test in 270
 - thrombotic 268
 - clinical aspects 269
 - mechanism 268
 - treatment 269
- Uridoxine in erythropoiesis 61
 - deficiency anemia in vs iron deficiency 98
 - vs iron deficiency anemia 151
- Pyrimidine analogs in leukemia 347
- RADIATION in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
 - in chronic myelocytic leukemia 374
 - in Hodgkin's disease chest roentgenogram following 403
 - in leukemia 341
 - in malignant lymphomas 341 402 403
 - ionizing as factor in bone marrow depression 75
 - as leukemogenic agent 355
 - in leukemia and malignant lymphoma 341
- Radiophosphorus See *Phosphorus radio active*
- Reaction in inflammation 13
- Reed Sternberg cells in Hodgkin's disease 397
- Renal See *Kidney*
- Rendu 275
- Reticulocyte(s)
 - after acute hemorrhage 146
 - in hemolytic disorders 77 93 169 181 187 194 201
 - morphology 23
 - response in iron deficiency 153
 - in pernicious anemia 111 112
 - stain for technique 447
- Reticulum cell sarcoma See *Sarcoma reticulum cell and Lymphomas malignant*
- Rh blood types 432
 - Fisher Race nomenclature for 432
 - genotypes 432
 - incidence 432
- Rh factor 132
- Rh incompatibility erythroblastosis fetalis
 - due to 188
 - hemolytic disease of newborn due to See *Erythroblastosis fetalis*
 - method of sensitization 183
- Rh negative 433
- Rh positive 432
- Rh system 432
 - in clinical medicine importance 432
 - in erythroblastosis fetalis importance 432
- Rheumatic fever acute vs sickle cell anemia 170
- Ribonucleic acid synthesis vitamin B₁₂ in 107
- Rickets 105
- RNA synthesis vitamin B₁₂ in 107
- Robscheit Robbins 103
- Röntgen therapy in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
 - in chronic myelocytic leukemia 374
 - in multiple myeloma 423
- Röntgenography in diagnosis of patient with enlarged lymph nodes 391
- Rubriblast morphology 20
- Rubricyte morphology 23
- Russell bodies in multiple myeloma 418
- von Ruzizky 412
- SARCOMA Hodgkin's bone marrow in 437
 - lymph nodes in 390
- reticulum cell See also *Lymphomas malignant*
 - blood abnormalities in 399
 - bone marrow in 437
 - clinical features 397
 - illustrative case 408
 - irradiation in 402
 - laboratory examination in 399
 - prognosis 405
 - symptoms and signs 397
- Schilling test in pernicious anemia diagnosis 92

- Schilling type of monocytic leukemia, 383
 Schmidt 40 244
 Schoenlein-Henoch syndrome See *Purpura allergic*
 Schwanmerdam Jan 26
 Sedatives as cause of hematologic abnormalities 321
 Sedimentation rate technique for determining 447
 Segmented cells morphology 4
 pernicious anemia type 5
 Sepsis vs agranulocytosis 323
 Sequestration in tissues as mechanism in neutropenia 318
 Serotonin in hemostasis 238
 Serum
 bilirubin level in erythroblastosis fetalis 187
 in kernicterus 168
 test technique,
 direct, 457
 indirect, 457
 iron levels 16 57
 preparation for electrophoresis 462
 prothrombin conversion accelerator See *Factor VII*
 sickness lymph nodes in 390
 Sick cell
 anemia See *Anemia sickle cell*
 Sick cell test technique 454
 Sick cell-hemoglobin C disease 176
 Sick cell-hemoglobin E disease 177
 Sick cell-thalassemia disease 177
 Sickling, 163
 in anemia vs sickle cell anemia 170
 Siderocytes 25
 Skeleton symptoms in leukemia 358
 in lymphoma 396 399
 in myeloma 417
 in sickle cell anemia 167
 Skin disease eosinophilia in 317
 lesions in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 364
 in infectious mononucleosis 349
 Skull in multiple myeloma 417
 in sickle cell anemia 167
 Spasmodics as cause of hematologic abnormalities 321
 SPCA See *Factor VII*
 Spherocyte
 hereditary 77 90 146-162
 clinical manifestations 158
 differential diagnosis 160
 history 156
 illustrative case 164
 laboratory examination in 159
 mechanism 156
 hereditary spherocytosis 35
 Spherocytosis hereditary splenectomy in
 results 161
 treatment, 161
 Spleen rupture in infectious mononucleosis 331
 Splenectomy in aplastic anemia 135
 in hereditary spherocytosis 161
 results 161
 in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura 467
 in malignant lymphomas 404
 in myeloid metaplasia 143
 in sickle cell anemia 173
 Splenomegaly as mechanism in neutropenia, 318
 enlarged lymph nodes and 330
 hemolytic anemia in 85
 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 365
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia, 371
 in giant follicular lymphoma, 399
 in hemoglobinopathies 170 176 181
 in hereditary spherocytosis 159
 in Hodgkin's disease 397
 in lymphosarcoma 398
 in myeloid metaplasia 141
 in polycythemia 223
 neutropenia in 318
 Sprue anemia associated with 118
 Stab cell, morphology 4
 Stable factor See *Factor VII*
 Stain(s) alkaline phosphatase of leukocytes technique azo dye method 402
 Gomori procedure modifications 451
 in paper electrophoresis 463
 peroxidase for leukocytes technique 400
 of prepared blood films technique 440
 of reticulocytes technique 447
 protein, in starch gel electrophoresis 465
 Starch gel electrophoresis technique 463
 Steatorrhea idiopathic anemia associated with 118
 Stercobilin 48
 Stippling 23
 Stomach carcinoma of pernicious anemia and 115
 Streptomycin in agranulocytosis 323
 Struma erythrocyte 30
 Stuart factor See *Factor Stuart*
 Stuart Protein factor See *Factor Stuart*
 Sulfathiazole in agranulocytosis 323
 Sulfhemoglobin 31
 Superior mediastinal syndrome in Hodgkin's disease 390
 Surgery in AHF deficiency 483
 in malignant lymphomas 402
 Sydenham Thomas 149
 Syndrome(s) of Fanconi 129
 di Guglielmo 231 234
 diplastic 232
 Guillain-Barre in infectious mononucleosis 330

- Syndrome(s) Henoch Schoenlein See *Purpura allergic*
malabsorption anemias associated with 118 119
Marchiafava Micheli 81 201
Mikulicz's in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 365
Schoenlein Henoch See *Purpura allergic*
superior mediastinal in Hodgkin's disease 395
- TACHYCARDIA paroxysmal leukocytosis due to 315
- Tapeworm fish infestations megaloblastic anemia in 107
- Target cells 25
- Techniques hematologic 430-481 See also *Laboratory procedures in hematology techniques*
- Telangiectasia hemorrhagic hereditary 275
clinical examination in 276
pathologic physiology 276
tongue and lip involvement in 276
treatment 277
- TEM in chronic lymphocytic leukemia 368
in chronic myelocytic leukemia 375
in leukemia 345
in malignant lymphomas 345 403
- Terminology in hematology 2
- Tests See also *Laboratory procedures in hematology techniques*
antiglobulin in acquired hemolytic anemia 194
Coombs in acquired hemolytic anemia 194
Davidsohn differential adsorption in infectious mononucleosis 333
heterophil agglutination in infectious mononucleosis 333
Kahn in infectious mononucleosis 334
liver function in infectious mononucleosis 330 333
osmotic fragility in hereditary spherocytosis 96
Paul Bunnell in infectious mononucleosis 333
Schilling in pernicious anemia diagnosis 92
thromboplastin generation See *Thromboplastin generation*
tourniquet in hemorrhagic diathesis 251
positive in secondary thrombocytopenic purpura 270
Wassermann in infectious mononucleosis 334
- Tetracycline in agranulocytosis 139
- Thalassemia 78 178 184
anemia in mechanism, 179
- Thalassemia clinical manifestations 180
diagnosis 182
illustrative case 183
major 78
clinical manifestations 160
definition 179
laboratory examination in 181
minor 78
definition 179
clinical manifestations 160
laboratory examination in 181
therapy 182
vs iron deficiency 98
vs iron deficiency anemia 151
- Thalassemia C disease 178
- Thalassemia L disease 178
- Thalassemia-sickle cell disease 177
- Thrombin 246
chemistry 244
- Thrombocyte See *Platelet*
- Thrombocytic series 14
conversion from prothrombin 244
time and titer technique of determination 476
- Thrombocytopenia pathologic physiology 261
- Thrombopathia 302
- Thromboplastin
activity 241
antihemophilic factor in 281
development of blood system in 242
extrinsic system in 242
in coagulation 241
intrinsic system in 242
tissue system in 242
- but See *Plasma thromboplastin component*
co factor of See *Factor V*
component plasma See *Plasma thromboplastin component*
generation test in antihemophilic factor deficiency 282
in hemorrhagic diathesis 251
modified technique 475
technique 472
- Thromboplastinogen A See *Factor antihemophilic*
- Thrombosis in polycythemia vera 224
- Thymectomy in aplastic anemia 135
- Thyroid desiccated in anemia of myxedema 127
- Tissue lymphoid disorders of 368 429
sequestration in as mechanism in neutropenia 318
system in thromboplastin activity development 242
- Tongue hereditary telangiectasia involving 276
- Tooth extractions in AHF deficiency 283
- Tourniquet test in hemorrhagic diathesis 251

- Tourniquet test of capillary fragility technique 469
 positive in secondary thrombocytopenic purpura, 270
- Transfusion(s) 433
 exchange in erythroblastosis fetalis in dictators 189
 in aplastic anemia 133
 in chronic myelocytic leukemia 374
 in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura 267
 in pernicious anemia 114
 in prothrombin deficiency 294
 in sickle cell anemia, 172
 effects of 172
 incompatible, thrombocytopenia following, 64
 indications for 433
 reactions allergic incidence 434
 management, 435
 prevention 436
 hemolytic, 434
 cause of determination of 435
 diagnosis 434
 incidence 433
 management 434
 in a hemolytic, febrile prevention 436
 pyrogenic incidence 434
 management 435
 transmission of infection by 434
- Trichylene melamine See TEM
- Tuberculosis lymph nodes in 390
 vs agranulocytosis 322
- Ulcer(s) leg, chronic in hereditary spherocytosis 159
 in sickle cell anemia 166
 peptic in polycythemia vera, 224
- Uremia anemia of 123
- Urethan in chronic myelocytic leukemia 378
 in multiple myeloma 422
- Urobilinogen fecal, 48
 excreted in hemolytic disease, 94
 significance in anemia formula, 94
 test, technique 458
 in hemoglobin daily amount, formula 94
 urinary 48
- Uroporphyrin, 4
 Uroporphyrin I 44
 Uroporphyrin III 44
- VANLADI, 158
- Vaquez, 22
- Vaquez's disease See Polycythemia vera
- Vascular lesions as factor in secondary polycythemia 250
- Vegetable poisons hemolytic anemia due to 85
- Venesection in polycythemia vera 27
- Virchow 309 353
- Vitocytes 352
- Viruses role in leukemia 355
- Vitamin B₆ deficiency anemia in vs iron deficiency 98
 vs iron deficiency anemia 151
 in erythropoiesis 61
- Vitamin B₁₂ absorption impairment of pernicious anemia in 107
 in malabsorption syndromes 118
 deficiency in pernicious anemia, 105
 laboratory procedures in 90
 macrocytic anemia 91
 in erythropoiesis 61
 in nucleic acid metabolism 106
 in pernicious anemia treatment 113 114
 intrinsic factor and 106
- Vitamin K, prothrombin deficiency and, 293
 synthetic in prothrombin deficiency 294
- Vitamin K₁ in prothrombin deficiency 294
- Volume mean corpuscular determination 70
- Von Behring 19
- Von Meering 195
- Von Rustzky 412
- Von Willebrand's disease 299
 clinical features 300
 illustrative case 300
 pathologic physiology 299
 treatment, 300
- WASSERMAN test in infectious mononucleosis 333
- Webber 28
- Wells 161
- Werthof 285
- Whipple 105
- Widal, 192
- Wiener nomenclature for Rh blood types 432
- Willebrand's disease See Von Willebrand's disease
- Wintrobe's formulae for determination of size and hemoglobin content of erythrocytes 70
- Wright James H. 412

